

L.V. KNODEL

ENGLISH FOR CUSTOMS

ENGLISH TEXTBOOK

KIEV - 2019

УДК 811.111:336.24](075)  
ББК 81.2Англ:65.26

**Кнодель Л. В.**

К 53 English for Customs (Английский для таможи) : учебник / Л. В. Кнодель. – Киев : ФОРМАНТА, 2019. – 340 с.

Спецкурс «Английский для таможи» предназначен для студентов юридических факультетов, изучающих таможенное дело и для практиков, которые хотят усовершенствовать свои знания английского языка для своей карьеры в сфере таможенной деятельности.

Спецкурс «Таможня» включает такие темы: Таможня (учреждение); Виды таможен; Таможенные пошлины; Таможенные формальности; Должностные обязанности таможенника; Таможенные службы; Таможенный контроль; Паспортный контроль; Личный досмотр; Таможенная декларация; Визовый режим; Таможенное управление; Таможенные инструкции; Контрабанда, Правила провоза ценностей.

В книге приводятся оригинальные тексты на английском языке, даются всевозможные комментарии к ним, разнообразные диалоги и упражнения для закрепления специальной лексики.

Спецкурс позволяет в короткие сроки значительно усовершенствовать свою языковую базу, что является первостепенным условием успешной карьеры в будущем.

Special course «English for Customs» is the textbook for students of law faculties who study customs business and for practical people who are eager to develop their knowledge of English to improve their careers and to climb the ladder in the field of customs activities.

Special course «English for Customs» consists of following topics: Customs office, kinds of Customs houses, Customs duties, Customs formalities, duties of Customs officials, Customs services, Customs control, passport control, Customs declaration, personal examination, visa regime, Customs administration, Custom regulations, Customs revenue, Customs rules of values transportation. There are a great deal of original texts in English, are given various recommendations & comments on them, variety of dialogues and exercises to fasten knowledge of special vocabulary.

Special course gives the opportunity in a short time to improve greatly your language basis, what is the main aim of successful career in future.

УДК 811.111:336.24](075)  
ББК 81.2Англ:65.26

© Кнодель Л. В., 2019

© Видавец, ФОРМАНТА, 2019

## ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

В условиях глобализации мировой экономики, дальнейшей активизации международного товарообмена, темпы роста которого за последние 20 лет опережали динамику совокупного мирового ВВП примерно в 3 раза, особое значение приобретает формирование и эффективное функционирование национальных таможенных систем. Это необходимо в целях максимального содействия развитию внешнеторговой деятельности компаний без ущерба для результативности таможенного контроля и обеспечения национальной экономической безопасности.

Дальнейшая либерализация, гармонизация и унификация таможенных отношений ставит перед современными исследователями широкий спектр нерешенных задач, проблем и спорных вопросов, требующих углубленного изучения таможенной системы. С одной стороны, механизм ее воздействия осуществляется на основе инструментов таможенной политики, направленных на обеспечение национальных экономических интересов.

При этом таможенная система выступает как элемент национальной экономики.

С другой стороны, в связи с усилением гармонизации и унификации в области таможенных технологий возникает необходимость гармонизации национального законодательства с принципами и нормами мировой таможенной практики.

Принципиальное значение имеет и тот факт, что в современных условиях традиционные подходы в практике осуществления таможенных процедур не в состоянии обеспечить должного уровня таможенного администрирования. Необходимость совершенствования таможенной системы в условиях глобализации мировой экономики во многом обусловлена ее вхождением во Всемирную торговую организацию (ВТО).

Влияние процессов глобализации и современных тенденций в международной торговле обусловило существенную трансформацию национальных таможенных систем.

На примере ЕС обоснован принцип функционирования таможенной системы интеграционного объединения на основе унификации и гармонизации таможенных отношений в равноуровневом контексте в рамках согласованной таможенной политики, сформированной совместной таможенной администрации, единого унифицированного таможенного законодательства государств-членов в соответствии с международными нормами и стандартами.

В настоящее время многие национальные правила и процедуры таможенного оформления грузов построены на основе международных соглашений и таможенных конвенций, которые затрагивают практически все технологические процессы таможенного производства,

Определено растущее влияние процессов глобализации и современных тенденций в международной торговле на развитие таможенных систем, которое отражается на их существенной трансформации в направлении пересмотра таможенных технологий, совершенствования таможенного контроля, усиления правоохранительных функций, как на национальном, так и на наднациональном уровнях.

Поступления от таможенных платежей составляют свыше 50% доходной части госбюджета.

Это помогает экономическому развитию страны, содействует социальной и политической стабильности, повышает международный авторитет страны как полноправного участника мировой торговли. В связи с этим значительно возрастают требования не только к профессионализму и качеству работы таможенников на всех уровнях и направлениях их деятельности, но и к их «интеллектуальному багажу».

Знание английского языка является обязательным для работников таможенной службы.

Данный учебник поможет им не только овладеть английским языком, но и углубить свои знания в сфере профессиональных интересов.

## ТАМОЖНЯ: КАК ЭТО НАЧИНАЛОСЬ

Первый в мире таможенник был, безусловно, гуманным человеком. Вместо того, чтоб разграбить проходящий караван, он отобрал у него только часть товаров и разрешил двигаться дальше. Насмешки соседних бандитов над потерявшим кураж коллегой длились недолго – услышав о таком чуде, караваны, как нанятые, пошли только через его участок, и его доходы стали больше, чем у соседей, а риск нарваться на охрану меньше.

Так все и началось, причем достаточно давно. Камень в окрестностях древней Пальмиры, торгового города, в котором начальник рынка был одним из самых влиятельных заправил (совсем, как в фильме «Гараж» – где же прогресс?), уже зафиксировал и номенклатуру налогооблагаемых грузов, и даже тарифы – почем платить за ткани, почем за рабов, а почем за благовония. Так оно все и началось, и совершенно не ясно, когда кончится.

Первые таможенники еще мало отличались от своих предшественников – ну не более, чем рэкетиры от грабителя. Они работали еще в портах греческих городов-государств и назывались «эллименесты». Чуть позже их римских коллег стали называть «портиторы».

Работали они на арендных началах, и их обращение, судя по многочисленным литературным источникам, было, скажем так, далеким от дипломатического протокола. Багажу и даже жизни прибывающих в порт от их рук угрожала несомненная опасность. Что поделаться – за место плачено, и эти затраты они возмещали, как умели.

Но под началом великих правителей даже эти лихие ребята умудрялись служить росту благосостояния государства (а не только себя, любимого). За охрану надо платить, и если государство сильнее бандитов, выгоднее платить государству.

Афинский законодатель Солон предопределил расцвет Афин именно с помощью таможенных законов – запретил вывоз дефицитного в Греции и плохо там растущего хлеба и стал поощрять вывоз масла, оливок и вина, производство которых на склонах Олимпа было гораздо более эффективно. Его бы к нам в парламент...

Уже тогда выяснилось, что таможенные пошлины, хоть не хоть, с трудом остаются чисто внутренним делом государства. Во второй книге "Иудейской войны" Фейхтвангера" бывший вождь восставших иудеев, до восстания и после него – обычный помещик средней руки Иоанн Гисхальский неожиданно вмешивается в спор еврейских интеллектуалов о причинах внезапно возникшей вражды Яхве с Юпитером, и излагает свою версию, по которой если бы не разорительные римские таможенные пошлины на иудейское вино и оливковое масло, Яхве с Юпитером еще много лет души бы друг в друге не чаяли.

Интеллектуалы смешались и так ничего толкового и не возразили. А в наших краях эту процедуру еще при Володимере Святом почему-то считали истязанием и называли прохождение таможи совершенно тем же словом – мытарство. В украинском языке так и осталось – «мити», «митниця». Русский же язык обязан словом «таможня» татаро-монгольскому игу, «тамга» – в частности, и ордынский знак уплаты требуемого побора.

С распадом Римской империи и разделом Европы на мелкие независимые владения у таможенников, как нам особенно понятно, начался золотой век. Им мы обязаны многим – даже популярной поговоркой «что с воза упало, то пропало».

По тогдашним правовым нормам любой товар, упавший на землю, купец не имел права поднимать – он становился собственностью феодала, которому принадлежала эта земля. А если ломалась телега и ее ось касалась земли, по "праву дороги" собственностью феодала становился весь товар с этой телеги.

Милый родственничек «права дороги» – «береговое право» – отдавал феодалу весь груз выброшенного штормом на принадлежащий ему берег судна. В общем, вся интеграция средневековых государств шла под знаменем борьбы с этими «правами».



Поскольку не брать налогов так же невыгодно, как брать 100% налог (и там, и там доход нулевой), любой одолевший первый курс технического вуза с помощью теоремы Вейерштрасса докажет, что есть некий оптимальный уровень налогообложения, при котором доход государства максимален. Еще Джонатан Свифт, оказывается, после введения людоедских таможенных тарифов на вино и шелк предупреждал английских экономистов о своеобразной таблице умножения, в которой «дважды два вовсе не означает, что окажется обязательно четыре, вполне можно при этом получить единицу».

Правительство оказалось глухо к этим предупреждениям, а в результате его доходы резко упали, поскольку при повышении таможенных пошлин резко сокращается объем торговли. Чему же учит нас история? Разве что тому, что история ничему не учит...

Когда все малость устоялось, всплыли проблемы второстепенные, например, как создать всеобъемлющие таможенные тарифы, которые не допускали бы двойного толкования.

А то когда египтолог Гастон Масперо привез во Францию мумию некоего фараона, таможенник не нашел в своих справочниках размера пошлины на мумии и подобрал наиболее близкий, по его мнению, товар, взяв за мумию пошлину, как за сушеную рыбу. No comment...

Изобретательность французского коллеги великого живописца Анри де Руссо (он тоже был таможенником) не всегда достигалась его коллегами даже в соседних странах. Как-то раз французский физик Гей-Люссак выписал из Германии партию тонкостенных стеклянных трубок. Однако немецкая таможня за вывоз изделий из стекла наложила на посылку неподъемную пошлину. Выход нашел сам Александр Гумбольдт – запалял трубки и написал на посылке: «Осторожно! Немецкий воздух!». За воздух пошлины не берут, за упаковку – тем более.

Нехорошо, конечно, увертки какие-то... А что прикажете делать с бдительным американским таможенником, который, услышав фразу «Смотрите, вот Шаляпин, у него золотое горло!», погнал Федора Ивановича на рентген?

Это, конечно, курьезы. Но любой симптом ценен, если предупреждает о возможной болезни органа, особенно органа государственного. Простуду можно вылечить, неизлечим рак, при котором данная группа клеток начинает так быстро расти, что отбирает питание у всех прочих органов, пока не уморит их голодом. Может ли таможня быть таким органом?

Судите сами – перед первой мировой войной на русско-германской границе пограничники и таможенники беспрепятственно пропускали контрабандные анилиновые красители и цейссовскую оптику, которым в предвоенное время просто цены не было, на русскую территорию.

Почему? Да потому, что так они обходились дешевле, чем при официальных закупках. Что тут добавить? Разве то, что провести отмену пошлин на нужный всей стране до зарезу товар через Думу оказалось не легче, чем сейчас.

И вообще, воспаление таможни – обычно тревожный симптом. Помню, в детстве никак не мог понять рассказ Гашека о таможеннике, который брал пошлину... за перевоз продуктов из одной части Праги в другую. Чем это все кончилось и для России, и для Австро-Венгрии – известно. Так чему же нас учит история? Смотри выше – запрет вывоза товаров из ряда республик СССР покончил с самим СССР в течение года. Центральную власть, не обеспечивающую свободу торговли, нет никакого смысла кормить. Себе дороже.

Если налоговый инспектор выполняет свой долг внутри страны, как полиция, то его коллега-таможенник – скорее армия, ибо охраняет границы от нежелательных утечек извне и вовне. Грозное ли это оружие? Вспомним – после Трафальгара таможни были единственным оружием Наполеона в войне с Англией. Запретить всем покупать английские товары, и Англия пойдет по миру - чем плохая идея? Да тем, что пока хоть одна страна торгует с Англией, из нее английские товары все равно расползаются по всему миру. Так что сначала надо завоевать весь мир, а к чему ведет эта идея, мы уже не раз видели.

Костры из конфискованных английских товаров горели по всему побережью, но это только спровоцировало чудовищное взяточничество, которое было таким выгодным, что государство позавидовало и стало брать эти взятки само – продавало за большие деньги лицензии на покупку крамольного товара. Дальнейшее известно. Эта пушка стреляет плохо.

Современная таможня во многом устоялась и цивилизовалась, но даже на западную старуху бывает проруха. Скажем, изобретатель компьютера «Apple» Стив Возняк (кстати, по фамилии совершенно ясна его национальность, объясняющая заодно и то, почему эмблемой фирмы «Макинтош» стало надкусанное яблоко – «не з'їм, так понадкусю») как-то получил из Японии посылку, за которую таможенное управление США немедленно взяло его за шкурку «за попытку ввести в США контрабанду – сексуальное приспособление под названием "палка для удовольствий». Что же было в посылке? Ничего особенного, обыкновенный джойстик.

Так уж дословно переводится с английского название этого устройства, имеющего к сексу достаточно отдаленное отношение. А недавно в одном из римских аэропортов таможенники конфисковали новогоднюю посылку монаха Педже, пославшего ее из Малави в адрес Ордена Святой Моники, и возбудили уголовное дело о контрабанде запрещенных экологами предметов. Там были шахматы из слоновой кости. Нам бы их заботы – мы больше не родина слонов.

Таможня – покровительница искусств. Сразу отмечу, что речь не о ее функциях по запрету их нелегального вывоза. Не говорю же я ни слова о борьбе таможни с контрабандой наркотиков, хотя и там можно вспомнить массу интересного (например, как контрабандистка возила с собой кошку, чтоб естественным образом объяснить аномальную реакцию натасканной на наркотики собаки – кстати, посаженной для этой цели самими таможенниками «на иглу»). Это функции погранконтроля, а здесь речь сугубо о таможенных пошлинах.

Так вот, в Швейцарии, неподалеку от итальянской границы таможенники создали свой музей – конечно же, из конфискатов. Там собраны чемоданы, зонтики, обувь, игрушки и даже автомобиль. Не знаю, насколько он интересен, но польза есть.

Налоговых инспекторов никто не любит, но жениться на них не обязательно, а жить без них у страны не получается. Можем ли мы сказать то же самое о таможенниках? Сложный вопрос... С одной стороны, именно таможенники в течение 6 месяцев 1988 года добыли в Индии 3200 килограммов золота, что в два раза превосходит добычу шахтеров и золотоискателей. Но это больше говорит о том, что богатых залежей золота в Индии нет.

С другой стороны, на наших глазах целый ряд стран, причем не самых бедных и глупых, с наслаждением истребил таможенные службы на границах друг с другом, и что же – они, естественно, резко обеднели? Ан нетушки – такое как раз случилось с странами, настроившими кучу новых таможен! Чем бы это объяснить? Не припомнит ли кто-нибудь процветающую страну с аномально жестким таможенным законодательством? У меня не получается...

И в заключение – один любопытный факт. Профессия вроде нелюбимая, а в кинематографе увековечен целый ряд предельно симпатичных таможенников.

От очаровательного Фернанделя в замечательной комедии 50-х «Закон есть закон» до почти культовой фигуры Верещагина-Луспекаева с его так часто цитируемой ныне по всему СНГ фразой «Мне за державу обидно». То, что она останется в нашем сознании связанной с таможней – не менее символично, чем тот факт, что из массы учреждений, о приближении которых сигнализируют дорожные знаки, только о таможне нас предупреждает именно запрещающий знак. Так что если таможенный контроль вас раздражает – помните, что есть один хорошо знакомый способ избавления от него и мы все его помним: никуда никого не пущать. Этот способ не годится. Надо искать другие.

.....

# CHAPTER I.

## GENERAL CONCEPTIONS

.....

### INTRODUCTION

In law, custom can be described as the established patterns of behavior that can be objectively verified within a particular social setting. A claim can be carried out in defense of "what has always been done and accepted by law." Generally, customary law exists where: a certain legal practice is observed and the relevant actors consider it to be law

The modern codification of civil law developed out of the *customs*, or *coutumes* of the Middle Ages, expressions of law that developed in particular communities and slowly collected and later written down by local jurists. Such customs acquired the force of law when they became the undisputed rule by which certain entitlements (rights) or obligations were regulated between members of a community. The Custom of Paris – the customary law that developed within the city of Paris – is an example of custom law.

In international law, *customary law* refers to the *Law of Nations* or the legal norms that have developed through the customary exchanges between states over time, whether based on diplomacy or aggression. Essentially, legal obligations are believed to arise between states to carry out their affairs consistently with past accepted conduct.

These customs can also change based on the acceptance or rejection by states of particular acts. Some principles of customary law have achieved the force of peremptory norms, which cannot be violated or altered except by a norm of comparable strength. These norms are said to gain their strength from universal acceptance, such as the prohibitions against genocide and slavery.

Customary international law can be distinguished from treaty law, which consists of explicit agreements between nations to assume obligations. However, many treaties are attempts to codify pre-existing customary law.

#### **Customary Law within contemporary Legal Systems**

Customary law is a recognized, but inferior, source of law within jurisdictions of the civil law tradition inferior to both statutes and regulations. In addressing custom as a source of law within the civil law tradition, John Henry Merryman notes that, though the attention is given in scholarly works is great, its importance is "slight and decreasing". In Canada, customary aboriginal law has a constitutional foundation and for this reason has increasing influence. In the Scandinavian countries customary law continues to exist and has great influence. Customary law is also used in some Third World countries, such as in Africa, usually used alongside common or civil law. Custom is used in tort law to help determine negligence. Following or disregarding a custom is not determinative of negligence, but instead is an indication of possible best practices or alternatives to a particular action.

***Exercise 1. Analyze the information and render its contents shortly in English.***

***Exercise 2. Translate the notions in English.***

*Customs* – таможенное управление (государственный орган, отвечающий за сбор таможенных платежей и контролирующий соблюдение таможенного законодательства; таможня, таможенный пост (в аэропортах, морских портах и где проводится таможенный досмотр прибывших грузов и багажа пассажиров, производится таможенное оформление и взимаются таможенные платежи).

***Exercise 3. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.***



## CUSTOMS HOUSE

The house or office appointed by a government where the taxes or duties (if any) are collected upon the importation and exportation of commodities; where duties, bounties or drawbacks payable or receivable upon exportation or importation are paid or received, and where vessels are entered and cleared. In the UK there is usually a customhouse established at every port or harbour to which any considerable amount of shipping resorts, the officer in charge being called "collector of customs"; in the minor ports the officer is usually termed "superintendent of customs" or "principal coast officer."

Customs is an authority or agency in a country responsible for collecting and safeguarding customs duties and for controlling the flow of goods including animals, personal effects and hazardous items in and out of a country. Depending on local legislation and regulations, the import or export of some goods may be restricted or forbidden, and the customs agency enforces these rules.

The customs agency may be different from the immigration authority, which monitors persons who leave or enter the country, checking for appropriate documentation, apprehending people wanted by international search warrants, and impeding the entry of others deemed dangerous to the country.

Customs duties is the name given to taxes on the import and export of commodities.

They rank among the most ancient, as they continue to prevail as one of the most common modes, in all countries, of levying revenue for public purposes.

In an insular country like the UK customs duties came in process of time to be levied only or chiefly in the seaports, and thus applied only to the foreign commerce, where they may be brought under the control of fair and reasonable principles of taxation.

But this simplification of customs duties was only reached by degrees; and during a long period special customs were levied on goods passing between England and Scotland; and the trade of Ireland with Great Britain and with foreign countries was subjected to fiscal regulations which could not now stand in the light of public reason. The taxes levied, on warrant of some ancient grant or privilege, upon cattle or goods at a bridge or a ferry or other point of passage from one county or province to another, of which there are some lingering remains even in the UK, and those levied at the gates of cities on the produce of the immediate country – a not uncommon form of municipal taxation on the European continent – are all of the nature of customs dues.

It is from the universality that the English term "*customs*" appears to have been derived.

In economics, a duty is a kind of tax, often associated with customs, a payment due to the revenue of a state, levied by force of law. It is a tax on certain items purchased abroad. <sup>[1]</sup>Properly, a duty differs from a tax in being levied on specific commodities, financial transactions, estates, etc., and not on individuals; thus it is right to talk of import duties, excise duties, death or succession duties, etc., but not of income tax as being levied on a person in proportion to his income.



Customs duty is a kind of indirect tax which is realized on goods of international trade. In economic sense, it is also a kind of consumption tax. Duties levied by the government in relation to imported items are referred to as *import duty*. In the same vein, duties realized on export consignments are called *export duty*. *Tariff* which is actually a list of commodities along with the leviable rate (amount) of Customs duty is popularly understood as Customs duty.

In England, customs duties were traditionally part of the *customary revenue* of the king, and therefore did not need parliamentary consent to be levied, unlike excise duty, land tax, or other forms of taxes. Commercial goods not yet cleared through customs are held in a customs area, often called a bonded store, until processed. All authorized ports are recognized customs area.

**Exercise 1. Summarize the score of the information.**

**Exercise 2. Explain the new notions in English.**



## CALCULATION OF CUSTOMS DUTY

Calculation of Customs duty depends on the determination of what is called *assessable value* in case of items for which the duty is levied *ad valorem*. This is often the transaction value unless the Customs officers determine assessable value in accordance with Brussels definition. However, for certain items like petroleum and alcohol, Customs duty is realized at a *specific rate* applied to the volume of the import or export consignments.

### H. S. Code

For the purpose of assessment of Customs duty, products are given an identification code that has come to be known as the Harmonized System Code. This code has been evolved and assigned by the World Customs Organization based in Brussels.

H. S. Code may be from four to ten digits. Introduction of H. S. Code in 1990s has largely replaced what used to be known as SITC or Standard International Trade Classification, though SITC remains in use for statistical purposes. In drawing up the national tariff, the revenue departments often specify the rate of Customs duty with reference to the H. S. Code of the product. In some countries and customs unions, 6-digit HS codes are locally extended to 8 digits or 10 digits for further tariff discrimination: for example the European Union uses its 8-digit CN (Combined Nomenclature) and 10-digit TARIC codes.

### Customs Department

The national authority that is entrusted the task of realizing taxes on international trade is often referred to as Customs Department. Normally the Customs Department operates under a national law and is authorized to examine the cargo in order to ascertain actual description, specification volume or quantity, so that the assessable value and the rate of duty may be correctly determined and applied.

### Evasion of Customs duty

Evasion of Customs duties takes place mainly in two ways. In one, the trader under-declares the value so that the assessable value is lower than actual. In a similar vein, a trader can evade Customs duty by understatement of quantity or volume of the product of trade. Evasion of Customs duty may take place without or in collaboration of Customs officials. Evasion of customs duty does not necessarily constitute smuggling.

### Duty-free goods

"Duty-free" is the term that is often used to describe goods bought at ports and airports that do not attract the usual government taxes and customs duties. Some countries impose allowances in order to restrict the number of Duty-free items that one person can import into the country.

These restrictions often apply to tobacco, wine, spirits, eau de toilette, gifts and souvenirs.

Often foreign diplomats and UN officials are entitled to Duty-free goods. Duty-free goods are imported and stocked in what is called Bonded warehouse.

**Exercise 1. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**



**Exercise 2. Explain the notion "customs valuation".**

Most customs duties and value added tax (VAT) are expressed as a percentage of the value of goods being declared for importation. Thus, it is necessary to dispose of a standard set of rules for establishing the goods' value, which will then serve for calculating the customs duty.

The EU imports in excess of one trillion euro worth of goods (year 2016 estimate). It is vitally important that the value of such commerce is accurately measured, for the purposes of

- economic and commercial policy analysis;
- application of commercial policy measures;
- proper collection of import duties and taxes;
- import and export statistics.

These objectives are met using a single instrument – the rules on customs value.

The EU applies an internationally accepted concept of "*customs value*". The value of imported goods is one of the three "*elements of taxation*" that provides the basis for assessment of the customs debt, which is the technical term for the amount of duty that has to be paid, the other ones being the origin of the goods and the customs tariff.

**Exercise 3. Analyze the passage and explain the notion of "Red and Green Channels".**

Customs procedures for arriving passengers at many international airports, and some road crossings, are separated into Red and Green Channels. Passengers with goods to declare (carrying items above the permitted customs limits and/or carrying prohibited items) should go through the Red Channel. Passengers with nothing to declare (carrying goods within the customs limits only and not carrying prohibited items) can go through the Green Channel.

Passengers going through the Green Channel are only subject to spot checks and save time.

But, if a passenger going through the Green Channel is found to have goods above the customs limits on them or carrying prohibited items, they may be prosecuted for making a false declaration to customs, by virtue of having gone through the Green Channel.

Canada and the USA do not operate a red and green channel system. Airports within the EU also have a Blue Channel. As the EU is a customs union, travellers between EU countries do not have to pay customs duties. VAT and Excise duties may be applicable if the goods are subsequently sold, but these are collected when the goods are sold, not at the border.

Passengers arriving from other EU countries should go through the Blue Channel. Luggage tickets for checked in luggage within the EU are green-edged so they may be identified.

**Exercise 4. Make up sentences with the words and phrases from active vocabulary.**

Authority, immigration authority, agency, to operate, to pay customs duties, to collect tax, channel, luggage tickets, to check, passenger, to arrive (at, in), to go through, to prohibit, customs limits, to carry goods, items, to declare, to permit, arriving, excise duty, VAT duty, travellers, at the border, customs duty, tariff, tax import, export, customs control, customs border, customs bodies, customs institutions, to pay customs duties, at the border, to check, to be applicable, to operate, a customs union, a false declaration.

**Exercise 5. Answer the questions.**

1. What is customs like? 2. What is customs responsible for? 3. What is the import or export of some goods depended on? 4. What does enforce the rules of forbidding and restriction of the import or export of some goods? 5. What does the immigration authority do? 6. What is a customs duty like? 7. Did customs duties need parliamentary consent to be levied in England? 8. How are customs procedures for arriving passengers separated? 9. How are rules for red and green channels? 10. What countries don't operate a red and green channel system? 11. What Channel do airports within the EU have? 12. Why do not travellers between EU countries have to pay customs duties? 13. When may VAT and Excise duties be applicable? 14. Who should go through the Blue Channel?



**Exercise 6. Explain the problem on privatization of Customs.**

Customs is an important part of the government involved in one of the three basic functions of a government, namely, administration, maintenance of law, order and justice and collection of revenue.

However, in a bid to get Customs rid of corruption, many countries have partly privatized its Customs. This has occurred by way of engagement of Pre-shipment Inspection Agency who examines the cargo and verifies the declared value before importation is effected and the nation.

Customs is obliged to accept the report of the agency for the purpose of assessment of legible duties and taxes at the port of entry.

While engaging a reshipment inspection agency may appear justified in a country with an inexperienced or inadequate Customs establishment, the measure has not really been able to plug the loophole and protect revenue. It has been found that evasion of Customs duty escalated when pre-shipment agency took over. It has also been alleged that such involvement of such agencies has been causing delay in the shipment process. Privatization of Customs has been viewed as a fatal remedy.

**Exercise 7. Make up sentences with the words and phrases from active vocabulary.**

Government, to get rid of, corruption, legible duties, report, assessment, to plug, to protect revenue, loophole, reshipment inspection, to justify, duties, taxes, to escalate, to allege, involvement, to view, fatal remedy, in a bid to, to be privatized, cargo, to examine, to verify, to declare, importation, value, evasion of, to accept, report of, justified, measure, assessment of legible duties.

**Exercise 8. Make up some dialogues with the help of the sentences from the article.**

**Exercise 9. Translate the words and word-combinations into Russian.**

To strip; to strip smb. naked; to strip smb. of all civil rights; to strip to the waist for a physical examination; to strip down; to brush down; to call down; to chew out; to reprove; search; unreasonable search; right of search; unwarranted search and seizure; body search; intimate search; to search after; to search out; to search off; search aircraft; search and rescue craft; search and seizure; search eye; search for wanted file; search illegal ab initio; search of property; search of search; search routine; search through; search time; search zone; search warrant; searcher; searching; search-party; fruitless search; the search for truth; to conduct / make a search; right of search; careful (painstaking, thorough) search; Search me!

**Exercise 10. After reading the texts answer the question on a standard set of rules for establishing the goods' value.**





## CUSTOMS CONTROL

Every country has its own laws and regulations on export and import. First you go through the passport control. If your passport (visa) has expired in this case you cannot go through the passport control. Single visa does not provide entry into Ukraine, this visa must be renewed.

If a person is carrying about himself objects liable to confiscation by the customs, the officer may even search the person using the personal examination. But such examination can be made only with the permit of the Customs Officer Chief. A person who is found guilty of smuggling may be punished by a fine or taken to the court.

Smuggler articles are detained. The customs officer is entitled rummage every piece of the baggage if he has a reason. The personal examination is carried out in the presence of two witnesses and the list of all seized things must be made. The protocol of examination is to be signed by the officer in charge, by a witness and by the person accused.

The accused person has the right to appeal within 10 days to the court. The decision of the every country is to have different kinds of customs: Railway Customs, Sea Customs, Air Customs.

And every country has its own Customs regulations and Custom restrictions, which include the Prohibited Articles List. There are articles liable to duty and duty-free articles.

Railway Customs is located near Railway Station. Such customs are intended to ensure customs control over cargos and passengers arriving into our country from abroad by train.

These customs also clear goods imported from another countries, which are transported by trains. Sea Customs checks sea cargoes and passengers travelling by sea. Air Customs is also intended to control goods baggage importing to our country by airlines. Every one who enters a country has to go through the customs. "To go through the customs" means to have your luggage inspected by customs officials.

Customs collect government taxes on imports and exports. Since early times, countries have imposed duties to protect their own industries. So the traveler has to fill in a customs declaration form.

He has to declare or list certain items he is bringing into the country. He also has to open his luggage for inspection. Customs inspectors are trained to recognize the travellers who are carrying things into a country illegally and to prevent smuggling.

The unlawful bringing in or taking out of the country such articles as currency, bonds, precious metals, stones and antiques, explosives, drugs, weapons, firearms and ammunition is considered as smuggling or contraband. In some cases the above-mentioned articles carried in / out of the country are declared but the value and the number of such articles is stated false.

These actions are also considered illegal. A person who is found guilty of smuggling may be punished with fine or even taken to the court. The methods of smuggling are becoming more and more sophisticated, so the customs service has to develop more effective ways of detecting cases of contraband but there is no substitution for well-trained and experienced customs officers.

The Customs officers are entitled to rummage every piece of luggage and if they have a reason to believe that the person is carrying about himself objects liable to confiscation they may be even searched his personal belongings.

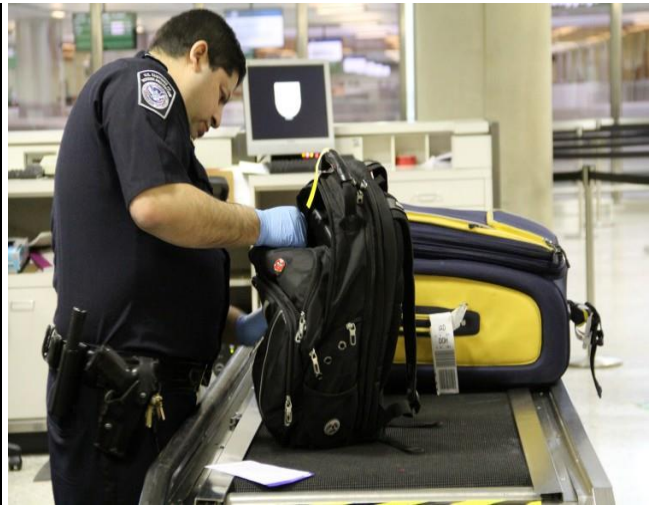
### ***Active vocabulary***

Passport control, single visa, objects, to be liable to confiscation, to renew, to find guilty, to be punish, personal examination, to detain, smuggling, to seize, to sign, the right to appeal, the court, to be trained, customs inspectors, smuggled goods, to declare, illegal, the value, false, to state, customs service, effective ways, to detain, experienced customs officer, to rummage every piece of luggage, personal belongings.

### ***Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.***

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. Has every country its own laws and regulations on export and import? 2. Does single visa provide entry into Ukraine? 3. May the officer search the person using the personal examination? 4. How can a person who is found guilty of smuggling be punished? 5. How is the personal examination carried out? 6. Are smuggler articles detained? 7. Within what time has the accused person the right to appeal to the court? 8. Where is Railway Customs located? What does it do? 9. What is Air Customs intended to control? 10. What do customs collect?



**Exercise 3. Make up the dialogue from the text and carry it on in class.**

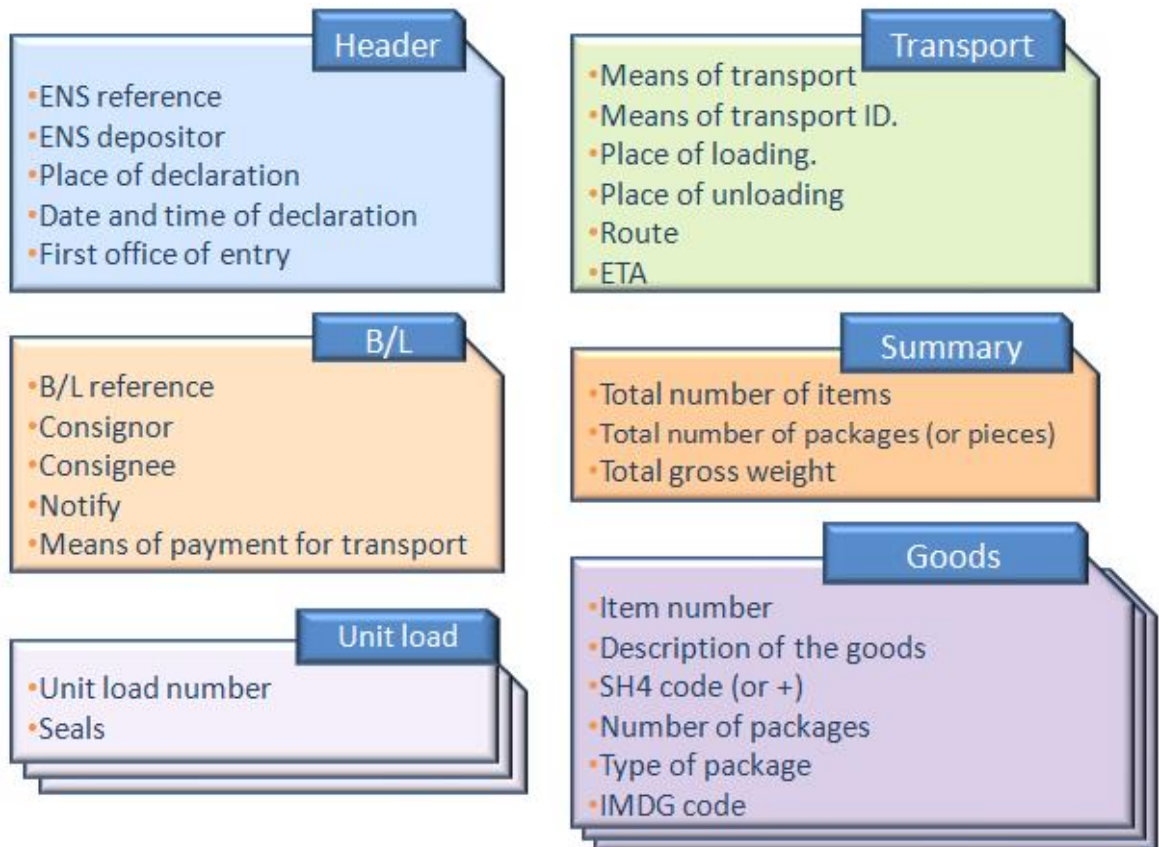
**Customs Area**

Southern edge (customs border) of Captain Cook wharf, Ports of Auckland, New Zealand. An electric fence is faintly visible behind the historical fence. A customs area is an area designated for storage of commercial goods that have not yet cleared customs. It is surrounded by a customs border.

Most international airports and harbours have designated customs areas, sometimes covering the whole facility and including extensive storage warehouses. While territorially part of the country of the customs authorities, goods within the customs area have not technically entered the country yet, and may later be subject to customs duties. T

he goods within the area are also subject to checks regarding their compliance with local rules (for example drug laws and biosecurity regulations), and thus may be impounded or turned back. For this reason, the customs areas are usually carefully controlled and fenced.

The fact that goods are technically still outside the country of the customs area also allows easy transshipment to a third country without the need for customs checks or duties. The term is also sometimes used to define an area (usually composed of several countries) which forms a customs union, or to describe the area at airports and ports where travellers are checked through customs.



Customs Area of Miami Airport

## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

- customs** – таможенные пошлины; таможенный пост *Syn. Customs office*  
customs administration – таможенное управление *Syn. agency*  
customs value – таможенная стоимость (ценность товаров, определенная таможей)  
Customs import value – импортная таможенная стоимость (стоимость импортируемого товара, оцененная таможенной службой на основании стоимости этого товара в стране-производителе, без учета стоимости перевозки)  
customs valuation – таможенная оценка  
customs harmonization – таможенная унификация (международные усилия по унификации таможенной деятельности)  
customs entry – таможенная декларация *Syn. customs document*  
Customs Cooperation Council Nomenclature – номенклатура Совета таможенного сотрудничества  
Customs Cooperation Council – Совет таможенного сотрудничества  
customs district (territory) – таможенный округ  
customs station – таможенная станция  
customs (bonded) warehouse – таможенный склад  
customs-bonded warehouse – таможенный склад для товаров в залоге  
customs regulations – таможенные инструкции  
customs warrant – разрешение на выпуск груза из таможни  
customs seal (stamp) – таможенная печать, таможенная пломба  
customs duties – таможенные пошлины  
customs evasion – уклонение от уплаты таможенных пошлин  
customs bond – таможенная закладная  
customs debenture – сертификат таможни для обратного получения импортной пошлины  
customs receipt – квитанция таможни об уплате пошлины  
customs clearance charge – уплата таможенной пошлины  
customs of the trade – торговый обычай  
customs tariff (schedule) – таможенный тариф  
customs of the port – портовые обычаи  
customs inspector (officer, official) – таможенный инспектор  
customs declaration (entry, document) – таможенная декларация  
customs application – таможенная заявка  
customs fee – таможенный сбор  
customs free – беспошлинный  
customs supervision – таможенный контроль *Syn. examination*  
Customs inspection – таможенный досмотр; таможенная инспекция  
customs survey – таможенный досмотр  
customs examination list – досмотровая роспись  
customs formalities — таможенные формальности  
customs revenue – доход таможни; таможенные денежные доходы  
customs schedule – амер. таможенный тариф  
customs surveyor – таможенный досмотрщик  
customs facilities – таможенные возможности; таможенные льготы  
customs formalities – таможенные формальности  
customs regulations – таможенные инструкции  
pricking (transshipment pricking) note – таможенный ордер на транзитный груз  
customs supervision – таможенный контроль

customs revenue – таможенные денежные поступления

choky (custom-house) – таможенное управление

customs law – таможенный закон

law of customs – таможенное право

tariff legislation – таможенное законодательство

customs court – таможенный суд

Customs broker – таможенный брокер; агент по таможенной очистке импортных грузов

Customs Union – таможенный союз

VAT (Value Added Tax) – налог на добавленную стоимость

excise duty – акцизный сбор (сбор или налог, которым облагаются товары)

**custom** – 1) а) обычай, традиция (в масштабах одного народа, одной культуры) *Syn. tradition, usage* б) привычка, обычай (конкретного человека) *Syn. habit*

a local [ancient] custom – местный [древний] обычай

2) таможенные пошлины, налог *Syn. toll, duty, impost, tribute*

3) клиентура, постоянные покупатели *Syn. clientele*

**toll** – а) пошлина, сбор, дань; право на сбор пошлины

to charge (exact, impose) a toll – наложить дань

плата (за перевозку груза по железной дороге)

to collect tolls (on a bridge, road) – собирать плату за проезд (по мосту, дороге)

bridge toll – мост с платным проездом

tunnel toll – плата за проезд по туннелю

turnpike toll – амер. подорожный сбор

A market toll is paid for the accommodation which a market provides. – Плата за место на рынке взимается за помещение, предоставляемое администрацией рынка.

**impost** – налог, подать, дань; пошлина, сбор

**imposition** – обложение (налогом, наложение (ограничений)

the imposition of taxes – обложение налогами

**tribute** – а) дань; подать *Syn. levy, homage* б) обязанность платить дань, положение должника

to pay a tribute to smb. – отдавать дань (уважения, восхищения)

**levy** – сбор, взимание (пошлин, налогов); обложение (налогом)

They imposed a 5% levy on alcohol. – Они наложили 5% налог на алкоголь.

to levy – облагать (налогом) (on/upon); вводить налоговые ставки

Taxes should be levied more on the rich than on the poor – Налоговое бремя должно лежать больше на богатых, а не на бедных. They are going to have to levy some new taxes. – Они собираются ввести еще несколько налогов.

to levy fine on – налагать штраф

**customary** – обычный, привычный

customary law – обычное право

**peremptory norms** – безоговорочные нормы

**surcharge** – завышенная цена; доплата; перерасход; завышенный расход; пеня, штраф

**precursor** – предтеча, предшественник

**truckload** – грузопместимость (автомобиля); минимальный груз по льготному тарифу

**trafficking** – торговля запрещенным товаром

human trafficking – торговля людьми

drugs trafficking – наркоторговля trafficking in drugs – контрабанда наркотиков

illegal (illicit) trafficking – незаконная торговля

**Exercise 1. Analyze the topical vocabulary notes and remember them.**



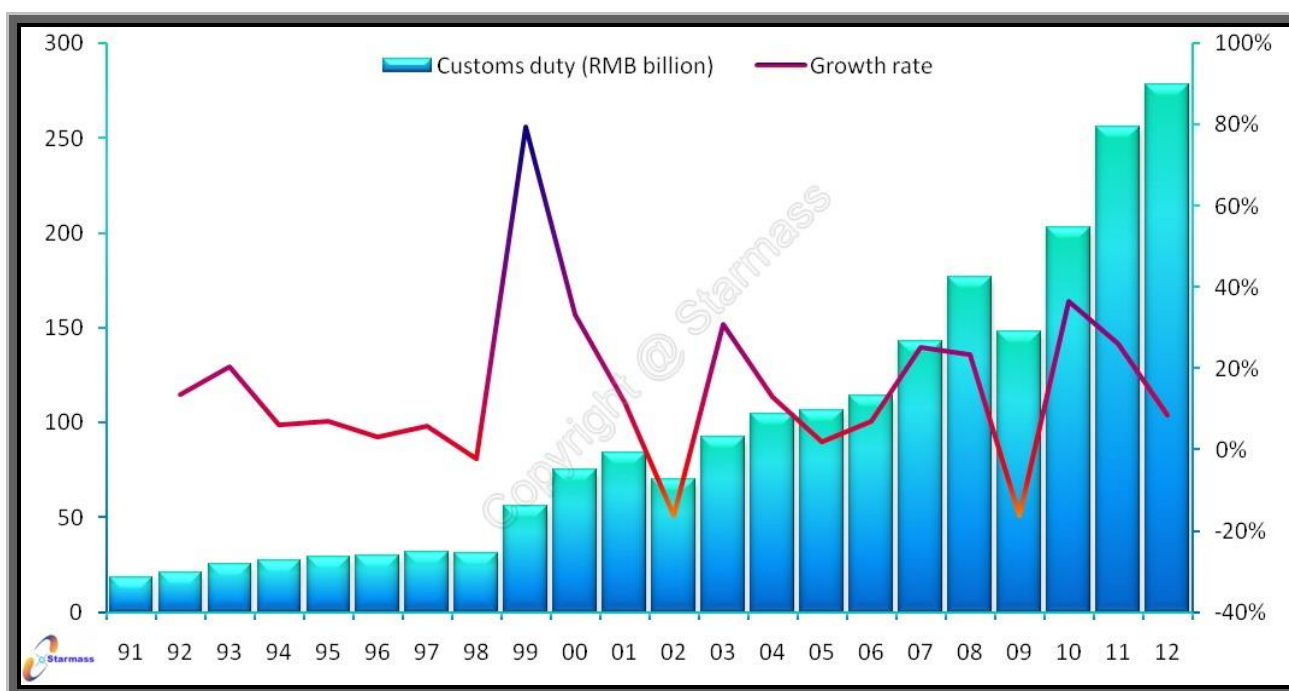
**Exercise 2. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class.**

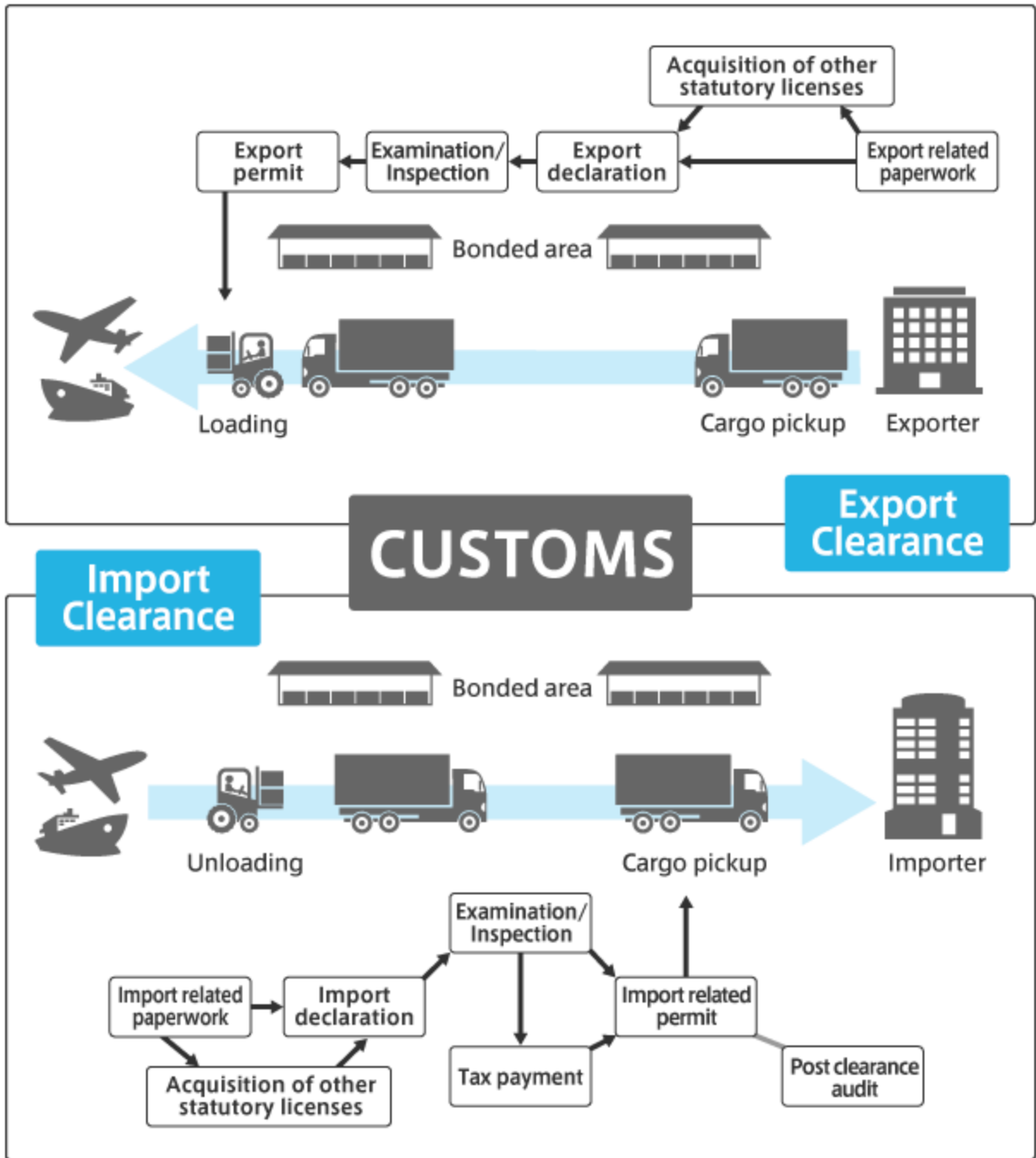
- Helen, the passport control officer will ask you for your passport. Produce it, please.
- Oh, yes. Here it is. I believe he will ask us where we are going.
- That's right. Besides he will be interested to know how long you are going to stay there.
- I am obliged to answer all questions. Is that so?
- No doubt. You will have to tell the passport control officer about the purpose of your visit.
- Anything else?
- Nothing else. They are usually very polite.
- I'll follow suit.
- The customs officer will check your luggage.
- What does it mean?
- He will ask you «Have you anything to declare?» and «Is there anything liable to duty?»

You must answer the questions.

- Well, I've got a bottle of whisky and a bottle of perfume. Are they liable to duty?
- I don't think so. I've got a box of chocolates.
- They say that if they are liqueur chocolates, they are liable to duty. If they are peppermint chocolates, they are not.
- Well, I don't know exactly whether it is so. I wonder whether tobacco is duty-free.
- I hardly think so. Anyhow as soon as we go through the customs, our journey will be coming to an end.
- I am happy about it. I am tired of the journey.
- Yes, I am looking forward to having a rest.
- I hope the Parkers will meet us at the airport.
- Don't you worry? I am sure they are waiting for us.
- John Parker will give you a bunch of roses.
- Are you joking?
- By no means, I am quite serious about it.

**Exercise 3. Analyze the chart.**





.....

## CHAPTER II.

# CUSTOMS ALL OVER THE WORLD

.....

### INTRODUCTION

#### **U.S. Customs House**

Visitors to the Alexander Hamilton U.S. Customs House today will find a vibrant and active place, often with the happy sounds of schoolchildren on class trips to the National Museum of the American Indian housed in the first three floors of the facility. But this grand building was not built as a museum, or a courthouse. What was its original purpose? The clues are there for the discerning visitor. In its heyday, the Custom House was a bustling place of activity as brokers and customs agents worked together building the wealth of this nation. Here's a history of the Custom House and the U.S. Customs Service that commanded such a grand location.

#### **The Early Years of Customs**

The U.S. Customs Service was established by the Fifth Act of the First Congress of the USA on July 31, 1789, and today, as U.S. Customs and Border Protection under the Department of Homeland Security, remains the nation's oldest federal agency.

The Founding Fathers and Members of Congress understood the urgent need for money to support the new federal government, which imposed tariffs on imports and the tonnage of ships, and created a well-regulated Customs Service to ensure due collection. With the creation of the Department of the Treasury on September 11, 1789, the Customs Service was placed under the direct supervision of President Washington's brilliant appointee as the first Treasury Secretary, Alexander Hamilton.

Within a year of the establishment of the federal Customs Service, \$2 mln. in revenue was collected to support the cash-starved new federal government.

By 1835, customs revenue had eradicated the huge national debt incurred during the American Revolution and before the Constitution was ratified. From the early years, Congress utilized the Treasury Department's established customs collection district organization to administer and enforce new federal laws and regulations.

The Collectors of Customs were tasked with setting up and managing new programs and functions within their districts. These programs and functions grew in importance and size, and eventually evolved into separate Treasury divisions, and then into separate agencies within that Department.

Today, several executive departments and independent agencies can trace their origins to the Customs Service. The U.S. Custom House sits on historic Bowling Green, the area around which New York was founded. Dutch settlers built a fort on the actual site to defend themselves against first, Native Americans and then the British. That was the commencement of the building of USA states.

In 1732, three enterprising New Yorkers leased the open area on the north side of the fort for one peppercorn per annum. They made a recreational bowling green on the site. After the American Revolution in 1790, the fort was replaced by an elegant brick building, the Government House. Although intended as a home for the President of the USA, it was never used, and when the capital moved to Philadelphia, the building became the residence of New York Governors Clinton and Jay. Between 1799 and 1815, the building served as the Custom House.

In 1813, New York City acquired the building and, in 1815, sold it to a developer who divided the site, tore down the Government House, and replaced it with seven elegant row houses that were occupied by some of the City's upper middle class.



By mid-century, when elegant residential neighborhoods had moved uptown, these buildings were converted into offices. Lower Broadway became known as "Steamship Row" due to the high concentration of shipping companies in the downtown area.

In 1860, customs revenue represented 90% of all federal funds deposited in the U.S. Treasury.

The Customs Service's collection and protection of the revenue continued to be the primary source of federal funding until the permanent establishment of the personal income tax in 1913.

Today, it continues to be the second largest source of revenue supporting the federal government. Customs revenue financed the nation's defense; exploration, such as the Lewis and Clark Expedition; land acquisitions, such as the Louisiana Territory Purchase; and major infrastructure projects, such as the Transcontinental Railroad.

The property was acquired by the federal government, and in 1899, the USA Department of the Treasury sponsored a competition for the design of a USA Custom House in New York that would be erected on that site. Cass Gilbert won the competition. As an architect from St. Paul, Minnesota, he saw the move to New York as a great opportunity. Later, he achieved fame by designing the Woolworth Building, which was the world's tallest building when it opened in 1913.

The U.S. Custom House stood vacant for almost the entire decade of the seventies.

In 1979 Senator Daniel Patrick Moynihan saved the building from demolition and sponsored a bill which appropriated \$29.4 mln. for its restoration. The U.S. General Services Administration held a competition for the building's restoration and reuse. After undergoing major renovation, restoration and modernization of its mechanics, the USA Bankruptcy Court for the Southern District of New York moved into the building on September 14, 1987 from the USA Courthouse at Foley Square.

On October 30, 1994, the George Gustav Heye Center, National Museum of the American Indian, Smithsonian Institution moved into the first and second floors. The original beauty of the building has been preserved and several aspects of the structure allude to the primary activity that took place within the building when it served as a Custom House, which was the collection of revenue and registration of international seas commerce in one of the world's greatest ports.

Sculptures of four of the continents, America, Europe, Africa, and Asia, by Daniel Chester French, flank the Bowling Green entrance and above the sixth story, there are sculptures representing the great commercial and seafaring powers of world history.

The interior of the building is dominated by the huge rotunda, which is still one of the largest public spaces in New York. This space provided a ceremonial area in which the daily bureaucratic activities of the Custom's Service took place. It now serves as a public space and is a gateway to the George Gustav Heye Center, National Museum of the American Indian, Smithsonian Institution.

In 1936, Reginald Marsh was commissioned to execute a series of murals in the rotunda as part of the Treasury Relief Art Project, which gave work to artists during the depression.

These murals have been restored to their original splendor. The larger ones display eight views of the activity at the port of New York. Eight smaller panels, depicting figures of famous explorers, are painted in grisaille to simulate statuary. The panels are considered to be one of the highlights of Marsh's career, and his work there ranks among the most significant mural cycles in New York.

The Custom House designed by Cass Gilbert was a Beaux-Arts palace for commerce. With the collaboration of artisans and artists, he left a considerable legacy of public art. It epitomizes the period in which it was designed. That was the tremendous growth of the new state. The U.S. Custom House, an exhibition developed by the New York Landmarks Conservancy, based on text by Deborah Nevins.

The turn of the last century was an era when institutions, government agencies, and corporations were expanding at a tremendous rate, when world trade increased, and great American fortunes were being made. It continues to serve as a reminder of the way architecture can respond in an inspired way to the urban environment.

Used with permission from the Palace of Commerce: From the onset, the Customs Service and the Custom House constituted a major federal presence and influence on New York.

Until the establishment of the classified civil service at the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, all Custom House employees were political appointees. The President appointed the four principal officers: Collector of Customs, Naval Officer, Surveyor of Customs, and Appraiser of Customs (their titles were derived from the British customs system.) These highest ranking positions in the Customs brought the appointees high prestige, great power and local authority, large incomes and enhanced social status.

**Exercise 1. Digest the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. What is the Alexander Hamilton U.S. Customs House like today? 2. What is housed in the first three floors of the facility? 3. What was its original purpose? 4. What was it many years ago? 5. How and when was The U.S. Customs Service established? 6. Who understood the urgent need for money to support the new federal government? 7. Where was the Customs Service placed? 8. How many money was collected within a year of the establishment of the federal Customs Service? 9. Where does the U.S. Custom House sit? 10. Who built a fort on the actual site to defend themselves against first, Native Americans? 11. When did three enterprising New Yorkers lease the open area on the north side of the fort for one peppercorn per annum? 12. What was its history like? 13. What organization held a competition for the building's restoration and reuse? 14. What is the interior like? 15. What were Custom House employees?

**Exercise 3. Translate the notion in your native language.**

Origin: late Middle English: originally in the singular, denoting a customary due paid to a ruler, later duty levied on goods on their way to market.

**Exercise 4. Remember the vocabulary.**

to pass [to get, go] through the customs – пройти таможеню [таможенный досмотр]

to clear (through) customs – пройти таможенную очистку [таможеню]

to pay customs duty on smth. – уплачивать таможенные пошлины за какой-л. товар

to clear one's luggage through customs – предъявлять багаж для таможенного досмотра

customs authorities – таможенные власти

customs barriers – таможенные барьеры

customs bond – таможенная закладная

customs border – таможенная граница

customs clearance – таможенная очистка; таможенный досмотр

**Exercise 5. Translate the notion into English..**

Customs Court – Таможенный суд, Суд по таможенным делам (создан в 1890 г. под первоначальным названием Совет общих оценщиков; название "Таможенный суд" получил в 1926 г.; рассматривал жалобы на решения работников таможни, касающиеся классификации товаров, определения ставок таможенных пошлин и применения таможенного законодательства; в 1980 г. преобразован в Суд по международной торговле).



## CUSTOMS AT BOWLING GREEN

Due to the ever pressing need for more space to accommodate Customs functions, brokers and the public, as well as the calamities such as fires or imminent collapse of the building, the Custom House in Manhattan changed addresses frequently. By the early 1890's, the Customs Service found the space in the Custom House at 55 Wall Street to be inadequate, with poor lighting and ventilation.

Congress authorized the construction of a new Custom House, and in 1899 the Office of the Supervising Architect of the Treasury held a national competition for the design of a new Custom House, which was to be built fronting Bowling Green – the same site as the Dutch Custom House (in what was then Fort Amsterdam), and the Government House, which served as the U.S. Custom House from 1789 to 1815.

20 architectural firms submitted competition entries, and the contract was awarded to Cass Gilbert (1859-1934), a well-regarded young New York architect. By 1900, New York was the premier port of entry in the U.S., producing 65 percent of the gross national customs revenue.

The new Custom House would have to reflect the presence of the federal government and the importance of the U.S. Customs Service as the nation's most important port of entry. With the planned construction of the World Trade Center underway, the Customs Service was under political pressure to relocate there. The incentive was the consolidation of all Customs port activities into one building, which would be designed to meet the modern needs of the agency. Customs moved to the World Trade Center in August of 1973. For all the new Custom House's amenities and conveniences, many employees continue to hold a deep attachment to the old Custom House at Bowling Green.

The 21<sup>st</sup> Century has brought many changes and a new identity to the Customs Service. The devastating events of September 11, 2001, resulted in the destruction of the Custom House at 6 World Trade Center, and Customs people and offices being scattered throughout Manhattan, JFK Airport, and Newark. The establishment of the Department of Homeland

Security in November of 2002 precipitated a massive reorganization of federal law enforcement agencies. With the creation of U.S. Customs and Border Protection on March 1, 2003, the U.S. Customs Service was joined with the inspectional functions of the former U.S. Immigration and Naturalization Service, the U.S. Border Patrol in its entirety, and the Plant Protection and Quarantine programs from the Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) in the Department of Agriculture. Although the Customs Service has changed and evolved since its creation in 1789.

It is that historic agency that gave rise to a particular type of federal building known as the "Custom House".





## U.S. CUSTOMS SERVICE

Responding to the urgent need for revenue following the American Revolutionary War, the First USA Congress passed and President George Washington signed the Tariff Act of July 4, 1789, which authorized the collection of duties on imported goods. Four weeks later, on July 31, the fifth act of Congress established the USA Customs Service and its ports of entry. For nearly 125 years, the U.S. Customs Service was the primary source of funds for the entire government, and paid for the nation's early growth and infrastructure. Purchases include the Louisiana and Oregon territories; Florida and Alaska; funding the National Road and the Transcontinental Railroad; building many of the USA's lighthouses; the U.S. Military and Naval academies, and Washington, D.C.

### **Immigration & Naturalization Service**

Shortly after the American Civil War, some states started to pass their own immigration laws, which prompted the U.S. Supreme Court to rule in 1875 that immigration was a federal responsibility. The Immigration Act of 1891 established an Office of the Superintendent of Immigration within the USA Department of the Treasury. This office was responsible for admitting, rejecting, and processing all immigrants seeking admission to the USA and for implementing national immigration policy.

"Immigrant inspectors", as they were called then, were stationed at major U.S. ports of entry collecting manifests of arriving passengers. A "head tax" of fifty cents was collected on each immigrant.

In the early 1900s Congress's primary interest in immigration was to protect American workers and wages – the reason it had become a federal concern in the first place. This made immigration more a matter of commerce than revenue.

In 1903, Congress transferred the Bureau of Immigration to the newly created Department of Commerce and Labor. After World War I, Congress attempted to stem the flow of immigrants, still mainly coming from Europe by passing laws in 1921 and 1924 limiting the number of newcomers by assigning a quota to each nationality based upon its representation in previous U.S. census figures.

Each year, the U.S. State Department issued a limited number of visas; only those immigrants who had obtained them and could present valid visas were permitted entry.

President Franklin D. Roosevelt moved the Immigration and Naturalization Service from the Department of Labor to the Department of Justice in 1940.

### **Reorganization (2003 to present)**

CBP became an official agency of the USA Department of Homeland Security on March 1, 2003, combining employees from the USA Department of Agriculture, the USA Immigration and Naturalization Service (specifically, immigration inspectors and the USA Border Patrol), and the USA Customs Service. CBP officers are covered under special law enforcement retirement. All candidates must be referred for selection for this position before reaching their 37<sup>th</sup> birthday.

***Exercise 1. Render the contents of the message shortly in English.***



**Exercise 2. Restore the logical order of the data after reading the message.**

No	Events	Data
1.	U.S. Customs and Border Protection was founded _____	in 1835.
2.	Customs revenue had eradicated the huge national debt _____	by 1789.
3.	New Yorkers made a recreational bowling green on the site _____	in 1732.
4.	The fort was replaced by the Government House _____	in 1813.
5.	The building served as the Custom House _____	1789-1815
6.	New York City acquired the building _____	in 1790.
7.	Customs revenue represented 90% of all federal funds _____	in 1913.
8.	The personal income tax was permanent established _____	in 1860.
9.	D. P. Moynihan saved the building from demolition _____	in 1789.
10.	Senator sponsored a bill which appropriated _____ for its restoration	\$29.4 mln.
11.	The Customs Service found the space in the Custom House _____	by 1890's.
12.	The Government House served as the U.S. Custom House _____	1799-1815.
13.	New York was the premier port of entry in the U.S. _____	by 1890.







Old Brick Customs House

## U.S. CUSTOMS & BORDER PROTECTION



Logo of the U.S. Customs and Border Protection.

Agency overview	
Formed	1, 2003
Preceding agencies	Some functions of the U. S. Department of Agriculture Immigration inspectors and the U. S. Border Patrol Functions of the USA Customs Service
Employees	63,560+ (2014)
Annual budget	\$12.90 bn (2014)
Legal personality	Governmental: Government agency
Organizational structure	
Federal agency	
General nature	Federal law enforcement Civilian agency
Operational structure	
Headquarters	Reagan Building Washington, D.C.
Federal Law Enforcement Sworn Officers	45,741
Agency executives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R. Gil Kerlikowske, Commissioner</li> <li>• Kevin K. McAleenan, Acting Deputy Commissioner</li> <li>• Dr. Kimberly O'Connor, Chief of Staff</li> </ul>
Parent agency	
	U.S. Department of Homeland Security

U.S. Customs and Border Protection (CBP) is the largest federal law enforcement agency of the USA Department of Homeland Security charged with regulating and facilitating international trade, collecting import duties, and enforcing U.S. regulations, including trade, customs, and immigration.

CBP is the largest law enforcement agency in the USA. CBP has a workforce of over 56,000 employees, including officers, canine enforcement officers, Border Patrol agents, aircraft pilots, trade specialists, agriculture specialists, and mission support staff.

It has a workforce of more than 45,600 sworn federal agents and officers. It has its headquarters in Washington, D.C. CBP is responsible for apprehending individuals attempting to enter the USA illegally, stemming the flow of illegal drugs and other contraband, protecting the USA agricultural and economic interests from harmful pests and diseases. It protects American businesses from theft of their intellectual property.

- Over 21,180 CBP Officers inspect and examine passengers and cargo at over 300 ports of entry.
- Over 2,200 CBP Agriculture Specialists work to curtail the spread of harmful pests and plant and animal diseases that harm America's farms and food supply or cause bio- and agro-terrorism.
- Over 21,370 Border Patrol Agents protect and patrol 1,900 miles (3,100 km) of border with Mexico and 5,000 miles (8,000 km) of border with Canada.
- Nearly 1,050 Air and Marine Interdiction Agents prevent people, weapons, narcotics, and conveyances from illegal entry by air and water.
- Nearly 2,500 employees in CBP revenue positions collect over \$30 bn annually in entry duties and taxes through the enforcement of trade and tariff laws.

These collections provide the second largest revenue for the U.S. Government. In addition, these employees fulfill the agency's trade mission by appraising and classifying imported merchandise.

These employees serve in positions: import specialist, auditor, international trade specialist, textile analyst.

- The CBP Canine Enforcement Program conducts the largest number of working dogs of any U.S. federal law enforcement agency. K-9 teams are assigned to 73 commercial ports and 74 Border Patrol stations throughout the nation. There are 317 officially designated ports of entry and an additional 14 pre-clearance locations in Canada, Ireland and the Caribbean. CBP is also in charge of the Container Security Initiative, which identifies and inspects foreign cargo in its mother country before it is to be imported into the USA. The four major "offices" operating under CBP are:

The Office of Field Operations (OFO).

The Office of Border Patrol (USA Border Patrol).

The Office of CBP Air & Marine.

The Office of Intelligence and Operations Coordination.

CBP assess all passengers flying into the U.S. for terrorist risk via Joint Terrorism Task Force and systems such as Advance Passenger Information System (APIS), USA Visitor and Immigrant Status Indication Technology US-VISIT, and the Student and Exchange Visitor System SEVIS. CBP also works with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration to screen high-risk imported food shipments in order to prevent bio-terrorism / agro-terrorism. Through the Container Security Initiative, CBP works jointly with host nation counterparts to identify and screen containers that pose a risk at the foreign port of departure before they are loaded on board vessels bound for the U.S.

CSI is implemented in 20 of the largest ports in terms of container shipments to the U.S., and at a total of 58 ports worldwide. The Secure Electronic Network for Travelers Rapid Inspection program allows pre-screened, low-risk travelers from Mexico to be processed through dedicated lanes. NEXUS is a similar program on the country's northern border with Canada. Along both borders, CBP has implemented the Free and Secure Trade, which utilizes transponder technology and pre-arrival shipment information to process participating trucks as they arrive at the border. An agreement with Canada allows CBP to target, screen, and examine rail shipments headed to the U.S.

CBP has the authority to search outbound and inbound shipments, and uses targeting to carry out its mission in this area. In conjunction with the Department of State and the Bureau of the Census, CBP has put in place regulations that require submission of electronic export information on U.S. Munitions List and for technology for the Commerce Control List. CBP uses advance information from the Automated Targeting System and the Automated Export System to identify cargo that may pose a threat. CBP works with the Departments of State and Defense to improve procedures on exported shipments of foreign military sales commodities. Along both borders, CBP has implemented the Free and Secure Trade, which utilizes transponder technology and pre-arrival shipment information to process participating trucks as they arrive at the border. An agreement with Canada allows CBP to target, screen, and examine rail shipments headed to the U.S.





### Structure

- Commissioner
  - Deputy Commissioner

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Office of Air and Marine</li> <li>• Office of Border Patrol</li> <li>• Office of Field Operations</li> <li>• Intelligence and Operations Coordination</li> <li>• Technology Innovation and Acquisitions</li> <li>• International Affairs</li> <li>• International Trade</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Human Resources Management</li> <li>• Information and Technology</li> <li>• Administration</li> <li>• Public Affairs</li> <li>• Internal Affairs</li> <li>• Congressional Affairs</li> </ul> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

CBP has the authority to search outbound and inbound shipments, and uses targeting to carry out its mission in this area. Under Section 596 of the Tariff Act, CBP is required to seize and forfeit all merchandise that is stolen, smuggled, or clandestinely imported or introduced. CBP is also required to seize and forfeit controlled substances, certain contraband articles, and plastic explosives that do not contain a detection agent. In conjunction with the Department of State and the Bureau of the Census, CBP has put in place regulations that require submission of electronic export information on U.S. Munitions List and for technology for the Commerce Control List. CBP uses advance information from the Automated Targeting System and the Automated Export System to identify cargo that may pose a threat. CBP also works with the Departments of State and Defense to improve procedures on exported shipments of foreign military sales commodities. Merchandise may also be seized and forfeited if:

- Its importation is restricted or prohibited because of a law relating to health, safety or conservation.
- The merchandise is lacking a federal license required for the importation.
- The merchandise or packaging is in violation of copyright, trademark, trade name, or trade dress protections.
- The merchandise is intentionally or repetitively marked in violation of country of origin marking requirements.
- The imported merchandise is subject to quantitative restrictions requiring a visa or similar document from a foreign government, and the document presented with the entry is counterfeit.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

**Exercise 2. Put some questions to the score of the information.**







## PENALTY PROVISION

### Civil Penalties

Section 592 of the Tariff Act of 1930 is the basic and most widely used customs penalty provision for the importation of goods. It prescribes monetary penalties against any person who imports, attempts to import, or aids or procures the importation of merchandise by means of false or fraudulent documents, statements, omissions or practices, concerning any material fact. Penalties may be applied even in situations where there is no loss of revenue. Section 592 infractions are divided into three categories of culpability, each giving rise to a different maximum penalty:

- *Fraud*, an act or omission done intentionally to defraud the USA Department of Revenue.

The maximum civil penalty for a violation is the domestic value of the merchandise in the entry or entries concerned.

- *Gross negligence*, an act or omission with actual knowledge of, or wanton disregard for, the relevant facts and a disregard of section 592 obligations. The maximum civil penalty is the lesser of the domestic value of the merchandise or four times the loss of revenue (actual or potential). If the infraction does not affect revenue, the maximum penalty is 40% of the dutiable value of the good.

- *Negligence*, involving a failure to exercise due care in ascertaining the material facts or in ascertaining the obligations under section 592. The maximum civil penalties are the same for gross negligence, except the lesser of *twice* the domestic value of the merchandise or twice the loss of revenue is used. The penalty cannot exceed 20% of the dutiable value.

The Customs Modernization Act amended section 592 to apply existing penalties for false information to information transmitted electronically and allows Customs to recover unpaid taxes and fees resulting from 592 violations. It also introduced the requirement that importers use "reasonable care" in making entry and providing the initial classification and appraisal, establishing a "shared responsibility" between Customs and importers, thus allowing Customs to rely on the accuracy of the information submitted and streamline entry procedures.

### Criminal Penalties

In addition to the civil penalties, a criminal fraud statute provides for sanctions to those presenting false information to customs officers. Section 542 provides a maximum of 2 years imprisonment, or a \$5,000 fine, or both, for each violation involving an importation or attempted importation.

In March 2003, the Customs Service was dissolved to form part of the U.S. Department of Homeland Security as the Bureau of Customs and Border Protection and the Immigration and Customs Enforcement Division. One of the oldest bureaus of the federal government, the USA Customs Service was founded in the first year of George Washington's presidency, and for decades the tariffs it collected funded virtually all government activities.

Today, Customs is a vast border security force that yearly interdicts hundreds of mln.s of dollars' worth of illegal goods. Following the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001, Customs became a significant component in homeland security operations, and in March, 2003, it moved from the Department of the Treasury to the newly created Department of Homeland Security (DHS).

Among the post-September, 2001, measures it has adopted is a port security program that requires shippers to provide advance notification of cargo arriving on American shores.



## BACKGROUND OF AMERICAN CUSTOMS

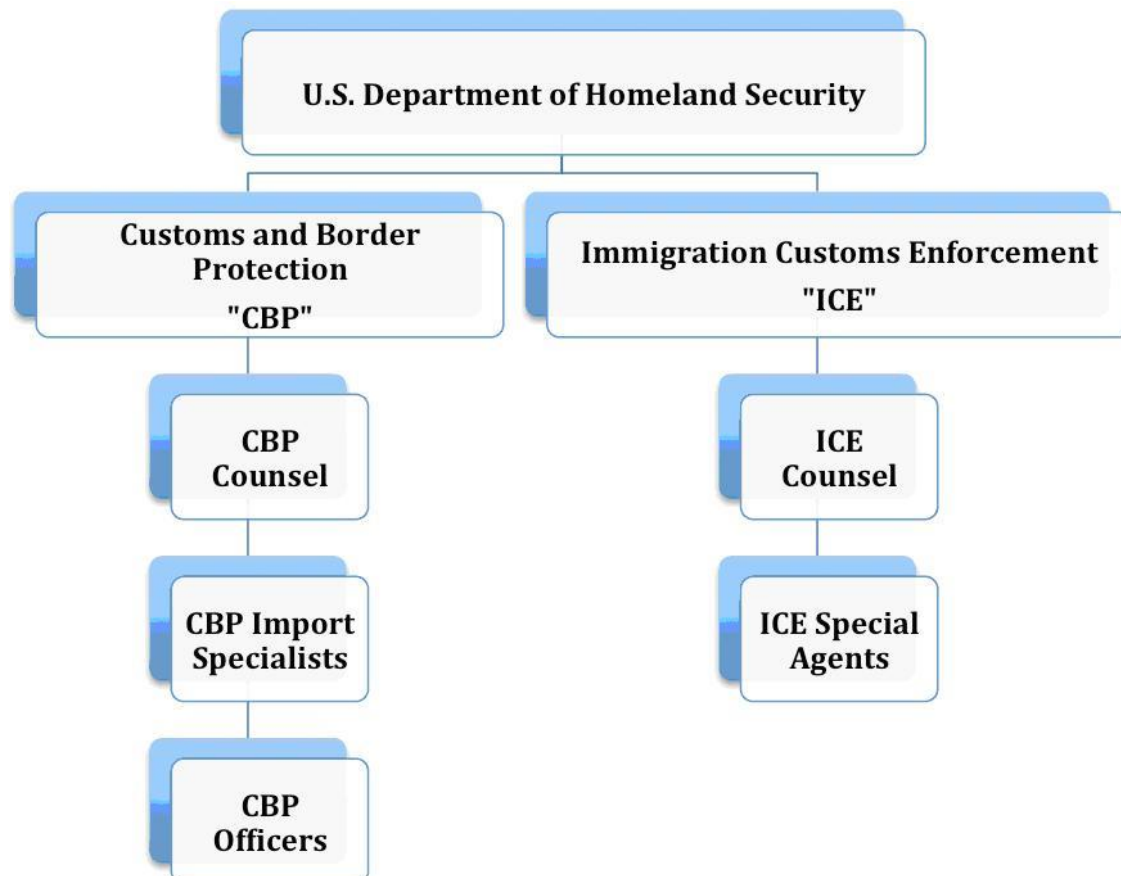
Responding to an urgent need for revenue following the American Revolutionary War, the First USA Congress passed, and President George Washington, signed the Tariff Act of July 4, 1789, which authorized the collection of duties on imported goods. Four weeks later, on July 31, the fifth act of Congress established the USA Customs Service and its ports of entry.

For nearly 125 years, the U.S. Customs Service was the primary source of governmental funds, which paid for the nation's early growth and infrastructure. Purchases include the Louisiana and Oregon territories; Florida, Alaska, and Washington, D.C.; funding the National Road and the Transcontinental Railroad; building many of the USA' lighthouses; and the U.S. Military and Naval academies.

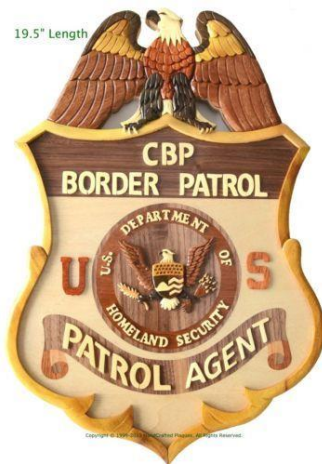
Soon after Washington took office as the nation's first president, Congress passed the Tariff Act, which Washington signed on July 4, 1789. Four weeks later, on July 31 – in only the fifth act of congressional history – Customs was established to protect American ports of entry. Newspapers of the day called the Tariff Act the "second Declaration of Independence", an appellation based on something more than the date on which the act was signed: for the next 125 years, the revenue provided by import tariffs funded nearly the entire federal government.

Over the course of its long existence, Customs has administered programs that eventually passed to other departments. These included the supervision of revenue cutters, ships that patrolled the coastline – a service that ultimately became the U.S. Guard.

Additionally, Customs collected hospital dues to assist sick and disabled seamen, a program now handled by the Public Health Service; collected import and export statistics before the Bureau of the Census was founded to undertake this responsibility; established standard weights and measures prior to the founding of the now-defunct the National Institute of Standards and Technology); and administered military pensions many decades before the founding of the Department of Veterans Affairs.







## **IMMIGRATION & NATURALIZATION SERVICE**

Shortly after the American Civil War, some states started to pass their own immigration laws, which prompted the U.S. Supreme Court to rule in *Chy Lung v. Freeman* in 1875 that immigration was a federal responsibility. The Immigration Act of 1891 established an Office of the Superintendent of Immigration within the U. S. Department of the Treasury.

This office was responsible for admitting, rejecting, and processing all immigrants seeking admission to the USA and for implementing national immigration policy. "Immigrant inspectors", as they were then called, were stationed at major U.S. ports of entry collecting manifests of arriving passengers. A "head tax" of fifty cents was collected on each immigrant.

In the early 20th century Congress's primary interest in immigration was protecting American workers and wages – the reason it had become a federal concern in the first place.

This made immigration more a matter of commerce than revenue; hence, in 1903, Congress transferred the Bureau of Immigration to the newly created Department of Commerce and Labor.

After World War I, Congress attempted to stem the flow of immigrants, still mainly coming from Europe, by passing laws in 1921 & 1924 limiting the number of newcomers by assigning a quota to each nationality based upon its representation in previous U.S. census figures. Each year, the U.S. State Department issued a limited number of visas; only those immigrants who had obtained them and could present valid visas were permitted entry. President Franklin D. Roosevelt moved the Immigration and Naturalization Service from the Department of Labour to the Department of Justice in 1940.

### **Reorganization (2003 to present)**

CBP became an official agency of the USA Department of Homeland Security on March 1, 2003, combining employees from the Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (specifically the Plant Protection Quarantine inspectors), the USA Immigration and Naturalization Service (immigration inspectors and the USA Border Patrol), and the USA Customs Service.

This transformation was led by former Commissioner Robert C. Bonner.

W. Ralph Basham was nominated to the post of Commissioner by President George W. Bush on January 30, 2006. Basham had 28 years of experience as a law enforcement manager, including serving as the head of the Secret Service and the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center.

### **Marine Interdiction Agents**

OAM is the world's largest civilian aviation and maritime law enforcement organization. Its mission is to protect the American people and nation's critical infrastructure through the coordinated use of air and marine assets to detect, interdict and prevent acts of terrorism and the unlawful movement of people, illegal drugs, and other contraband toward or across the borders of the USA.

Air and Marine Interdiction Agents are endowed with the authority to enforce Title 8 (Aliens and Nationality) and Title 19 (Customs) of the USA Code in addition to the general law enforcement powers bestowed upon federal law enforcement agents.

This specialized law enforcement capability allows OAM to make significant contributions to the efforts of the Department of Homeland Security, as well as to those of other federal, state, local, and tribal agencies. OAM is uniquely positioned to provide direct air and maritime support to multiple agencies and to ensure the success of border protection and law enforcement operations between ports of entry, within the maritime domain and within the nation's interior.

To accomplish its mission, OAM employs over 1200 Federal Agents at 70 locations, operating more than 260 aircraft of 26 different types, and approximately 300 maritime vessels.

Candidates must undergo a single scope background investigation before being appointed.

In addition, the candidates must undergo drug, medical examinations, a video based interview during the pre-appointment phase and a polygraph examination.



National Public Radio's Morning Edition reported that CBP radiation-detection equipment at ports is better at detecting kitty litter than dangerous weapons, and that U.S. borders are so porous that congressional investigators carrying simulated nuclear materials have walked across unchallenged. During a federal court case for unlawful removal, CBP and USA Department of Justice attorneys cited that CBP employees do not have protection from retaliation by CBP managers under the First Amendment of the Constitution. CBP works closely with its sister agency, U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement, which is responsible for long-term investigations of criminal and terrorist organizations seeking to penetrate American border security. These cases include the smuggling of narcotics, goods, weapons, and humans into the USA.

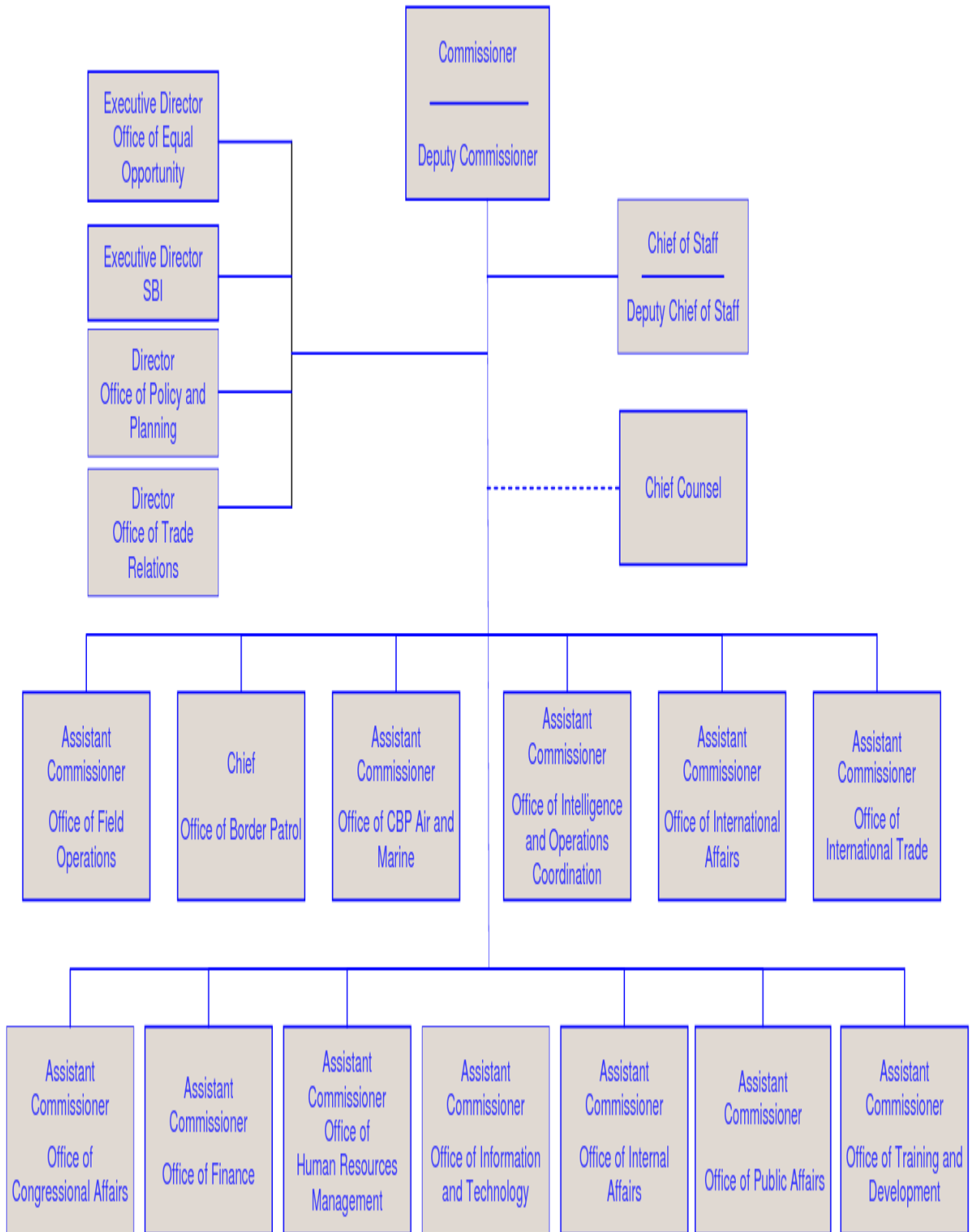
**Exercise 1. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. When did some states start to pass their own immigration laws? 2. What Act established an Office of the Superintendent of Immigration within the U. S. Department of the Treasury? 3. What was this office responsible for? 4. Where were Immigrant inspectors stationed? 5. What was Congress's primary interest in immigration in the early 20th century? 6. What made immigration more a matter of commerce than revenue? 7. When did Congress attempt to stem the flow of immigrants? 8. What does U.S. State Department issue each year? 9. Who moved the Immigration and Naturalization Service from the Department of Labour to the Department of Justice in 1940? 10. When did CBP become an official agency of the USA Department of Homeland Security? 11. What services did it combine? 12. Who was nominated to the post of Commissioner? 13. How long experience as a law enforcement manager did he have? 14. What allows OAM to make significant contributions to the efforts of the Department of Homeland Security? 15. What OAM is the world's largest civilian aviation and maritime law enforcement organization?

**Exercise 3. Digest the information in English.**





CBP organization chart



## PERSONNEL

CBP officers are federal law enforcement officers empowered to exercise the authority and perform the duties provided by law and Department of Homeland Security regulations, including making arrests, conducting searches, making seizures, bearing firearms, and serving any order or warrant.

CBP officers defend against terrorist intrusion by identifying high risk individuals who are attempting to enter into the USA; stop criminal activities – such as drug smuggling, child pornography (including on computers, cell phones, and other electronic media), weapons trafficking, and money laundering – by inspecting vehicles and trucks; and prevent the undocumented entry of individuals, the smuggling of prohibited goods, and other customs and immigration violations.

CBP Canine Enforcement Program within the OFO conducts the largest number of working dogs of any U.S. federal law enforcement agency. The teams are assigned to 73 commercial ports and 74 Border Patrol stations throughout the nation. CBP seizures and criminal cases are investigated by the Federal Bureau of Investigations, U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement. They are trained at the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, in Glynco, Georgia for 16 weeks.

Officers who additionally serve on CBP's Special Response Team are trained for 6 weeks with the U.S. Border Patrol Tactical Unit in Artesia, New Mexico. All CBP personnel must undergo a background investigation before being appointed. Officers are armed with Heckler & Koch P2000 pistols, expandable batons, X26 Tasers and oleoresin capsicum pepper spray.

In accordance with Public Law 110-161, CBP officers are covered under special law enforcement retirement, and all candidates must be referred for selection for this position before reaching their 37th birthday. Officer candidates attend the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, in Glynco, Georgia for 20 weeks of paid training. Candidate training consists of basic law enforcement skills, including

- Anti-Terrorism.
- Detection of Contraband.
- Interviewing.
- Cross-cultural Communications.
- Firearms Handling and Qualification.
- Immigration and Naturalization Laws.
- U.S. Customs Export & Import laws.
- Defensive Tactics & Driving.
- Crime Investigation Site.
- Arrest Techniques.
- Baton Techniques.
- Examination of Cargo.
- Bags and Merchandise.
- Border Search Exception.
- Entry and Control Procedures.
- Passenger Processing.
- Officer Safety and Survival.

Those candidates selected for duty locations requiring Spanish may receive an additional 6 weeks of Spanish Language training. Officers who additionally serve on CBP's Special Response Team are trained for an additional six weeks with the U.S. Border Patrol Tactical Unit in Artesia, New Mexico. CBP Officers may begin their careers in any region for which they apply.

The duty region is selected during the application phase, and generally cannot be changed once selected. Proficiency in Spanish is a duty requirement only for those stationed along southern border regions, although it is not a requirement before being hired. CBP Officers stationed along southern border regions will undergo Spanish language training before coming on duty.

The CBP Officer position is categorized as a "critical-sensitive" position in law enforcement. For this reason, officer candidates must undergo a single scope background investigation (SSBI) before being appointed. In addition, officer candidates must undergo drug and medical examination, polygraph examination, two physical fitness tests, video based test, and structured interview during the pre-appointment phase.

### **CBP Officers (OFO)**

CBP officers are federal law enforcement officers in the largest CBP Office of Field Operations empowered to exercise the authority and perform the duties provided by law and Department of Homeland Security regulations, including making arrests, conducting searches, making seizures, bearing firearms, and serving any order or warrant.

### **Agricultural Specialists**

CBP agriculture specialists are stationed at international ports of entry located at airports, seaports, and land borders throughout the U.S. and along the Canadian and Mexican borders.

They are uniformed federal agents with the authority to conduct random inspections of luggage or items entering the country and the power to seize prohibited or contaminated items. Agriculture specialists are trained at the Professional Development Center in Frederick, Maryland for 12 weeks.

Most agriculture specialists have a "*sensitive*" security clearance; however, some specialists working in specialized units have higher security clearances. In July 2006, the Office of Personnel Management conducted a survey of federal employees in all 36 federal agencies on job satisfaction and how they felt their respective agency was headed.

DHS (which includes CBP) was last or near to last in every category including: 36<sup>th</sup> on the job satisfaction index; 35<sup>th</sup> on the leadership and knowledge management index 36<sup>th</sup> on the results-oriented performance culture index; 33<sup>rd</sup> on the talent management index.

The low scores were attributed to major concerns about basic supervision, management and leadership within DHS. Based on the survey, the primary concerns are about promotion and pay increase based on merit, dealing with poor performance, rewarding creativity and innovation, and the inability of leadership to generate high levels of motivation in the workforce, recognition for doing a good job, lack of satisfaction with various component policies, lack of information and complaints from the traveling public. They serve as expert and technical consultants in the areas of inspection, intelligence, analysis, examination and law enforcement activities related to the importation of agricultural /commercial commodities and conveyances at the various ports of entry.

Agriculture Specialists apply a wide range of federal, state and local laws and agency regulations when determining the admissibility of agriculture commodities while preventing the introduction of harmful pests, diseases and potential agro-terrorism into the USA.

Although Agriculture Specialists work for and are sworn to uphold and enforce the laws under the jurisdiction of Customs and Border Protection, they are also tasked with enforcing the laws governed by the USA Department of Agriculture (USDA) and the USA Fish & Wildlife Service (FWS).

They participate in special enforcement, targeting or analysis teams charged with collecting and analyzing information and identifying high-risk targets; or conduct visual and physical inspections of cargo, conveyances or passenger baggage.

The Agriculture Specialist plans, conducts, and supervises remedial actions such as treating, disinfecting and decontaminating prohibited commodities, conveyances, contaminants or agricultural materials. The Agriculture Specialist position is categorized as a "sensitive" position in law enforcement and may be granted up to the "Secret" level security clearance.

***Exercise 1. Render the score of the information in English.***

***Exercise 2. Describe the different characteristics of customs personnel.***



## CUSTOMS ACTIVITIES

Customs is responsible for ensuring that all imports and exports comply with U.S. laws and regulations; collecting and protecting revenue; guarding against smuggling. Its specific duties include

- assessing and collecting duties,
- excise taxes and penalties on imported goods;
- interdicting and seizing illegal items;
- processing persons, baggage, cargo, and mail;
- administering certain navigation laws;
- detecting and apprehending persons engaged in activities designed to circumvent Customs regulations;
- protecting American industry, as well as intellectual property rights, by enforcing laws to prevent illegal trade practices;
- enforcing import and export restrictions on dangerous items;
- collecting import and export data for the compilation of international trade statistics.

In addition to enforcing its own laws, Customs enforces some 400 other laws on behalf of more than 40 government agencies. Additionally, it processed a total of 130 mln. boats, ships, passenger vehicles, trucks, buses, and aircraft, both private and commercial.

### **Protecting Homeland Security**

With a mission that already made it alert to the protection of U.S. borders and ports, Customs was a key component of homeland security even before the phrase gained widespread currency in the wake of the 2001 terrorist attacks. Following those attacks, Customs undertook new measures designed to tighten points of entry and protect the borders against suspicious persons and items.

One such measure was Operation Green Quest, in which Customs teamed with multiple federal agencies to target systems used by terrorist organizations to acquire and transfer funds. Established on October 25, 2001, Operation Green Quest issued 177 search warrants, and made 79 arrests and 70 indictments within a little more than a year.

On December 4, 2001, Customs partnered with U.S. industry in Project Shield America, established for the purpose of protecting against the acquisition and exploitation of technological products by terrorists and terror-sponsoring nations. (Among the latter, the federal government has identified seven governments: Cuba, Iran, Iraq, Libya, North Korea, Syria, and Sudan.)

Of specific interest are U.S. munitions listed items, and strategic dual-use technology.

A supervisor with the Bosnia-Herzegovina State Border Service Agency uses a fiberscope to examine the gastank of a pickup truck during the International Border Interdiction Training conducted by the U.S. Customs Service at the Hidalgo port of entry in Texas.

## Challenges

Post-September 2001 security measures also include several programs requiring advance notice of shipments. Through its Container Security Initiative, Customs places personnel at major foreign ports to pre-screen cargo bound for the USA.

The 24-Hour Ruling, instituted in December, 2002, requires ocean carriers bringing goods to the USA to provide manifest information at least 24 hours prior to taking on cargo at the foreign port.

Additionally, in January 2003, Customs proposed new restrictions whereby it would receive four hours' advance electronic notification before imports are loaded into a truck.

According to a report in *Transport Topics*, a number of truckers and shippers complained that this measure would cripple business, and one industry executive predicted that "These regulations will essentially eliminate same-day and next-day shipping."

By 2003, the service ran the danger of being overtaxed, with numerous activities across a broad spectrum, including counter-narcotics programs, new border security initiatives, financial investigations, and even child pornography stings. Additionally, Customs deployed two Blackhawk helicopters and two Cessna Citation jets equipped with sensors to conduct 24-hour-a-day patrols over the skies, replacing military jets that had performed that role since 2001.

## USA Border Patrol

The U.S. Border Patrol are federal law enforcement agents who actively patrol the borders to prevent persons from entering or leaving the USA without government permission.

Agents detect and prevent the smuggling and unlawful entry of aliens into the US, along with apprehending those people found to be in violation of immigration laws. Agents work to lower crimes and improve the quality of life in border communities. One of the most important activities for a USA Border Patrol Agent is "line watch". This involves the detection, prevention and apprehension of terrorists, illegal aliens and smugglers of both aliens and contraband at or near the land border by maintaining surveillance from a covert position, following up leads, responding to electronic sensor television systems, aircraft sightings, and interpreting and following tracks, marks and other physical evidence.

Some of the major activities are farm and ranch check, traffic check, traffic observation, city patrol, transportation check, administrative, intelligence, and anti-smuggling activities.

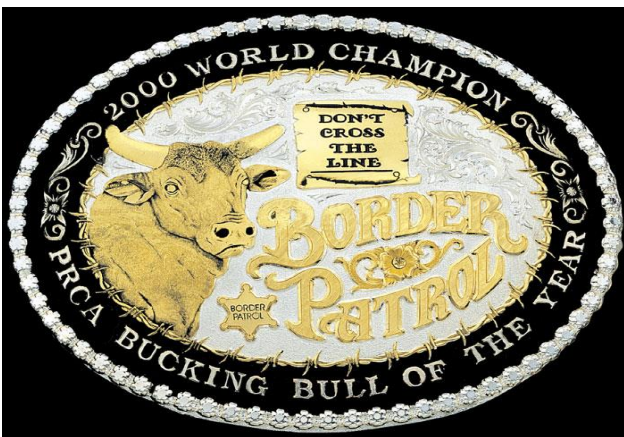
All agents complete a 55-day paid "Basic Academy" training at the U.S. Border Patrol Academy in Artesia, New Mexico. Training includes such topics as immigration and nationality laws, physical training (PT), weapons and marksmanship. For those needing Spanish language instruction, an additional 40 days may be required beyond the 55 days of Basic Academy training. Border Patrol Agents must be willing to work overtime and varying shifts under arduous conditions, and be proficient in the carry and use of firearms. They may also be sent on temporary assignments on short notice, or on permanent reassignments to any duty location. All new agents begin their careers along the Southwest border, where a working knowledge of Spanish is required.

**Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.**


**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. What are CBP officers empowered to exercise? 2. How do CBP officers defend against terrorist intrusion? 3. What are CBP seizures and criminal cases are investigated by? 4. How are CBP officers armed? 5. Where are CBP agriculture specialists stationed? 6. Where are agriculture specialists trained? 7. How many federal agencies does the Office of Personnel Management conduct a survey of federal employees on job in? 8. How many different focus groups in 12 different cities around the country are conducted? 9. Do CBP employees have protection from retaliation by CBP managers under the First Amendment of the Constitution? 10. What is a large problem within CBP? 11. What is CBP sister agency, U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement like? 12. What is it responsible for? 13. What do these cases include? 14. What questions have been argued in Congress?





## UK BORDER AGENCY

UK Border Agency	
	
Logo of the UK Border Agency.	
Agency Overview	
Formed	1 April, 2008
Preceding agencies	Border and Immigration Agency UK visas port of entry functions of HM Revenue and Customs
Legal personality	Governmental: Government agency
Jurisdictional Structure	
National agency	UK
Governing body	Home Office
General nature	Law enforcement Civilian agency
Specialist jurisdictions	National border patrol, security, and integrity. Customs.
Operational Structure	
Sworn members	10,000
Unsworn members	15,000
Minister responsible	Phil Woolas, Minister of State for Borders and Immigration
Agency executive	Lin Homer, Director

The UK Border Agency came into existence on 1 April 2008, formed as a result of a Cabinet Office report. UKBA has a total staff of 25,000 people located in over 40 countries. It is playing a leading role in the introduction of biometric identity cards for foreign nationals which are based on fingerprint data. UKBA has also experimented with the use of iris scans to record people's identity.

UKBA is a key stakeholder in the e-Borders programme whose purpose is to create a massive database of travellers and will analyze the movements of people in and out of the UK. The e-Borders system, in common with many other government IT initiatives, has caused concern regarding cost over runs. UKBA has, in 2008, launched a point based system of determining whether to grant longer term entry to the UK based largely on the well established Australian system.

### **Exercise 1. Answer the questions.**

1. When did The UK Border Agency come into existence? 2. What is a total staff of UKBA? 3. What is annual budget of UKBA? 4. What powers do Immigration officers have? 5. Where do they exercise their powers? 6. What do Customs officers have wide-ranging powers of? 7. What do Immigration Officers and Customs Officers retain their own powers for? 8. How are Immigration and asylum statistics published? 9. Has the management of the new organization already begun to integrate? 10. What will The Borders, Citizenship and Immigration Bill claim? 11. Has UKBA successfully rolled out a programme of identity cards for foreign nationals?



**Exercise 2. Analyze the Overview of the UK Border Agency.**

**Exercise 3. Make up an outline of the text and render the main idea of it.**

UKBA is responsible for the management of in-country enforcement operations to detect immigration offenders including illegal entrants and overstayers. It is responsible for the deportation of foreign national criminals and for combating illegal working. The mismanagement of foreign national criminals resulted in crisis in 2006 when it was revealed that over 1000 criminals had been released without being deported. The ensuing scandal cost the then Home Secretary Charles Clarke his job but the Chief Executive Lin Homer remained in post.

A blanket policy since then of detaining foreign criminals beyond their original sentences has recently come under close scrutiny. UKBA has a £1 Bn pound annual budget and is under pressure to cut costs and resources. It is undergoing a major long term re-structuring that will result in a regionalized organization. UKBA appears to intend to devolve as many functions, (staff), as possible from its current Croydon HQ. UKBA committed to double the resources for enforcement operations in 2008 and to improve partnership working with other government agencies. At the moment, staff holds a mixture of powers granted to them by their status as immigration officers and customs officers.

**Exercise 4. Explain the scope of Immigration, Customs and Future Powers.**

Immigration officers have the power of arrest and detention whether they are at a port or inland, which is conferred on them by the Immigration Act 1971. This has led to separate training for port and inland Immigration officers. "Designated Immigration Officers" are port Immigration Officers that have been trained in detention under PACE. Customs officers have wide-ranging powers of entry, search and detention. The main power is to detain anyone who has committed, or who the officer has reasonable grounds to suspect has committed, any offence under the Customs and Excise Acts.

Currently the UKBA is operating in shadow form until new legislation creates a single executive agency and consolidates the powers of its predecessors. Immigration Officers and Customs Officers retain their own powers for the enforcement and administration of the UK's borders, although management of the new organization has already begun to integrate. The Borders, Citizenship and Immigration Bill is now before Parliament. This will transfer some customs powers to the Agency as the first step in overhauling immigration and customs legislation, details are on the UKBA website.

Immigration and asylum statistics are published on line, UKBA announced at the beginning of 2009 that it had achieved its objective of deporting 5000 foreign national prisoners during the year and has successfully rolled out a programme of identity cards for foreign nationals. The 2009 report by the National Audit Office cites lack of detention space to support the asylum process.

**Exercise 5. Give a short characteristic of The UK Border Agency.**



A UK Border Agency cutter

## HM REVENUE & CUSTOMS

His / Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs (HMRC) is a non-ministerial department of the British Government primarily responsible for the collection of taxes, the payment of some forms of state support, and the detection and prevention of smuggling. HMRC was formed by a merger of the Inland Revenue and Her Majesty's Customs and Excise and came into formal existence on 18 April 2005. The department's logo is the St. Edward's Crown enclosed within a circle.

### Departmental Responsibilities

The department is responsible for the administration and collection of direct taxes including income tax and corporation tax, capital taxes such as capital gains tax and inheritance tax, indirect taxes (including value added tax), excise duties and stamp duty land tax, and environmental taxes such as air passenger duty and the climate change levy. Other aspects of the department's responsibilities include National Insurance contributions, the distribution of child benefit and some other forms of state support including the Child Trust Fund, payments of Tax Credits, enforcement of the national minimum wage and collection and publication of the trade-in-goods statistics. Responsibility for the protection of the UK's borders passed to the UK Border Agency within the Home Office on 1 April 2008.

HMRC has three targets for the period 2008-2020:

- to improve the extent to which individuals and businesses pay the amount of tax due and receive the credits and payments to which they are entitled;
- to improve customer experience, support business and reduce the compliance burden;
- to strengthen frontier protection against threats to the security, social and economic integrity and environment of the UK in a way that balances the need to maintain the UK as a competitive location in which to do business.

Customs officers have wide-ranging powers of arrest, entry, search and detention.

The main power is to detain anyone who has committed, or who the officer has reasonable grounds to suspect has committed, any offence under the Customs and Excise Acts.

HMRC is also listed under parts of the British Government which contribute to intelligence collection, and/or analysis and assessment. Their prosecution cases are coordinated with the police, &/or CPS who take any necessary action in accordance with their own responsibilities.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the facts and comment on Departmental Responsibilities.**

**Exercise 2. After reading the information answer the questions.**

1. What is the department responsible for? 2. What kind of direct taxes does it collect? 3. What kind of indirect taxes does it collect? 4. What other aspects of the department's responsibilities are included? 5. What agency is responsible for the protection of the UK's borders? When did it happen? 6. How many targets did HMRC have for the period 2005-2008? What are they? 7. What kinds of powers do Customs officers have? 8. What is the main power? 9. Is HMRC under parts of the British Government? 10. What actions does it take in accordance with its own responsibilities? 11. What does this organization do? 12. How many targets did HMRC have for the period 2005-2008? 13. What are they? 14. Customs officers have wide-ranging powers of arrest, entry, search and detention, haven't they? 15. What is the main power? 16. What is also listed under parts of the British Government which contribute to intelligence collection, analysis and assessment? 17. What organizations are their prosecution cases coordinated with? 18. What kind of powers do Customs officers have? 19. What is to detain anyone who has committed any offence under the Customs and Excise Acts?





### **Exercise 3. Explain the main powers of the Custom officers?**

HM Customs and Excise began renewing the cutter fleet in 2001, shortly before the merger. A defaced blue ensign was authorized by the Admiralty for use on HM Customs and Excise vessels, and was inherited by HM Revenue and Customs in the merger.

The merger of the Inland Revenue and HM Customs & Excise was announced by then Chancellor of the Exchequer Gordon Brown in the Budget on 17 March 2004.

The planned new department was announced formally in the Queen's Speech of 2004 and a bill, the Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Bill, was introduced into the House of Commons in 2004, and received Royal Assent as the Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Act 2005 on 7 April 2005.

The Act creates a Revenue and Customs Prosecutions Office (RCPO) responsible for the prosecution of all Revenue and Customs cases. The old Inland Revenue and Customs & Excise departments had very different historical bases, internal cultures and legal powers.

For an interim period officers of HMRC are empowered to use existing Inland Revenue powers in relation to matters within the remit of the old Inland Revenue (such as income tax, stamp duty and tax credits) and existing Customs powers in relation to matters within the remit of the old Customs & Excise (such as value added tax and excise duties).

However, a major review of the powers required by HMRC is covering the suitability of existing powers, new powers that might be required, and consolidating the existing compliance regimes for surcharges, interest, penalties and appeal, which may lead to a single, consolidated enforcement regime for all UK taxes, and a consultation document was published after the 2005 Budget.

### **Exercise 4. Read the passage "Efficiency gains and job cuts" and render the contents of it.**

As part of the Spending Review on 12 July 2004, Gordon Brown estimated that 12,500 jobs would be lost as result of the merger by March 2008 around 14% of the combined headcount of Customs (around 23,000) and Inland Revenue (around 68,000).

In addition, 2,500 staff will be redeployed to "front-line" activities. Estimates suggest this may save around £300 mln. in staff costs, out of a total annual budget of £4 bn.

There are indications that a further 12,500 jobs may also be cut. The total number of job losses includes policy functions within the Inland Revenue and Customs which have moved into the Treasury, so that the Treasury becomes responsible for "*strategy and tax policy development*" and HMRC handles "*policy maintenance*". In addition, certain investigatory functions have moved to the new Serious Organized Crime Agency, as well as prosecutions moving to the new Revenue and Customs Prosecution Office. A further programme of job cuts and office closures was announced on 16 November 2006. Whilst some of the offices closed will be in bigger cities where other offices already exist, many will be in local, rural areas, where there is no other HMRC presence.

The numbers of job reductions and office closures has not been officially announced, but the proposals imply that up to 200 offices will close and a further 12,500 jobs will be lost from 2008 to 2011. HMRC maintains that the level of service to its customers will increase by implementation of "lean" processes designed to improve efficiency, introducing better technology, better use of its offices and a much stronger focus on the needs of the customer – taxpayers, benefit claimants and other members of the public who use HMRC's services.



**Exercise 5. Comment on the activity of the UK Customs today.**

The UK (UK) fully supports and endorses the partnership agreement between the WCO and the World Trade Organization, which brings together development and expertise concerning improved trade facilitation, supply chain security and the enhancement of capacity within customs administrations. The officers have visited Geneva to receive briefing and training on the purpose and strategy of this new partnership. Closer understanding and cooperation between intergovernmental organisations is essential if we are to avoid duplication of efforts and maximise the impact of development support. Throughout all of the capacity building activities the UK seek to cover all aspects of customs and tax work including the revenue raising areas of direct and indirect taxation.

The major international development agencies and financial institutions recognise the increasingly important and essential roles that both customs and revenue administrations play in assisting governments achieve their national and international objectives.

A well run customs and revenue administration contributes enormously to a country's financial wellbeing and their ability to facilitate legitimate trade and attract new inward investment. Views about the efficiency and effectiveness of a customs administration often shape the perceptions of key individuals and organisations involved in making important and far reaching trade.

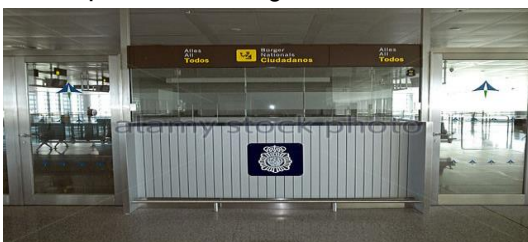
But above all customs and revenue administrations provide the much needed financial resource required by all governments to help achieve policies and to provide for their people. There is too much smuggling and tax fraud in the world. They must work together to ensure that the revenue due to governments is properly collected.

Whilst there is no doubt that capacity building initiatives can and do make a difference; they cannot be successful on their own. The UK's considerable involvement and experience with capacity building has demonstrated to us the importance of the partnership approach between providers and recipients.

Capacity building projects are major undertakings requiring not just commitment from the experts involved but, more importantly, the political will of the beneficiary country and the long-term and sustained commitment of the recipient organisation's top level management.

Capacity building is certainly not a quick fix. It is a long-term solution focusing on the provision of sustainable development through reform and modernisation. By its very nature it requires stamina from those involved; commitment beyond the norm and a will to accept and facilitate change at both the customs administrations and governmental levels. The rewards are great: increased revenue, a safer society, progress in the fight against drug smuggling, counterfeiting and money laundering, improved trade facilitation for imports and exports, inward investment opportunities and security of the international supply chain, to name but a few. Capacity building must support strategic objectives.

The WCO and its Members are to be commended for producing an excellent document "Customs in the 21st century". This gives a vision and a road map of what is required for Customs over the years ahead. Global capacity building initiatives in the area of Customs must use this paper to give strategic direction to individual projects. The 21st century is producing a new set of issues for Customs with the increased focus on border security, the need for better integrated border management arrangements and the further development of revenue authorities. The need to share experiences and to work together has never been greater. The UK looks to the WCO to give leadership to customs developments at the global level.



**Exercise 6. Identify the duties and responsibilities of Customs and Excise Department.**

HM Customs and Excise (HMCE) is a Government department with responsibility for collecting billions of pounds in revenue each year in VAT, other taxes and customs duties. HM Customs and Excise is one of the oldest Government departments with a heritage some people believe extends back to Roman times. They have consistently adapted to meet the changing rate of Customs duty and accommodate wider political and economic changes like the Common Market.

Despite such radical changes, the traditional roles of the department remain essentially the same: to collect a range of duties and taxes accurately, on time and in a courteous and impartial manner; to protect UK and business interests through the control of imported and exported goods; to prevent the illegal import (and export) of socially unacceptable or politically sensitive materials.

HMCE is the UK's first line of defense against some of today's most serious and organized criminals. It is our job to stop banned goods, such as drugs and firearms from entering the country. They play a major role with other Government departments in breaking up and jailing criminal gangs responsible for smuggling. As well as having officers based at all points of entry into the UK, they also use fast boats called Cutters that guard the coast during the day and at night, throughout the year.

All Government departments must ensure that everything they do represents best value for taxpayers' money and that they are fully accountable to the public. This means all Customs and Excise activities, from collecting VAT to working at ports and airports, are planned and prioritized to meet performance measures agreed with Government Ministers. Overall performance is published each year in our annual report. HM Customs and Excise have offices throughout the UK.

**Exercise 7. Answer the questions.**

1. What is HMCE like? 2. How old is it? 3. What have they consistently adapted to meet? 4. Despite such radical changes, the traditional roles of the department remain essentially the same, don't they? 5. What are the traditional roles of the department? 6. Is the UK's first line of defense against some of today's most serious and organized criminals? 7. What is their job? 8. Where do they play a major role with other Government departments? 9. Why do they use fast boats called Cutters? 10. What do the boats do? 11. What must all Government departments ensure? 12. What does it mean? 13. What organizations do they agree their measures? 14. Where is overall performance published each year? 15. Does HMCE have offices throughout the UK?

**Exercise 8. Fill in the gaps with prepositions: by, for, in, to, with, to, of, on, beyond, at**

Administrations provide financial resource required \_\_\_ all governments to help achieve policies and to provide \_\_\_ their people. There is too much smuggling and tax fraud \_\_\_ the world. They must ensure that the revenue due \_\_\_ governments is properly collected. The UK's considerable involvement and experience \_\_\_ capacity building has demonstrated \_\_\_ us the importance \_\_\_ the partnership approach between providers and recipients. Capacity building is certainly not a quick fix. It is a long-term solution focusing \_\_\_ the provision of sustainable development through reform and modernisation. \_\_\_ its very nature it requires stamina from those involved. Commitment \_\_\_ the norm and a will \_\_\_ accept and facilitate change \_\_\_ both the customs administrations and governmental levels.





**Exercise 9. Complete the sentences by drawing on the information above.**

1. The merger of the Inland Revenue and HM Customs & Excise was announced by \_\_\_\_\_. 2. The planned new department was announced formally in \_\_\_\_\_. 3. The Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Bill, was introduced into \_\_\_\_\_. 4. The old Inland Revenue and Customs & Excise departments had very different historical \_\_\_\_\_. 5. The merger was described by \_\_\_\_\_. 6. For an interim period officers of HMRC are empowered to \_\_\_\_\_. 7. A major review of the powers required by HMRC was announced at \_\_\_\_\_. 8. A consultation document was published after \_\_\_\_\_. 9. Covering the suitability of existing powers, new powers might be required for surcharges, interest, penalties \_\_\_\_\_. 10. The appeal may lead to a single, consolidated enforcement regime for all UK \_\_\_\_\_.



HMRC is governed by a board comprising an executive chairman and 8 other executive members drawn from the former Inland Revenue, HM Customs & Excise and from external organizations. The board also contains 5 non-executive directors. HMRC occupies an office complex in Nottingham.

**Exercise 10. Answer the questions.**

1. When was the Spending Review published? 2. How many officers were headcounted in 2008? 3. Where was 2,500 staff redeployed? 4. When will be a further 12,500 jobs cut? 5. What function does the total number of job losses include? 6. What does the Treasury become responsible for? 7. Where have certain investigatory functions moved? 8. When was a further programme of job cuts and office closures announced? 9. Where will some of the offices be? 10. The numbers of job reductions and office closures have not been officially announced, have they?

**Exercise 11. Delete the words that do not belong to the list of "key words". All the words are taken from the text.**

Review, to estimate, jobs, to loose, result, merger, to combine, to headcount, staff, Customs, to redeploy, "front-line" activities, to suggest, to save, costs, total, annual, budget, indications, processes, to design, to improve, efficiency, technology, benefit, claimants, members, public, use, services, to announce, implementation, customers, to increase.





**Exercise 12. Restore the logical order of the data after reading the message.**

No	Events	Data
1.	The UK Border Agency came into existence _____	in 2008.
2.	UKBA has a total staff of _____ people located in 40 countries.	2,5000
3.	Over 1000 criminals had been released without being deported	in 2009.
4.	5000 foreign national prisoners were deported during the year	in 2006.
5.	HMRC was formed by a merger of the Inland Revenue and Her Majesty's Customs and Excise and came into formal existence _____	in 2005.
6.	The name for the new department were announced _____	in 2008.
7.	Gordon Brown estimated that 12,500 jobs would be lost _____	in 2008.
8.	14% of the combined headcount of Customs would be lost _____	in 2004.
9.	Around 68,000 in Inland Revenue would be cut _____	in 2004.
10.	_____ staff will be redeployed to "front-line" activities.	25,000
11.	Up to 200 offices will close _____	2008-2011.
12.	A further _____ jobs will be lost from 2008 to 2011	12,500



Dublin Customs House

Top export commodities (tonnes)			
	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12
Coal	6,303,331	6,614,670	8,851,147
Refined Oil	2,352,533	2,438,719	2,473,950
Cereals	1,207,311	1,352,928	2,008,697
Meat products	740,155	777,274	786,832
Iron & Steel	464,712	491,703	672,106
Cotton	231,903	275,732	542,765
Cotton seeds	73,994	254,181	487,713
Growth		3.8%	22.9%

Item	Customs Duty*
Apparel - men's	10%
Apparel - women's	10%
Books	10%
Cameras (film and digital)	Nil
Cosmetics	5%
Footwear	10%
Handbags	5%
MP3 Player	Nil
Telephone	Nil



## CANADA BORDER SERVICES AGENCY

Canada Border Services Agency  
 Agence des services frontaliers du Canada

Common name      Border Services  
 Abbreviation      CBSA/ASFC



### Agency Overview

Formed                      December 12, 2003  
 Preceding agency      Canada Customs and Revenue Agency  
 Employees                12,000+  
 Legal personality      Governmental: Government agency

### Jurisdictional Structure

Federal agency            Canada  
 Governing body        Public Safety Canada  
 Constituting instruments      Order in Council P.C. 2003-2064  
                                       *Canada Border Services Agency Act*  
 General nature            Federal law enforcement  
                                       Civilian agency

### Operational Structure

Elected officer responsible      Peter Van Loan, Minister of Public Safety

**Exercise 1. Read the passage and give some characteristics on Border Services Officer.**

A Border Services Officer is a federal law enforcement agent employed by the CBSA. BSOs are designated peace officers in Canada, and primarily enforce customs and immigration-related legislation, in particular the *Customs Act* and the *Immigration and Refugee Protection Act* as well as over 90 other Acts of Parliament. Because of their peace officer designation, they also have the power to enforce other Acts of Parliament, including the *Criminal Code of Canada*.

The arming initiative will cover most officers in Canada over the next 10 years. Border Services Officers are trained at the CBSA Learning Centre, located in Rigaud, Quebec. The training begins with 4 weeks done online called Pre-POERT and then a 9-week program called Port of Entry Recruit Training (POERT), which covers a range of topics from criminal law to customs legislation.

**Exercise 2. Write the vocabulary according to the topic.**

**Exercise 3. Read the article and translate it in writing.**

The Canada Border Services Agency (CBSA) is the Canadian government agency responsible for border guard and customs services created on December 12, 2003, by an order-in-council amalgamating Canada Customs (from the now-defunct Canada Customs and Revenue Agency) with border and enforcement personnel from the Department of Citizenship and Immigration Canada (CIC) and the Canadian Food Inspection Agency (CFIA). The agency's creation was formalized by the Canada Border Services Agency Act which received Royal Assent on November 3, 2005.

Since the September 11, 2001 attacks against the USA, Canada's border operations have placed a dramatic new emphasis on national security and public safety. The Canada-USA Smart Border Declaration created by John Manley and Tom Ridge has provided objectives for co-operation between Canadian and American border operations.

The CBSA oversees approximately 1,200 service locations across Canada and 39 in other countries. It employs over 12,000 public servants, and offers round-the-clock service at 61 land border crossings and nine international airports. They also oversee operations at three major sea ports, and three mail centers. It also operates detention facilities in Laval, Toronto, Kingston and Vancouver.

**Exercise 4. Characterize the examinations, searches and seizures.**

All persons and goods entering Canada are subject to examination by CBSA officers. An examination can be as simple as a few questions, but can also include an examination of the subject's vehicle and/or luggage, more intensive questioning, or personal searches. The intensity of an examination depends on the reasonable grounds that the officer has to escalate the intensiveness of a search.

Examinations are performed to ensure compliance with Customs and Immigration legislations. CBSA officers are given their authority by the *Customs Act* and the *Immigration and Refugee Protection Act*. In addition, BSOs are also able to enforce other Acts of Parliament as they are designated as Peace Officers under the *Criminal Code of Canada*. The agency will also seize items it labels obscene, as it did in February 2009 when it detained and banned two films by the adult film director Michael Lucas. The CBSA's Policy on the Classification of Obscene Material states that the "ingestion of someone else's urine... with a sexual purpose makes a film obscene.

**Exercise 5. Analyze the Overview of Canada Border Services Agency.**





**Exercise 6. Compare the activities of UK Border Agency and Canada Border Services Agency.**

**Exercise 7. Explain the ways of Immigration to Canada.**

The CBSA plays a key role in immigration to Canada, as it has assumed the port-of-entry and enforcement mandates formerly held by the Department of Citizenship and Immigration Canada.

CBSA officers work on the front lines, screening persons entering the country and removing those who are unlawfully in Canada. As of the end of 2003 there are up to 200,000 illegal immigrants in Canada (most residing in Ontario). Most are refugee claimants whose refugee applications were rejected by the Immigration and Refugee Board of Canada. There are very few illegal immigrants who enter the country without first being admitted by the CBSA. The reason for this is that Canada is physically very difficult to get to, with the exception of crossing the Canada / U.S. border.

As the U.S. is itself a prime destination for illegal immigrants, not many illegal immigrants then attempt to cross the border into Canada in the wild. This differs significantly from the illegal immigration patterns in the U.S., which stem from illegal border crossings.

**Exercise 8. After analyzing the text render the changes to the CBSA.**

Since the creation of the Agency in 2003, the CBSA has undergone significant changes to its overall structure as services previously offered by different agencies are now housed under a single banner. Not only has the structure of the organization changed, but the range of duties and the institutional priorities have changed.

Where the prior coupling of Canada Customs with the Canada Revenue Agency lent itself to a focus on tax collection, the new Agency was created to address the realities of security in the post-9/11 world, and to respond to criticisms, mostly from the USA, that Canada was not doing enough to ensure the security of North America.

Substantial changes began before the 2001 terrorist attacks in the US. In May 1998, the Government of Canada passed Bill C-18, which changed the agency policies allowing the officers to arrest and detain individuals at the border for other non-customs related violations of Canadian law. These new responsibilities led to the implementation of use of force policies.

Border Services Officers across Canada started to carry collapsible batons, OC spray and handcuffs. The 2006 Canadian federal budget introduced \$101 mln. to equip CBSA officers with side arms and to eliminate single-person border crossings to help officers perform their duties.

The decision to arm BSOs has been a subject of some controversy in Canada for several years, but the idea has had the support of other law enforcement agencies as well as the union that represents the affected officers. In August 2006, Prime Minister Stephen Harper announced that arming BSOs would begin in early 2007 and would continue over the next 10 years.

Some of the first officers to be armed will be those working at the Windsor, Ontario port of entry, the busiest highway port of entry in Canada. Arming at the other Ports of Entry across Canada is being conducted systematically with those Ports considered the busiest and/or most dangerous to be completed first. At this time it has not been decided when, and if, officers at airports will be armed. It has been officially confirmed that CBSA officers will be armed with the 9mm Beretta Px4 Storm.

**Exercise 9. Transfer essential information from the text in the form of your own notes.**

**Exercise 10. Analyze the information and give the score of Border Watch.**

The CBSA Border Watch toll free info line offers citizens the opportunity to report suspicious cross border activity directly to the Agency in a direct and confidential manner. The Border Watch line differs from other phone lines for the public, such as Crimestoppers or the Royal Canadian Mounted Police info line in that it is designed to focus directly on border-related intelligence.





**Exercise 11. With the help of the article explain the notion "intelligence".**

The CBSA turns the information it collects into intelligence by using automated risk analysis, analytical tools, and risk management. This allows it to work toward its objective of balancing security concerns with the need to facilitate the flow of people and goods.

The Agency seeks to manage risks through a number of means, including the collection and analysis of intelligence information, the use of detection tools, the analysis of indicators and judgment of front-line officers, and random checks. Threat and risk assessments are widely recognized as valuable decision-making tools when setting examination priorities. The Agency's intelligence directorate conducts a border risk assessment of its border operations every 2-3 years.

Under this process, the Agency assesses the risks of smuggling contraband, such as drugs, firearms, proceeds of crime, child pornography, illicit tobacco etc. The information is assessed and ranked by commodity and by mode of transport. The Agency will include the risks of irregular or illegal migration of people, and the movement of food, plants, and animals, now under the Agency's broader mandate, in the next version of its border risk assessment. The Agency also prepares a national port risk assessment every two years. Regional intelligence analysts, in consultation with other sources and port operational staff, complete a questionnaire detailing port demographics, traffic volume, enforcement, and intelligence information. The 2006 risk assessment ranked 23 ports as high-risk and included information on suspected criminal and national security risks, as well as the risk of irregular or illegal migration of people. In addition to the border and port risk assessment processes, the intelligence directorate provides daily, weekly and monthly updates on specific threats and trends in unlawful activities.

**Exercise 12. Explain the essentials on Smart Border Declaration.**

The Smart Border Declaration and Action Plan, also known as the Smart Border Accord, was signed in 2001 and is an initiative of the Government of Canada, specifically the CBSA, RCMP and the Department of Foreign Affairs and International Development, and the Government of the USA, specifically the Department of Homeland Security, US Customs and Border Protection and the USA Coast Guard. The two major signatories to the Declaration were Canadian Deputy Prime Minister John Manley and then-US Director of Homeland Security Tom Ridge.

The Accord was set up in order to facilitate the cross-border flow of travellers and goods, while co-coordinating enforcement efforts in the two countries. The Accord consists of 30 points of common interest to improve both security and trade between the two countries. Included in the plan are initiatives to improve the biometric features of Permanent Resident Cards in both countries, sharing Advanced Passenger Information, and creating compatible immigration databases. There are four main pillars to the Action Plan: 1) Secure flow of people 2) Secure flow of goods 3) Investing in secure infrastructure 4) Coordination and information sharing in the enforcement of these objectives.





**Exercise 13. Translate the words and word-combinations into Russian.**

Assessment, suspected criminal, national security risks, intelligence directorate, specific threats, trends in unlawful activities, weekly and monthly updates, regional intelligence analysts, in consultation with, sources, port operational staff, to complete a questionnaire, detailing port demographics, traffic volume, enforcement, intelligence information, commodity, mode of transport, irregular, illegal migration of people, movement of food, plants, animals, broader mandate, to set, to include.

**Exercise 14. Explain the score of Canada-USA Integrated Border Enforcement Teams.**

Integrated Border Enforcement Teams (IBETs) were created as a part of the Accord to consolidate the law-enforcement and intelligence-gathering expertise of different agencies in both countries.

The key Canadian contributors to the IBETs are the CBSA, RCMP, US Customs and Border Protection, US Coast Guard, and US ICE Teams. However, IBETs also enlist the help of other municipal, state/provincial and federal agencies on certain projects.

In Canada, IBETs operate in 15 regions across the Canada-US Border in air, sea and land modes. They are based on a model started along the British Columbia-Washington State border in 1996. Since their inception, IBETs have helped disrupt smuggling rings involved in the drug trade, alcohol, tobacco and vehicle smuggling, and human trafficking.

**Exercise 15. Analyze the recent CBSA successes.**

On 14 February, 2006, the CBSA, the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, USA Immigration and Customs Enforcement and a number of other Canadian and US law enforcement agencies carried out a series of raids in support of Project OBOY, a three-year investigation which resulted in the arrest of almost 30 people in Toronto, Windsor, Detroit and New York City. The ring was responsible for smuggling over 100 people both ways across the border, using methods such as concealing them in the trunks of cars, on rail cars, in small boats and in the back of commercial trucks.

**Exercise 16. Analyze the operation Frozen Timber and E Printer.**

Frozen Timber (US name) /E Printer (Canadian name) was carried out by the Pacific IBET and resulted in the disruption of a brazen drug smuggling ring which transported tons of illegal drugs across the border using aircraft which dropped their loads in remote wooded locations in British Columbia and Washington State, often in broad daylight. The investigation began in November 2004, and by June 2006, more than 40 arrests and 45 indictments had been issued in the US, and four arrests were made in Canada. In total, 3,640 kilograms of marijuana, 365 kilograms of cocaine, three aircraft and more than \$1.5 mln. USD were seized by law enforcement agencies in both countries.

In addition to the participating IBET agencies, Frozen Timber / E Printer was carried out with the cooperation of ICE (Immigration and Customs Enforcement), the US Forest Service, the National Park Service, the Washington State Patrol, the USA Attorney's offices in Spokane and Seattle, the DEA, the FBI, the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, and the Sheriff's Departments of Whatcom, Skagit, and Okanagan Counties, as well as the Abbotsford Police Department.

**Exercise 17. Explain the score of the Project OSPA.**

Toronto, Oct. 23rd, 2008 – A six month joint law-enforcement investigation into the exportation of more than 500 kilograms of methamphetamine (commonly known as speed), ecstasy pills and cocaine from Canada to Australia has resulted in the arrest of five Ontario individuals who are now facing multiple drug and possession of property obtained by crime charges.

The investigation, dubbed Project OSPA, is one of the largest investigations to date where Canada has been identified as the source of distribution. The investigation began in May 2008 when the Australia Federal Police (AFP) intercepted a shipment of foot baths in which 27 kilograms of methamphetamine and 27 kilograms of cocaine had been hidden.

The RCMP and the Australia Federal Police working in partnership, successfully intercepted three additional shipments of foot baths and other beauty supply-related products to Australia totaling over 200 kilograms of cocaine, 214 kilograms of ecstasy pills and over 130 kg of methamphetamine.

The Australian Federal Police have arrested 14 individuals during the course of this investigation in which four are Canadian citizens. The drugs were traced back to Canada where the RCMP and Canada Border Services Agency worked jointly during the course of the investigation.

The Toronto Police Service, Peel Regional Police Service and the Ontario Provincial Police also participated in this investigation which resulted in the further seizures of an outdoor marijuana grow operation with about 1,000 plants was shut down near Sudbury Ontario. In partnership with the U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) and the US Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE), 125,000 pills of Ecstasy bound for U.S. markets were also seized.

The RCMP GTA Drug Section executed 8 search warrants which resulted in the seizure of cash; weapons as well as a marihuana grow operation located in a residence. These investigations are still ongoing and further charges are pending. These arrests and the dismantling of a sophisticated criminal exportation network are a significant blow in eradicating Canada as a transnational drug-trafficking hub. The criminal exportation network used many tactics to avoid detection. For instance, it is alleged that various logistics companies were created for the sole purpose of appearing to export legitimate products, but with large amounts of drugs secreted inside. The network is also alleged to have used public internet terminals to communicate with each other.

**Exercise 18. Analyze the operation E-Patch and the Smuggler's Uncle**

E-Patch (Canadian name) /Smuggler's Uncle (US name) also concluded in April 2006 and was undertaken by the Pacific IBET. The US Attorney's Office indicted 14 people for smuggling people through Canada and into the USA for profit. The network used houses in Toronto and Vancouver to hold South Asian nationals while they awaited transportation to the US.

**Exercise 19. Answer the questions.**

1. What is a significant blow in eradicating Canada as a transnational drug-trafficking hub? 2. What did the criminal exportation network use to avoid detection? 3. What is it alleged that various logistics companies were created for the sole purpose of appearing to export legitimate products, but with large amounts of drugs secreted inside? 4. Is the network alleged to have used public internet terminals to communicate with each other? 5. When did the CBSA's use of detector dogs begin? 6. Where do 69 detector dog teams locate? 7. Where do detector dogs work? 8. How is each dog trained to detect specific commodities? 9. What are they trained to seek? 10. What does detector dogs provide? 11. Detector dogs are highly efficient in their ability to accurately locate the source of a scent, aren't they? What speeds up the process for BSOs as well as for the travelling public? 12. When was the Passive Dog training implemented?

**Exercise 20. Analyze the operation Jaloux and the operation Hat Trick.**

In April 2006, an Atlantic IBET made 26 arrests (11 in Canada, 15 in the US) after a two-year investigation into a major cross-border drug smuggling ring. The operation was largely undertaken at the Edmundston, New Brunswick port of entry. In addition to the arrests, Jaloux netted over 1,000 pounds of marijuana, 110,000 ecstasy pills and more than \$1.2 mln. The US Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) participated in the IBET operation, which was called Operation Jaloux in Canada and Operation Hat Trick in the USA.

**Exercise 21. Make up the sentences with the words and word-combinations and translate them.**

Joint law-enforcement investigation; to face; multiple drug; to date; to identify; possession of property; to obtain; intercepted; shipment; ecstasy pills; cocaine; seizures; to shut down; immigration; markets; cash; transnational drug-trafficking hub; to dismantle; various logistics companies; to eradicate; criminal exportation network; to allege; legitimate products; to export; to import; public internet terminals; to communicate.

**Exercise 22. Explain the essentials of the Detector Dog Service.**

The CBSA's use of detector dogs began with three canine units at the Windsor port of entry in 1978. The program has since expanded to include 69 detector dog teams located at ports across Canada. Detector dogs work in mail, air, land and marine modes.

Each dog is trained to detect specific commodities, and to fit into one of three profiles: narcotics, explosives and firearms, currency, plants, food and animals. Detector dogs provide Border Services Officers (BSOs) with one of the most effective tools in the detection of contraband. Although other tools are available to BSOs, detector dogs are highly efficient in their ability to accurately locate the source of a scent, and thus can save time in labour-intensive examinations of vehicles, luggage and cargo.

This speeds up the process for BSOs as well as for the travelling public.

The CBSA uses passive detector dogs, unlike some other law enforcement agencies, which use active dogs. When a passive dog detects a scent that it has been trained to recognize, it sits beside the source of the smell. While active dogs, which bark, scratch, dig or bite at the source of the scent, were used initially by the CBSA, passive dogs allow the officer to circulate among passengers more peacefully, and are considered by the Agency to be more effective in the course of their work.

The Passive Dog training was implemented in 1993, and is now the Agency's preference.

**Exercise 23. Make up sentences with the words and word-combinations.**

Immigration; Customs Enforcement; law enforcement agencies; to carry out a series of raids; support of; a three-year investigation; to result; arrest; responsible for smuggling; border; methods; to conceal; in trunks of cars, on rail cars, in small boats; in the back of; commercial trucks; a major cross-border drug smuggling ring; operation; largely; to undertake; marijuana, ecstasy pills; to conclude; for profit; network; transportation; disruption; to drop; in broad daylight.



**Exercise 24. Complete the sentences with the facts from the passages.**

1. Detector Dog teams undergo a 10 week training course \_\_\_\_\_. 2. The handlers are Border Services Officers, and are trained on \_\_\_\_\_. 3. They are trained to \_\_\_\_\_. 4. After the initial training, the handler must keep up a \_\_\_\_\_. 5. Only about \_\_\_\_\_ dogs who begin the training eventually become detector dogs. 6. Certain characteristics that make a better potential detector dog, including \_\_\_\_\_. 7. Detector dogs begin training between the ages of \_\_\_\_\_ and work for an average of \_\_\_\_\_ years. 8. Several different breeds are used, but \_\_\_\_\_. 9. Dogs are used to detect \_\_\_\_\_. 10. Dogs trained to detect agricultural products live in \_\_\_\_\_. 11. Living around large amounts of food full time can cause the dog to become \_\_\_\_\_. 12. While the dog is at work, it is transported in air-conditioned vehicles that \_\_\_\_\_. 13. The AMPS program is a system that \_\_\_\_\_. 14. It is used mainly as \_\_\_\_\_. 15. For more serious or deliberate infractions, the goods in question may be seized or subject to \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 25. Render the score of the text "Training".**

Detector Dog teams (consisting of a dog and a single handler) undergo a 10 week training course at the CBSA Learning Centre. The handlers are Border Services Officers, and are trained on how to care for, maintain, and train their dogs. They are also trained to understand the Cone of Scent.

Odour particles always disperse in the shape of a cone: more concentrated at the source, and less concentrated farther away. After the initial training, the handler must keep up a training regimen to ensure their dog remains in top form. Only about 1 in 10 dogs who begin the training eventually become detector dogs. While there is no specific description for a detector dog, the CBSA looks for certain characteristics that make a better potential detector dog, including: ability and desire to retrieve, good physical condition, alertness, sociability, boldness temperament

Detector dogs begin training between the ages of 11 and 16 months and work for an average of 8 to 10 years. Several different breeds are used, but the CBSA primarily uses Labrador Retrievers for firearm, drug and currency detection, and the Beagle for plant, food and animal detection.

Dogs that are used to detect firearms, drugs and currency live with their handler. However, dogs trained to detect agricultural products live in a commercial kennel as living around large amounts of food full time can cause the dog to become desensitized to some scents. While the dog is at work, it is transported in air-conditioned vehicles that act as a mobile kennel.

The AMPS program, implemented in December 2005, is a system that encourages compliance with Customs legislation through the tendering of monetary penalties. It is used mainly as an enforcement tool on technical infractions, where the subject did not necessarily intend to breach the legislation, but failed to comply in some way. For more serious or deliberate infractions, the goods in question may be seized or subject to forfeiture. AMPS penalties are imposed depending on the severity and frequency of the infraction. Multiple infractions will result in higher penalties under the AMPS system.

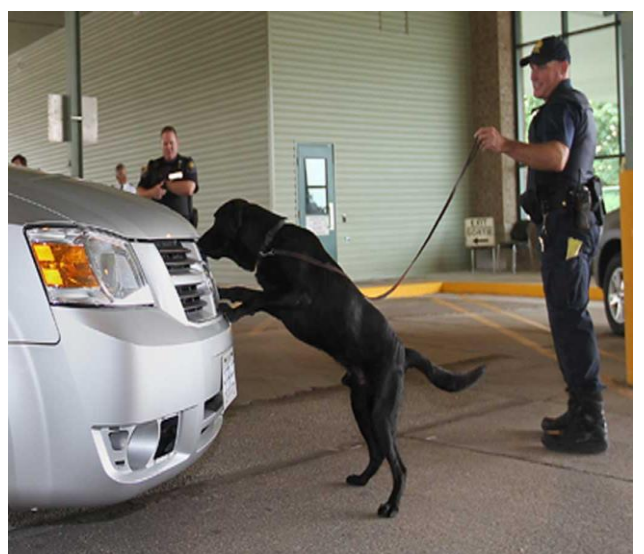
**Exercise 26. Fill in the gaps with the facts from the texts in the correct form translating the words and word-combinations in the brackets.**

One of the most famous ongoing censorship (противоречить) in Canada has been the dispute between Canada Customs and LGBT retail bookstores. Through the 1980s and into the 1990s, Canada Customs (часто) stopped material being (отгружать) to the two stores on the grounds of "obscenity" – although (во многих случаях) the very same material was not considered obscene when being shipped to (основной) bookseller such as Coles or Chapters.

Both stores (часто) had to resort to (судовая система) to challenge the confiscation of their property. In 2000 (Верховный суд) Canada ruled that Canada Customs did not have (полномочия) to make its own judgments about the permissibility of material being shipped to the stores but was permitted to (конфисковать) only material that had (особенно) been ruled by the courts to (устанавливать) an offence under (Уголовный кодекс) of Canada.

**Exercise 27. Read the message and characterize the Customs Self Assessment Program.**

The CSA program gives approved importers a streamlined accounting and paying process for all imported goods. Importers are required to apply for acceptance into the program. A major ongoing project of the CBSA is Advance Commercial Information, which requires shipborne and airborne cargo entering Canada to be registered with the Agency. This assists officials at seaports and airports in their inspections, and allows for the tracking of suspicious materials. These phases of the project were implemented in 2005, with a similar highway and rail cargo program to follow in the near future.



## Import process



## NEW ZEALAND CUSTOMS SERVICE

The Customs Service is a state sector organization of New Zealand whose role is *to provide border control* and protect the community from *potential risks* arising from international trade and travel, as well as collecting duties and taxes on imports to the country. New Zealand's Minister of Customs is the Hon. Maurice Williamson. Customs *lays claim* to being the oldest government department in New Zealand, coming into being on 5 January 1840 when the first Head of Customs was appointed.

Customs has always provided the Government with *revenue* and over the years, *tariffs* and taxes collected by Customs became a major source of revenue. Customs is forecast to collect over \$8 bn in 2005/2006 – over 15% of Crown revenue. Customs has also been used by governments to impose various controls over the movement of people and goods and the production and distribution of particular products, especially alcohol and tobacco. While the fundamental role of the New Zealand Customs Service has not changed since it was first established in the 1840s, its direction has changed over time. From its initial focus of revenue gathering as the *fledgling colony* established itself in the world, *international trade facilitation* became the priority in the 1980s and 1990s.

Now our focus is most emphatically on protecting the security of New Zealand's borders.

The events of September 11, 2001 have extended Customs' traditional *focus on inward and transiting goods* and passengers to include export goods. Customs also exercises controls over restricted and *prohibited imports*, including pornography, drugs, firearms and *harmful substances*, such as *hazardous waste* and *ozone-depleting products*.

The New Zealand Customs Service (Customs) is the government agency with the job of protecting the community from potential risks arising from international trade and travel, while *facilitating the legitimate movement* of people and goods across the border.

The Maori name translates as the authority that screens and protects New Zealand.

They do this by: *intercepting contraband* (such as illegal drugs); *checking travellers and their baggage*, cargo and mail; *assessing and collecting* Customs duties, *excise taxes* & Goods & Services Tax (GST) on imports; protecting New Zealand businesses against illegal trade; enforcing restrictions and prohibitions collecting accurate import / export data.

As New Zealand's gatekeepers, they use intelligence and risk assessment to target their physical checks of containers, vessels or travellers. They also conduct investigations and audits, and prosecute offenders. They work closely with the other border agencies, the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry Quarantine Service and the Immigration Service.

Leadership and excellence in border management enhance the security and prosperity of New Zealand. Protecting New Zealand's border and revenue in order mean that New Zealanders may live in safety while actively participating in the global community.

**Exercise 1. Read the information and render its main idea shortly in English.**



**Exercise 2. Analyze the data in the table and write a small essay on the topic.**

1840	The first head of New Zealand Customs, George Cooper, arrived in New Zealand from New South Wales with Captain Hobson on HMS <i>Herald</i> .
1841	The colony was detached from New South Wales and the Customs Department became a Customs Home Establishment, subject to the control of the Lord Commissioner of the Treasury in the UK.
1844	Customs was abolished on 30 September 1844 when the Government introduced a property tax on all property and income, but left it to the good faith of people to assess themselves.
1845	Following a major decline in tax receipts, in April 1845 the Governor repealed the Property Tax and revived Customs.
1850	The Department was freed from detailed control of the UK Treasury.
1858	Customs Regulations made provision for administration of the Department to be placed in the hands of a Commissioner of Customs appointed by the Governor. The Head of the Department was called the Collector of Customs.
1865	The title of the head of the Customs Department changed to Secretary and Inspector.
1881	The Customs cutter <i>Hawk</i> entered service. The name has become a tradition, with the current patrol boat also called <i>Hawk</i> .
1910	Title of Comptroller adopted for the head of Customs.
1913	The Customs Act 1913 was passed, updating the legislative basis for the Department's work.
1933	The introduction of Sales Tax (as a temporary measure). Replaced by the GST Act that came into force on 1 October 1986.
1938	Import Licensing introduced. (Basic Licences were introduced later in 1958).
1966	Introduction of the Customs Act 1966.
1974	The first drug dogs entered service.
1980	CASPER (Customs & Statistical Processing of Entries & Retrieval) computer system introduced.
1996	New Customs and Excise Act introduced, changes include renaming the department as the New Zealand Customs Service.
1997	CusMod computer system and associated modernised practices introduced.
1998	New Zealand Customs Service internal structure re-organised into national business units.
1999	Border Control Review recommends a more integrated approach to border management. The Government response is to require more focus on a whole-of-government approach.
2001	Customs Strategic Priorities 2001-2004 adopted.
2003	Supply Chain Security Strategy initiated, providing assurance over goods in international trade arriving in, transiting in and exported from New Zealand.
2004	Purchase of 11 additional pieces of non-invasive (x-ray) inspective technology.
2005	Project Guardian implemented, realigning organisation for maximum efficiency.

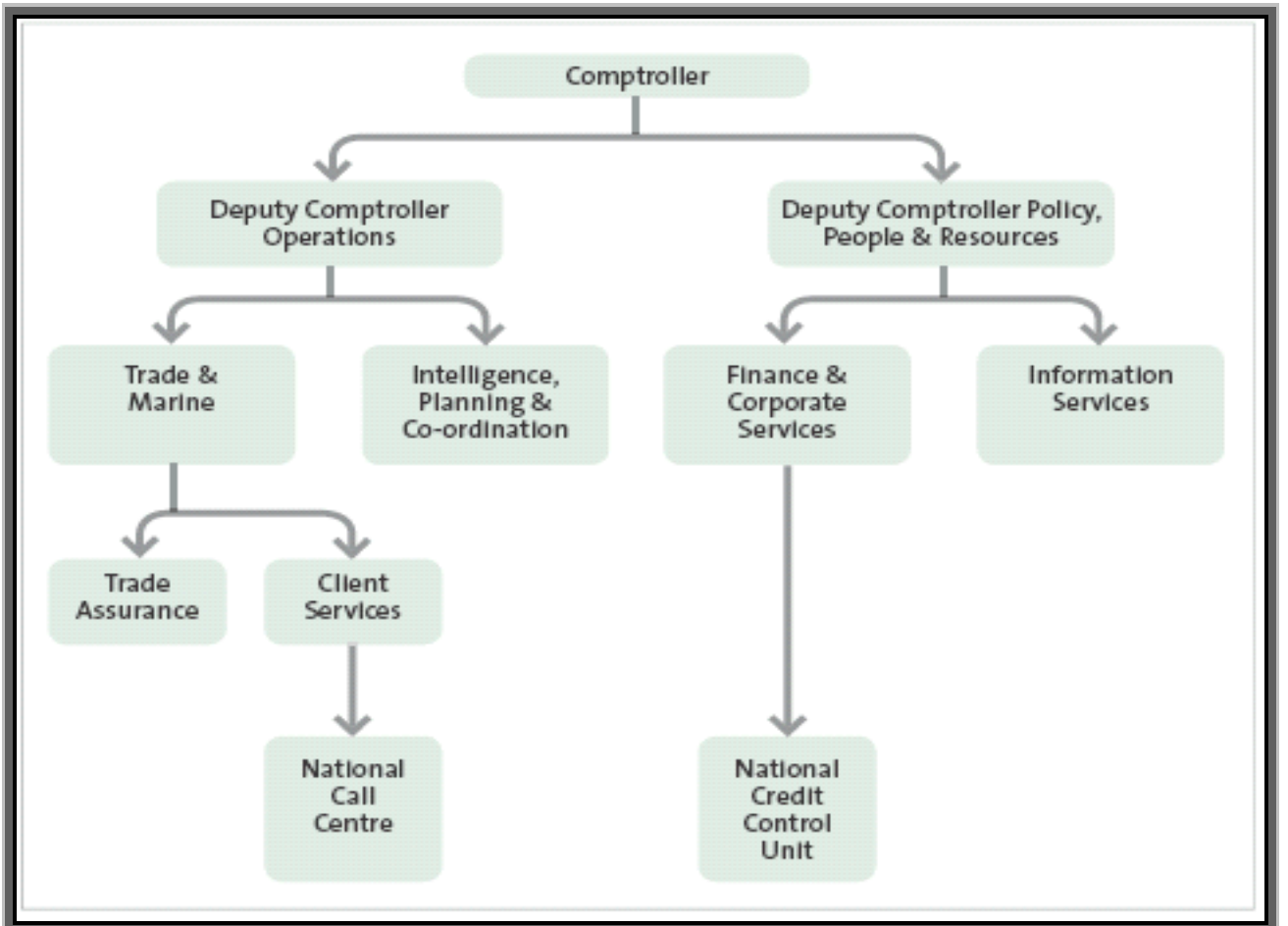
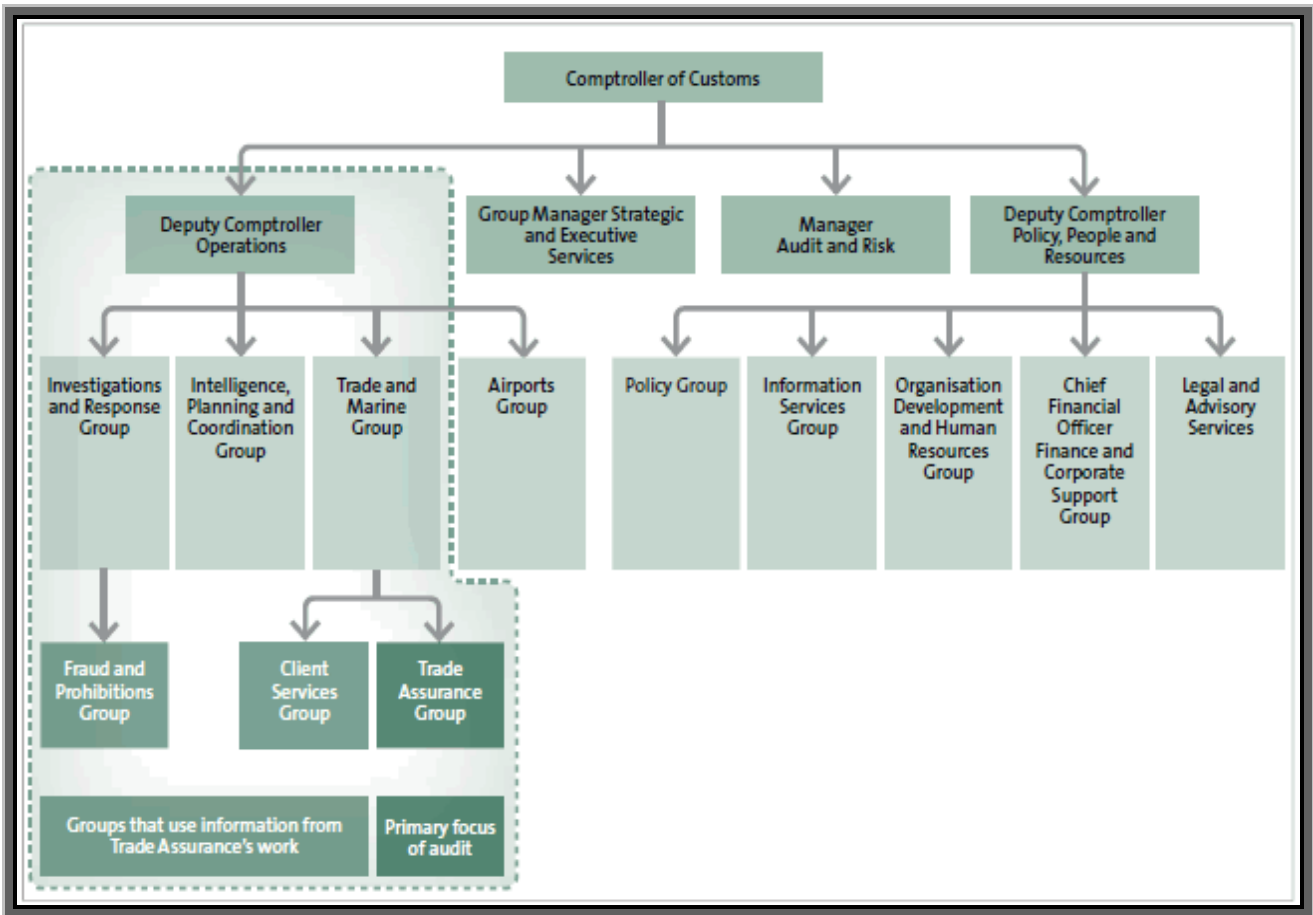
**Exercise 3. Find out the information of the events in 2006-2013 and continue the chart.**

**Exercise 4. Make up a small report and give a talk in class.**

**Exercise 5. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.**

**Exercise 6. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**





**Exercise 7. Characterize the Operational Groups.**

Customs is organised into four interconnected operational units, and also has some responsibilities for the National Maritime Coordination Centre (NMCC). The NMCC is operationally independent, but has direct responsibility and reporting lines to Customs. The Intelligence, Planning and Coordination Group support the Deputy Comptroller Operations and the Operations Management Team in managing the Customs Operations Group. The Group also provides intelligence and risk assessment services.

**Exercise 8. Explain the structure of the Customs in New Zealand.**

Customs has around 1,300 staff around New Zealand, covering the main international airports and seaports. There are 15 locations open to the public with staff based in Hamilton, Queenstown and Timaru. Customs also has offices in Brussels, Beijing, Bangkok, Washington and Canberra. Customs is organised into four interconnected operational units, with Corporate Services providing leadership and direction across the organisation.

**Exercise 9. Explain the values of Customs Officers from their point of view.**

<b>Integrity</b>	We are honest and trustworthy in everything we do, and act with courage in pursuit of the best possible outcomes for the community and the Customs Service
<b>Respect</b>	We are fair and just and always act with respect for the law and for the rights of others. We value the views and contributions of others and actively seek to engage and collaborate for the benefit of New Zealand.
<b>Commitment</b>	We are proud to continue Customs' long tradition of service to the community. We willingly accept the responsibility of helping to keep New Zealand safe, secure and prosperous, and are dedicated to working as One Service to achieve that.
<b>Agility</b>	We are open to new ideas and technologies, responsive to changing needs, and innovative in the way we respond. We work with energy and enthusiasm to produce the best possible outcomes for the community.

**Exercise 10. Analyze the overview on tariffs.**

A specific tariff determines the tariff at the border by placing the amount in relation to the quantity of the good imported; perhaps the tariff might be a certain amount of dollars per bottle of wine or a certain amount of Euro per ton of steel. These types of tariffs are not very interesting to the discussion of customs valuation but the other type of tariff is very much so.

This is done to keep pace with normal price fluctuations and inflation. This paper sets out to examine the historical background of the negotiations on some of the contentious customs valuation issues as well as the compromises that have arisen in the GATT and WTO.

The present Customs House represents a complete redesign and enlargement of an earlier 1844 building by Mortimer Lewis (1796-1879) and by James Barnet (1827-1904).

The earlier building had become too small and overcrowded for the expanding customs work in Sydney, and it took six years before the problem was addressed. The original client department occupied the building until 1990, after which the Federal Government made a gift of it to Sydney City Council together with funds for its refurbishment. Famous artists were commissioned to convert the building into a culture and information centre with restaurants and a large central atrium space.

The future of the building had been hotly contested by various interests including music organizations that to convert it to a recital hall.

**Exercise 11. Write all new words and phrases on the topic.**

**Exercise 12. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 13. Comment on exporters.**

The New Zealand Customs Service plays an integral role in exporting. They facilitate legitimate trade and help secure access for New Zealand exports to overseas markets. This section of the website explains Customs requirements if you are exporting legitimate goods, and provides useful information on a range of topics including prohibited exports, permits, and drawbacks.

**Exercise 14. Comment on responsibilities of the Customs Service.**

The Customs Service is responsible for intercepting contraband, and checks travellers and their baggage, as well as cargo and mail, for banned or prohibited items. It is also responsible for assessing and collecting Customs duties, excise taxes and Goods and Services Tax on imports and protecting New Zealand businesses against illegal trade. It exercises controls over restricted and prohibited imports and exports, including pornography, drugs, firearms and hazardous waste.

**Exercise 15. Explain your opinion of the instrument of government policy.**

Customs tariffs were not just the major source of government revenue. They were a major instrument of government policy. The 19<sup>th</sup> century Victorian economy rested on wool, gold and manufacturing.

The colonial government used import tariffs as a way of protecting these industries. Farming and mining equipment were brought in free, but imported manufactured goods that would compete with local industries were subject to high tariffs.

These duties applied equally to items brought from New South Wales or South Australia as they did to items imported from Europe. Customs houses were built at all the major crossing points into the colony, and customs officers patrolled the borders to prevent smuggling. Compared to the other Australian colonies, Victoria was protectionist, with high tariffs. The debates between free trade and protectionism fuelled the political debates over Federation, and the creation of the Commonwealth of Australia in 1901 brought a welcome relief from the hated customs posts on state borders.

**Exercise 16. Render the score of the text briefly in English.**

As now, one of the main functions of Customs Officers was to prevent smuggling of illegal goods, and to ensure that customs duty was paid on imported goods. When ships arrived at the port, passengers disembarked, the cargo was unloaded and the Customs "Landing Waiter" checked the papers listing the cargo and persons on board. He then superintended the discharge of cargo and determined whether duties had to be paid. Passenger's cabin baggage could be inspected when they disembarked. Because luggage held in the ship's hold would take longer to unload, passengers would typically return the next day to the Customs Shed at the pier or at Spencer Street railway station.

**Exercise 17. Explain your point of view on measurement.**

Calculating the duty payable on a barrel of brandy was a detailed task. The gauger had to measure the barrel to determine its volume. Barrels were irregular in shape, and finding the volume required several measurements and checking tables of figures. Alcoholic content was then measured with a hydrometer. The duty varied according to the alcoholic strength of the spirits. Imported spirits attracted a duty of 12 shillings per gallon; more if the spirits were above "proof" clear the remainder of their luggage.



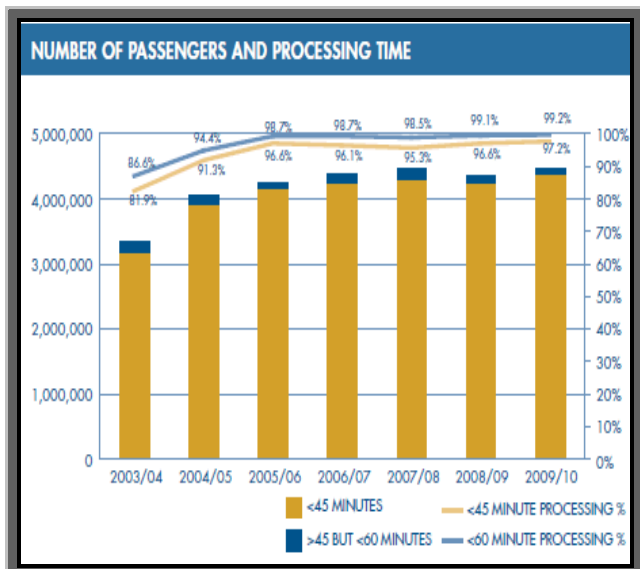
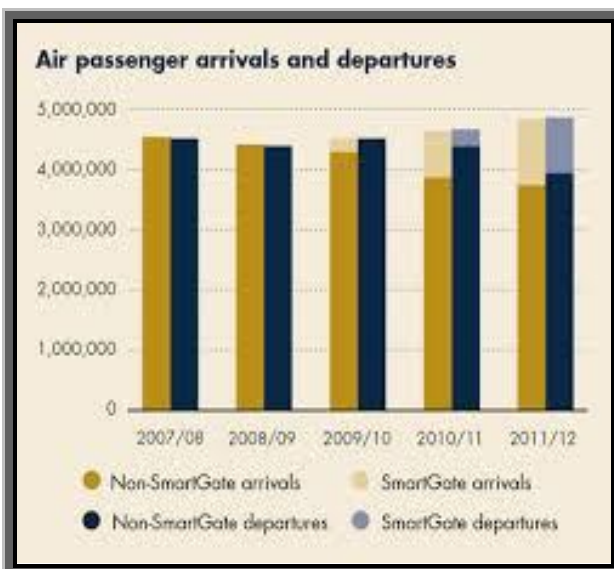
**Exercise 18. Explain Business Opportunities.**

Customs & Border Protection purchases a diverse range of commodities from the procurement and maintenance of Customs and Border Protection's fleet of ships to simple purchases for office administration including stationery & cleaning, under the Financial Management Framework. CBP operates within a devolved procurement structure providing opportunities for businesses Australia wide, and complies with the Financial Management and Accountability Act 1997, its regulations and orders. CBP must also comply with the various Department of Finance and Deregulations Guidance's and other relevant legislation and policy.

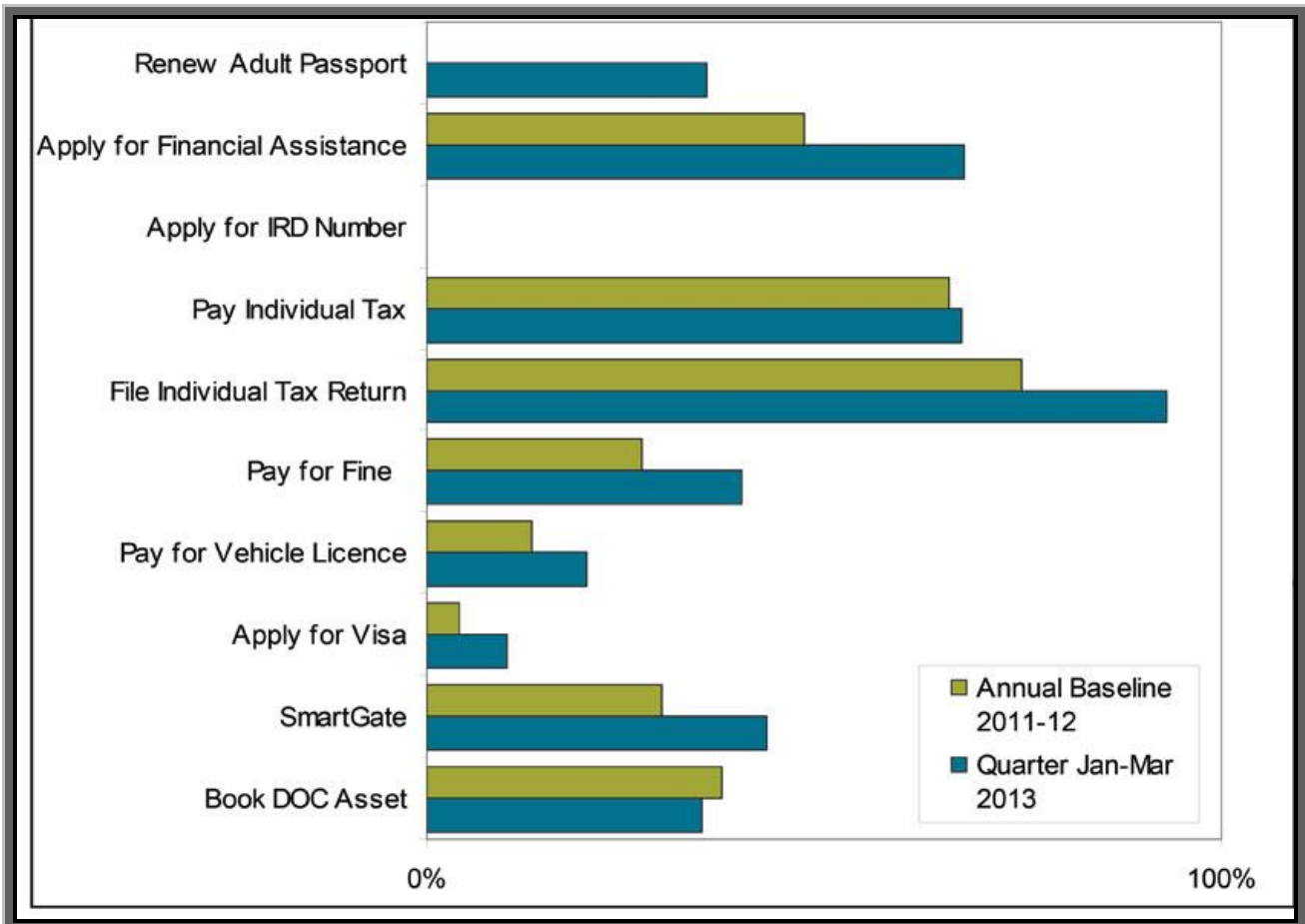
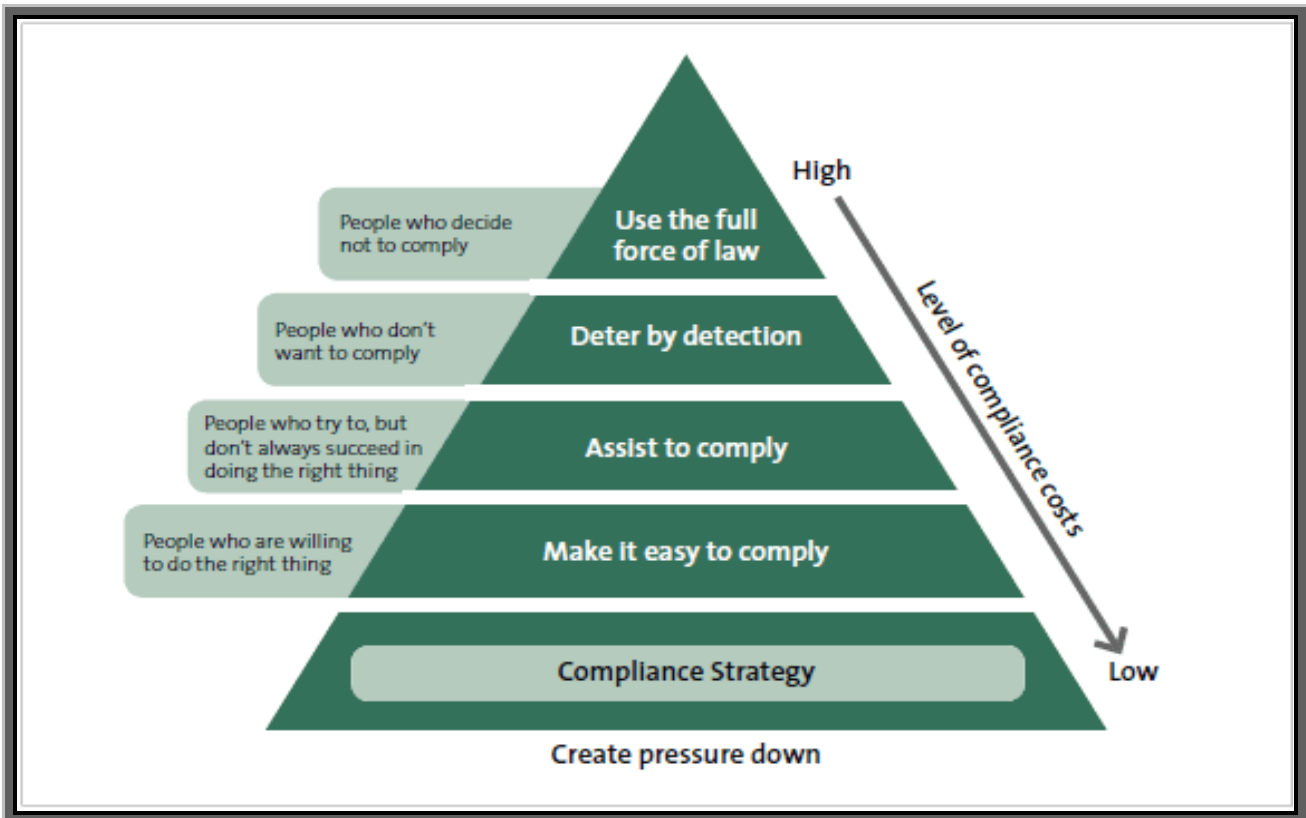
**Exercise 19. The Dictation Test**

From 1901 customs officers were given the power to exclude all non-Europeans. This became the cornerstone of the so-called White Australia Policy. In the face of considerable international criticism, officials looked for a way to exclude people without making it seem due to race.

The answer was the notorious Dictation Test. Immigrants could be required to pass a language test in any European language. If they failed, they were refused entry. Maltese applicants were given a test in Dutch. This technique continued to be used by Customs until the early 1960s.







## CUSTOMS & EXCISE DEPARTMENT (HONG KONG)

Customs & Excise Department	
 香 港 海 關 Customs and Excise Department	
Agency overview	
Formed	1909
Jurisdiction	Hong Kong
Headquarters	8th Floor Harbour Building, 38 Pier Road, Central
Employees	5,632 (March 2008)
Annual budget	2,308.1m HKD (2008-09)
Agency executives	Mr. Richard MF Yuen, JP, Commissioner of Customs and Excise Ho Lok Au Yeung, Deputy Commissioner
Parent agency	Security Bureau (Hong Kong)

The Customs and Excise Department (C&ED) is responsible for the protection of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region against smuggling; of consumer interests; of intellectual property rights; collection of Government revenue on dutiable goods; the detection and deterrence of drug trafficking and abuse of controlled drugs; facilitation of legitimate trade; upholding Hong Kong's trading integrity. Originally, Hong Kong Customs was Import and Export Management Predecessor, was founded in 1909, initially it is responsible for the main revenue protection work.

In 1949, Import and Export Management and Supplies Department, The Department of Trade and Industry Department merged into the Department of Trade and Industry. Trade and Industry Department in 1962 settled up Revenue Service.

In 1977, it was renamed. The Hong Kong Customs and Excise Department, on 1 August 1982 became independent from Trade and Industry Department.

The department is headed by the Commissioner of Customs and Excise. As at 1 April 2004, the department has an establishment of 4 931 posts, of which nine are directorate officers, 3 804 are members of the Customs and Excise Service, 504 are Trade Controls Officers and 614 are staff of the General and Common Grades. There are five branches.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the Agency Overview.**

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. What is the Customs and Excise Department responsible for? 2. When did some department merge into the Department of Trade and Industry? 3 When was it renamed? 4. Who heads the department? 5. How many posts have been established? 6. How many directorate officers are there? 7. How many Trade Controls Officers are there? 8. When did Trade and Industry Department settle up Revenue Service? 9. When did The Hong Kong Customs and Excise Department independent from Trade and Industry Department? 10. When was Hong Kong Customs founded? 11. What was it responsible for initially? 12. What was Hong Kong Customs originally? 13. What settled up Revenue Service? 14. How many posts are there in the department? 15. How many directorate officers are there?

**Exercise 3. Characterize the five branches.**

**The Administration and Excise Branch** is responsible for matters relating to dutiable commodities under the purview of the Financial Services and the Treasury Bureau, the international customs liaison and cooperation and the overall staff management and general administration of the Customs and Excise Service, including staff training, planning and provision of resources and departmental facilities; and the housekeeping of the Office of Dutiable Commodities Administration, the Customs Liaison Bureau, the Office of Management Services, the Office of Service Administration and the Office of Training and Development.

**The Boundary and Ports Branch** is responsible for matters relating to import and export controls under the purview of the Security Bureau and the housekeeping of the Airport Command, Control Points Command and the Ports and Maritime Command.

**The Intelligence and Investigation Branch** is responsible for matters relating to recreational drugs and anti-smuggling activities under the schedule of the Security Bureau and issues relating to intellectual property under the purview of the Commerce, Industry and Technology Bureau; formulation of policies and strategies regarding the application of intelligence and risk management in Customs operations and the housekeeping of the Customs Drug Investigation Bureau, the Intellectual Property Investigation Bureau, the Intelligence Bureau, the Revenue and General Investigation Bureau and the Special Task Force.

**The Trade Controls Branch** is responsible for trade controls matters under the schedule of the Commerce, Industry and Technology Bureau and consumer protection matters under the schedule of the Economic Development and Labour Bureau, and comprises the Textiles Tactical Investigation Bureau, the Trade Inspection and Verification Bureau, the Trade Investigation Bureau, the General Investigation and Systems Bureau and the Consumer Protection and Prosecution Bureau.

**The Civil Secretariat** is responsible for all matters concerning departmental administration, financial management, information technology development and internal audit. The branch comprises the Office of Departmental Administration, the Office of Financial Administration, the Office of Information Technology, the Internal Audit Division and the Information Unit.

**Exercise 4. Explain the scope of revenue protection.**

There is no tariff on goods entering Hong Kong, but excise duties are charged on four groups of commodities. These commodities are hydrocarbon oil, liquor, methyl alcohol and tobacco.

These duties make no differentiation between imported commodities, or commodities manufactured locally for domestic consumption. In 2003, the C&ED collected \$6,484 mln. excise duty. Under the Dutiable Commodities Ordinance, the C&ED controls breweries, distilleries, tobacco factories, oil installations, ship and aircraft duty-free stores, and industrial and commercial establishments dealing with dutiable commodities; and supervises licensed, general bonded and public bonded warehouses. Licences are issued to those who import, export, manufacture or store dutiable commodities.

The C&ED also assesses the First Registration Tax of vehicles under the Motor Vehicle (First Registration Tax) Ordinance. The Anti-illicit Cigarette Investigation Division is specially tasked to detect syndicated smuggling, distribution and peddling of dutiable cigarettes. The Diesel Oil Enforcement Division focuses its efforts on detecting the smuggling and misuse of illicit fuels.



**Exercise 5. Explain the ways of prevention and detection of smuggling.**

The C&ED prevents and detects smuggling activities under the Import and Export Ordinance and enforces the licensing controls on prohibited articles by inspecting cargoes imported and exported by air, sea and land; processing passengers and their baggage at entry /exit points; and searching aircraft, vessels and vehicles entering and leaving Hong Kong. The Joint Police/Customs Anti-Smuggling Task Force is dedicated to combating smuggling activities by sea. The Control Points Investigation Division is tasked to strengthen the intelligence collection capability at the land boundary and suppress the cross-boundary smuggling activities. The Hong Kong International Airport is one of the busiest airports in the world with a daily arrival of about 257 scheduled flights, bringing into Hong Kong a daily average of 25 989 passengers and 2 838 tonnes of imported cargoes.

In 2008, the throughput of air passengers was 29 mln. whereas the throughput of air cargoes was about 4.64 mln. tonnes. Hong Kong is one of the busiest container ports in the world. It handled 20.4 mln. TEUs (20-foot equivalent units) in 2008. Ships and vessels are subject to customs check. Cargoes are either examined on board sea freighters or after off-loading.

In 2003, a total of 8.6 mln. passengers arrived in Hong Kong from the Mainland and Macau by sea and by helicopters. They were processed at the China Ferry Terminal in Tsim Sha Tsui and the Hong Kong-Macau Ferry Terminal in Central. In addition, a daily average of 49 helicopter flights between Hong Kong and Macau are operated at the Hong Kong-Macau Ferry Terminal.

Four Customs launches conduct maritime patrol in the territorial waters round the clock whereas four high-speed pursuit crafts and two shallow water patrol launches are employed to carry out interception at sea. On average, 156,339 passengers arrive from the Mainland by land daily and they are processed at Man Kam To, Sha Tau Kok, Lok Ma Chau and Lo Wu control points.

Additionally, 2,991 passengers enter Hong Kong by through-trains and are processed at Hung Hom Railway Station. Goods imported by road are checked at Man Kam To, Sha Tau Kok and Lok Ma Chau. In 2008 over 20 mln. tonnes of cargoes were imported through the land boundary control points.

**Exercise 6. Analyze the ways of trade controls and consumer protection.**

The C&ED safeguards the certification and licensing systems which are of vital importance to Hong Kong's trading integrity. The department deters and investigates offences of origin fraud, circumvention of textiles licensing and quota control. It also investigates offences of import and export of strategy commodities and other prohibited articles not under and in accordance with a licence.

The department carries out cargo examination at control points, factory inspections, audit checks and consignment checks. It is also the department's enforcement strategy to administer a monetary reward scheme to encourage the supply of information on textile origin fraud.

The department is a member of the Hong Kong Compliance Office set up to assist the Central People's Government in implementing the Chemical Weapons Convention. It enforces licensing control on rice and consumer protection legislation relating to weights and measures, markings on fineness of precious metals, and safety of toys, children's products and consumer goods.

The department verifies import and export declarations to ensure accurate trade statistics, assesses and collects declaration charges and the clothing industry training levy.

**Exercise 7. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.**

№	Activity			
	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				



**Exercise 8. Render the score of anti-drug operations.**

The C&ED and the Hong Kong Police Force (HKPF) are responsible for anti-drug law enforcement. Both have achieved encouraging results in recent years. Seizures of illicit drugs in 2013 included 52.87 kilograms of heroin, 562.15 kilograms of herbal cannabis, 24.46 kilograms of cannabis resin, 8.33 kilograms of cocaine, 41.1 kilograms and 1 272 tablets of methylamphetamine, 35.56 kilograms and 141 038 tablets of ecstasy-type table, 51.3 kilograms and 238 tablets of ketamine, and substantial quantities of various narcotics, analgesics and tranquillisers.

A total of 8,652 persons were arrested for drug offences of whom 2,827 were arrested for major offences such as drug trafficking and manufacturing, and the remaining 5 825 were arrested for minor offences such as possession of illicit drugs. Apart from intercepting smuggling of drugs at entry / exit control points, the department launches proactive investigations and surveillance operations on syndicated drug trafficking activities throughout Hong Kong.

The department flexibly deploys drug detector dogs and introduces advanced technologies, such as Mobile X-ray Vehicle Scanning Systems and Vehicle X-ray Inspection Systems, to assist anti-drug work. In addition, the department closely monitors the trend of drug abuse, in particular the growing popularity of psychotropic substances among the young and cross boundary drug crimes.

The C&ED also investigates laundering of drug proceeds and initiates applications for freezing and confiscating assets derived from drug trafficking.

The department enforces a licensing system to control the import, export and dealing of 25 specific precursor chemicals which can be used for the manufacture of dangerous drugs. It exchanges intelligence and co-operates closely with the HKPF and various drug enforcement agencies on the Mainland and overseas in the fight against drug traffickers both locally and at international level.



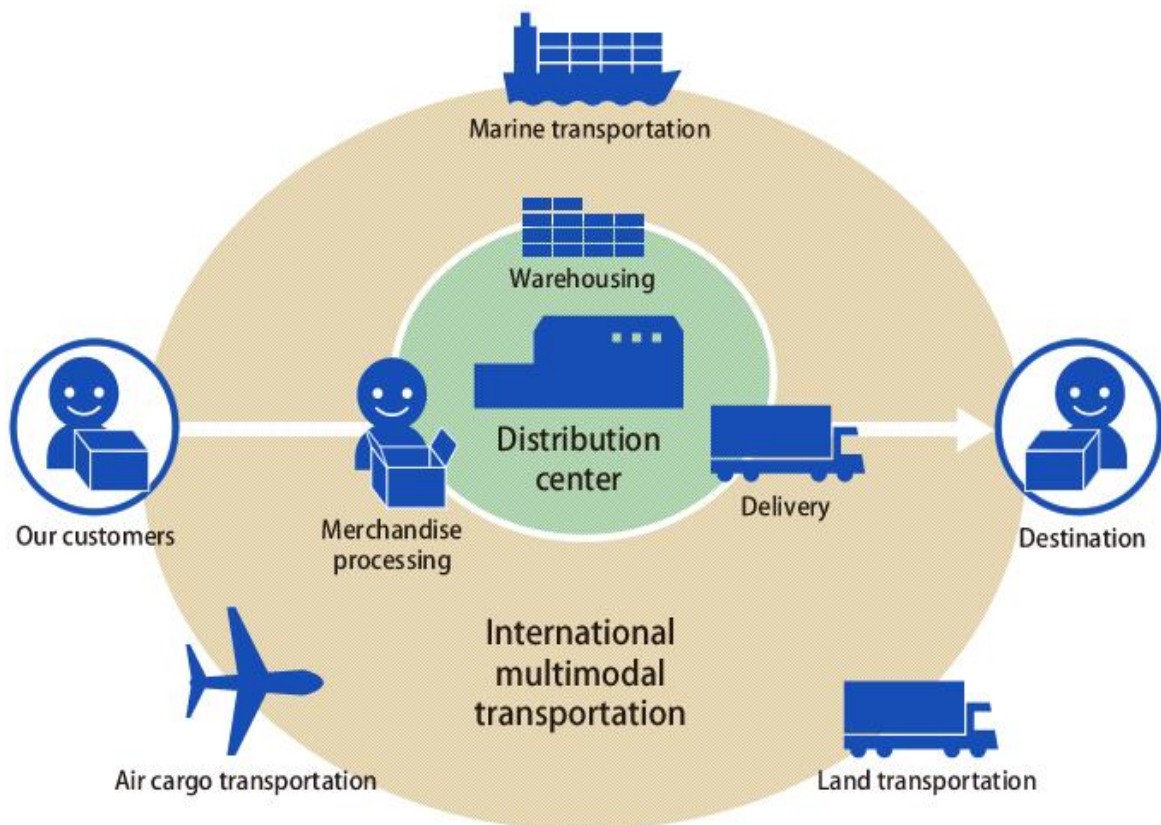


**Exercise 9. Render the contents of intellectual property rights protection.**

The C&ED has the mission to defend the interests of intellectual property rights owners and legitimate traders through staunch enforcement of the Copyright Ordinance, the Trade Descriptions Ordinance and the Prevention of Copyright Piracy Ordinance.

The department investigates and prosecutes copyright offences relating to literary, dramatic, musical and artistic works, sound recordings, cinematographic films, broadcasts and other published works under the Copyright Ordinance. It also takes enforcement action against commercial goods with forged trademark or false label under the Trade Descriptions Ordinance. At the manufacture level, the Prevention of Copyright Piracy Ordinance requires local optical disc and stamper manufacturers to obtain licenses from the department and mark on all their products specific identification codes.

The Import and Export Ordinance imposes licensing controls on the import and export of optical disc mastering and replication equipment. A 147-strong Special Task Force has also been playing an important role in combating copyright piracy, and serves as a mobile brigade to reinforce the suppression of other customs-related crimes.





## CHINESE MARITIME CUSTOMS SERVICE

The Chinese Maritime Customs Service was a Chinese governmental tax collection agency and information service from its founding in 1854 until its bifurcation in 1949 into services operating in the Republic of China on Taiwan, and in the People's Republic of China. Until 1912 it was named the Imperial Maritime Customs Service.

Largely staffed at senior levels by foreigners, the Service was controlled by Chinese central government throughout its history. It was effectively established by foreign consuls in Shanghai in 1854 to collect maritime trade taxes that were going unpaid due to the inability of Chinese officials to collect them during the Taiping Rebellion. Its responsibilities soon grew to include domestic customs administration, postal administration, harbour and waterway management, weather reporting, and anti-smuggling operations. It mapped, lit, and policed the China coast and the Yangtze. It conducted loan negotiations, currency reform, and financial and economic management.

The Service published monthly Returns of Trade, a regular series of Aids to Navigation and reports on weather and medical matters. It also represented China at over twenty world fairs and exhibition, ran some educational establishments, and conducted some diplomatic activities. Britons dominated the foreign staff of the Customs, but there were large numbers of German, U.S., French, and latterly Japanese staff amongst others. Chinese began to be promoted into senior positions from 1929 onwards.



**Exercise 1. Explain the structure of organization shortly in English.**

**Exercise 2. Define the function of Inspectors-General.**

Its first Inspector-General was Horatio Nelson Lay, who was dismissed in 1863. He was replaced with Robert Hart, who served as 'IG' until his death in 1911, and who oversaw the development of the Service and its activities to its fullest form. Hart was succeeded by Sir Francis Aglen (1869-1932) and then by his own nephew, Sir Frederick Maze (1871-1959), who served from 1929-1943. Amongst the many well-known figures who worked for the Customs in China were Willard Straight, botanist Augustine Henry, linguist Thomas Francis Wade, novelist and journalists Bertram Lenox Simpson and J.O.P. Bland, and historian H.B. Morse. In January 1950 the last foreign Inspector-General, American Lester Knox Little, resigned and the responsibilities of the Service were divided between what eventually became the Customs General Administration of the People's Republic of China, and the Republic of China Directorate General of Customs on Taiwan. It was the only bureaucratic agency of the Chinese government to operate continuously as an integrated entity from 1842 to 1950.

**Exercise 3. Analyze the activities of Customs in the USA, the UK and Canada and compare them.**

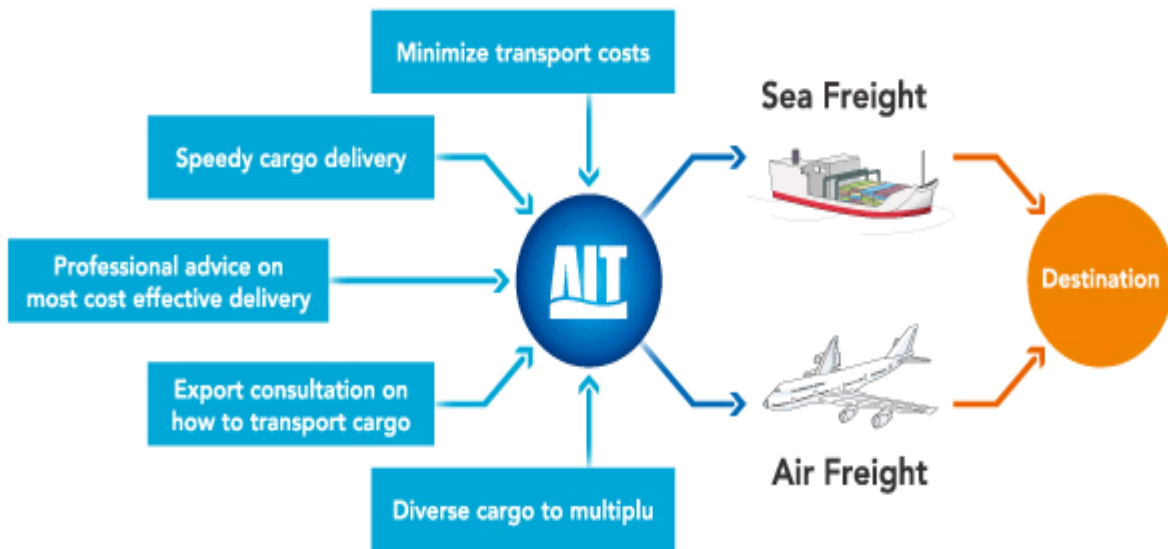
**Exercise 4. Analyze the activities of Customs in Hong Kong and China and compare them.**

**Exercise 5. Render the score of the article briefly in English.**

AIT is an integrated logistics company with all the logistics expertise that specializes mainly in China and Southeast Asia. According to the demand of the customer such as "I want to bring down costs" and "I want to deliver it fast" etc, being able to propose the best service such as "When is it the best to transport it which service of which sea route?" is the largest advantage of AIT. AIT will support all logistics processes from the shipment of maritime transport, an air transport, a customs clearance, and a domestic distribution, etc. in total. Please leave it to AIT in case of the trade and logistics.



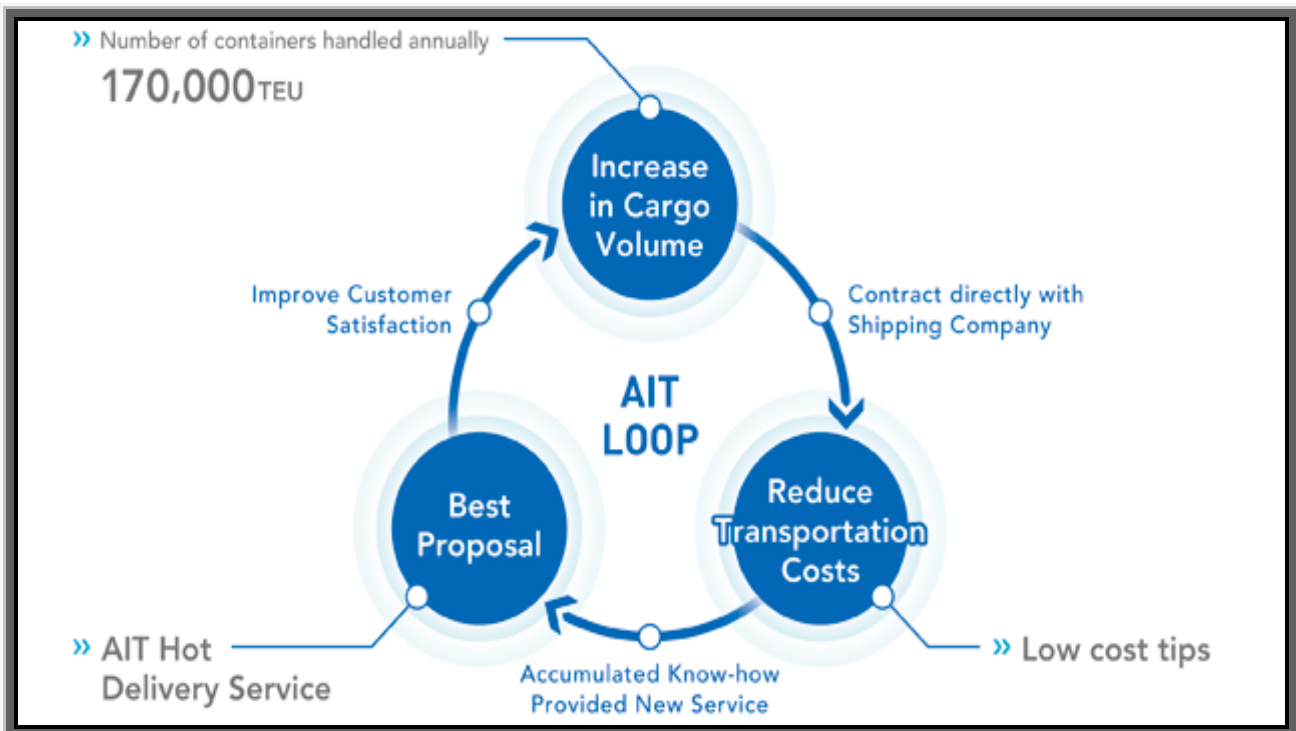


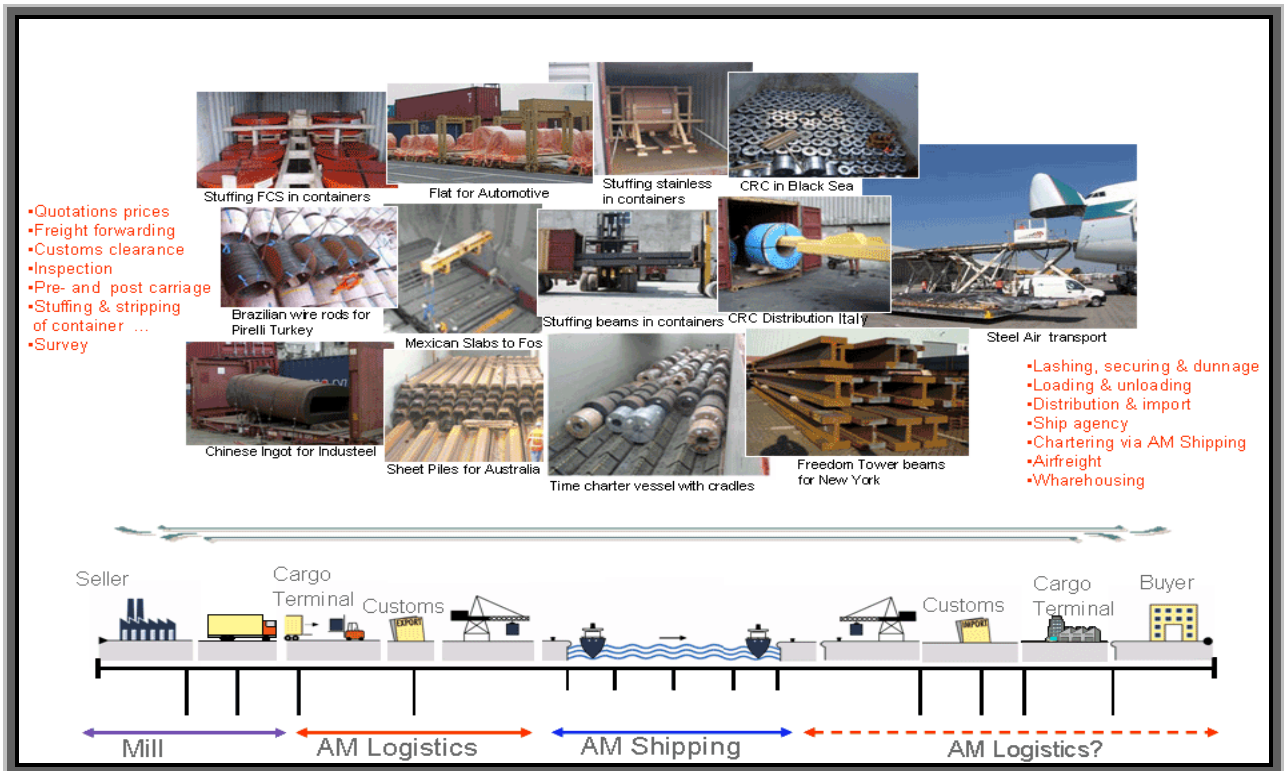


**Exercise 6. Read the text and title it.**

Handling of year's 170,000 (Teu) containers proven AIT possible so the best setvice.

AIT, cultivating the knowhow by doing logistics business that specializes in China and Southeast Asia has been providing the best and the finest services. Thank you for the Trust to provide the best service for the customer and, as a result, AIT achieved handling containers of number approx. 170,000(TEU) a year (actual quantity of 169,956TEU for the year 2013). And, to propose finer service, the transportation cost is decreased based on this handling result. It ties to the improvement of a further quality. This virtuous circle is a source of the AIT service that maintains "Low-cost and high quality", and it is trust and proof of results. AIT keeps running so as not to root out the power of this circulation that keeps evolving.





Specialized maritime & logistics services



## AUSTRALIAN CUSTOMS & BORDER PROTECTION SERVICE

The first Customs officer arrived in Melbourne in 1836, two years after its founding.

Governor Bourke in Sydney had to accept the illegal settlement at Port Phillip by John Batman and his fellow entrepreneurs. There was little he could do to prevent it.

But Bourke could at least ensure that smuggling was prevented and that customs duties were paid on all goods brought into Melbourne. Robert Webb established his customs house in a round white tent pitched beside the Yarra River, close to where the boats unloaded their stock and supplies.

The customs service immediately paid its way. In 1837 Webb collected duties of 3000 from 140 ships, far more than his annual salary of 200. Melbourne's maritime trade expanded rapidly through the 1840s. Manufactured goods for the expanding town and surrounding farming districts came through Melbourne's port. Large amounts of imported spirits and tobacco generated much customs revenue. Even stock and wool that was loaded at Geelong had to be cleared through customs at Melbourne, an arrangement that infuriated Geelong merchants. In 1840 Melbourne was declared a free warehousing port, which meant that merchants could hold their imported goods in bonded warehouses, and only pay customs duty once they sold the goods.

Commercial bond stores sprung up around the port in the vicinity of the customs house.

The gold rush in the 1850s brought a dramatic increase in trade and a constant flow of immigrants to Victoria. When Victoria was proclaimed a separate colony in 1850 there had been concern whether the new government could raise sufficient revenue. The Customs department was the government's own gold mine. Duties were levied on all the imported luxuries brought into the wealthy colony, while a tax was levied on the export of gold. Customs revenue in 1850 totalled 84,000.

In 1854 the customs officers collected the same amount in a month. Not everybody appreciated this success. Offices of navigation companies and ship owners were nearby. The Melbourne Morning Herald fumed that customs officers were engaged in nothing more than in so disguising the medicine of taxation that the patient shall take it without being aware of the precise. During the 1850s, an endless procession of customs agents and ship captains climbed the stairs to the Customs House.

By this time, the building stood at the centre of a busy maritime precinct. The gateway to the Victorian goldfields and agricultural districts, the bustling port was a scene of continual activity.

Newly arrived immigrants crowded the wharves. Ships brought supplies for the new colony, and departed with Australian wool and gold. Imported goods were hauled to the nearby Western Markets, or stored in the many commercial bond stores that ringed the area.

Private wharves and crowded warehouses lined the waterfront, and the numerous hotels, attracted by the commercial opportunities in the busy precinct, offered temporary accommodation for travellers and immigrants, and entertainment to visiting sailors. The Australian Customs and Border Protection Service is the Australian Federal Government agency responsible for managing the security and integrity of the Australian border, facilitating the movement of legitimate international travellers and goods, and collecting border related duties and taxes.

The Service employs nearly 6000 people around Australia and overseas and is headquartered in Canberra. Protecting the Australian community by intercepting illegal and potentially harmful goods, such as drugs and weapons, is a high priority. Sophisticated techniques and equipment are used to target high-risk aircraft, vessels, cargo, postal items and travellers. This includes using intelligence, and computer-based profiling and analysis, Detector dogs, Smartgate, world leading container x-ray facilities, Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) monitoring and other means.



In performing its role, Customs works closely with other government agencies: the Federal Police, the Quarantine and Inspection Service, the Department of Immigration and Citizenship, the Department of Defence and the Australian Fisheries Management Authority.

Australia's borders extend into the 200-nautical-mile (370 km) Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) where Customs has a key role in addressing maritime threats through the Border Protection Command (BPC), Customs and Department of Defence partnership. The Australian TV series shows the daily work of the Australian Customs Service at airports, sea borders and internal immigration breaches.

**Exercise 1. Summarize your findings about the history of Australian Customs Agency.**

**Exercise 2. Comment important information.**

Customs import entry procedures are based upon self-assessment by importers, including self-assessment of the correct classification of goods. Importers should be aware of all their obligations in this regard. Penalties may be imposed for the submission of incorrect or misleading information.

However, it is important to stress that the CISC can not complete customs import entries on behalf of importers. The responsibility to classify the goods and complete documentation remains with the importer. While it is not a requirement, it is recommended that importers unsure of their ability to accurately classify goods consider employing the services of a customs broker. Brokers are not part of Customs, but are professionals who specialize in the clearance of imported goods and are licensed by Customs. They may be contacted by reference to the yellow pages of local telephone directories under "Customs Brokers", or by contacting the local branch of the Customs Brokers Council of Australia.

When making business decisions about future imports, the Tariff Advice service provided by Customs may be of assistance. However, it must be noted that this service is designed for *intended imports of new goods* to allow business decisions to be made. It is not designed to deliver real-time advice. The service standard for the provision of advice under normal circumstances is 30 days and it can take longer at times of heavy demand. Advice is given only on specific goods from a specific manufacturer and once an advice is given, it must be followed.

**Exercise 3. Explain the kinds of Customs Tariff.**

Goods imported into Australia require classification under Customs Tariff Act 1995. This page will provide links to documents that will assist in this process.

The **Working Tariff page** gives access to an online version of the Australian Customs Service document titled 'Combined Australian Customs Tariff Nomenclature and Statistical Classification' and commonly known as the Working Tariff Pages.

The **Precedents page** relates to considered decisions made by Customs on classification of particular types of goods.

The **Tariff Advice System page** provides information upon using the Tariff Advice System to obtain advance rulings on specific goods before they are imported.

The **Tariff Updates page** provides a range of information and notifications of changes to, or impacting on, the Tariff.





**Exercise 4. Explain the tasks of protecting borders.**

Customs plays an important role in protecting Australia's borders from the entry of illegal and harmful goods and unauthorized people. It must carry out this role while not impeding the legitimate movement of people and goods across the border. Customs contributes to the whole-of-government approach to secure Australia from potential terrorist threats. Cargo intervention, passenger screening and first-port boarding rates are at an all-time high. International and inter-agency cooperation continue to play a vital role in protecting our borders. Customs remains focused on intercepting illicit drugs and other items potentially harmful to the community. Customs plays a vital role in protecting Australia's borders from the entry of illegal and harmful goods and unauthorized people.

The Customs Hotline is a community participation program which draws on the knowledge and expertise of people living and travelling throughout Australia to report potential or actual illegal activities. The hotline is open 24 hours a day 7 days a week.

**Exercise 5. Read about Border Technologies and try to understand them.**

Customs uses a wide range of technology in protecting against terrorism and the movement of illicit drugs and prohibited imports. Border technologies include any equipment that aids the detection, search, examination or surveillance of ships, aircraft, goods or persons entering or departing Australia: container examination; body scan; trace-particle detector; Smartgate; closed-circuit TV (CCTV) advisory service; gamma-ray; radio communications; feedback.





**Exercise 6. Analyze the Detector Dog Program and make your conclusions.**

Customs Detector Dog Program plays an important role in helping to protect Australia from prohibited imports such as drugs, firearms and explosives.

Detector dog teams are trained to find goods hidden in luggage, parcels, mail, cargo containers, vessels, vehicles, and aircraft and on people. In the past, detector dog teams were trained to find only narcotics. In 2003, in response to the need to strengthen security requirements at Australia's border, the Detector Dog Program was expanded to include firearms and component parts, ammunition, explosives and chemical precursors.

This initiative drew on the experience of both domestic and international agencies. Customs detector dogs support Federal, State and Territory police and other government agencies in search operations. Customs is continually looking for ways to improve training methods and new applications for detector dog teams. This includes currency detection.



**Exercise 7. Explain the score of Northern Operations.**

ACV *Triton* is a large armed patrol and response vessel which commenced operations with Customs out of Darwin on 2 February 2007.

*Triton* has significantly enhanced Customs capability to patrol and enforce the northern fisheries since this date. A former hydrographic survey vessel in the UK, *Triton* was selected for its range, speed and capability of operating independently or as a command ship, working in tandem with other Customs and Royal Australian Navy patrol boats. The diesel-electric powered 98-metre vessel is one of the world's largest motorized trimarans, with a top speed of 20 knots and is capable of operating at sea for extended periods. It is armed with twin deck-mounted 0.50 caliber machine guns and equipped with two, high-speed tenders for boarding operations. *Triton* is operated by a civilian crew of 14 and can carry up to 28 Maritime Enforcement Officers whose primary role is to undertake armed Customs boarding operations.

There is a capacity to hold up to 30 apprehended persons on board for short periods until they can be transferred ashore for processing and potential prosecution. Medical services are provided by a fully qualified and equipped intensive care paramedic.

**Exercise 8. Read the message and answer the questions.**

1. What is Triton like? 2. When was it built? 3. What has it significantly enhanced? 4. What has it enforced? 5. Why was Triton selected? 6. What are characteristics of it? 7. What is a top speed of the world's largest motorized trimarans? 8. Is it capable of operating at sea for extended periods? 9. How is it armed? 10. How strong is its crew? 11. What is a top speed of the world's largest motorized trimarans? 12. How many Maritime Enforcement Officers are there? 13. Where does Customs Detector Dog Program play an important role? 14. When was the Detector Dog Program was expanded to include firearms and component parts, ammunition, explosives and chemical precursors? 15. What drew on the experience of both domestic and international agencies?

**Exercise 9. Remember towing and transportation services.**

As part of the Government's anti-illegal fishing strategy, Customs has identified a panel of vessels to deliver towing and transportation services in support of Customs and Navy apprehensions. Customs has entered into contracts with owners / operators of 20 charter vessels to provide services as needed on a stand-by basis. The vessels are based in the ports of Dampier, Broome, Darwin, Cairns and Townsville and range from large research ships to oil and gas industry re-supply vessels and prawn fishing trawlers. The vessels are suitably certified to carry the required number of crew, Customs officials and in the case of transport vessels, apprehended illegal foreign fishers. These towing and transport vessels free up Customs and Navy patrol boats to concentrate on patrolling Australia's.





**Exercise 10. Translate the words and word-combinations into Ukrainian.**

Anti-illegal fishing strategy; transportation services; charter vessels; to provide services; fishing trawlers; crew; port; transport vessels; illegal foreign fishers; patrolling; to free up.

**Exercise 11. Read the passage and try to understand the figures.**

ACV Ashmore Guardian provides a permanent near presence in the Ashmore Reef and Cartier Island Marine Reserves provide a greater degree of monitoring and compliance.

Ashmore Guardian is a 35 metre long, 339 tonne vessel which was specially modified to be capable of carrying up to ten Customs officers and government officials. Ashmore Guardian will enhance surveillance and enforcement activities undertaken by Customs and Australian Defence Force aircraft and patrol boats which are coordinated by the Border Protection Command to protect Australia's offshore maritime areas. The two marine reserves, covering an area of 750 km<sup>2</sup>, are about 320 km off the Australian coast but only 150 km south of the Indonesian Island of Roti.

Traditional Indonesian fishermen are allowed to fish in the area under a Memorandum of Understanding between Australia and Indonesia. Within a small area of Ashmore Reserve only limited fishing for personal use is allowed.

**Exercise 12. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 13. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 14. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

**Exercise 15. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**



### Exercise 16. What is Customs Marine Unit like?

The Maritime Operations Support Branch provides maritime surface and air assets and associated support capability to Enforcement Operations and Border Protection Command. Customs has overall command of the Customs supplied air and sea assets with operational control being assigned to operational areas. In undertaking this responsibility the Branch provides:

- training of the maritime workforce, either internally or through external providers;
- oversight and auditing of officers' skills, operating procedures and marine qualifications marine through its Standards section;
- management of services and maintenance contracts both in the marine and aviation sectors;
- management of the marine workforce ensuring that appropriately skilled officers are efficiently assigned to the various Customs vessels including contracted vessels;
- vessel maintenance (engineering) and logistic support to ensure the vessels are fit for purpose;
- a variety of communications support in the marine environment.

CMU within the Maritime Operations Support Branch provides personnel support to the Customs Bay class vessels and civil vessels chartered by Customs to undertake surveillance response activities within Australia's exclusive economic zones.

The Customs Bay class vessels are 38 meters overall with a range of about 1000 nautical miles at a cruising speed of 20 knots. They can accommodate up to 16 people for extended periods. Bay class vessels investigate possible or confirmed incursions into Australian maritime territory and visit remote or otherwise inaccessible areas within Australia's offshore territories. Each Bay class has two 6.4 meter tenders capable of carrying two crew and four passengers on transits of up to 30 nm from the mother ship. Tenders are powered by twin 90HP outboards.

Internal fuel capacity provides an adequate cruising range. Tenders are deployed and recovered by a compensated davit system which allows safe and rapid launch / recovery of tenders in a range of sea conditions. Customs vessels are fitted with deck-mounted weapon systems to better enable them to deal with border incursions and other constabulary operations at sea.

All vessels have been fitted with a 7.62 mm general-purpose machine gun. Bay class crewmembers also carry sidearm for personal protection.



## WHAT IS SMARTGATE LIKE?

SmartGate gives some travellers arriving into Australia's international airports the option to self-process through passport control. It uses the data in the ePassport and face recognition technology to perform the customs and immigration checks that are usually conducted by a Customs officer. SmartGate can be used by Australian and New Zealand ePassport holders, aged 18 or over. It will be gradually opened to other nationalities that have ePassports. SmartGate is available at Adelaide, Brisbane, Cairns, Melbourne and Auckland International Airports for arriving travellers. It will be progressively introduced into further Australian international airports with Perth and Sydney scheduled next.

Customs clearance for travellers arriving in, or departing from, Australia is being continually refined. Refinements aim to provide border processing that is as simple and secure as possible.

This aim exists in an environment where the number of travellers is rapidly growing and there are greater processing peaks due to larger aircraft. Projected increases in traveller numbers indicated Customs would experience space restrictions at some airports if current clearance methods continued.

Other processing methods have been studied for their potential to replace, improve or supplement existing processes. Customs uses a wide range of highly sophisticated technology in its everyday business. Biometric technology is another tool that will assist Customs in managing the integrity of the Australian border. In 2001 a request for information (RFI) sought industry assistance with the selection of an appropriate biometric identifier for border processing.

The RFI also sought to identify Australian industry capability in these areas.

The RFI identified that there was not an existing face recognition system that was ready for use in a border-control environment. Customs decided to build upon existing technology and to pursue face recognition which was not only accurate but also the least intrusive biometric for public use. Face recognition can be used by everyone and can also be independently checked by Customs officers.

Customs, with assistance from the Biometric Institute, tested face recognition products including technology from a German company, Cognitec Systems.

Cognitec's FaceVACS software represented the most suitable solution, as it was the only one to meet Customs specific requirements. By May 2002 testing had been completed. Customs, with help from technology partners, designed and built a system for automated border crossing and a prototype transaction point. The prototype was named "SmartGate".

Since Customs had already tested face recognition technology and simulated live transactions, it was time to conduct a user trial. Qantas aircrew was chosen as the trial user group because they were frequent international travellers. The proposal for a trial was met with enthusiastic support from Qantas management and aircrew. On 26 November 2002 the trial of SmartGate was launched, with a transaction point installed at Sydney International Airport. Volunteering Qantas aircrew was required to enroll in the trial so that their facial images could be matched to their live images when they used the transaction point. SmartGate was quickly accepted as the preferred alternative to manual processing.

**Exercise 1. After reading the passage answer the question: what is SmartGate like?**



### ***Exercise 2. Analyze the messages on evaluating the trial.***

As the trial progressed Customs made improvements to the SmartGate transaction point, the software interface and user interaction. A formal evaluation of the trial was conducted to study the system's accuracy, efficiency and effectiveness. A committee directed the evaluation, which consisted of data analysis by the Defence Science and Technology Organization, an ergonomics study by ACTSafe Australia and a user satisfaction survey conducted by ACNielsen. Two international biometrics experts, Dr Jim Wayman and Dr Tony Mansfield, provided expertise on the evaluation. They reported that the trial has: "...produced the predicted strategic benefits. The performance levels attained by SmartGate are remarkably good for an operational facial recognition system and we know of no other such system with documented performance at this level. We find that SmartGate has streamlined the immigration process for the Qantas crew volunteering for the program, while maintaining the integrity of the Australian border. The participating Qantas crew has shown strong preference for the new system."

#### **Further Development**

Customs engaged a strategic partner to help develop the SmartGate concept into a production system. In late 2003, proposals were invited from Commonwealth Endorsed Suppliers. Customs received and evaluated 12 proposals, which resulted in the selection of SAGEM Australasia.

On 25 May 2004 Customs signed a Head Agreement with SAGEM that will be in place until 30 June 2008. The Head Agreement was prepared in accordance with Commonwealth Endorsed Supplier Arrangements and a developed version of the standard contract, GITC4.

#### **SmartGate Trial Extension**

The provision of \$3.1 mln. to Customs in the 2004-05 Budget allowed for further research and development of automated border control. The funding enabled Customs, with the assistance of its strategic partner SAGEM Australasia, to extend the trial to a second international airport and to holders of prototype Australian biometric passports and selected passengers. Customs completed its first commitment by installing a second SmartGate kiosk at Melbourne International Airport 13 September 2004. A passenger interface was incorporated into SmartGate on 8 November 2004 allowing selected Qantas Frequent Flyers to enrol and participate in the trial.

On 13 December 2004 a passport chip reader was incorporated into a new SmartGate kiosk.

This allowed SmartGate to use the facial image stored on the smart chip in the prototype Australian ePassports for matching with the person presenting at the SmartGate kiosk. The prototype ePassport was being trialed by Passports Australia with selected Qantas aircrew. The trial was completed in June 2005 but the equipment remains in place and in use at Sydney International Airport until it is replaced by the production version of SmartGate.





**Exercise 3. Render the score of "Southern Ocean Maritime Patrol" shortly in English.**

Since 1 July 2004, Customs has provided a full response capability to intercept and bring to court those suspected of illegally fishing for the valuable and increasingly rare Patagonian toothfish, primarily in Australia's Heard Island and McDonald Islands Exclusive Economic Zone in the southern Indian Ocean. The Southern Ocean Maritime Patrol and Response Program provides a dedicated vessel capability – the *Oceanic Viking* – able to conduct year-round patrols in sub-Antarctic weather conditions that can include Force 12 gales and seas of more than 10 meters.

The contracted vessel carries a full civilian crew and "steaming party" (additional sailors capable of crewing an apprehended vessel), deck mounted 0.50 caliber machine guns, a team of specialist trained Customs Maritime Enforcement Officers armed with handguns, and Australian Fisheries Officers.

The *Oceanic Viking* has a fully equipped medical facility. The *Oceanic Viking* also undertakes patrols in Australia's northern waters and other border protection activities / taskings, such as surveillance of Japanese whaling activity in the southern Ocean. Under a cooperative treaty with France whose territory adjoins that of Australia's in the Southern Ocean, Customs Maritime Enforcement Officers participate in joint patrols aboard French Patrol Vessels. An important aspect of operating in such a remote as the Southern Ocean is Australia's international obligations under the United Nations *Safety of Life at Sea* convention. The *Oceanic Viking* has conducted several emergency medical evacuations.







**Exercise 4. Read the message on New SmartGate and give the main idea of it.**

In the 2015-16 Budget, Customs received funding over four years towards the phased introduction of the new SmartGate into Australia's international airports. The new SmartGate is the production version of SmartGate that is being rolled out from 2017. This version was developed as a two-step model involving a kiosk and a gate. This kiosk checks that a traveller is eligible to self-process and the gate performs the identity check and clearance. This two-step model provides extra flexibility and capacity for Customs, particularly in relation to queue management. Kiosks can be located at points prior to passport control, or even overseas, to minimize the impact on queuing space in the airport arrivals hall. It provides travellers with more processing points.

**Exercise 5. Read about handling of personal information – SmartGate.**

In order to perform its functions, Australian Customs may collect your personal information to process you and your goods across Australia's borders. All personal data we collect via SmartGate, (including your photograph), will be treated in the same way as passenger's personal information we collect manually upon arrival. The personal information collected by SmartGate includes a passenger's name, gender, and date of birth, passport number, travel details, your passport photograph, the facial biometric template, nationality and the country of origin of the passport.

Customs takes steps to store personal information securely, prevent its unauthorized use and maintain its accuracy. Customs will only use or disclose the personal information only for the purpose for which it was collected or as otherwise required or authorized by law, including where the information is required by other law enforcement or border control authorities. Records of a passenger's personal information are retained until they are disposed of according to the latest Disposal Authority approved by the National Archives of Australia under the *Archives Act 1983*.



**Exercise 6. Explain types of payment options.**

Customs invoices can be paid in several different ways.

Integrated Cargo System (ICS) EFT facility.

Internet payment facility.

BPay (not available for ICS invoices).

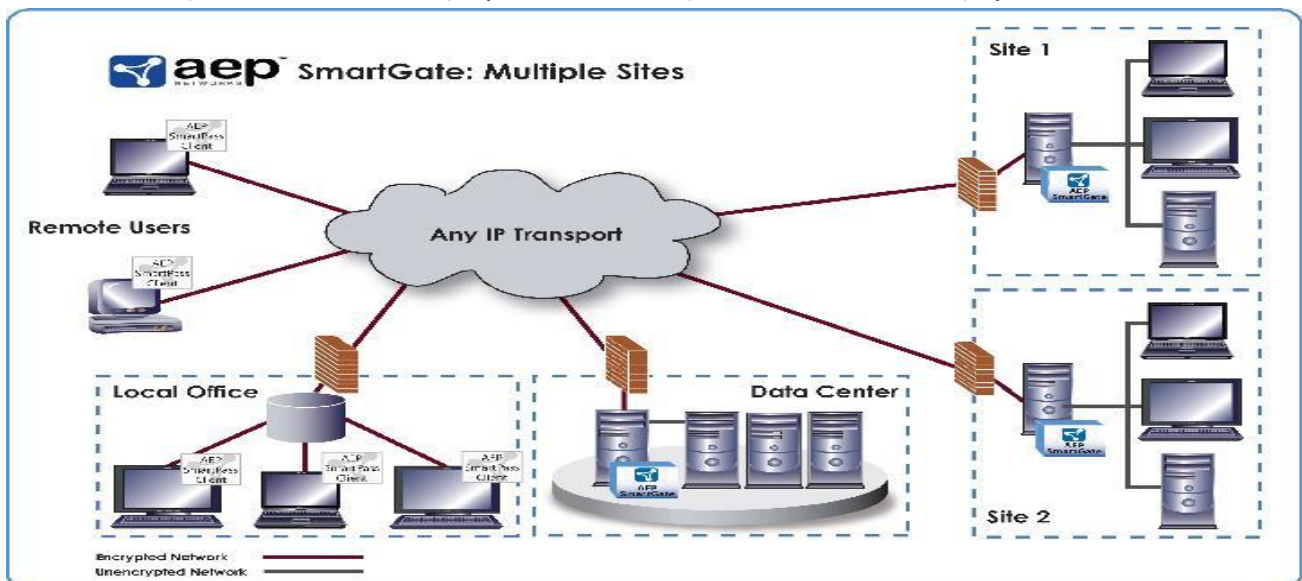
Over the phone (not available for ICS invoices).

**In person**

Through the mail (cheque) (not available for ICS invoices).

Integrated Cargo System (ICS) EFT Facility.

The client must provide Customs Cargo Support with their registration and bank account details. The Client then gives permission for a specific invoice to be paid, using this facility, through ICS. At midday each weekday Customs generates a bank file which lists all invoices that have been identified for payment. Westpac collects the monies from the client accounts on the same day. Customs Internet Payment facility offers clients a secure and convenient way to pay their invoices. Clients may choose to register as a regular user, which allows them to view their account information online. A receipt number will be displayed and can be printed as a record of payment.



## RULES OF ORIGIN

Rules of origin are the rules applied to determine from which country a good originates for international trade purposes. Rules of origin are necessary for both preferential reasons – determining eligibility for benefits such as reduced rates of duty, and non-preferential reasons such as the imposition of anti-dumping and countervailing duties, country of origin marking, etc. Importers are required to ensure that goods entering the commerce of Australia are correctly labelled.

The *Commerce (Trade Descriptions) Act 1905* and the *Commerce (Imports) Regulations 1940* set out the labelling requirements for goods imported into Australia.

Customs administers this legislation. It is an offence to import goods that do not bear a required trade description, or bear a false trade description. Imported goods that require a trade description must be marked with the name of the country in which the goods were made or produced, and where specified, a true description of the goods. When a trade description is required, it must be:

- in the English language;
- in prominent and legible characters;
- on a principal label or brand affixed in a prominent position and in as permanent a manner as practicable;
- if labelling on the goods includes a weight or quantity (weight or quantity is net or gross).

Any other information included must not contradict or obscure the required trade description.

This includes illustrations, wording or size of lettering. A false trade description can be any description of goods that is incorrect or misleading. This may include direct or indirect details of size, weight, quality, quantity, origin, manufacturer, ingredients or the application of a patent, privilege or copyright, and includes all possible alterations of a trade description, whether by way of addition, effacement, or otherwise. A trade description may also be false if information is omitted from the description and this misleads the consumer as to the true description of the goods.

The *Commerce (Trade Descriptions) Act* provides that goods imported in contravention of the *Commerce (Imports) Regulations* may be seized by Customs. If you are the owner of a trade mark, a copyright work or licensed user of Olympic insignia, protecting your Intellectual Property (IP) through the border measures available will allow Customs to seize goods that infringe your IP rights if they are detected at the time of importation. To protect IP rights from counterfeit, pirated or unauthorized importation, the owner, or in some cases an authorized user, must have a Notice of Objection in place with Customs. A Notice of Objection is a legal document that allows Customs to seize imported goods that infringe trade marks, copyright or Olympic insignia. A Notice of Objection under the *Trade Marks Act* or *Copyright Act* is valid for two years, and four years under the *Olympic Insignia Protection Act*.

These Notices can be re-lodged to ensure ongoing protection. If the Notice is no longer required, the owner may withdraw it at any time. Separate Notices are required for trade marks, copyright and Olympic insignia. A security in the form of a guarantee from an approved financial institution (documentary security) or a cheque (cash security) must also accompany the Notice.

The security is required to reimburse the Commonwealth for costs associated with the seizure and disposal of infringing goods. Any unused portion of the security is returned when the Notice is no longer in place. It is important to note that a Notice of Objection only protects goods, not services, which are imported into Australia. Customs is restricted to seizing infringing goods that are subject to the control of Customs and are covered by a Notice of Objection. A Notice of Objection cannot act retrospectively for goods that have already been imported.

Where a Notice of Objection is in place and Customs seizes importations that infringe IP, the seized goods are held for 10 working days. In this period: the objector will commence legal action, or the objector will consent to the release of the goods, or the importer will forfeit the goods, provided civil action has not commenced.



If the right's owner does not commence legal proceedings within 10 working days of receiving the notification of seizure. Or within 20 working days if Customs has agreed to extend the period.

Customs must release the goods unless the importer has voluntarily forfeited them. This is subject to all other legislative requirements being met. At the conclusion of any legal action, the court will make an order about the goods, for example forfeiture of infringing goods to the Commonwealth.

Customs disposes of forfeited goods under instruction from the court, by destruction or donation to a charity, as appropriate. Not every consignment of goods that enters Australia presents a risk in terms of the border controls that Customs administers. Customs encourages trade mark, copyright and Olympic insignia rights owners and the public to provide information that will assist Customs to identify and intercept suspected infringing goods. Customs is not responsible for the formulation of government policy relating to IP rights. Policy in relation to the *Copyright Act 1968* rests with the Attorney-General's Department.

IP Australia, a specialized division of the Department of Industry, Tourism & Resources, is the agency responsible for the *Trade Marks Act 1995* and the *Olympic Insignia Protection Act 1987*.

**Exercise 1. Explain the rules of origin.**

**Exercise 2. Explain how to join the Customs.**

People join the Customs through the following methods: through general recruitment as particular jobs become available

- as Customs Trainees;
- as Customs Graduate Trainees;
- as Indigenous Cadets;
- as Torres Strait Island Marine Trainees.

The majority of recruitment at entry level is through the Customs Trainee program. A number of roles are filled above entry level (particularly Canberra, specialist and some management positions).

**Exercise 3. Explain the notion "eligibility".**

To join Customs you must be 18 years of age, be an Australian citizen and undergo a medical and security assessment and meet the required standard. Customs has identified characteristics we require all our staff to display. A workforce with these characteristics, and reflecting the cultural diversity of the community, is central to Customs ability to continue to meet the business challenges of the future. If you: enjoy working with technology; are goal-oriented and committed to continuous improvement; are flexible, adaptive, creative in solving problems and dealing with change; have a strong sense of personal ethics and honesty; can effectively organize and plan; have leadership potential or demonstrated leadership ability; think in an abstract and analytical manner; demonstrate sound interpersonal, communication and relationship-building skills and thrive working as part of a team; keep reading.



**Exercise 4. Explain several methods of valuation.**

While there are several methods of valuing goods for Customs purposes, the method most applied (transaction value) is based on the price actually paid for the imported goods subject to certain adjustments. A major condition for using the transaction value is that there is no relationship between the buyer and seller which may influence the price. Valuation of imported goods can be complex and importers are urged to seek advice from a customs broker or to contact a Customs Information Centre.

Customs sought comments on a pricing discussion paper that set out policy, legislative and system issues. Submissions from clients and other government agencies have been incorporated into a Draft Business Practice Statement on Transfer Pricing.

**Exercise 5. Read the passage and explain the notion "Trade Measures Branch".**

It is Customs role to provide access to the anti-dumping/countervailing system for both applicants and respondents. The TMB has the responsibility for dumping and subsidy administration. It provides assistance to companies and other interested parties accessing the system by:

- conducting investigations into the claims made to justify the imposition,
- varying or continuing measures;
- making recommendations to the Minister for Home Affairs for the imposition, variation or continuation of the measures;
- managing the operation of the measures.

Customs advises interested parties of their rights and obligations in accessing the system.

**Exercise 6. Read the text and answer the question: What is dumping like?**

Dumping occurs when goods are exported to Australia at a price that is below the "normal value" of the goods. The normal value will usually be based on the domestic price of the goods in the country of export. Dumping is a form of price differentiation between markets. It is not a prohibited practice under international trade agreements. However, remedial action may be taken where dumping causes material injury to an Australian industry.

**Exercise 7. What is a subsidy?**

A subsidy is any financial assistance (or income or price support) paid by a foreign government that benefits an exporter of the goods to Australia, either directly or indirectly. If the effect of the subsidy causes (or threatens to cause) material injury to an Australian industry, remedial action may be taken.

**Exercise 8. Remember important information.**

Importers wishing to clear their own goods should contact the Customs Information and Support Centre for advice on Customs requirements and operating hours. However, it is important to stress that the Customs Service does not complete customs import entries on behalf of importers.

Customs import entry procedures are based on self assessment by importers who should be aware of all their obligations: penalties may be imposed for the submission of incorrect or misleading information or for the omission of information to mislead.

Details of the information requirements of the "Entry for Home Consumption" and guidance for its completion are contained in the *Documentary Import Declaration Comprehensive Guide*.

Therefore, while it is not a requirement, it is recommended that importers use the services of a customs broker to complete customs import entries and related clearance formalities. Brokers specialize in the clearance of imported goods and are licensed by Customs. They may be contacted by reference to the yellow pages of local telephone directories under "Customs Brokers", or by contacting the local branch of the Customs Brokers Council of Australia. Whether involved in an Australian industry producing goods; exporting to Australia; or importing goods into Australia.

**Exercise 9. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 10. What happens if measures are imposed?**

Dumping measures are imposed on imported goods to offset the effects of injury in the form of "interim dumping duty" (IDD). (Interim) dumping duties and/or countervailing duties are usually imposed for a five-year period. A duty imposed to counteract a subsidy is called a "countervailing duty". These duties usually apply for five years. If importers believe that they have paid too much duty they may apply for a final duty assessment. An alternative remedy to imposing duty is for the Minister to accept a price undertaking from the exporter. By this means the exporter agrees that future trade will be at or above a minimum export price (equal to the normal value or subsidy).

Such undertakings also usually apply for a five-year period. Before any action may be taken against dumped or subsidized goods, the Australian industry concerned must demonstrate not only that there is dumping (subsidy) occurring but also that it has suffered material injury as a result.

This is done through an application to the Australian Customs Service for an investigation into the facts of the case. Where the industry's claims warrant an investigation, Customs will publicly notify the investigation. In addition, Customs will write to all known importers and exporters of the goods inviting their participation in the investigation.

**Exercise 11. Compare the characteristics of importers / exporters.**

In advising importers and exporters of the initiation of an investigation, Customs will also seek information on relevant import and export transactions. This information is required within 40 days of the commencement of the investigation. Customs may visit the premises of the importers and exporters to undertake further investigations and verify the information provided.

Investigations with the exporter are concerned with assessing a normal value and establishing whether dumping or a subsidy exists. In the case of a subsidy, Customs consults with the foreign government concerned. Investigations with the importer are aimed at determining whether all costs are recovered in the sale of the imported goods in Australia. If there are reasonable grounds, Customs commences an investigation.

Customs issues a public notice advising of the claims made by the applicants and the details of the investigation process. Generally, Customs has up to 155 days to complete its investigation and report to the Minister. Generally, submissions from importers, exporters and any other interested parties are due within 40 days from the commencement of the investigation. From day 60 of the investigation period, Customs may impose provisional measures (in the form of securities) on imports of the goods.

This will only occur when there is sufficient verified information available. A statement of reasons – a Preliminary Affirmative Determination – would accompany such action.

On or before 110 days after the initiation of the investigation, Customs must issue a Statement of Essential Facts on which it proposes to base its report to the Minister. Interested parties will then have 20 days to respond and lodge submissions on matters of concern.

After consideration of the submissions received, Customs will report its conclusions and recommendations to the Minister before day 155 of the investigation. A non-confidential version of Customs report will be sent to all interested parties after the Minister's decision is announced.



Kings Lynn Custom house



Key West Customs House

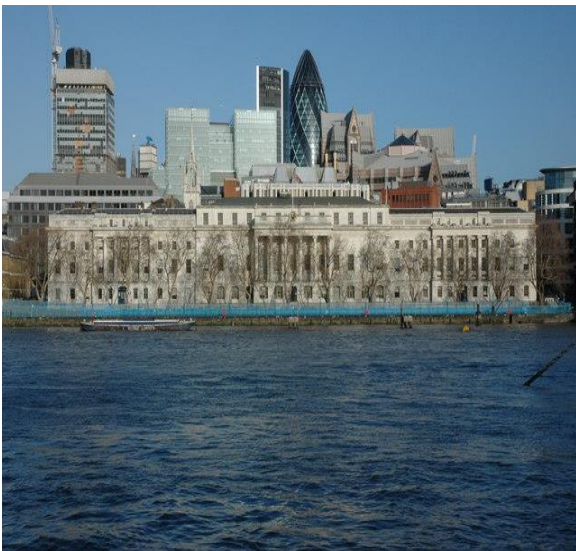


**Exercise 12. Read the information and render its contents shortly in English.**

The Guardia di Finanza is an Italian police force under the authority of the Minister of Economy and Finance. Although it retains military status unlike the Carabinieri it is part of the Italian Armed Forces. The Guardia di Finanza maintains over 600 boats and ships and more than 100 aircraft to fulfill its mission of patrolling Italy's territorial waters. Its mission and institutional tasks are stated in the law of 2001 and are subdivided into priority ones (preventing, investigating & reporting financial evasions & violations, overseeing the compliance with the provisions of politico-economic interest and surveillance at sea for financial police purposes), maintaining public order and safety and military defense of the borders). The Guardia di Finanza has around 68,000 policemen (agents, NCOs, and officers).

Her policemen are in service in the Europol and OLAF (European Agency of Fight against the Fraud). Its activities are financial, economic, judiciary and public safety: tax evasion, financial crimes, smuggling, money laundering, international illegal drug trafficking, illegal immigration, customs & borders checks, copyright violations, anti-Mafia operations, credit card fraud, cybercrime, counterfeiting, terrorist financing, maintaining public order, and safety, political and military defense of the Italian borders.

**Exercise 13. Write out some general essentials in the activities of various agencies.**



Customs House London



1861 Galveston Customs House



Australian Customs Service Building Melbourne

## THE STATE CUSTOMS SERVICE OF UKRAINE

The State Customs Service of Ukraine (SCSU) is a specially authorized central body of executive power in the area of customs practice that was created in 1991 with the mission to direct, co-ordinate, and control the activities of customs authorities, specialized customs institutions and organizations in implementing the laws of Ukraine on customs practice. Ukrainian Customs is oriented towards the efficient fulfilment of the following basic tasks:

- implement and control over compliance with the legislation of Ukraine on customs;
- protect Ukraine's economic interests;
- secure implementation of obligations prescribed by international agreements on customs practice to which Ukraine is a party;
  - assist the defense of intellectual property rights of people involved in foreign economic activity, and other legal entities and natural persons;
  - apply, in accordance with the law, tariff and non-tariff regulatory measures upon movement of goods through the customs border of Ukraine;
  - implement customs control and customs clearance of goods and vehicles crossing the customs border of Ukraine, and improve the means and forms of such implementation;
  - control compliance with the rules of movement of currency values through the customs border of Ukraine;
  - implement, in cooperation with other authorized state power bodies, the measures aimed at securing the interest of goods consumers, and at ensuring that participants in foreign economic relations adhere to the state interests on the external market;
  - create favourable conditions for speeding up the goods turnover and flow of passengers through the customs border of Ukraine;
  - fight against contraband and violations of customs rules;
  - develop international cooperation in the area of customs practice;
  - compile customs statistics;
  - maintain the Ukrainian Classification of Commodities of Foreign Economic Activity;
  - verify (ascertain the authenticity of) certificates of origin of goods from Ukraine.

### Goals

To comply with its mission the customs administration of Ukraine has been working towards the following important goals, among others:

- the simplification and harmonisation of customs procedures,
- trade supply chain security,
- the facilitation of international trade,
- the enhancement of customs enforcement and compliance activities,
- anti-counterfeiting and piracy initiatives,
- public-private partnerships.



## CUSTOMS CONTROL & CLEARANCE: GENERAL OVERVIEW

All imported/exported goods and means of transportation (road, rail, maritime or air) crossing the customs border of Ukraine are subject to customs and border control, which is carried out by the customs authorities in order to ensure that the customs rules and other applicable provisions are observed. There are around 80 customs points across Ukrainian border – all international air and sea ports, railway and road border crossing points.

Every customs point covers a particular geographical area. For vehicles to avoid repeated customs checks when crossing borders, the TIR system is applied.

The goods are only checked and sealed at the first customs office and the vehicle is then waived through by customs authorities until it reaches its final destination. Goods entering the territory of Ukraine must go through three main customs procedures before they can be cleared: customs control; customs formalities; payment of mandatory customs duties.

Customs clearance can be a lengthy process, a speed of which depends mainly on the nature and quantity of the goods, completeness and correctness of the documents submitted by the importer.

Customs clearance is a set of procedures with a view to acknowledging the compliance of goods with customs requirements and to obtaining permission for the free circulation of the goods within Ukraine. These customs procedures are carried out by the customs authorities and are regulated by the Customs Code of Ukraine, the International Convention on Simplification and Harmonization of Customs Procedures (Kyoto Convention), to which Ukraine acceded in October 2006, resolutions of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine and orders of the State Customs Service of Ukraine.

The goods are under customs control from the moment of their cross-over through the Ukrainian customs border until the fulfilment of all customs formalities.

The clearance process begins from the moment of delivery of the goods at the place of destination.

The importer has 3 hours from the moment of arrival of the goods at the place of destination to declare the commodity to the customs authorities. Customs clearance is carried out by the customs authorities, to which the Cargo Custom Declaration was submitted. That is the in-house customs by place of the accreditation of the subject of foreign economic activity. Accreditation means an order of steps with a view to obtaining a record card, which authorises a business entity for customs clearance.

A representative office has the right to be the importer of goods and carry out the customs clearance.

Declaring commodities outside a customs office where a legal entity is registered requires formal approval from the customs authorities (approval letter). Customs clearance of goods imported into Ukraine by residents may be carried out by the customs authority where the buyer of the goods is located or by the customs authority in the point of entry at the customs border of Ukraine.

For example, alcohol and tobacco goods imported into Ukraine can only be cleared through Ilichevsk ports. Customs clearance is usually done by a broker acting on the importer's behalf or by the importer himself. After documentation is submitted, necessary payments are made and the shipment/documentation is inspected, the shipment is cleared and can be released to consignee.

**Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the notion.**

Customs clearance; customs clearing: очистка от таможенных пошлин (выполнение необходимых формальностей в связи с перемещением через таможенную границу страны товаров и транспортных средств; включает таможенное оформление, уплату таможенных платежей; необходимое условие выпуска товаров в свободное обращение на территории страны).

**Exercise 3. Remember the notion.**

Clearance: import, export, customs control, main documents, mandatory customs payments, customs regimes.



## MAIN DOCUMENTS FOR CUSTOMS CLEARANCE

The following documents are to be submitted to the customs authorities for customs clearance:

- Cargo Custom Declaration;
- a copy of license, if goods are subject to licensing;
- all permits issued by a state authority, if the goods are subject to special customs control by a certain body;
- Customs value declaration;
- commercial and shipping documents.

The importer must within a ten day period render to the customs authorities the full package of documents. Declaring of any export-import operation is performed by issuance and submission to the Customs authority a special form – Cargo Custom Declaration.

The Declaration is a unified document, which provides necessary description of the cargo, its price and customs value, information about exporter (importer), which is a party to the supply contract, broker (declarant), consignee, customs authority which performed the customs clearance, means of transportation, a list of all commercial and shipping documents related to the cargo, describes payment of all custom duties and charges related to the export-import of the commodity.

The CCD must be completed and signed by the importer or his agent and is to be rendered together with the electronic copy. The CCD is not applicable if import is lower than a certain level (currently EUR 100), except for excisable goods.

If the company imports on a regular basis from the same supplier under the same trading terms, it can use the Periodic Customs Declaration to save time completing individual customs forms. The duly executed CCD must contain the following stamps: "checked", "paid", "under customs control". All the pages of the CCD are to be affixed with a personalized number seal of the customs inspector; CCD is given a registration number consisting of 16 symbols. Upon performance of all these conditions, the CCD is deemed to be valid and duly executed.

Customs value declaration – if the value of imports is over 5000 euro, the importer has to present to the customs authorities a Customs Value Declaration.

This document determines the amount of customs duty and import taxes payable.

Certificates of control bodies – some goods are subject to control before they can be cleared. For example, the import of animals is controlled by the issue of animal health certificates and veterinary inspections; the import of plants is controlled by the issue of phytosanitary certificates and may be subject to phytosanitary inspection if the plants are an endangered species; the import of vehicles containing hazardous chemical compounds and agents is subject to ecological inspection; the import of precious and semi-precious stones is subject to gemological inspection, etc.

Certificates of Origin and Certificates of Conformity – needed for some consignments such as fruit, vegetables, nuts, mineral oil, bicycles, cars, toys, etc., before they can pass through customs and into free circulation in Ukraine. Most common commercial and shipping documents:

- Contract.
- Invoices.
- Packing Lists.
- Certificates of Origin.
- Receipts for payment of customs duties and charges.
- Necessary certificates (conformity; safety; veterinary; etc.).
- Transport documents (bill of lading, airway bill, railway consignment note, etc.).

The goods may be placed at a bonded warehouse to wait for some documents, e.g. licenses or certificates, thus suspending import procedure. The importer should only submit the documents, which identify the goods and vehicles and confirm legal grounds for them.

## MANDATORY CUSTOMS PAYMENTS

Importers must pay an import duty, value added, tax excise tax and customs charges.

**Import Duty** – rates on every import product is defined by the Customs Tariff of Ukraine, according to which the import duty is charged as a percentage of the value of goods and is known as "ad valorem" duty. There are 3 rates of import duty under the Customs Tariff:

- privileged rates of duty – applicable to all WTO members;
- preferential rates of duty – applicable to all countries, which are members of free trade zones;
- full rates – applicable to goods originating from other countries, or where the country of origin is not determined.

On July 1, 2001 the Law of Ukraine "On Customs Tariff of Ukraine" came into effect under which only the Parliament can introduce or change tariffs. The import tariff system of Ukraine has 21 sections, encompasses 97 groups of goods, and lists over 10,000 import duty rates. Import duty rates for most goods, except for farming goods, food and excisable goods, are established at levels accepted by the GATT/WTO. The classification and origin of the goods will affect the amount of customs duty payable. If the invoice is in a foreign currency the value of the invoice has to be converted into UAH.

The declared customs value is generally used as the basis for determining customs duties.

The customs value should be determined in accordance with 6 WTO valuation methods. However, the most common and main one is the "transaction method". This is based on the price paid or payable by a buyer to a seller for the imported goods. The importer should provide evidence of the price paid with import entry, e.g. a copy of the seller's invoice.

Though this method cannot be used if the goods are imported on consignment (i.e. there has been no sale) or they have been supplied free of charge or on a commodity credit.

**VAT** – rate is 20%, as levied against taxable turnover, which does not include VAT. Taxable turnover for import VAT is calculated as customs value of the goods, including customs duties and any applicable excise taxes. Import VAT is due and payable at the same time AS customs duties are being assessed (with a potential thirty-day extension made at the discretion of the customs office).

**Excise Tax** – Parliament of Ukraine establishes the list of goods (products), which are subject to the excise tax. The list of excisable goods includes caviar, shrimp, chocolate, coffee, alcoholic beverages, beer, tobacco products, cars, automobile tires, petrol and diesel fuel, weapon, jewellery, home electronics (microwaves, CD players, TV-sets, Video- and audio devices), clothing (fur coats and leather jackets), office furniture. Excise duty rates range from 10 to 200 percent of the declared customs value. Excise duty rates are expressed as a percentage of the declared customs value, plus customs duties and customs charges paid for imported products. Payment should be made in Ukrainian currency at the Ukrainian National Bank exchange rate effective on the day of payment.

**Customs Charges** – there are only 2 customs charges in Ukraine: for storing a cargo at the customs warehouse and for work of customs inspector in non-working time (18 p.m. – 9 a.m.), during weekend or official state holidays.



## CUSTOMS REGIMES IN UKRAINE

According to the Customs Code of Ukraine, there are 13 customs regimes as follows Import (IM40 or "Free Circulation") Export (EK10)

**Transit** (TR80). Upon crossing an international border point, goods will be classified in one of two ways: transit or customs cleared. If marked transit, the container or vehicle will be sealed by customs authorities and then customs cleared at its final destination. Additionally, vehicles transporting goods marked for transit, which are subject to excise taxes, are required to be wrapped in a transit band all the way through Ukrainian territory. This band is obtained at the customs checkpoint and has an assigned number, which is designated on the customs declaration.

**Temporary Import** (IM31, ATA CARNET)/ **Export** (EK32). Imported items are classified as designated for demonstration at exhibitions, fairs and trade shows, as the temporary import of a foreign company's property, which is to be returned to that country afterwards. The temporary import of demonstration samples, excluding goods not allowed for importation, can be undertaken without registering the importer as a subject of foreign economic activity in Ukraine. This bypasses a burdensome bureaucratic process.

Prior to return samples are inspected by customs authorities to ensure that the quantity and description of goods match those registered at the time of importation. Temporarily imported goods can remain in Ukraine for one year from the date a cargo customs declaration is executed. If warranted, local customs authorities can extend this term for the duration of an economic, scientific, humanitarian, or other event in which the temporarily imported goods are required.

The term of temporarily imported goods should be reflected in the customs declaration. Samples may be shipped out of the country after usage via any customs point. Prior to their customs declaration expiration, temporarily imported goods should be: – returned outside the Ukrainian customs border; – declared at customs for further use; – passed to customs for storage in a bonded warehouse; or demolished under customs control if these items cannot be used as goods, products, or equipment.

**Re-import** (IM41)/**Re-export** (EK11)

**Bonded Warehouse** (IM74). The bonded warehouse is a device frequently employed by non-resident companies that do not directly do business in Ukraine. Such warehouses can be either state customs points or privately owned warehouses for the use of clients.

Most foreign investors simply lease space in warehouses. Opening a bonded warehouse is a complicated affair involving the State Customs Service and a great deal of paperwork.

To establish a bonded warehouse as an importer, one must first obtain a license from the Ukrainian Customs Service office nearest to where the warehouse will be established. Upon submission of the application and supporting documents, the warehouse must be ready for operation and equipped as a bonded warehouse. To open a warehouse, an applicant must pay a one-time fee in Ukrainian hryvnas equivalent of US\$1500 (at the National Bank of Ukraine official exchange rate).

Formal registration of the warehouse is normally done within 15 days after an application has been submitted. As a bonded warehouse licensee, an enterprise should also note that it will have to hire an official customs inspector on an as-needed basis to actually clear and approve shipments of goods.

As a licensee, the enterprise can hire its own personnel to supervise the submission of customs declarations, but the customs official actually approves final clearance.

**Processing on** (outside, EK61) **the customs territory of Ukraine** (IM51)

**Special customs zone** (IM71). Since 1996, a total of 21 special economic zones (SEZ) or priority development territories (PDT) have been established, covering up to 10 % of Ukrainian territory.

The creation of free economic zones has been adopted as a method of regional industrial development. **Duty free shop** (IM72) **Refusal for the benefit of the state** (IM75).

**Destruction or elimination** (IM76).



## COMMODITY CLASSIFICATION & CUSTOMS VALUE

Classification and Customs valuation in Ukraine conforms to world standards, where customs value is defined as the sum of the sales price, transportation costs, freight, insurance, storage fees and other costs not foreseen in the contract price. Receipts should be presented to document these costs and to allow customs officers to determine the proper customs value.

In the event that receipts are not available, Ukrainian customs will assess the customs value using comparative pricing of similar goods and services in the country of origin.

### **Prohibited & Restricted Imports**

While the number of goods requiring specific import licenses has been cut considerably, a large number of goods are still subject to import licensing. There are many other non-tariff formalities, including a range of technical and phytosanitary regulations and inspection procedures.

The Ukrainian government strictly controls and restricts the import of weapons, narcotics, chemical and hazardous substances, and certain pharmaceutical and communications related products.

### **Membership in Free Trade Agreements**

Ukraine has signed free trade agreements with all of the former Soviet republics & Macedonia.

Ukraine is also a party to the 1995 CIS free trade agreement. However, this agreement has never been effectively implemented. Ukraine also signed a Partnership and Co-operation Agreement with the European Union (PCA). Under the terms of the agreement, Ukraine enjoys most favoured nation status with the EU, but is not required to bind its own tariffs.

Ukraine participates in the Black Sea Cooperation Council, along with Albania, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Bulgaria, Georgia, Greece, Moldova, Romania, the Russian Federation, Macedonia and Turkey.

It is envisaged that the organization be developed into a free trade area. Ukraine has furthermore concluded trade agreements with 12 countries (Austria, Argentina, Armenia, Bulgaria, Canada, Estonia, Finland, Krygzstan, Latvia, Moldova, Russia and Switzerland). These agreements grant on a reciprocal basis most favored nation status to export-import operations with the countries concerned. As in the case of the PCA, Ukraine benefits via these agreements from the tariff concessions made by its partner countries who are the WTO members without binding its own tariffs. On 16 May 2008 Ukraine became a member of the WTO, so Ukraine enjoys most favoured nation treatment with all WTO member states.

### **Applicable Legislation**

A new Customs Code came into effect January 1, 2004. It codified uniform customs procedures for all goods, specified elements of customs procedures, and created a mechanism for submitting a preliminary declaration for customs clearance for those who declare items on a regular basis.

The Code widens the powers of the State Customs Service of Ukraine (SCS), granting its staff free access to the companies' premises where commodities subject to customs clearing are stored. It gives the SCS the power to check foreign trade companies' financial and economic performance.

In October 2006 Ukraine acceded to the International Convention on Simplification and Harmonization of Customs Procedures (Kyoto Convention), so in order to harmonize domestic legislation with the Convention, a new Customs Code of Ukraine is pending.

### **Main Transportation Modes**

The least expensive and most reliable means of transportation is by sea, through 18 marine ports in Ukraine, including Odessa, Illichevsk and Mariupol. Rail is another cheap, but less reliable, method of shipping products throughout the country. Rail traffic has fallen substantially since Ukrainian independence and minimal backups at crossing points make rail transport a competitive alternative to other forms of transport. The most popular, efficient and costly means of transporting goods within Ukraine is by trucks. Foreign exporters who intend to import goods into Ukraine should understand the system and may find Ukraine's import regime complicated, especially, for inexperienced traders.

## International Conventions signed by Ukraine relating to customs matters

### WCO Conventions

- Convention establishing a Customs Co-operation Council.
- Convention on the Harmonized Commodity Description and Coding System.
- Convention on Temporary Admission (Istanbul Convention).
- International Convention on the simplification and harmonization of Customs procedures (Kyoto Convention) as amended.
- International Convention on mutual administrative assistance for the prevention, investigation and repression of Customs offences (Nairobi Convention).
- Customs Convention on Containers.

### UNECE Transport Agreements & Conventions

- Customs Convention on the International Transport of Goods under Cover of TIR Carnets (TIR Convention)
- International Convention on the Harmonization of Frontier Controls of Goods
- Agreement on the International Carriage of Perishable Foodstuffs and on the Special Equipment to be used for such Carriage (ATP)

Knowing which documents are necessary for the clearance of goods will avoid delays and save money. There are many practical issues to consider before making import. Businesses have to think how much time, money and effort it will take to manage import activities.



## CUSTOMS HOUSES OF UKRAINE

The customs borders of Ukraine coincide with the state borders of our country. Customs Houses are located at the points of admission to (on) the state border of Ukraine, where railroad, automobile, sea, river, air & other routes exist. Customs Houses of Ukraine function within the bounds of a region defined by the State Customs Committee of Ukraine. I want to tell you a few words about the Customs House, which is situated at the Boryspil Airport in the suburb of Kiev. There are a lot of customs officers on the territory of Boryspil Airport. Its staff consists of 500 members.

Some of them work every day and the other – in the shifts in a day or two. As usual the working day of a customs officer begins at 9 o'clock and is over at 18. All the customs officials wear special uniforms. To tell the truth they are not well paid.

**There are several departments there:**

- the passenger's;
- the cargo;
- the unaccompanied luggage;
- the fighting smuggling and break of customs rules;
- the statistics and payments;
- the technical provision (supply);
- the post and others.

There are a lot of services and special officials, which work on the territory of the Customs House. Now I name some of them: a guarantee of plants, a veterinary one, a frontier-guard, an inspector of health, a service of security of flights and others. All of them carefully and properly carry out their functions and duties. The information desk is staffed 7 days per week day and night.

There is a post – office and a telegraph on the territory of the Boryspil Customs House. It is difficult to work there. Annually two mln. travellers and 10-15 international flights plainly pass through Boryspil Airport House. Fighting the drug business is the biggest problem for Ukrainian Customs officers. They have modern technical equipment at their disposal including microscopes and dogs specially trained to defect drugs. Everybody knows his or her high professionalism.

### ***Active vocabulary***

Services, travellers, guarantee, functions, to carry out, territory, modern technical equipment, specially trained, to defect drugs, special officials, to be located, in the shifts, in the suburb of, to break of customs rules, international flights, day and night, a guarantee of plants, a veterinary, a frontier-guard, service of security of flights, special officials.

### ***Exercise 1. Analyse the forms of the verbs and translate the sentences.***

- If you tell me about your plans, I shall try to help you.
- I shall watch a TV programme tonight after I do all my work.
- Speak to him before he leaves London.
- I shall have my leave as soon as I pass my exams.
- I shall not come to your place until I do all my work.
- I shall not come to see you until I do my exercises.
- If you tell me the truth I shall forgive everything.
- If you travel a lot you must know all instructions.
- If you give guarantees, I do it.
- If we install modern technical equipment, we shall be satisfied.
- If you were specially trained, you won the race.
- If you ask special officials, you will get some instructions.

**Exercise 2. Write out all italic phrases from the text "Customs control today".**

Every country has its own customs laws and regulations on export and import. One of the main duties of the customs officer is to set up a control over the movement of passengers, their luggage and cargo. First of all a passenger has to go through the passport control. The important task of a customs officer is to check the passport, the visa and the declaration of a passenger.

**He must verify the following:**

- if the passenger's passport hasn't expired;
- if the passenger's visa hasn't expired;
- if the passenger's declaration has properly been filled in;
- where the passenger has got the visa;
- to check the full name and citizenship of the passenger;
- what is the purpose of the passenger's visit of the country;
- if the passenger has single or multiple visa;
- if the passenger's visa provides entry into by car, train, airplanes or other kinds of transport.

At *Passport Control* there are often two routes, one for citizens of the country, the other for non-citizens for aliens. The *Immigration Officer* will check your passport (your landing card), and may ask you questions. In some countries they will put a stamp in your passport. As soon as you leave the plane, follow the signs to *Passport Control* (or immigration). At international airports these signs will be in English as well as the local language. Collect your luggage and look for the sign to Customs. In most countries the signs are red for *Goods to Declare* and green for *Nothing to declare*.

In the *European Union* there is also a blue sign for travellers from other *European Union* countries. After you have been through passport control, *Follow The Signs to the Baggage Hall*. There will usually be a picture of a suitcase on the sign.

After Customs look for the Exit. If someone is meeting you they will be waiting at the *Meeting Point*. You will see signs for taxis, buses or trains that will take you to your destination. In the *Baggage Hall* there may be several carousels. There will be TV monitors, which show you the right carousel for your luggage. If everything is all right the passenger is allowed to go but in another case the passenger is detained. If the passport or visa has expired in this case the passenger cannot go through the passport control. Single visa doesn't provide entry into Ukraine. It must be renewed.





## DIALOGUES

- Attention, please. Get your passports and declarations ready. Show me your passport, visa and declaration, sir.
- Here they are.
- *What's the purpose of your visit to our country?*
- Private.
- Your visa has expired. It has to be renewed.
- And what can I do now?
- You have to turn to the Immigration Office. Your visa is single and does not provide the entry into Ukraine by car.
- And in what way can we *solve this problem?*
- Excuse me, *but it's not in my line.*
- Well, goodbye.
- Goodbye.

♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣

- Do you have anything to declare, madam?
- No, nothing. We're within the duty-free allowance.
- Well, open your bag anyway. Oh...what about this jewellery?
- It's hardly new.
- Hardly new?
- Yes, I've had it for years. Do I have to pay duty on it?
- No, you don't have to. Madam, is there anything else you wish to declare?
- There certainly isn't.
- You're sure? In that case, madam, will you kindly open your handbag?
- Customs never inspected my purse before.
- Normally, we don't. But we have the right to do it.

♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣

- Passport, please. Please, have your passport ready. Next, please. May I see yours?
- Certainly. Here they are.
- Do you *have a visa?*
- Of course, we do. Here they are.
- Mr. and Mrs. Diamond. Tell me the *purpose of your visit* to England?
- We're *strictly tourists.*
- How long will you be staying there?
- Only three weeks. We are not able *to spare any more time.*
- And, eh, how much *hard currency* do you have with you?
- Enough.
- Cash, travellers' checks?
- A few thousand pounds. Some in checks, the rest in cash and plastic money.
- Very well. Let me *stamp* your passport. Here you are. *Enjoy your trip.* Next please!.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogues by heart and carry them on with your classmate in class.**



.....

# CHAPTER III. GLOBALIZATION

## UNIT I. INTERNATIONALIZATION

.....

### INTRODUCTION

Globalization in its literal sense is the process of transformation of local or regional phenomena into global ones. It can be described as a process by which the people of the world are unified into a single society and function together. This process is a combination of economic, technological, sociocultural and political forces. Globalization is often used to refer to economic globalization.

That is, integration of national economies into the international economy through trade, foreign direct investment, capital flows, migration, and the spread of technology. The United Nations ESCWA has written that globalization "is a widely-used term that can be defined in a number of different ways. When used in an economic context, it refers to the reduction and removal of barriers between national borders in order to facilitate the flow of goods, capital, and services and labour although considerable barriers remain to the flow of labour. It began in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century.

But its spread slowed during the period from the start of the First World War until the third quarter of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. Globalization is not a new phenomenon. This slowdown can be attributed to the inward looking policies pursued by a number of countries in order to protect their respective industries.

The pace of globalization picked up rapidly during the fourth quarter of the 20<sup>th</sup> century..."

Tom G. Palmer of the Cato Institute defines globalization as "the diminution or elimination of state-enforced restrictions on exchanges across borders and the increasingly integrated and complex global system of production and exchange that has emerged as a result."

Thomas L. Friedman "examine the impact of the flattening of the globe", and argues that globalized trade, outsourcing, supply-chaining, and political forces have changed the world permanently, for both better and worse. He also argues that the pace of globalization is quickening and will continue to have a growing impact on business organization and practice.

Noam Chomsky argues that the word globalization is also used, in a doctrinal sense, to describe the neoliberal form of economic globalization.

Herman E. Daly argues that sometimes the terms internationalization and globalization are used interchangeably but there is slight formal difference. The term "*internationalization*" refers to the importance of international trade, relations, treaties etc. International means between or among nations.

**Exercise 1. Read the passage and determine the notion "globalization".**



**Exercise 2. Read the passage and determine the notion "internationalization".**

**Exercise 3. Read the message and explain the history of globalization.**

The term "globalization" has been used by economists since the 1980s although it was used in social sciences in the 1960s; however, its concepts did not become popular until the latter half of the 1980s & 1990s. The earliest written theoretical concepts of globalization were penned by an American entrepreneur-turned-minister Charles Taze Russell who coined the term "corporate giants" in 1897.

Globalization is viewed as a century's long process, tracking the expansion of human population and the growth of civilization, that has accelerated dramatically in the past 50 years.

Early forms of globalization existed during the Roman Empire, the Parthian empire, and the Han Dynasty, when the Silk Road started in China, reached the boundaries of the Parthian empire, and continued onwards towards Rome. The Islamic Golden Age is an example, when Muslim traders and explorers established an early global economy across the Old World resulting in a globalization of crops, trade, knowledge and technology; later during the Mongol Empire, when there was greater integration along the Silk Road.

Globalization in a wider context began shortly before the turn of the 16th century, with two Kingdoms of the Iberian Peninsula – the Kingdom of Portugal and the Kingdom of Castile. Portugal's global explorations in the 16<sup>th</sup> century, especially, linked continents, economies and cultures to a massive extent. Portugal's exploration and trade with most of the coast of Africa, Eastern South America, and Southern and Eastern Asia, was the first major trade based form of globalization.

A wave of global trade, colonization, and enculturation reached all corners of the world. Global integration continued through the expansion of European trade in the 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries, when the Portuguese and Spanish Empires colonized the Americas, followed eventually by France and England.

Globalization has had a tremendous impact on cultures, particularly indigenous cultures, around the world. In the 15th century, Portugal's Company of Guinea was one of the first chartered commercial companies established by Europeans in other continent during the Age of Discovery, whose task was to deal with the spices and to fix the prices of the goods.

In the 17th century, globalization became a business phenomenon when the British East India Company (founded in 1600), which is often described as the first multinational corporation, was established, as well as the Dutch East India Company (founded in 1602) and the Portuguese East India Company (founded in 1628). Because of the large investment and financing needs and the high risks involved with international trade, the British East India Company became the first company in the world to share risk and enable joint ownership of companies through the issuance of shares of stock: an important driver for globalization.

Globalization was achieved by the British Empire (the largest empire in history) due to its sheer size and power. British ideals and culture were imposed on other nations during this period.

The 19th century is sometimes called "The First Era of Globalization." It was a period characterized by rapid growth in international trade and investment between the European imperial powers, their colonies, and, later, the USA. It was in this period that areas of sub-saharan Africa and the Island Pacific were incorporated into the world system.



## MODERN GLOBALIZATION

"The First Era of Globalization began to break down at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century with World War I", Said John Maynard Keynes, "The inhabitant of London could order by telephone, sipping his morning tea, the various products of the whole earth, reasonably expect their early delivery upon his doorstep. Militarism & imperialism of racial and cultural rivalries were little more than the amusements of his daily newspaper. What an extraordinary episode in the economic progress of man was that age which came to an end in August 1914. "The "First Era of Globalization" later collapsed during the gold standard crisis and Great Depression in the late 1920s and early 1930s.

In late 2000s, much of the industrialized world entered into a deep recession. Some analysts say the world is going through a period of deglobalization after years of increasing economic integration. Up to 45% of global wealth had been destroyed by the global financial crisis.

Globalization, since World War II, is largely the result of planning by politicians to breakdown borders hampering trade to increase prosperity and interdependence thereby decreasing the chance of future war. Their work led to the Bretton Woods conference, an agreement by the world's leading politicians to lay down the framework for international commerce and finance, and the founding of several international institutions intended to oversee the processes of globalization.

These institutions include the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (the World Bank), and the International Monetary Fund. Globalization has been facilitated by advances in technology which have reduced the costs of trade, and trade negotiation rounds, originally under the auspices of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), which led to a series of agreements to remove restrictions on free trade. Since World War II, barriers to international trade have been considerably lowered through international agreements – GATT.

Particular initiatives carried out as a result of GATT and the World Trade Organization (WTO), for which GATT is the foundation, has included ***promotion of free trade***.

- restriction or elimination of tariffs;
- creation of free trade zones.;
- reduced transportation costs of containerization for ocean shipping;
- reduction or elimination of capital controls;
- reduction, elimination, or harmonization of subsidies for local businesses;
- creation of subsidies for global corporations;
- harmonization of intellectual property laws with more restrictions;
- supranational recognition of intellectual property restrictions.

Cultural globalization, driven by communication technology and the worldwide marketing of Western cultural industries, was understood at first as a process of homogenization, as the global domination of American culture at the expense of traditional diversity. However, a contrasting trend soon became evident in the emergence of movements protesting against globalization and giving new momentum to the defense of local uniqueness, individuality, and identity, but largely without success.

The Uruguay Round (1986 to 1994) led to a treaty to create the WTO to mediate trade disputes and set up a uniform platform of trading. Other bilateral and multilateral trade agreements, including sections of Europe's Maastricht Treaty and the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) have also been signed in pursuit of the goal of reducing tariffs and barriers to trade.

Global conflicts, such as the 9/11 terrorist attacks on the USA of America, is interrelated with globalization because it was primary source of the "war on terror", which had started the steady increase of the prices of oil and gas, due to the fact that most OPEC member countries were in the Arabian Peninsula. World exports rose from 8.5% of gross world product in 1970 to 16.1% of gross world product in 2001.



## MEASURING GLOBALIZATION

Globalization has had an impact on different cultures around the world. Looking specifically at economic globalization, demonstrates that it can be measured in different ways. As globalization is not only an economic phenomenon, a multivariate approach to measuring globalization is the recent index calculated by the Swiss think tank KOF. The index measures the three main dimensions of globalization: economic, social, and political. According to the index, the world's most globalized country is Belgium, followed by Austria, Sweden, the UK and the Netherlands.

In addition to three indices measuring these dimensions, an overall index of globalization and sub-indices referring to actual economic flows, economic restrictions, and data on personal contact, data on information flows, and data on cultural proximity is calculated. Data is available on a yearly basis for 122 countries, as detailed in Dreher, Gaston and Martens (2008). The least globalized countries according to the KOF-index are Haiti, Myanmar the Central African Republic and Burundi.

This center around the four main economic flows that characterize globalization:

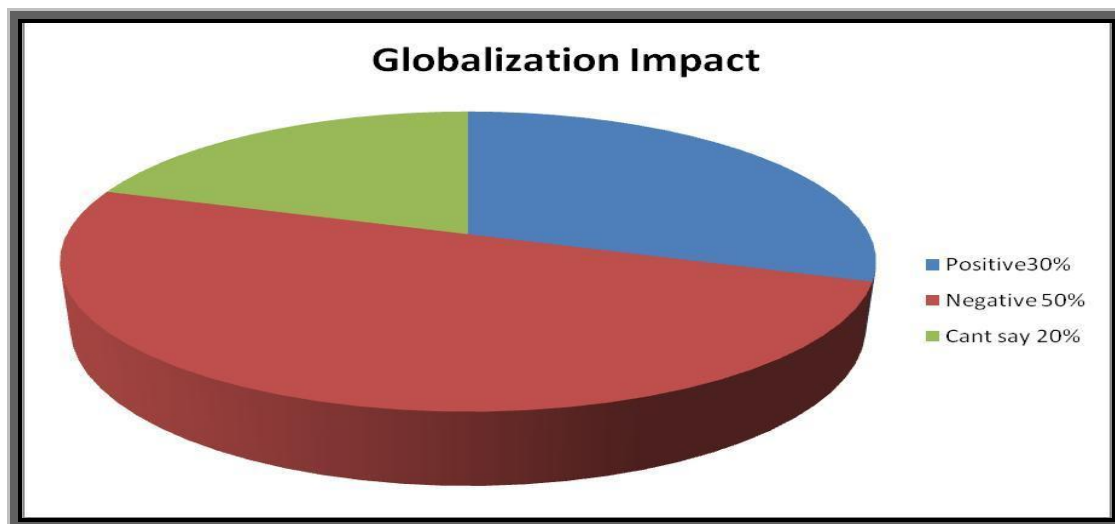
- Goods and services, e.g. exports plus imports as a proportion of national income or per capita of population.
- Labor / people – net migration rates; inward or outward migration flows, weighted by population.
- Capital – inward or outward direct investment as a proportion of national income or per head of population.
- Technology, e.g. international research & development flows; proportion of populations (rates of change thereof) using particular inventions ("factor-neutral" technological advances such as the telephone, motorcar, broadband).

**Exercise 1. Read the message and explain the notion "modern globalization".**

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. When did the "First Era of Globalization" begin? 2. What was militarism and imperialism of racial and cultural rivalries like? 3. What collapsed during the gold standard crisis and Great Depression in the late 1920s and early 1930s? 4. When did much of the industrialized world enter into a deep recession? 5. What is globalization since World War II like? 6. Whose work led to the Bretton Woods conference, an agreement by the world's leading politicians to lay down the framework for international commerce and finance? 7. Globalization is facilitated by advances in technology, isn't it? 8. What are four main economic flows that characterize globalization? 9. What are "factor-neutral" technological advances like? 10. What is calculated in addition to 3 indices?

**Exercise 3. Make up a short report and give a talk in class.**



## EFFECTS OF GLOBALIZATION

*Globalization has various aspects which affect the world in different ways such as:*

*Industrial* – emergence of worldwide production markets and broader access to a range of foreign products for consumers and companies. Particularly movement of material and goods between and within national boundaries. *Financial* – emergence of worldwide financial markets and better access to external financing for borrowers. As these worldwide structures grew more quickly than any transnational regulatory regime, the instability of the global financial infrastructure dramatically increased, as evidenced by the financial crises of late 2008. *Economic* – realization of a global common market, based on the freedom of exchange of goods and capital. The interconnectedness of these markets, however meant that an economic collapse in any one given country could not be contained.

*Political* – some use "globalization" to mean the creation of a world government which regulates the relationships among governments and guarantees the rights arising from social and economic globalization. Politically, the USA has enjoyed a position of power among the world powers; in part because of its strong and wealthy economy. With the influence of globalization and with the help of the USA's own economy, China has experienced some tremendous growth within the past decade. If China continues to grow at the rate projected by the trends, then it is very likely that in the next twenty years, there will be a major reallocation of power among the world leaders. China will have enough wealth, industry, and technology to rival the USA for the position of leading world power.

*Informational* – increase in information flows between geographically remote locations.

Arguably this is a technological change with the advent of fibre optic communications, satellites, and increased availability of telephone and Internet.

*Language* – the most popular language is English. About 75% of the world's mail, telexes, and cables are in English. Approximately 60% of the world's radio programs are in English. About 90% of all Internet traffic uses English.

*Competition* – Survival in the new global business market calls for improved productivity and increased competition. Due to the market becoming worldwide, companies in various industries have to upgrade their products and use technology skillfully in order to face increased competition.

*Ecological* – the advent of global environmental challenges that might be solved with international cooperation, such as climate change, cross-boundary water and air pollution, over-fishing of the ocean, and the spread of invasive species. Since many factories are built in developing countries with less environmental regulation, globalism and free trade may increase pollution.

On the other hand, economic development historically required a "dirty" industrial stage, and it is argued that developing countries should not, via regulation, be prohibited from increasing their standard of living.

*Cultural* – growth of cross-cultural contacts; advent of new categories of consciousness and identities which embodies cultural diffusion, the desire to increase one's standard of living and enjoy foreign products and ideas, adopt new technology and practices, and participate in a "world culture".

Some bemoan the resulting consumerism and loss of languages. Also see Transformation of culture. Spreading of multiculturalism, and better individual access to cultural diversity.

Some consider such "imported" culture a danger, since it may supplant the local culture, causing reduction in diversity or even assimilation. Others consider multiculturalism to promote peace and understanding between peoples. Greater international travel and tourism.

Greater immigration, including illegal immigration. Spread of local consumer products to other countries (often adapted to their culture). Worldwide fads and pop culture. Accessible to those who have Internet or Television, leaving out a substantial segment of the Earth's population. Worldwide sporting events such as FIFA World Cup & the Olympic Games.

*Social* – development of the system of non-governmental organizations as main agents of global public policy, including humanitarian aid and developmental efforts.

*Technical* – development of a global telecommunications infrastructure and greater transborder data flow, using such technologies as the Internet, communication satellites, submarine fiber optic cable, and wireless telephones. Increase in the number of standards applied globally; e.g. copyright laws, patents and world trade agreements.

*Legal / Ethical* – the creation of the international criminal court and justice movements. Crime importation and raising awareness of global crime-fighting efforts and cooperation. Whilst it is all too easy to look at the positive aspects of Globalization and the great benefits that are apparent everywhere, there are also several negative occurrences that can only be the result of or major motivating factors that inspire some corporations to globalize.

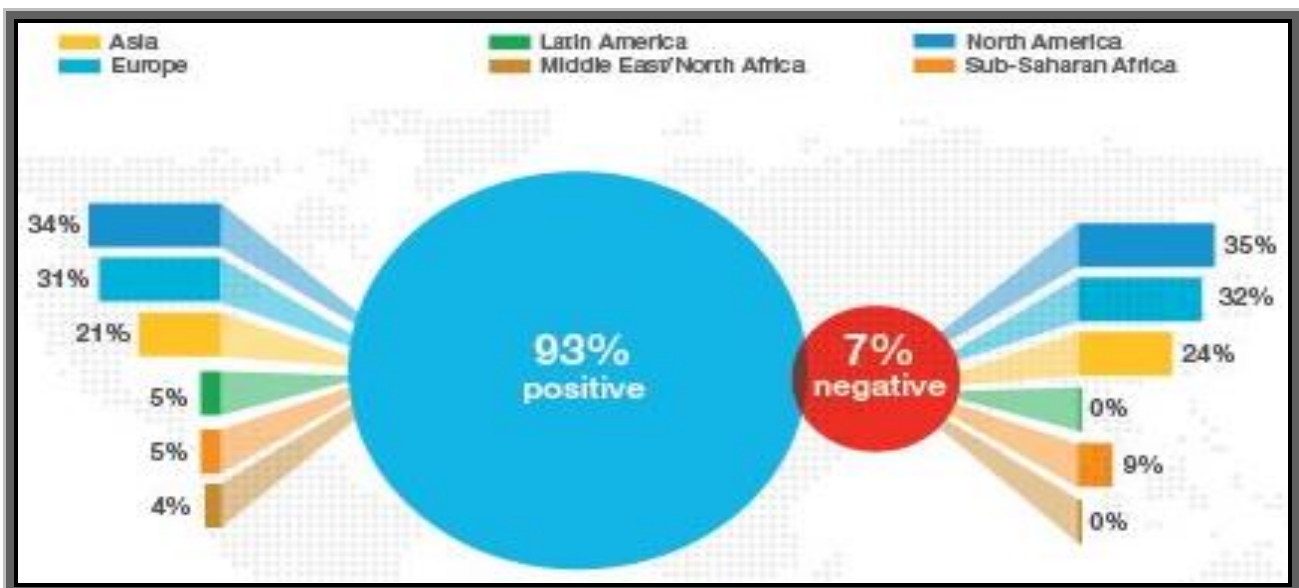
*Globalization* – the growing integration of economies and societies around the world – has been one of the most hotly-debated topics in international economics over the past few years. Rapid growth and poverty reduction in China, India, and other countries that were poor 20 years ago, has been a positive aspect of globalization. But globalization has also generated significant international opposition over concerns that it has increased inequality and environmental degradation.

Globalization has had extensive impact on the world of business. In a business environment marked by globalization, the world seems to shrink, and other businesses halfway around the world can exert as great an impact on a business as one right down the street. Internet access and e-commerce have brought small-scale coops in Third World nations into the same arena as thriving businesses in the industrialized world, and visions of low-income workers handweaving rugs on primitive looms that compete with rug dealers in major cities are not totally far-fetched.

Globalization has affected workforce demographics, as well.

Today's workforces are characterized by greater diversity in terms of age, gender, ethnic and racial background, and a variety of other demographic factors. In fact, management of diversity has become one of the primary issues of 21st century business. Trends such as outsourcing and offshoring are a direct offshoot of globalization and have created a work environment in which cultural diversity can be problematic. A U.S. company where punctuality is important and meetings always start on time faces adjustments if it opens an office in South America or France, where being 10 to 15 minutes late to a meeting is considered acceptable: being on time is called "British Time".

**Exercise 1. Read the passage and explain in what ways globalization affects the world.**



Positive or negative impact of globalization

## SWEATSHOPS

It can be said that globalization is the door that opens up an otherwise resource poor country to the international market. Where a country or nation has little material or physical product harvested or mined from its own soil, an opportunity is seen by large corporations to take advantage of the "export poverty" of such a nation. Where the majority of the earliest occurrences of economic globalization are recorded as being the expansion of businesses and corporate growth, in many poorer nations globalization is actually the result of the foreign businesses investing in the country to take advantage of the lower wage rate: even though investing, by increasing the Capital Stock of the country, increases their wage rate. One example used by anti-globalization protestors is the use of "Sweatshops" by manufacturers.

According to Global Exchange these "Sweat Shops" are widely used by sports shoe manufacturers and mentions one company in particular – Nike.

There are factories set up in the poor countries where employees agree to work for low wages.

Then if labour laws alter in those countries and stricter rules govern the manufacturing process the factories are closed down and relocated to other nations with more liberal economic policies.

There are several agencies that have been set up worldwide specifically designed to focus on anti-sweatshop campaigns and education of such. "The Decent Working Conditions & Fair Competition Act" is a legislation passed by the National Labor Committee in the USA. The legislation now suggests that companies are legally obligated to respect human and worker rights by prohibiting the import, sale, or export of sweatshop goods. There are very strict standards set out by the International Labor Organization and any violations shall be banned from the US market.

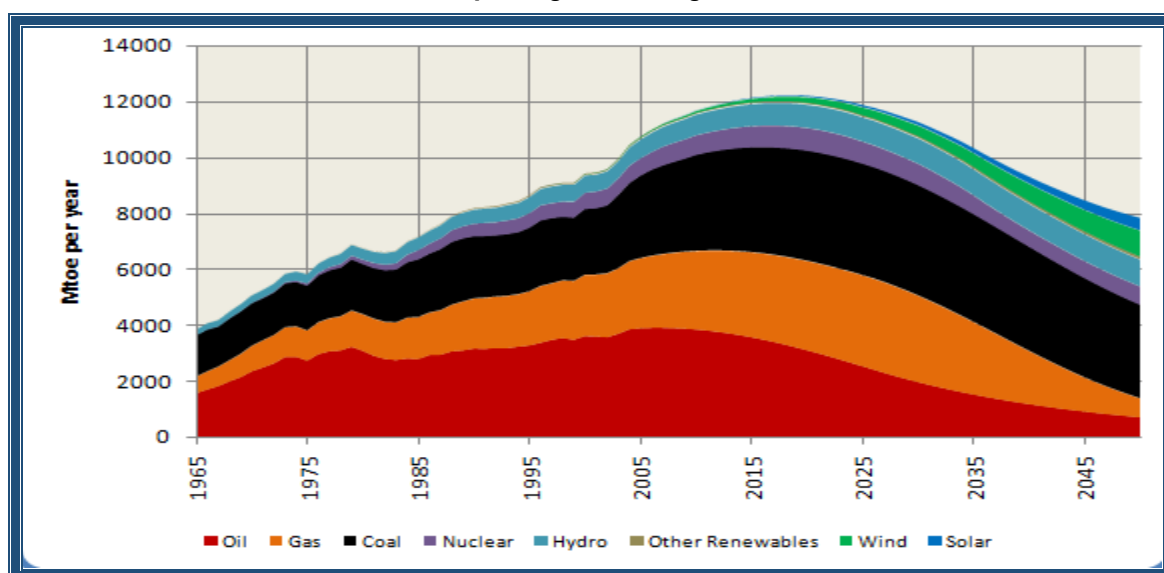
Specifically, these core standards include no child labor, no forced labor, freedom of association, right to organize and bargain collectively, as well as the right to decent working conditions.

Tiziana Terranova has stated that globalization has brought a culture of "free labour". In a digital sense, it is where the individuals (contributing capital) exploits and eventually "exhausts the means through which labour can sustain itself". For example, in the area of digital media (animations, hosting chat rooms, designing games), where it is often less glamorous than it may sound. In the gaming industry, a Chinese Gold Market has been established.

### Note

**Sweatshop** – a workshop where employees work long hours under bad conditions for low wages.

**Exercise 1. Read and translate the passage in writing.**



Global energy supply



## CULTURE

One powerful source has blown down cultural boundaries around the entire world.

What is this influential tool? It is the Internet and its endless margin of discovery. With the Internet people can easily access someone half way across the world. They could converse with someone living a completely different lifestyle yet still have something in common, the Internet.

The Internet in essence makes the world a smaller place. Someone in America can be eating Japanese noodles for lunch while someone in Sydney Australia is eating classic Italian meatballs.

One classic culture aspect is food. India is known for their curry and exotic spices. Paris is known for its smelly cheeses.

America is known for its burgers and fries. McDonalds was once an American favorite with its cheery mascot, Ronald, red and yellow theme, and greasy fast food. Now it is a global enterprise with 31,000 locations worldwide with locations in Kuwait, Egypt, and Malta. This restaurant is just one example of food going big on the global scale.

Meditation has been a sacred practice for centuries in Indian culture. It calms the body and helps one connect to their inner being while shying away from their conditioned self. Before globalization Americans did not meditate or crunch their bodies into knots on a yoga mat. After globalization this is a common practice, it is even considered a chic way to keep your body in shape. Some people are even traveling to India to get the full experience themselves. Another common practice brought about by globalization would be Chinese symbol tattoos.

These specific tattoos are a huge hit with today's younger generation and are quickly becoming the norm. With the melding of cultures using another countries language in ones body art is now considered normal. Culture is defined as patterns of human activity and the symbols that give these activities significance. Culture is what people eat, how they dress, beliefs they hold, and activities they practice. Globalization has joined different cultures and made it into something different. As Erla Zwingle, from the National Geographic article titled "Globalization" states, "When cultures receive outside influences, they ignore some and adopt others, and then almost immediately start to transform them".

"Alan Greenspan has proclaimed himself "shocked" that "the self-interest of lending institutions to protect shareholders' equity" proved to be an illusion... The Reagan-Thatcher model, which favored finance over domestic manufacturing, has collapsed.

The mutually reinforcing rise of financialization and globalization broke the bond between American capitalism and America's interests. ...we should take a cue from Scandinavia's social capitalism, which is less manufacturing-centered than the German model.

The Scandinavians have upgraded the skills and wages of their workers in the retail and service sectors – the sectors that employ the majority of our own workforce. In consequence, fully employed impoverished workers, of which there are mln.s in the USA, do not exist in Scandinavia. "

**Exercise 1. Comment in a balanced way on cultural boundaries around the entire world.**



## PRO-GLOBALIZATION (GLOBALISM)

Globalization advocates such as Jeffrey Sachs point to the above average drop in poverty rates in countries, such as China, where globalization has taken a strong foothold, compared to areas less affected by globalization, such as Sub-Saharan Africa, where poverty rates have remained stagnant.

Supporters of free trade claim that it increases economic prosperity as well as opportunity, especially among developing nations, enhances civil liberties and leads to a more efficient allocation of resources. Economic theories of comparative advantage suggest that free trade leads to a more efficient allocation of resources, with all countries involved in the trade benefiting.

In general, this leads to lower prices, more employment, higher output and a higher standard of living for those in developing countries. One of the ironies of the recent success of India and China is the fear that... success in these two countries comes at the expense of the USA.

These fears are fundamentally wrong and, even worse, dangerous. They are wrong because the world is not a zero-sum struggle but rather is a positive-sum opportunity in which improving technologies and skills can raise living standards around the world.

Dr. Francesco Stipo, Director of the USA Club of Rome suggests that "the world government should reflect the political and economic balances of world nations. A world confederation would not supersede the authority of the State governments but rather complement it, as both the States and the world authority would have power within their sphere of competence". Proponents of laissez-faire capitalism, and some Libertarians, say that higher degrees of political and economic freedom in the form of democracy and capitalism in the developed world are ends in themselves and produce higher levels of material wealth. They see globalization as the beneficial spread of liberty and capitalism.

Supporters of democratic globalization are sometimes called pro-globalists. They believe that the first phase of globalization, which was market-oriented, should be followed by a phase of building global political institutions representing the will of world citizens.

The difference from other globalists is that they do not define in advance any ideology to orient this will, but would leave it to the free choice of those citizens via a democratic process.

Some, such as former Canadian Senator Douglas Roche, O.C., simply view globalization as inevitable and advocate creating institutions such as a directly-elected United Nations Parliamentary Assembly to exercise oversight over unelected international bodies. Supporters of globalization argue that the anti-globalization movement uses anecdotal evidence to support their protectionist view, whereas worldwide statistics strongly support globalization: From 1981 to 2001, according to World Bank figures, the number of people living on \$1 a day or less declined from 1.5 bn to 1.1 bn in absolute terms.

At the same time, the world population increased, so in percentage terms the number of such people in developing nations declined from 40% to 20% of the population. With the greatest improvements occurring in economies rapidly reducing barriers to trade and investment; yet, some critics argue that more detailed variables measuring poverty should be studied instead.

The percentage of people living on less than \$2 a day has decreased greatly in areas affected by globalization, whereas poverty rates in other areas have remained largely stagnant.

In East-Asia, including China, the percentage has decreased by 50.1% compared to a 2.2% increase in Sub-Saharan Africa. Population mobility, geographic mobility or more simply mobility is a statistic that measures migration within a population. It is most commonly used in demography and human geography, it may also be used to describe the movement of animals between populations.

Mobility estimates in the Current Population Survey (CPS), produced by the USA Census Bureau, define mobility status on the basis of a comparison between the place of residence of each individual to the time of the March survey and the place of residence 1 year earlier. Non-movers are all people who were living in the same house at the end of the migration period and the beginning of the migration period.

Movers are all people who were living in a different house at the end of the period rather than at the beginning. Movers are further classified as to whether they were living in the same or different county, state, region, or were movers from abroad. Movers are also categorized by whether they moved within or between central cities, suburbs, and non-metropolitan areas of the USA.

The CPS also includes information on reasons for a move. These include work-related factors, such as a job transfer, job loss or looking for work, and wanting to be closer to work.

Housing factors include wanting to own a home, rather than rent, seeking a better home or better neighborhood, or wanting cheaper housing. Additional mobility factors include attending college, changes in marital status, retirement, or health-related moves. *Population turnover* is a related statistic that measures gross moves in relation to the size of the population, movement of residents into and out of a geographic location between censuses counts. Population mobility has implications ranging from changes in Congressional representation, impact on local economic growth, housing markets, and demand for local services. Mobility may also affect the spread of infectious diseases.

### **Snowbird (people)**

The term *Snowbird* is used to describe people from the Northeast, Midwestern United States, or Canada who spend a large portion of winter in warmer locales such as California, Arizona, Florida, The Carolinas, or elsewhere along the Sunbelt region of the southern and southwest USA, areas of the Caribbean, and even as far away as Australia and New Zealand. It is also used for those who migrate to Victoria, British Columbia, Canada for the winter.

Victoria is known for having very mild winters by Canadian standards, and has an annual "*blossom count*" in mid-February to prove its warm winter status. Residents of northern Europe also flock to the warmer areas in the USA, establishing second communities of seasonal residents.

Snowbirds are typically retirees, and business owners who can afford to be away from home for long periods of time or have a second home in a warmer location.

Some snowbirds carry their homes with them, as campers (mounted on bus or truck frames) or as boats following the east coast Intracoastal Waterway. It used to be that snowbirds were the wealthy that maintained several seasonal residences & shifted residence with the seasons to avail themselves of the best time to be at each location. Many of these "*Snowbirds*" use their vacation time to declare permanent residency in low, or no tax states (the taxes are sustained by high tourism taxes), claim lower non-resident income taxes in their home states.

Some are reputed to use this dual-residency to absentee vote in both locales. Snowbirds wish to avoid the snow and cold temperatures of northern winter, but maintain ties with family and friends by staying there the rest of the year. In recent years, younger people with jobs tied to seasonal tourists, often migrate southward following the tourist season to southern resorts. Some are also business owners who have a second home in a warmer location or whose business can be easily moved from place to place. Many families in the USA often spend their Christmas holiday time (up to 2 weeks) at beach resorts in Florida and California. Some are people who suffer from seasonal affective disorder who wish to enjoy the longer daylight hours in the southern latitudes in winter.

A significant portion of the snowbird community is made up of recreational vehicle users (RVers). Many own a motorhome for the sole purpose of traveling south in the winter. Often they go to the same location every year and consider the other RVers that do the same a "second family".

Many RV parks label themselves "snowbird friendly" and get the majority of their income from the influx of RVing snowbirds. Several areas in Florida and Arizona have large RV communities that appear and disappear seasonally.

Quartzsite, Arizona, that have been labeled "white city", because from a bird's-eye view all the motorhomes cover the landscape in white and then in the summer are gone.

***Exercise 1. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.***

## SEPARATION BARRIERS

The term *separation barrier* is a euphemism for walls or fences constructed to limit the movement of people across a certain line or border, or to separate two populations.

These structures vary in placement with regard to international borders and topography.

The most famous example of a separation barrier is probably the Great Wall of China, a series of barriers separating the Empire of China from nomadic powers to the north; the most prominent recent example was the Berlin Wall that separated the enclave of West Berlin from the rest of East Germany during most of the Cold War era.

### **Afghanistan**

In January 2006, Afghanistan's government decreed that the United Nations, the American embassy and other foreign organizations in Kabul must clear concrete security barriers that protect their buildings. Most Kabul streets are full of security barriers and large concrete anti-blast blocks aimed at protecting against the insurgent and terrorist attacks that have risen in the past four years since the fall of the Taliban regime. The decree follows pressure from the newly formed Afghan parliament and public complaints over the heavy traffic jams caused by the barriers.

The foreign groups are expressing concern and saying that the security situation does not permit that. The United Nations is one of the organizations concerned by the Afghan government's order. UN chief spokesman in Kabul Adrian Edwards said that security barriers are still required. "We are in a difficult security environment which certainly hasn't improved during 2005", Edwards said.

"There have been a number of suicide attacks. Within the UN here, I think none of us would wish to be behind these barricades, we would prefer things could be open as we are in some other countries. However, there have been necessary for our security, that's why they are there."

The Afghan government has said it is determined to remove all the barricades. The directive of the government says that "blocking the footpaths, streets, and roads is illegal" and that no one has the right to create obstructions, the only exception being the presidential palace.

### **Botswana**

In 2003, Botswana began building a 300-mile-long electric fence along its border with Zimbabwe. The official reason for the fence is to stop the spread of foot-and-mouth disease among livestock. Zimbabweans argue that the height of the fence is clearly intended to keep out people. Botswana has responded that the fence is designed to keep out cattle, and to ensure that entrants have their shoes disinfected at legal border crossings. Botswana also argued that the government continues to encourage legal movement into the country. Zimbabwe was unconvinced, and the barrier remains a source of tension between the two nations.

### **Brunei**

Brunei is building a security fence along its 20-kilometer border with Limbang to stop the flow of irregular migrants and smuggled goods.

### **People's Republic of China**

The People's Republic of China (PRC) has two Special Administrative Regions, namely Hong Kong and Macau on its southeastern coast. Both of them maintain controlled intra-national borders with the neighbouring Guangdong province in Mainland China. An identity document is inspected when one crosses the border. Hong Kong was a Dependent Territory of the UK until its sovereignty was handed over to the PRC in 1997, while Macau was a Special Territory of Portugal until its sovereignty was handed over to the PRC in 1999. Before the handovers, the Hong Kong-Guangdong and Macau-Guangdong borders were regarded as international borders. Under the principle of "One Country, Two Systems", the two Special Administrative Regions continue to maintain their own customs and immigration policies, which are independent of those in Mainland China after the handovers.



Due to differences in the policies between the special administrative regions and the Mainland, the Hong Kong-Guangdong and Macau-Guangdong borders have been maintained in operation after the handovers. Hong Kong has a border stretching 32 km with the Shenzhen Special Economic Zone of Guangdong that features fences, thermal image sensors, lights and closed-circuit television.

The border is also patrolled regularly by police. Just south of Shenzhen River (the geographical delimitation of the border) is a strip of rural land with restricted access, the 28 km<sup>2</sup> Closed Area. Currently, the three road border crossings are located at Sha Tau Kok, Man Kam To, and Lok Ma Chau, and a railway and traveller crossing is located at Lo Wu. The residents of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region are required to have their Hong Kong ID Cards inspected by the Hong Kong Immigration Department and their Home Return Permits inspected by the Public Security Bureau of Guangdong when they cross the border. Macau has been maintaining a 340-metre controlled border with Zhuhai City in Guangdong with a crossing available at the Border Gate (built in 1870).

The border crossing is equipped with 54 counters for travelers and 8 for vehicular traffic. Opened in 1999, the Lotus Bridge in Macau supplemented what has been the only border crossing into mainland China through Border Gate. Both border crossings allow access into Zhuhai. China, in October 2006, is also building a security barrier along its border with North Korea to prevent the illegal immigrants from North Korea. Post-colonial Globalism – context culture order.

### **Republic of Cyprus**

Since 1974 Turkey has constructed and maintains a 300 km (187 mile) separation barrier along the 1974 Green Line (ceasefire line) dividing the Republic of Cyprus into two parts, in violation of multiple United Nations Security Council Resolutions; the de facto Turkish controlled northern one-third of the Republic and the remaining southern two-thirds of Cyprus to separate Turkish and Greek Cypriot populations. United Nations Buffer Zone in Cyprus

### **Egypt**

A security fence around the Egyptian town of Sharm el-Sheik was constructed in response to a spate of terrorist attacks at the resort. Government officials say the fence, equipped with checkpoints to allow vehicles into the area, will deter terrorists. In addition South Sinai Governor Mustafa Afifi said the fence will help control the effect of heavy seasonal rains and will reduce the number of vehicle-camel crashes that occur on the Sharm el-Sheik highway.

Israel saw no need to fortify the Sinai Desert border with Egypt after the 1979 Israeli-Egyptian Peace Treaty. The fence along that border was always more a marker than an effective barrier, and has become rusty and swamped by shifting sand dunes.

The porous border has become the scene of extensive drug trafficking and the smuggling of women, typically from Third World and East European countries, who are subsequently forced into prostitution, as well as the entry of various refugees, asylum-seekers and illegal immigrants from various African countries, notably Sudanese fleeing the genocide in Darfur.

There were isolated cases of infiltration by armed Palestinians, and apprehension that they would increase. In December 2005 the government of Israel proposed building a £200 mln. security barrier along the Egyptian border, but as of late 2007 the funds have not been actually allocated.

### **Israel**

Due to Israel's specific situation of being at war and conflict with much of its Middle Eastern environment, separation barriers and walls have been and remain an issue of major military (and often also political) concern: *Jerusalem*: During the 1950s and 1960s a fortified separation barrier also divided much of Jerusalem to separate Jordanian and Israeli-controlled sectors of the city. It was pulled down in the immediate aftermath of the 1967 Six Day War, when the eastern part of the city came under Israeli rule.

## **Iran**

Iran-Pakistan barrier

## **India**

Since the mid-1990s, India has been involved in the construction of some of the lengthiest separation barriers along its international borders. Six of the nine countries neighboring India are classified as Least Developed Countries. As a consequence, thousands of people from these countries, especially from Bangladesh, Nepal and Burma, illegally immigrate into India, a newly industrialized country, to seek better economic opportunities putting tremendous strain on its economy.

The Indo-Bangladeshi barrier and Indo-Burma barrier are being built to check smuggling, illegal immigration and possible infiltration by terrorists. In addition, India completed the construction of the Indian Kashmir barrier which runs across the Line of Control in Kashmir. The purpose of this barrier is to prevent infiltration by Pakistan-based militants and terrorists. The Indian government is also considering the construction of a barrier along the Indo-Pakistan border.

## **Iraq**

On 10 April 2007, the U.S. military began constructing a 5 km (3 mile) long, 3.6 metre (12 ft) high concrete wall around the predominantly Sunni district of Adhamiya in Baghdad.

Baghdad Wall

## **Lebanon & Syria**

Israel's borders with Lebanon and Syria have sophisticated security barriers, including electronic surveillance and warning systems. The barrier along the Lebanese border follows the lines of the 1949 Armistice and was laid down in coordination with the UN, the government anxious to make clear that it had withdrawn completely from Lebanese territory (excepting the ongoing dispute on the Shaba Farms).

The barrier on *the Syrian border on the Golan Heights* reflects the situation in the aftermath of the Yom Kippur War, when Israeli retained the territory conquered in 1967 except for handing back the town of Kuneitra. The Syrian government has repeatedly demanded the return of the entire Golan, but has made no specific issue of Israel erecting a security barrier along the border as it presently stands.

## **Jordan**

The border of Israel's territory with Jordan, mostly in the Negev Desert along the Arabah, is considered the most peaceful of the country's borders, due to traditional good relations with Jordan's Hashemite Dynasty. In 2004, Israel and Jordan commenced a joint project to build a desert science centre on their shared border. They have taken down a stretch of the border fence between the Red Sea and the Dead Sea for the campus. As well as the in the Negev, Israel also controls the *West Bank's border with Jordan* in the Jordan Valley. Along this border there is a security barrier with a two-way aim, designed to stop both infiltration from Jordan into the Israeli-controlled territory and the

## **Disputed Territories**

Israel's most critical and volatile relations are with its direct neighbors, the Palestinians, which are reflected in maintaining separation barriers between Israel proper and the Disputed Territories, with the declared aim of and subsequent success in preventing infiltration by suicide bombers. *The Israeli Gaza Strip barrier* involves a security barrier along Israel's 1949 Armistice lines.

There is also the security barrier along the Gaza Strip's border with Egypt, erected when Israel was in direct military control of the area. Though Israeli forces were withdrawn in 2005, the Government of Israel retains a declared interest in the area, especially due to alleged large-scale smuggling of arms from Sinai into the Strip, and insists upon the Egyptians and Palestinians maintaining intact the barrier between their respective territories – such insistence backed by sometimes open threats to otherwise resume direct Israeli military control.

This has been cited by Palestinians and others who assert that the Gaza Strip remains an Occupied Territory despite the Israeli Disengagement from Gaza in 2005.

*The Israeli West Bank barrier* is being built as a fence with wide margins and sophisticated electronic surveillance in rural areas, and an eight-meter high wall in urban areas. Of all Israel's separation barriers, it is the most controversial – between Israelis and Palestinians, internationally, inside the Israeli society itself. The controversy stems mainly from the government's decision not to follow Israel's 1949 Armistice lines (Green Line) but rather build the barrier within the West Bank – in some stretches, deeply within. Opponents of the project (call it "The Wall" rather than "Barrier" or "Fence") say that this proves its purpose is not to stop suicide bombers – which would be equally served by a fence along the Green Line.

But by the intention to effectively annex parts of the West Bank, especially those where Israeli settlements have been established, as well as water sources – and define the future borders with Palestine unilaterally and ahead of negotiations. This position was supported by the International Court of Justice at The Hague, which ruled that Israel had the right to fortify its own border but that building a barrier inside an Occupied Territory constituted a violation of International Law; the government of Israel, however, disputes this interpretation and refuses to abide by this ruling.

For its part, the Israeli Supreme Court held that building inside the West Bank is not illegal in itself, but ordered some changes to the route of the barrier where the judges considered the original route to cause severe damage to Palestinian daily life – especially in separating Palestinian villagers from their land. Some radical Israeli groups, such as Anarchists Against the Wall, actively participate in protests against the barrier together with the villagers.

As of late 2007, the barrier – originally slated to be completed by the end of 2005 – is far from complete, and further construction was stopped, officially for lack of funds.

#### **Korea**

South Korea has constructed a separation barrier between its territory and North Korea to obstruct any southward movement by the army of North Korea.

#### **Morocco**

Morocco has constructed a separation barrier in Western Sahara to keep the guerrilla fighters of Polisario out. Border Wall (Western Sahara)

#### **Northern Ireland**

A series of barriers separate the two communities in Protestant and Catholic neighbourhoods in Belfast, Derry, and elsewhere in Northern Ireland (UK).

These are euphemistically known as peace lines. More have continued to be constructed and expanded since the Good Friday Agreement. In earlier times, there was the Pale, a fortified region around Dublin. In theory English settlement was confined to the Pale. Beyond the pale only native Irish lived.

#### **Saudi Arabia**

Saudi Arabia has begun construction of a separation barrier or fence between its territory and Yemen to prevent the unauthorized movement of people and goods into and out of the Kingdom.

#### **Saudi-Yemen barrier**

In 2006 Saudi Arabia proposed plans for the construction of a security fence along the entire length of its 560 mile (900km) desert border with Iraq in a multimln.-pound project to secure the Kingdom's borders in order to improve internal security, control illegal immigration and bolster its defences against external threats.

**Exercise 1. Generate all events which are in the text.**

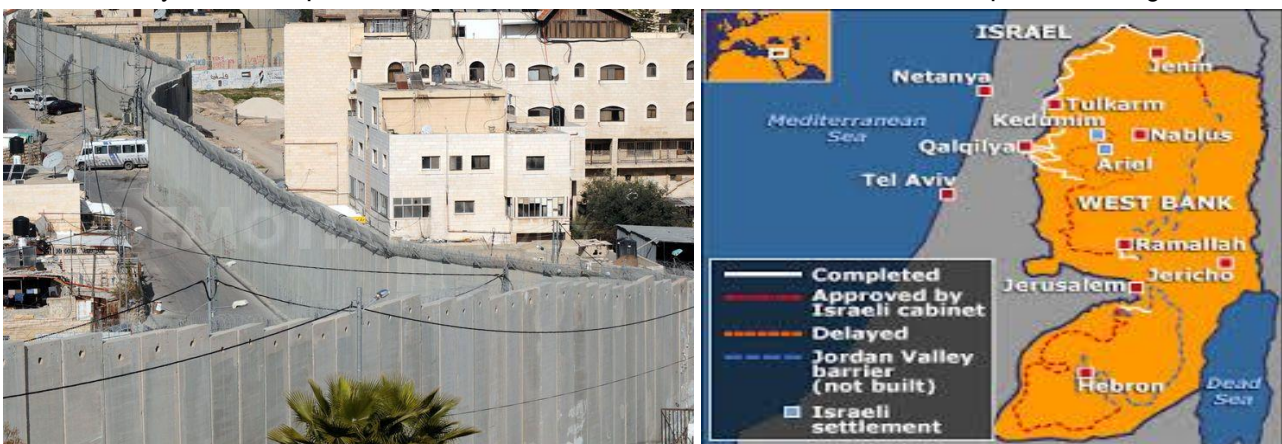
**Exercise 2. Write all new words and phrases on the topic.**

**Exercise 3. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

The Wall around Qalqiliya. A twenty-five foot high concrete cage cuts residents off from their agricultural land, necessary for their survival, and prevents you from traveling even 5 minutes out of the City. A single gate, open at the whims of the occupying army, controls 100,000 residents. Israel's Separation Barrier, dubbed the "Apartheid Wall" or "Berlin Wall" by Palestinians, has increasingly attracted international media attention, largely due to the hard-to-ignore scale of the project.

The most obvious historical parallel to the barrier is the Berlin Wall, which was 96 miles long (155 kilometers). Israel's barrier, still under construction, is expected to reach at least 403 miles in length (650 kilometers). The average height of the Berlin Wall was 11.8 feet (3.6 metres), compared with the maximum\* current height of Israel's Wall – 25 feet (8 metres). Israel's barrier is therefore planned to be four times as long and in places twice as high as the Berlin Wall.

Original caption: An aerial view shows the construction site of the security fence which will separate Israel from the West Bank, near the West Bank city of Tulkarm, July 30, 2003. Israeli Prime Minister Ariel Sharon has told U.S. President George W. Bush that Israel will keep building a West Bank security fence despite U.S. concerns the barrier could block Middle East peacemaking.



### South Africa

In 1975 a 75-mile (120-kilometer) high security fence was erected by South Africa to keep the violent revolution in Mozambique from spilling into Kruger National Park. In 1990 it was reported: Concern is growing in South Africa over the country's use of a lethal,

3,300 volt one amp electrified fence on its borders with Mozambique and Zimbabwe.

According to a report recently published by the South African Catholic Bureau for Refugees, the fence has caused more deaths in three years than the Berlin Wall did in its entire history.

Local people call the fence the "Snake of Fire". There have been calls by South African church leaders over the past months for the fence to be switched off permanently. Most of its victims have been women and children fleeing the war in Mozambique. The Berlin Wall resulted in 80 deaths over 28 years. Official figures provided by the South African Defence Force (SADF) indicate that 89 people were electrocuted at the fence between August 1986 and August 1989.

Church leaders dispute these figures, and claim that the true figure is nearer 200 each year.

A treaty signed on December 9, 2002 by the presidents of three countries – South Africa, Mozambique, and Zimbabwe allowed for the fence to be torn down in order to open the ancient elephant migration route between South Africa and Mozambique which was disrupted by the fence.

The Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park will connect the parks of three countries: South Africa's Kruger National Park, Mozambique's Limpopo National Park, and Zimbabwe's Gonarezhou National Park. In 2005 it was reported that only a relatively small portion of the high-security border fence separating South Africa's Kruger National Park with Zimbabwe's Gonarezhou Park has been removed.

Security concerns, especially about illegal immigrants and the smuggling of weapons and four-wheel-drive vehicles, have been hindering the removal of more sections of the border fence between them.



## **Pakistan**

In September 2005, Pakistan stated it has plans to build a 1,500-mile fence along its border with Afghanistan to prevent Islamic insurgents and drug smugglers slipping between the two countries. Former Pakistani President Pervez Musharraf has subsequently offered to mine the border as well.

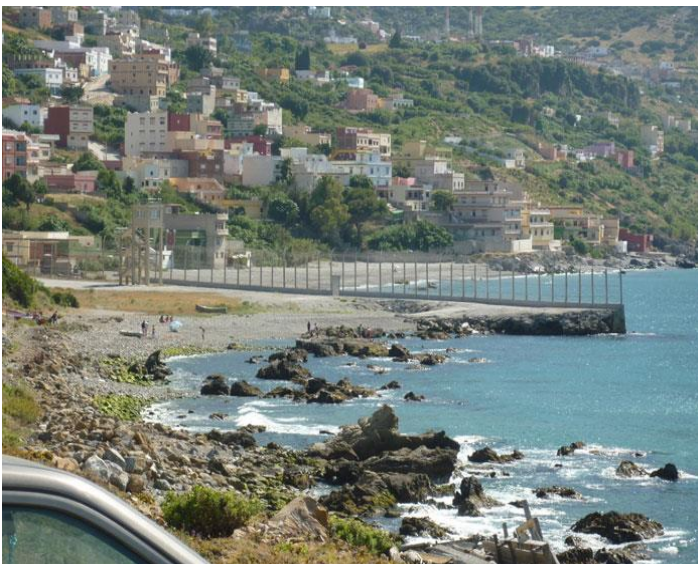
## **Russia**

There is an electronic security barrier (ex-"Iron Curtain") along the old Soviet border. Also, a security barrier is on the border of Russia with Norway, Finland, China, Mongolia and North Korea.

There is no barrier on Russian territory along the border with Estonia, Latvia, Belarus, or Ukraine, but there are some barriers on Estonian, Latvian and Ukrainian territory along the Russian border. It was reported in 2005 that the Russian government was considering the construction of a security barrier along its border with Chechnya as part of its efforts to combat terrorism.

## **Spain**

The European Union and Spain have constructed barriers between the Spanish exclaves of Ceuta and Melilla and Morocco to prevent illegal immigration and smuggling.



## **Thailand**

Thailand plans to build a concrete fence along parts of its border with Malaysia to keep Muslim militants and dual citizens from crossing Thailand's southern border with Malaysia. Thai-Malay barrier

## **United Arab Emirates**

The UAE is building a security barrier along its border with Oman. United Arab Emirates-Oman barrier.

## **United Nations**

The United Nations has constructed a demilitarized zone to stop Iraq from re-invading Kuwait; Kuwait plans to install a new separation barrier as well. Kuwait / Iraq Separation barrier

## **USA**

The USA has constructed a separation barrier along 130 kilometers of its border with Mexico to prevent unauthorized immigration into the USA and to deter smuggling of contraband, particularly illegal drugs. There has been legislation in the U.S. Congress on lengthening the barrier, but progress has been slow, both from lobbying and lack of funding. Beach in Tijuana, Mexico at the US border. USA – Mexico barrier

**Exercise 4. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 5. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**



### Separation barriers in history

A counterpart wall to the Great Wall in the south called the *Southern Great Wall* was erected to protect and divide the Chinese from the "southern barbarians" called Miao (meaning barbaric and nomadic).

Great Wall of Gorgan	Limes Germanicus	Götavirke
Great Wall of Goryeo	Limes Saxoniae	Willow Palisade
German-Czech Border	Gates of Alexander	Zasechnaya cherta
Hadrian's Wall	Offa's Dyke	Great Hedge of India
Antonine Wall	Danevirke	Chinese city walls
Berlin Wall	Great Wall of China	Panama Canal fence

Between Russia and Finland / Norway there was a fence on the Soviet side along the entire border (more than 1000 km) during the Cold war. Along the Finnish border it was not so well guarded since Finland agreed to send back all Russians who escaped. The fence was located a few km from the border, and still partly remains, even though the border controls are open now.

### Exercise 6. Answer the questions.

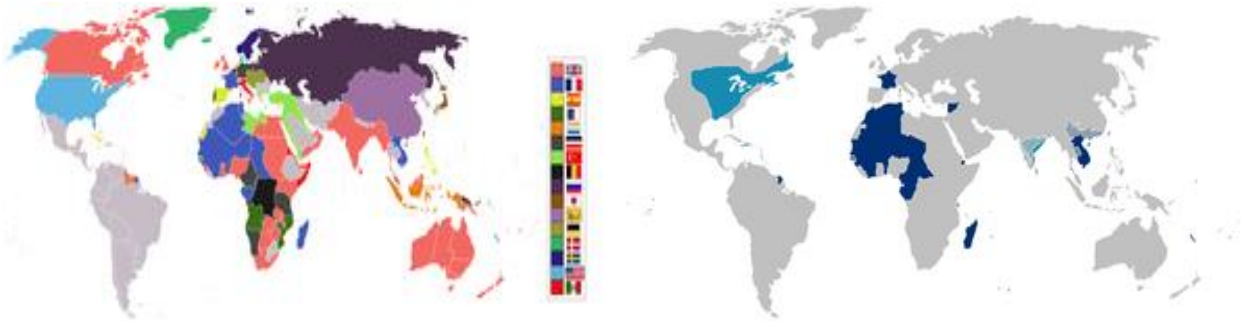
1. Where are there separation barriers around the world? 2. Why are they established? 3. Are there security barriers on former Soviet Republics? 4. Are there any barriers on Estonian, Latvian and Ukrainian territory along the Russian border?

### Exercise 7. Pick up from the text all the details associated with separation barriers.

Exercise 8. Give the list of key events about separation barriers in history and provide their short description in the form of notes.



## SETTLER COLONIALISM



*This map of the world in 1898 shows the large colonial empires that European nations established in the Americas, Africa, Asia, and the S. Pacific. Map of the first (light blue) and second (dark blue – plain and hachured) French colonial empires*

*Settler colonialism* is a policy of conquering a land to send settlers in order to shape its demographic similarly as in the metropole. This practice contrasts with exploitation colonialism, a policy of conquering distant lands not with the intention to supplant its population, but rather to exploit its natural and human resources. A motherland might pursue the first goal in order to lighten the pressure its growing population apply to its home territory, and shape other parts of the world according to its image, thus extending its territorial continuity and preserving it indefinitely.

The reasons that push a country to choose the second option are to attain more immediate benefits, extracting cheap raw materials and enslaving directly or indirectly its inhabitants.

Imperialist powers may opt for one type or the other, or both at the same time.

Perhaps the most clear example of this difference is the British Empire, whose white population settled mainly North America and Oceania, exterminating in the process the native population and building modern infrastructures, and disregarded the Indian subcontinent and Africa, already densely populated. Those areas, instead, were ruled by a small colonial population, and their economies were oriented exclusively around agriculture and extraction aimed at export to the UK.

Mostly Europeans in origin, the settlers are those who traveled from European nation-states to comparatively underdeveloped territories with the aim of living there permanently, displacing the indigenous population and imposing social structures of their own making. Many of the home countries gained greatly from their colonized territories, including in particular the British and Spanish Empires. While some territories gained independence and the indigenous people gained some freedoms, rarely did those liberties reach the point in which a full participation in important affairs was possible.

Examples of countries of origin and settler colonies are as follows:

Portugal (Brazil, Angola, Mozambique).

Spain (Latin America except Brazil).

Netherlands (South Africa, Netherlands Antilles).

France (Quebec, Algeria, Côte d'Ivoire, Louisiana).

Germany (Namibia).

Great Britain (USA, English Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Rhodesia, Kenya, S. Africa).

While some of these countries still have control over their colonial settlements, many of the territories that were once subject to the power of some other nation have now gained *de jure* independence.

In spite of this, it might be argued that *de facto* independence is yet to be achieved, as ties of dependence are yet to be severed. In other cases, while those independent territories are not subject to external influence to the extent that they were before, the population of those territories still experiences considerable turmoil derived from economical disparity and poor living conditions from the past rule of a colonial power, population explosion and rampant corruption.



## **Racism & Settler Colonialism**

Racism often pervaded the settlers of new territories, which in many cases resulted in the destruction, or in the best cases, complete assimilation, of the culture of the original inhabitants of the original peoples of the colonized territories.

### **Settler Colonialism in Africa**

Due to the cohesive and integrated character of white settlers in countries such as South Africa and Rhodesia, a new and complicated set of conditions that lead to exploitation of the indigenous people by the white minority was created. The elite of the country controls almost all (if not all) the relevant aspects of the political and economical life of the country. The most evident result of this domination was apartheid.

### **Settler Colonialism in Oceania**

Australia is a settler society. Europeans came and settled in Australia, in many cases displacing Indigenous Australians. The Indigenous Australian population, estimated at about 350,000 at the time of European settlement, declined steeply for 150 years following settlement, mainly because of infectious disease combined with forced re-settlement and cultural disintegration.

The removal of children, that historians and Indigenous Australians have argued could be considered to constitute genocide, may have made a contribution to the decline in the indigenous population. Such interpretations of Aboriginal history are disputed by some as being exaggerated or fabricated for political or ideological reasons. This debate is known within Australia as the History Wars. Following the 1967 referendum, the Federal government gained the power to implement policies and make laws with respect to Aborigines. Traditional ownership of land – native title – was not recognized until 1992, when the High Court overturned the notion of Australia as *terra nullius* at the time of European occupation.

### **Settler Colonialism in Asia**

Since its establishment, the People's Republic of China has encouraged settlers to live in its sparsely populated border territory, specifically in Tibet, East Turkestan and Inner Mongolia.

This has been accomplished with much state assistance, through organization such as the Xinjiang Production and Construction Corps. The indigenous populations of these areas, who are ethnically (sometimes religiously) distinct from the majority Han Chinese often resent the influx of immigrants which is causing great changes in the demographics of the regions.

The original Mongol inhabitants are now very much in the minority in Inner Mongolia, and ethnic Tibetans and Uyghurs are already minorities in most of their cities. This resentment has often led to violence, most recently during the 2008 Tibetan unrest. The fear of being made minorities in their own countries within their lifetimes is a strong spur to the Tibetan and Uyghur separatist movements.

Israel was described as "*a colonial settler-state*" by Maxime Rodinson, a French Marxist historian, in a 1967 article. Jamil Hilal, a Palestinian sociologist, writer and member of the Palestinian National Council who lives in the West Bank, draws parallels between the South African settler colonialism and Israel, arguing that "as in Southern Africa, stretches of land were acquired by the Zionist settlers and their Arab tenants thrown out". He also argues that the Israeli case has in common with South Africa a *dispossession* of the indigenous population of their land by Europeans.

Lorenzo Veracini, an Australian scholar from the National University in Canberra argues that Israel could celebrate its anti-colonial and anti-British struggle exactly because it was able to establish a number of colonial relationships within and without the borders of 1948.

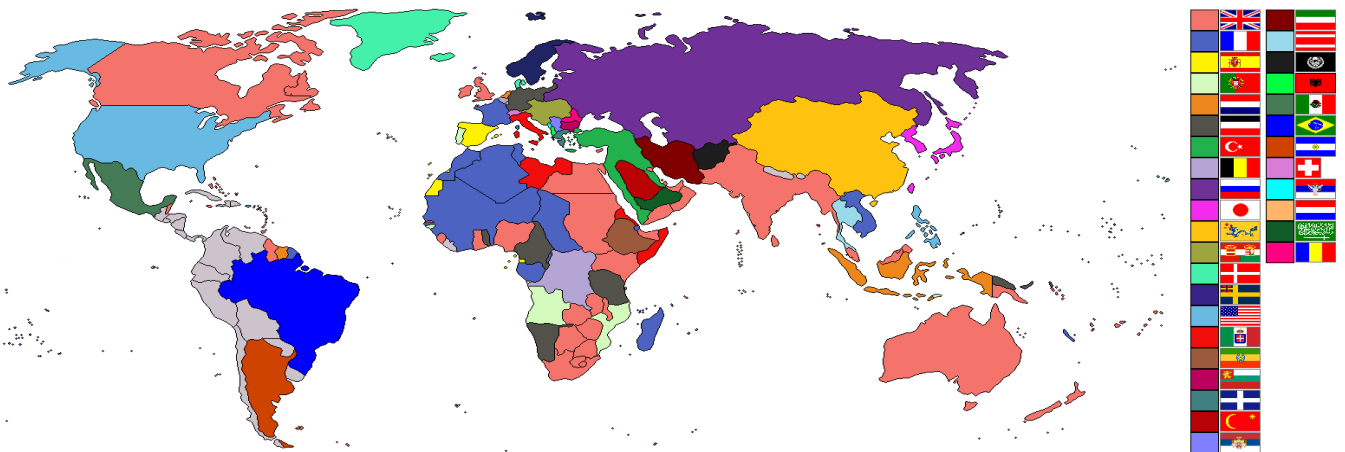
However, Veracini states that "the remaining possibilities remain potentially available [the prospect of a future evacuation of settlers from areas of the West Bank, and accommodation of Palestinian Israeli autonomy within the institutions of the Israeli state]".



## Settler Colonialism in Latin America

In the case of Mexico, the Mexican independence movement was initiated by *criollos* who wanted to seize the power from the Spanish settlers. Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla used banners with the slogans which included "Long live Fernando VIII!, Long live the Americas and death to the corrupt government!". Thus, the independence movement was not so much aimed at breaking off Mexico's ties to Spain as it was to seize power from corrupt elite to claim it for new elite in Mexico.

Many years later a popular uprising would be triggered by the past existence of the *castas* system, a very concentrated land ownership, an economical system in which majority of the population lived in extreme poverty, and deep social unrest. A result of the cultural heritage of the Spanish in Mexico was a deeply troubled history starting with Mexico's independence. After that, it resulted in a dominant party system, in which a single political party controlled all affairs in a ruthless and irresponsible manner for 70 years.



**Exercise 1. Make notes of your new knowledge about settler colonialism in Latin America.**
















**Exercise 2. Remember the notion.**

Settler colonialism – поселенческий колониализм (колониальный захват территории, при котором метрополия отправляет часть своего населения для постоянного проживания на этой территории и создания культурной и правовой общности между колонией метрополией).



















## EUROPEAN DIASPORAS

### Africa

-  South Africa (White South African) – 9.6% of the population
-  Namibia – 6% of the population
-  Réunion (Franco-Réunionnais) approx. 25% of the population
-  Zimbabwe (Whites in Zimbabwe)
-  Kenya (Whites in Kenya)
-  Algeria (Pied-Noir)
-  Mauritius (Franco-Mauritian)
-  Côte d'Ivoire (French people)
-  Senegal
-  Botswana
-  Canary Islands (Spaniards)
-  Seychelles (Franco-Seychellois)
-  Tristan da Cunha
-  Swaziland – 3% of the population
-  Tunisia










### Asia












-  India (Anglo-Indian)
-  Sri Lanka (Burghers)
-  Siberia (Russians)
-  Kazakhstan (Russians in Kazakhstan, Germans of Kazakhstan) – 30% of the population
-  Uzbekistan – 5.5% of the population
-  Kyrgyzstan – 13.5% of the population
-  Turkmenistan – 4% of the population
-  Tajikistan
-  Azerbaijan
-  Georgia (Russians in Georgia)
-  Hong Kong
-  Macau (Macanese people)
-  China (Russians in China)
-  Philippines (American settlement in the Philippines)
-  Singapore (Eurasians in Singapore)
-  Indonesia (Indo people)

### Middle East













-  Israel (Ashkenazim, Sephardim)

### North America & Central America & the Caribbean








-  Greenland – 12% of the population
-  Canada – 80% of the population
-  USA (White American) – 75.1% of the population, including Hispanic / Non-Hispanic Whites
-  Mexico (White Mexican) – 9-15% of the population
-  The Bahamas – 12% of the population
-  Barbados (White Barbadian) – 4% of the population
-  Bermuda – 34.1% of the population
-  Cayman Islands – 20% of the population
-  Costa Rica – 94% of the population, including mestizos

-  Cuba – (White Cuban) 37% , or 65.5% of the population
-  Dominican Republic – 16% of the population and 73% multiracial
-  El Salvador – 9% of the population and 90% mestizo
-  Jamaica approx. 0.2% of the population
-  Martinique – 5% of the population
-  Nicaragua – 17% of the population and 69% mestizo
-  Panama 10% of the population and 70% mestizo
-  Puerto Rico 80.5% of the population
-  Trinidad and Tobago
-  Saint Pierre and Miquelon
-  Saint Barthélemy

### South America

-  Argentina (White Argentine) – 95% of the population
-  Bolivia - 15% of the population and 30% mestizo
-  Brazil (White Brazilian) – 49.7% and 42.6% Mixed
-  Chile – 30% and 65% as mestizos
-  Colombia – 20% of the population and 72% multiracial
-  Ecuador – 7% of the population and 65% mestizo
-  French Guiana – 12% of the population
-  Peru – 15% of the population and 37% mestizo
-  Suriname – 5% of the population and 31% partial
-  Venezuela – 21% of the population and 67% multiracial
-  Uruguay – 88% of the population and 8% mestizo
-  Falkland Islands

### Oceania

-  Australia – 89.3% of the population
-  New Zealand (New Zealand European) – 78% of the population
-  New Caledonia (Caldoche) – 34.5% of the population
-  French Polynesia – 10% of the population
-  Hawaii – 42. 6% of the population
-  Guam – 6.9% of the population
-  Norfolk Island

A *global empire* involves the extension of a state's sovereignty over territories all around the world. For example, because of the Spanish Empire's territories around the globe, it was often said in the 16th century that "the sun never sets on the Spanish Empire." This phrase could have been applied before with the Portuguese Empire but it was eventually re-used later concerning to the Russian Empire and British Empire.

**Exercise 1. Identify the areas of European Diasporas.**

**Exercise 2. Explain the notion "global empire".**

**Exercise 3. Identify the areas of European Colonial Empires.**



## EARLY EMPIRES

Early empires which included much of the *known world* of their period:

♣ *The Neo-Assyrian Empire* included most of the Ancient Near East.

♣ *The Persian Empire* under the Achaemenids was the direct successor of the Assyrian Empire.

♣ The short-lived *Macedonian Empire* under Alexander the Great became one after replacing Persian power.

♣ *The Maurya Empire* controlled virtually the entire Indian subcontinent and its influence over eastern Iran and parts of Central Asia.

♣ *The Sassanid Persian Empire* who took power after overthrowing the Parthians, ruled all of Persia, reaching up to Egypt, parts of north-west India, Central Asia, the Arabian Peninsula and Africa.

♣ *The Chinese Empire* at times controlled parts of Tibet, Mongolia, eastern Siberia (via Manchuria), Central Asia, Vietnam, and Southeast Asia (via Burma and Siam).

♣ *The Roman Empire* covered most of Europe, North Africa, Asia Minor, and the Levant.

♣ *The Hunnic Empire*

♣ *The Islamic Empire* under the Umayyad Caliphate was the largest empire in its time, stretching from Persia, Central Asia, and parts of India and Xinjiang in the east, up to Spain, Portugal and Morocco in the west.

♣ *The Chola Empire* based in South India and extended into North India & much of Southeast Asia.

♣ *The Seljuk Empire*

♣ *The Mongol Empire* stretched across Asia to Central Europe. It was the largest contiguous and second largest empire in world history, five times greater than the Macedonian Empire, much larger than the Persian Empire and Roman Empire, and twice as large as the Islamic Empire.

♣ *The Inca Empire* was the largest outside the Old World at any time and controlled a large portion of western South America, centered on the Andean mountain ranges.

♣ *The Timurid Empire* under Timur included the whole of Central Asia, Iran and modern Afghanistan, as well as large parts of Mesopotamia and Caucasus.

♣ *The Mughal Empire* – the Timurids of India – ruled most of the Indian subcontinent and parts of what is now Afghanistan for several centuries until the British conquest of India.

♣ *The Ottoman Empire* controlled Asia Minor, Thrace, the Balkans, parts of Eastern Europe, Middle East, North Africa and stretched to the Yemen and Caspian Sea in Asia in its zenith. Only after the circum navigation of the globe by Ferdinand Magellan's expedition (1519-1522) it could truly achieve a global presence.

### **Exercise 1. Answer the questions.**

1. What was The Neo-Assyrian Empire like? 2. What was the direct successor of the Assyrian Empire? 3. What empire replaced Persian power? 4. What empire controlled virtually the entire Indian subcontinent? 5. What empire took power after overthrowing the Parthians? 6. What territory did The Chinese Empire control at times? 7. How much of territory did The Roman Empire cover? 8. What was the largest empire in its time? 9. The Chola Empire based in South India, didn't it? 10. What empire was the largest contiguous and second largest empire in the world history? 11. What did The Ottoman Empire control? 12. What did The Chinese Empire at times control? 12. What was The Seljuk Empire like? 13. Who made the circum navigation of the globe in early 16<sup>th</sup> century? 14. What is The Inka Empire famous for? 14. What was The Hunnic Empire like?



## EUROPEAN COLONIAL EMPIRES

The first global empires were a product of the European Age of Exploration that began with a race of exploration between the then most advanced maritime powers, Portugal and Spain, in the 15th century. The initial impulse behind these dispersed maritime empires and those that followed were trade, driven by the new ideas and the capitalism that grew out of the European Renaissance.

Agreements were also done to divide the world up between them in 1479, 1493, and 1494.

Portugal began establishing the first global trade network and empire under the leadership of Henry the Navigator. Portugal would eventually establish colonial domains

- from Brazil, in South America, to several colonies in Africa (namely Portuguese Guinea, Cape Verde, São Tomé and Príncipe, Angola and Mozambique),
- in Portuguese India (most importantly Bombay and Goa),
- in China (Macau), and Oceania (most importantly Timor, namely East Timor),
- amongst many other smaller or short-lived possessions.

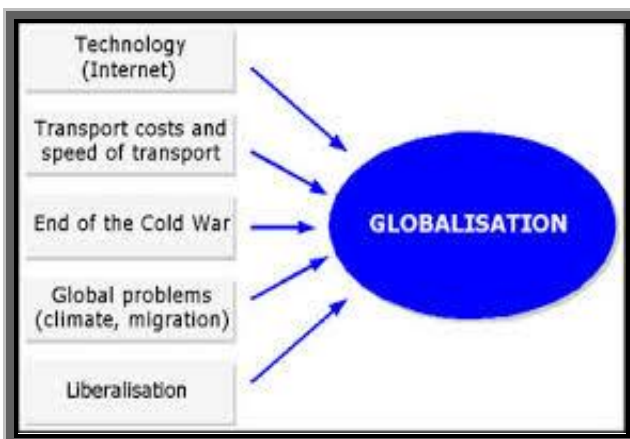
During its *Siglo de Oro*, the Spanish Empire had possession of the Netherlands, Luxembourg, Belgium, most of Italy, parts of Germany, parts of France, and many colonies in the Americas, Africa, Asia and Oceania. With the conquest of inland Mexico, Peru, and the Philippines in the 16th century, Spain established overseas dominions on a scale and world distribution that had never been approached by its predecessors (the Mongol Empire had been larger but was restricted to Eurasia). Possessions in Europe, Africa, the Atlantic Ocean, the Americas, the Pacific Ocean, and the Far East qualified the Spanish Empire as attaining a global presence in this sense.

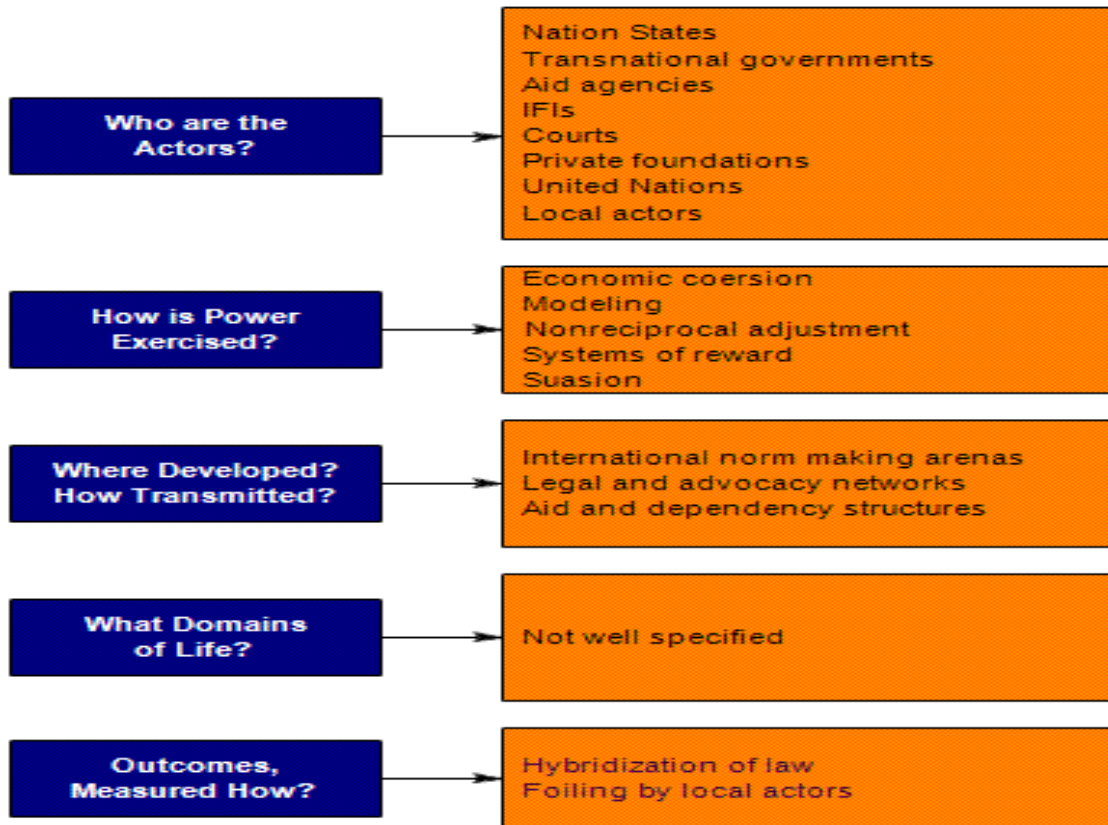
From 1580 to 1640 the Portuguese Empire and the Spanish Empire were conjoined in a personal union of its Habsburg monarchs, during the period of the Iberian Union, though the empires continued to be administered separately. Subsequent global empires included the French, Dutch, and British empires. The latter, consolidated during the period of British maritime hegemony in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, became the largest empire in history by virtue of the improved transportation technologies of the time.

At its height, the British Empire covered a quarter of the Earth's land area and comprised a quarter of its population. By the 1860s, the Russian Empire – continued as the Soviet Union – became the largest contiguous state in the world, and the latter's main successor, Russia, continues to be so to this day. Despite having "lost" its Soviet periphery, Russia has 12 time zones, stretching slightly over half the world's longitude.

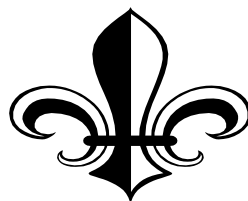
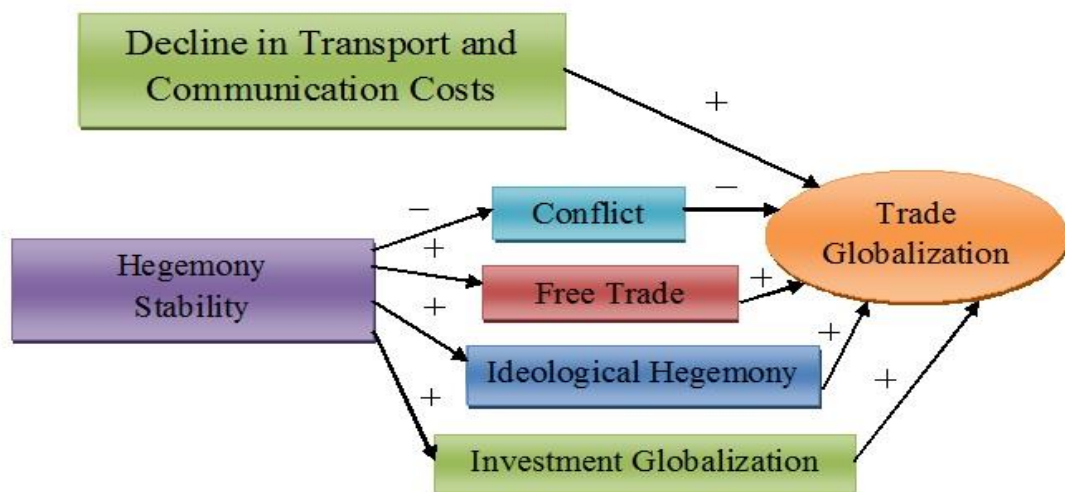
### List of global empires

British Empire	Portuguese Empire
Dutch Empire	Russian Empire (as the Soviet Union)
French Empire	Spanish Empire
German Empire	



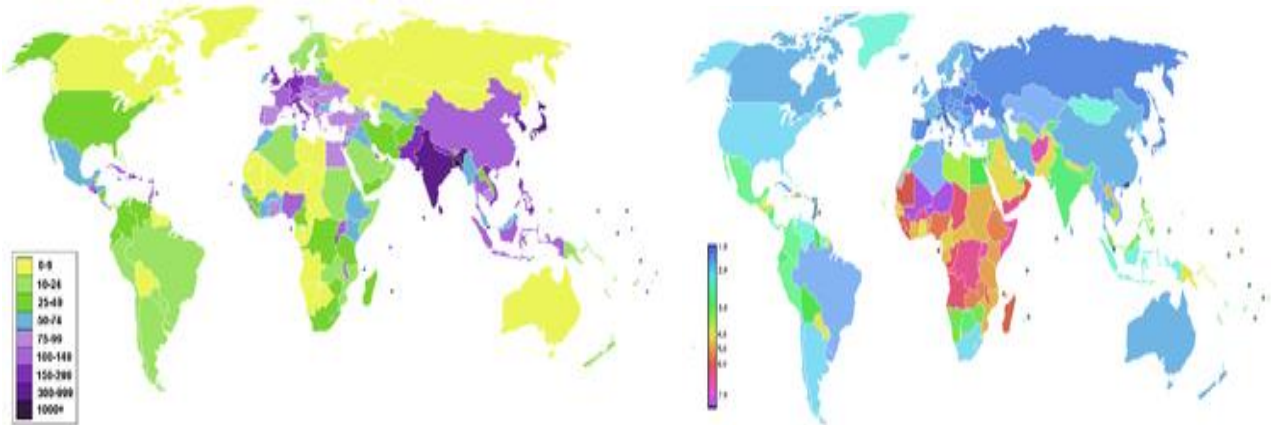


Post-colonial Globalism. Context: Rational cultural Order – hegemony disguised of principles of rationality & universal rational principles apply to all institutions.



## UNIT II. OVERPOPULATION

### INTRODUCTION



Map of countries by population density    Map of territories by fertility rate

Overpopulation is a condition where an organism's numbers exceed the carrying capacity of its habitat. In common parlance, the term usually refers to the relationship between the human population and its environment, the Earth. Overpopulation does not depend only on the size or density of the population, but on the ratio of population to available sustainable resources. If a given environment has a population of 10 individuals, but there is food or drinking water enough for only 9, then in a closed system where no trade is possible, that environment is overpopulated; if the population is 100 but there is enough food, shelter, and water for 200 for the indefinite future, then it is not overpopulated.

Overpopulation can result from an increase in births, a decline in mortality rates due to medical advances, from an increase in immigration, or from an unsustainable biome and depletion of resources. It is possible for very sparsely-populated areas to be overpopulated, as the area in question may have a meager or non-existent capability to sustain human life.

The resources to be considered when evaluating whether an ecological niche is overpopulated include clean water, clean air, food, shelter, warmth, and other resources necessary to sustain life. If the quality of human life is addressed, there may be additional resources considered, such as medical care, education, proper sewage treatment and waste disposal.

Overpopulation places competitive stress on the basic life sustaining resources, leading to a diminished quality of life. Some countries have managed to substantially increase their carrying capacity by using technologies such as modern agriculture, desalination, and nuclear power.

Some economists, such as Thomas Sowell and Walter E. Williams have argued that poverty and famine are caused by bad government and bad economic policies, and not by overpopulation. Economist Julian Simon argued that higher population density leads to more specialization and technological innovation, and that this leads to a higher standard of living.

Simon claimed that poverty and famine are not correlated with population density among countries. But famine is correlated with government corruption among countries. Others argue that overpopulation is an important cause of these problems.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the passages and render their contents shortly in English.**

**Exercise 2. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

**Exercise 3. Summarize your findings and issue in a short presentation (75 words).**

## POPULATION GROWTH

### History

In order to better present the subject of overpopulation, it may be useful to first review the current population of the world in the context of human population from the dawn of civilization to date.

Civilization began roughly 10,000 years ago, coinciding with: the final receding of ice follows the end of the most recent glacial period and the start of the "Neolithic Revolution" when there was a shift in human activity away from "hunter-gathering" and towards very primitive farming.

At the dawn of agriculture, about 8,000 B.C., the population of the world was approximately 5 mln.

Minimal change in population for many thousands of years ending around 1,000 B.C.

Steady growth began around 1,000 B.C. which then plateaued (or peaked) around the year 0.

The trend for next 800- 900 years from around 800 A.D. onwards was slow but steady growth, though with major disruption from frequent plagues (most notably the Black Death during the 14<sup>th</sup> century). Yet faster growth from the start of the Industrial Revolution around 1700 A.D. At over 6.7 bn World Population is approximately 3 times higher in 2009 than it was at approximately 2.3 bn or less in 1939, despite loss of life during World War II (an upper estimate of which is some 72 mln.).

Dramatic growth has begun since the start of the Green Revolution around 1950 and has been continued to the present day. Forecast to carry on growing to 8.9 bn, 9.2 bn, 9.5 bn or perhaps even 11 bn by 2050. Clearly, an inspection of the graphs above reveals the unusual and very pronounced negative skewing. In this case that means after many thousands of years of minimal population there has, for the first time in human history, been a period of consistently rapid population increase followed more recently by a spectacular and unprecedented increase.

### Projections to 2050

United Nations reports, such as World Population Prospects state:

World population is currently growing by approximately 74 mln. people per year. If current fertility rates continued, in 2050 the total world population would be 11 bn, with 169 mln. people added each year. However, global fertility rates have been falling for decades, and the updated United Nations figures project that the world population will reach 9.2 bn around 2050. This is the medium variant figure which assumes a decrease in average fertility from the present level of 2.5 down to 2.

Almost all growth will take place in the less developed regions, where today's 5.3 bn population of underdeveloped countries is expected to increase to 7.8 bn in 2050. By contrast, the population of the more developed regions will remain mostly unchanged, at 1.2 bn. The world's population is expected to rise by 40% to 9.1 bn. An exception is the USA population, which is expected to increase 44% from 305 mln. in 2008 to 439 mln. in 2050.

In 2000-2005, the average world fertility was 2.65 children per woman, about half the level in 1950-1955 (5 children per woman). In the medium variant, global fertility is projected to decline further to 2.05 children per woman. During 2005-2050, nine countries are expected to account for half of the world's projected population increase: India, Pakistan, Nigeria, Democratic Republic of the Congo, the USA, Bangladesh, Uganda, Ethiopia, and China, listed according to the size of their contribution to population growth. Global life expectancy at birth, which is estimated to have risen from 46 years in 1950-1955 to 65 years in 2000-2005, is expected to keep rising to reach 75 years in 2045-2050.

In the more developed regions, the projected increase is from 75 years today to 82 years by mid-century. Among the least developed countries, where life expectancy today is just under 50 years, it is expected to be 66 years in 2045-2050. The population of 51 countries or areas, including Germany, Italy, Japan and most of the successor States of the former Soviet Union, is expected to be lower in 2050 than in 2005. During 2005-2050, the net number of international migrants to more developed regions is projected to be 98 mln.



Because deaths are projected to exceed births in the more developed regions by 73 mln., population growth in those regions will largely be due to international migration.

In 2000-2005, net migration in 28 countries either prevented population decline or doubled at least the contribution of natural increase (births minus deaths) to population growth.

These countries include Austria, Canada, Croatia, Denmark, Germany, Italy, Portugal, Qatar, Singapore, Spain, Sweden, United Arab Emirates and UK. Birth rates are now falling in a small percentage of developing countries, while the actual populations in many developed countries would fall without immigration. By 2050 (Medium variant), India will have almost 1.7 bln. people, China 1.4 bln., The USA – 400 mln., Indonesia – 297, Pakistan – 292, Nigeria – 289, Bangladesh – 254, Brazil – 254, Congo – 187, Ethiopia – 183, Philippines – 141, Mexico – 132, Egypt – 121, Vietnam – 120, Russia – 108, Japan – 103, Iran – 100, Turkey – 99, Uganda – 93, Tanzania – 85, and Kenya – 85 mln.

1900	2050
Africa – 133 mln.	Africa – 1.9 bn
Asia – 946 mln.	Asia – 5.2 bn
Europe – 408 mln.	Europe – 664 mln.
Latin America & Caribbean – 74 mln.	Latin America & Caribbean – 769 mln.
Northern America – 82 mln.	Northern America – 445 mln.

**Exercise 1. Generate all events which are in the text.**

**Exercise 2. Write all new words and phrases on the topic.**

**Exercise 3. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 4. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**

**Exercise 5. Match phrases with numerical data without using the text. After that consult the text and comment on the difference.**

No	Events	Data
1.	World population is currently growing by approximately _____ people per year.	7.8 bn
2.	2050 the total world population would be _____	9.2 bn.
3.	The world population will reach _____ around 2050.	11 bn
4.	Today's 5.3 bn population of underdeveloped countries is expected to increase to _____.	74 mln.
5.	The average world fertility was 2.65 children per woman in _____	2045-2050.
6.	During 2005-2050 _____ countries are expected to account for half of the world's projected population increase.	29
7.	Global life expectancy at birth is expected to keep rising to reach 75 years in _____	2004-2005.
8.	The population of 51 countries is expected to be lower than in _____	2005.
9.	In _____ net migration in 28 countries prevented population decline.	2000-2005
10.	The net number of international migrants to more developed regions is projected to be _____	108 mln.

## DEMOGRAPHIC TRANSITION

The theory of demographic transition, while unproven to apply to all world regions, holds that, after the standard of living and life expectancy increase, family sizes and birth rates decline.

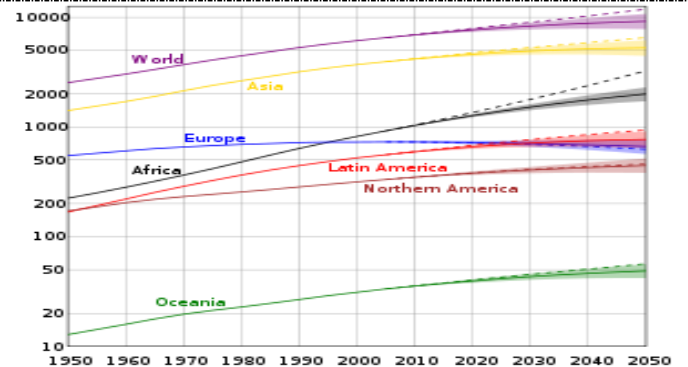
Factors cited include such social factors as later ages of marriage, the growing desire of many women in such settings to seek careers outside child rearing and domestic work, and the decreased need of children in industrialized settings.

The latter factor stems from the fact that children perform a great deal of work in small-scale agricultural societies, and work less in industrial ones; it has been cited to explain the decline in birth rates in industrializing regions. Another version of demographic transition is that of Virginia Abernethy in *Population Politics*, where she claims that the demographic transition occurs primarily in nations where women enjoy a special status. In strongly patriarchal nations, where she claims women enjoy few special rights, a high standard of living tends to result in population growth.

Many countries have high population growth rates but lower total fertility rates because high population growth in the past skewed the age demographic toward a young age, so the population still rises as the more numerous younger generation approaches maturity "Demographic entrapment" is a concept developed by Maurice King, who posits that this phenomenon occurs when a country has a population larger than its carrying capacity, no possibility of migration, and exports too little to be able to import food. This will cause starvation. He claims that for example many sub-Saharan nations are or will become stuck in demographic entrapment, instead of having a demographic transition. For the world as a whole, the number of children born per woman decreased from 5.02 to 2.65 between 1950 and 2005. A breakdown by continent is as follows:

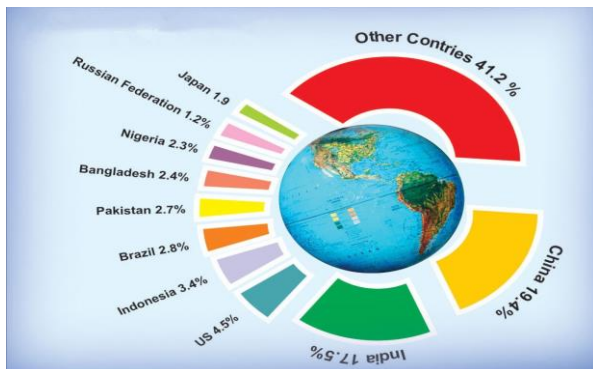
### United Nation's population projections by location.

Europe 2.66 to 1.41  
 North America 3.47 to 1.99  
 Oceania 3.87 to 2.30  
 Central America 6.38 to 2.66  
 South America 5.75 to 2.51  
 Asia (excluding Middle East) 5.85 to 2.43  
 Middle East & North Africa 6.99 to 3.37  
 Sub-Saharan Africa 6.7 to 5.53

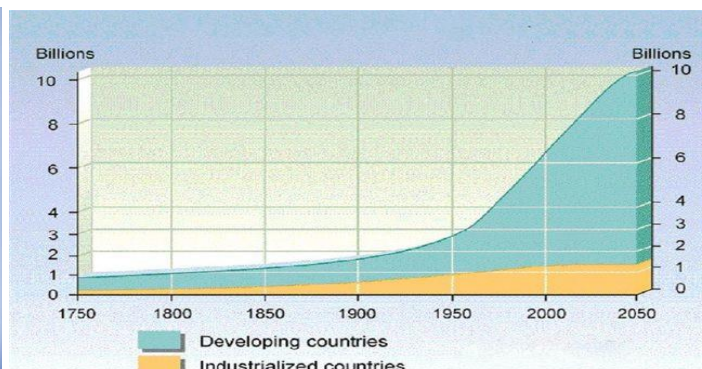


In 2050, the projected world number of children born per woman is 2.05. Only the Middle East & North Africa (2.09) and Sub-Saharan Africa (2.61) will then have numbers greater than 2.05.

### Exercise 1. Comment on the given details about demographic transition.



World population: countries with most population



World population development

## CARRYING CAPACITY

Estimates of the carrying capacity of Earth range between 1 bn and 1 trillion people, depending on the values used in calculations. The variability of estimates has grown larger since 1950, compared to earlier estimates. In a study titled *Food, Land, Population and the U.S. Economy*, David Pimentel, professor of ecology and agriculture at Cornell University, and Mario Giampietro, senior researcher at the U.S. National Research Institute on Food and Nutrition (INRAN), estimate the maximum U.S. population for a sustainable economy at 200 mln.

To achieve a sustainable economy and avert disaster, the USA must reduce its population by at least one-third, and world population will have to be reduced by two-thirds, says the study.

Steve Jones, head of the biology department at University College London, has said, "Humans are 10,000 times more common than we should be, according to the rules of the animal kingdom, and we have agriculture to thank for that. Without farming, the world population would probably have reached half a mln. by now." Some groups (the World Wide Fund for Nature and the Global Footprint Network) have stated that the carrying capacity for the human population has been exceeded as measured using the ecological footprint.

In 2006, WWF's "Living Planet" report stated that in order for all humans to live with a high degree of luxury (European standards), we would be spending three times more than what the planet can supply. But critics question the simplifications and statistical methods used in calculating ecological footprints. Some point out that a more refined method of assessing ecological footprint is to designate sustainable versus non-sustainable categories of consumption.

David Pimentel, Professor Emeritus at Cornell University, has stated that "With the imbalance growing between population numbers and vital life sustaining resources, humans must actively conserve cropland, freshwater, energy, and biological resources. There is a need to develop renewable energy resources.

Humans everywhere must understand that rapid population growth damages the Earth's resources and diminishes human well-being." These reflect the comments also of the USA Geological Survey in their paper *The Future of Planet Earth: Scientific Challenges in the Coming Century*.

"As the global population continues to grow...people will place greater and greater demands on the resources of our planet, including mineral and energy resources, open space, water, and plant and animal resources." "Earth's natural wealth: an audit" by *New Scientist* magazine states that many of the minerals that we use for a variety of products are in danger of running out in the near future.

"A handful of geologists around the world have calculated the costs of new technologies in terms of the materials they use and the implications of their spreading to the developing world.

All agree that the planet's booming population and rising standards of living are set to put unprecedented demands on the materials that only Earth itself can provide. Limitations on how much of these materials is available could even mean that some technologies are not worth pursuing long term.... "Virgin stocks of several metals appear inadequate to sustain the modern "developed world" quality of life for all of Earth's people under contemporary technology".

On the other hand, some writers, such as Julian Simon and Bjorn Lomborg believe that resources exist for further population growth. However, critics warn, this will be at a high cost to the Earth: "the technological optimists are probably correct in claiming that overall world food production can be increased substantially over the next few decades.

However the environmental cost of what Paul R. and Anne H. Ehrlich describe as "turning the Earth into a giant human feedlot" could be severe. A large expansion of agriculture to provide growing populations with improved diets is likely to lead to further deforestation, loss of species, soil erosion, and pollution from pesticides and fertilizer runoff as farming intensifies and new land is brought into production." Since we are intimately dependent upon the living systems of the Earth, scientists have questioned the wisdom of further expansion.

According to the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, a four-year research effort by 1,360 of the world's leading scientists commissioned to measure the actual value of natural resources to the world. "The structure of the world's ecosystems changed more rapidly in the second half of the 20th century than at any time in recorded human history, and virtually all of Earth's ecosystems have now been significantly transformed through human actions."

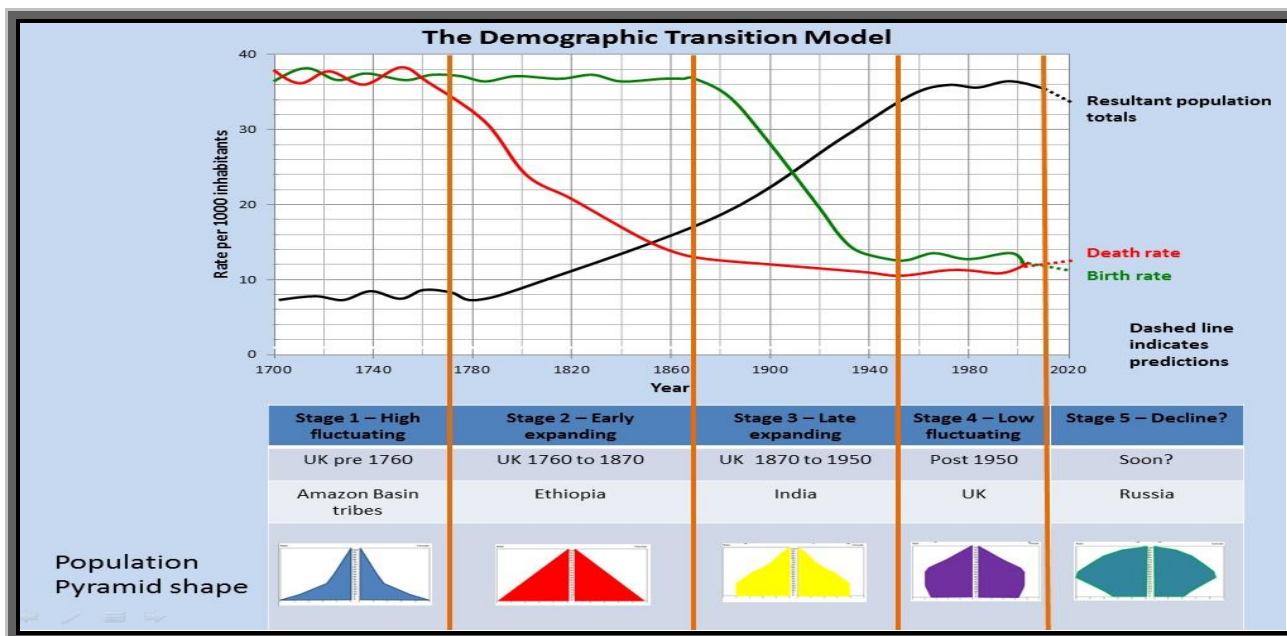
"Ecosystem services, particularly food production, timber and fisheries, are important for employment and economic activity. Intensive use of ecosystems often produces the greatest short-term advantage, but excessive and unsustainable use can lead to losses in the long term.

A country could cut its forests and deplete its fisheries, and this would show only as a positive gain to GDP, despite the loss of capital assets. If the full economic value of ecosystems were taken into account in decision-making, their degradation could be significantly slowed down or even reversed." The MA blames habitat loss and fragmentation for the continuing disappearance of species.

Another study by the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) called the Global Environment Outlook which involved 1,400 scientists and took five years to prepare comes to similar conclusions. It "found that human consumption had far outstripped available resources. Each person on Earth now requires a third more land to supply his or her needs than the planet can supply." It faults a failure to "respond to or recognize the magnitude of the challenges facing the people and the environment of the planet..." "The systematic destruction of the Earth's natural and nature-based resources has reached a point where the economic viability of economies is being challenged – and where the bill we hand to our children may prove impossible to pay"...

The report's authors say its objective is 'not to present a dark and gloomy scenario, but an urgent call to action'. It warns that tackling the problems may affect the vested interests of powerful groups, and that the environment must be moved to the core of decision-making...". Additionally, other issues involving quality of life – would most people *want* to live in a world of bns more people – and the basic right of other species to exist in their native environments come into play.

Although all resources, whether mineral or other, are limited on the planet, at least for mineral resources historic evidence shows that the market tends to self-correct whenever a scarcity or high-demand for a particular kind is experienced. For example in 1990 known reserves of many natural resources were higher, and their prices lower, than in 1970, despite higher demand and higher consumption. Whenever a price spike would occur, the market tended to correct itself whether by substituting an equivalent resource or switching to a new technology.





**Fresh water** supplies, on which agriculture depends, are running low worldwide. This water crisis is only expected to worsen as the population increases. Lester R. Brown of the Earth Policy Institute argues that declining water supplies will have future disastrous consequences for agriculture. Fresh water can also be obtained from salt water by desalination by a very energy-intensive process. For example, Malta derives two thirds of its freshwater by desalination. A number of nuclear powered desalination plants exist, and some argue that there are tens of years of nuclear fuel available.

But the high costs of desalination, especially for poor countries, make impractical the transport of large amounts of desalinated seawater to interiors of large countries.

One study found that "one needs to lift the water by 2000 m, or transport it over more than 1600 km to get transport costs equal to the desalination costs. Desalinated water is expensive in places that are both somewhat far from the sea and somewhat high, such as Riyadh and Harare.

In other places, the dominant cost is desalination, not transport. This leads to somewhat lower costs in places like Beijing, Bangkok, Zaragoza, Phoenix, and, of course, coastal cities like Tripoli.

Thus while the study is generally positive about the technology for affluent areas that are proximate to oceans, it concludes that "Desalinated water may be a solution for some water-stress regions, but not for places that are poor, deep in the interior of a continent, or at high elevation.

Unfortunately, that includes some of the places with biggest water problems."

Israel is now desalinating water for a cost of 53 cents per cubic meter, Singapore at 49 cents per cubic meter. In the USA, the cost is 81 cents per cubic meter (\$3.06 for 1,000 gallons).

Another problem of desalination is the "lethal byproduct of saline brine that is a major cause of marine pollution when dumped back into the oceans at high temperatures."

The world's largest desalination plant is the Jebel Ali Desalination Plant in the United Arab Emirates, which can produce 300 mln. m<sup>3</sup> of water per year, or about 2500 gallons per second.

The largest desalination plant in the US is the one at Tampa Bay, Florida, which began desalinating 25 mln. gallons (95000 m<sup>3</sup>) of water per day in December 2007.

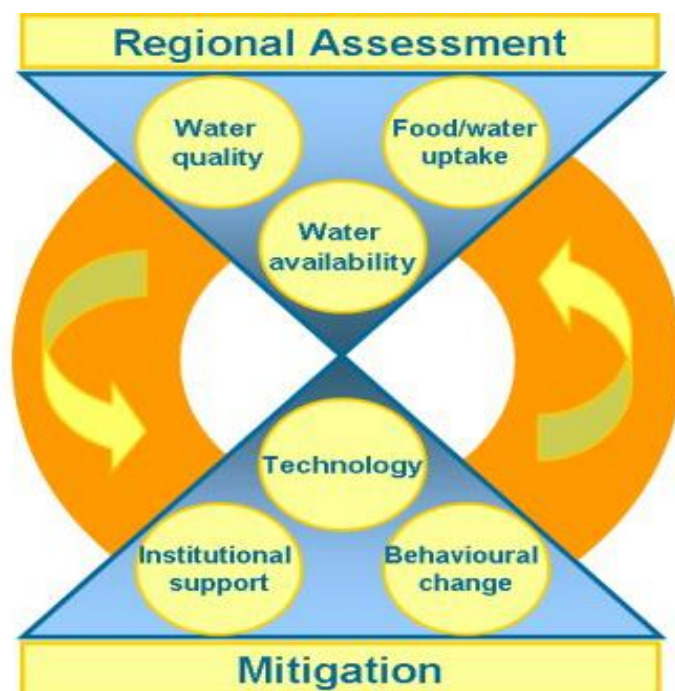
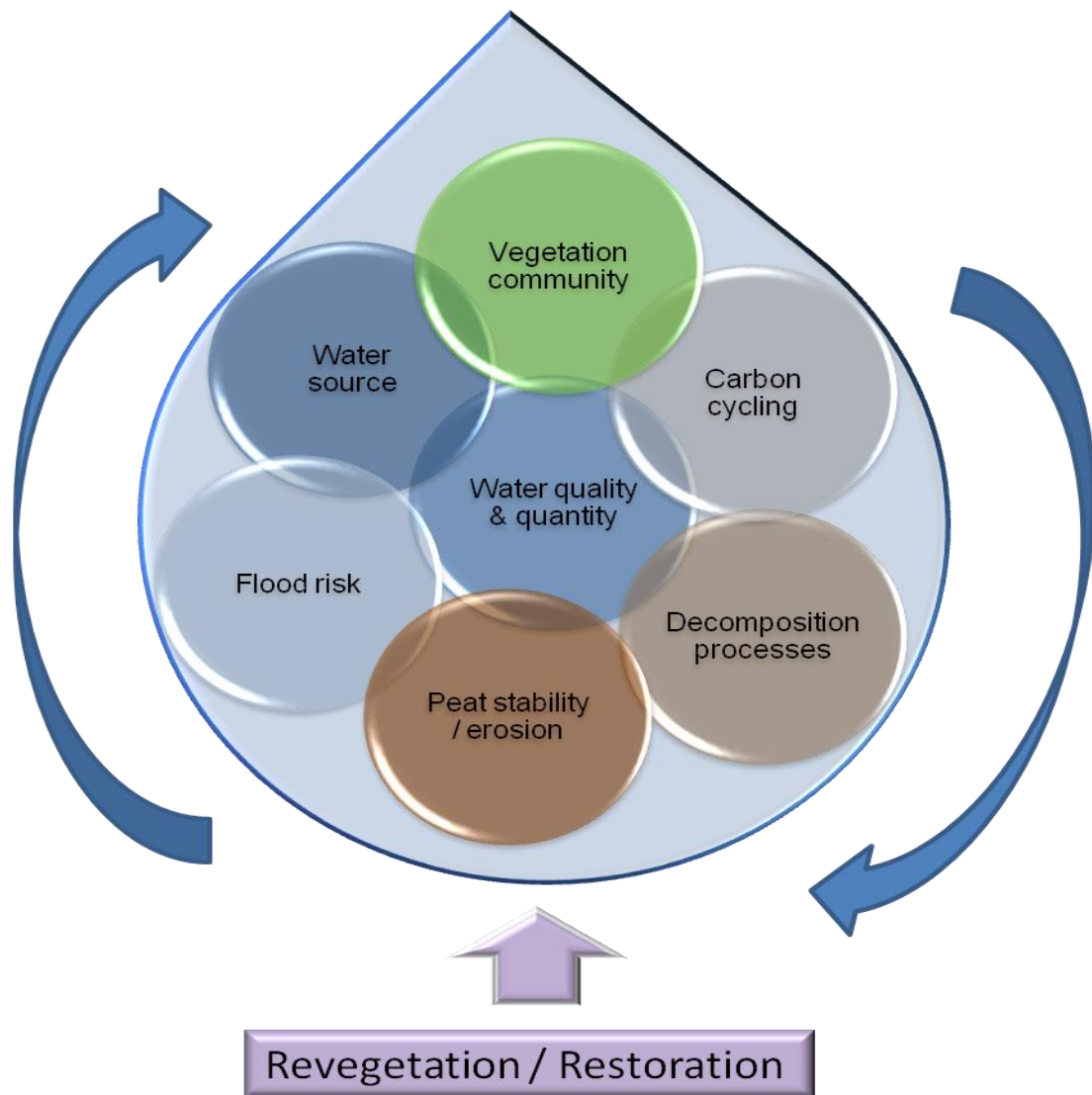
A January 17, 2008, article in the *Wall Street Journal* states, "Worldwide, 13,080 desalination plants produce more than 12 bn gallons of water a day, according to the International Desalination Association." After being desalinated at Jubail, Saudi Arabia, water is pumped 200 mi (320 km) inland through a pipeline to the capital city of Riyadh.

Some argue there is enough **food** to support the world population, but other sources dispute this, particularly if sustainability is taken into account. More than 100 countries now import wheat and 40 countries import rice. Egypt and Iran rely on imports for 40% of their grain supply. Algeria, Japan, South Korea and Taiwan import 70% or more. Yemen and Israel import more than 90%.

Just 6 countries – the US, Canada, France, Australia, Argentina and Thailand – supply 90% of grain exports. The US alone supplies almost half of world grain exports. A 2001 United Nations report says population growth is "the main force driving increases in agricultural demand" but "most recent expert assessments are cautiously optimistic about the ability of global food production to keep up with demand for the foreseeable future (until approximately 2050)", assuming declining population growth rates.

**Exercise 1. List the reasons of why the carrying capacity of Earth is not unlimited.**





## GLOBAL PERSPECTIVE

Growth in food production has been greater than population growth.

Food per person increased during the 1961-2005 period. The amounts of natural resources in this context are not necessarily fixed, and their distribution is not necessarily a zero-sum game.

Due to the Green Revolution and the fact that more and more land is appropriated each year from wild lands for agricultural purposes, the worldwide production of food had steadily increased up until 1995. World food production per person was considerably higher in 2005 than 1961.

As world population doubled from 3 bn to 6 bn, daily calorie consumption in poor countries increased from 1,932 to 2,650, the percentage of people in those countries who were malnourished fell from 45% to 18%. This suggests that Third World poverty and famine are caused by underdevelopment, not overpopulation. However, others question these statistics. The number of people who are overweight has surpassed the numbers who are undernourished. In a 2006 news story, MSNBC reported, "There are an estimated 800 mln. undernourished people and more than a bn considered overweight worldwide."

The Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations states in its report *The State of Food Insecurity in the World 2006*, that while the number of undernourished people in the developing countries has declined by about three mln., a smaller proportion of the populations of developing countries is undernourished today than in 1990-92: 17% against 20%.

Furthermore, FAO's projections suggest that the proportion of hungry people in developing countries could be halved from 1990-92 levels to 10% by 2015. The FAO also states "We have emphasized first and foremost that reducing hunger is no longer a question of means in the hands of the global community. The world is richer today than it was ten years ago. There is more food available and still more could be produced without excessive upward pressure on prices.

The knowledge and resources to reduce hunger are there. What is lacking is sufficient political will to mobilize those resources to the benefit of the hungry."

As of 2008, the price of grain has increased due to more farming used in biofuels, world oil prices at over \$100 a barrel, global population growth climate change, loss of agricultural land to residential and industrial development, and growing consumer demand in China and India. Food riots have recently taken place in many countries across the world. An epidemic of stem rust on wheat caused by race Ug99 is currently spreading across Africa and into Asia and is causing major concern.

A virulent wheat disease could destroy most of the world's main wheat crops, leaving mln.s to starve. The fungus has spread from Africa to Iran, and may already be in Afghanistan and Pakistan.

### Africa

In Africa, if current trends of soil degradation and population growth continue, the continent might be able to feed just 25% of its population by 2025, according to UNU's Ghana-based Institute for Natural Resources in Africa. Hunger and malnutrition kill nearly 6 mln. children a year, and more people are malnourished in sub-Saharan Africa this decade than in the 1990s, according to a report released by the Food and Agriculture Organization.

In sub-Saharan Africa, the number of malnourished people grew to 203.5 mln. people in 2000-02 from 170.4 mln. 10 years earlier says *The State of Food Insecurity in the World* report. According to the BBC, the famine in Zimbabwe was caused by government seizure of farmland. However drought has also played a major role. Drought in southern Africa now threatens 13 mln. people with famine, 6 mln. of whom live in Zimbabwe. The current food shortages are projected to worsen. Prior to this combination of drought and seizure of farmland, Zimbabwe exported so much food that it was called "*the breadbasket of southern Africa*". So other countries were also harmed by these farm seizures.

People who study the Zimbabwean famine claim that normally there are more than enough natural resources to feed the people. Some claim that the dams and rivers in Zimbabwe are full.

The famine has nothing to do with drought. Although it is undoubtedly true that bad governance has exacerbated the famine, the article notes that "Four weeks without rain at the critical germination phase has led to the failure of the villagers' small crops. There will be no harvest again until next June."

Prior to President Robert Mugabe's seizure of the farmland in Zimbabwe, the farmers had been using irrigation to deal with drought, but during the seizures of the farmland, much of the irrigation equipment was vandalized and looted. A 2006 BBC article about the seizure of farmland states, "Critics say the reforms have devastated the economy and led to massive hunger."

Much of the formerly white-owned land is no longer being productively used – either because the beneficiaries have no experience of farming or they lack finance and tools. Many farms were wrecked when they were invaded by government supporters."

Compared to Zimbabwe's population density of 33 people per square kilometer, Israel has 302 people per square kilometer. Although Israel is a desert country with frequent drought and very high population density, it does not have famine. One possible reason for this is that its government encourages farmers to use modern agriculture and irrigation to grow huge amounts of food.

Another possible reason is that Israel is a net importer of food. It must be noted that the high productivity of modern agriculture depends on the unsustainable use of fossil fuels to produce fertilizer and pesticide and to drive farming machinery.

### Asia

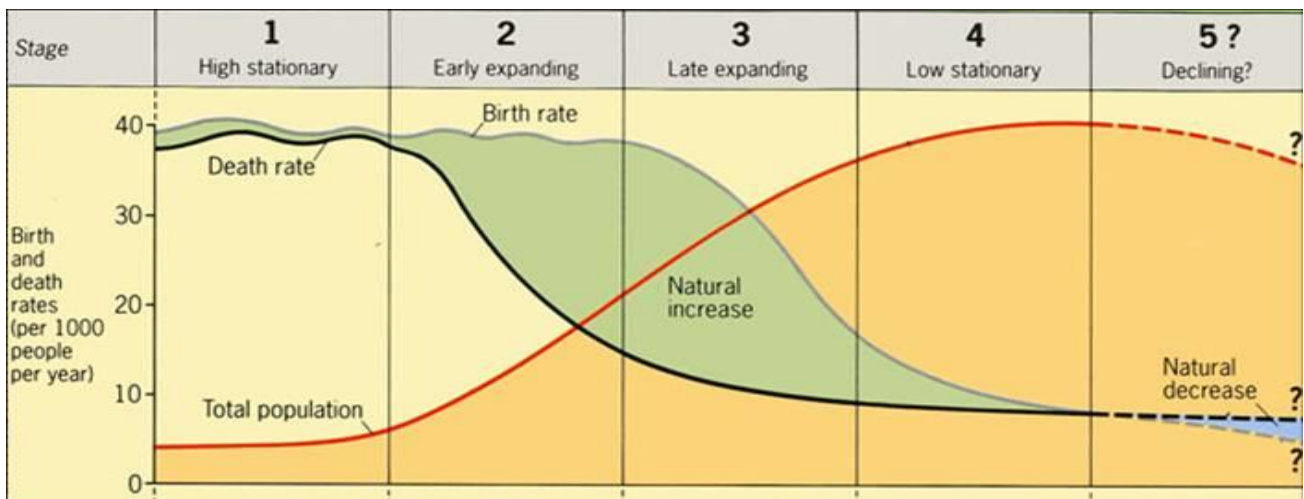
In China, only 8% of children are underweight. According to a 2004 article from the BBC, China, the world's most populous country, suffers from an obesity epidemic. More recent data indicate China's grain production peaked in the mid 1990s, due to overextraction of groundwater in the North China plain. Nearly half of India's children are malnourished, according to recent government data. Japan may face a food crisis that could reduce daily diets to the austere meals of the 1950s, believes a senior government adviser.

### America

According to a 2007 article from the BBC, scientists at Columbia University have theorized that in the future, densely populated cities such as Mexico City, Los Angeles, and New York City, which are the largest in North America, may use vertical farming to grow food on each floor of 30-story skyscrapers.

**Exercise 1. Summarize major points about global perspective in Africa, Asia, and America.**

**Exercise 2. Analyze the passage and render the score of it briefly in English.**





## POPULATION AS A FUNCTION OF FOOD AVAILABILITY

Thinkers such as David Pimentel, a professor from Cornell University, Virginia Abernethy, Alan Thornhill, Russell Hopffenberg and author Daniel Quinn propose that like all other animals, human populations predictably grow and shrink according to their available food supply – populations grow in an abundance of food, and shrink in times of scarcity.

Proponents of this theory argue that every time food production is increased, the population grows. Some human populations throughout history support this theory. Populations of hunter-gatherers fluctuate in accordance with the amount of available food. Population increased after the Neolithic Revolution and an increased food supply. This was followed by subsequent population growth after subsequent agricultural revolutions. Critics of this idea point out those birth rates are lowest in the developed nations, which also have the highest access to food. In fact, some developed countries have both a diminishing population and an abundant food supply.

The UN projects that the population of 51 countries or areas, including Germany, Italy, Japan and most of the states of the former Soviet Union, is expected to be lower in 2050 than in 2005.

This shows that when one limits their scope to the population living within a given political boundary, human populations do not always grow to match the available food supply.

Additionally, many of these countries are major exporters of food.

Nevertheless, on the global scale the world population is increasing, as is the net quantity of human food produced – a pattern that has been true for roughly 10,000 years, since the human development of agriculture. That some countries demonstrate negative population growth fails to discredit the theory. Food moves across borders from areas of abundance to areas of scarcity.

Additionally, this hypothesis is not so simplistic as to be rejected by a single case study, as in Germany's recent population trends – clearly other factors are at work: contraceptive access, cultural norms and most importantly economic realities differ from nation to nation.

**Exercise 1. Read the text and answer the question: what is a result of water deficits?**

Water deficits, which are already spurring heavy grain imports in numerous smaller countries, may soon do the same in larger countries, such as China or India.

The water tables are falling in scores of countries (including Northern China, the US, and India) owing to widespread overdrafting beyond sustainable yields. Other countries affected include Pakistan, Iran, and Mexico. This overdrafting is already leading to water scarcity and cutbacks in grain harvest. Even with the overpumping of its aquifers, China has developed a grain deficit.

This effect has contributed in driving grain prices upward. Most of the 3 bn people projected to be added worldwide by mid-century will be born in countries already experiencing water shortages.

One suggested solution is for population growth to be slowed quickly by investing heavily in female literacy and family planning services. Desalination is also considered a viable and effective solution to the problem of water shortages. After China and India, there is a second tier of smaller countries with large water deficits – Algeria, Egypt, Iran, Mexico, and Pakistan. Four of these already import a large share of their grain. Only Pakistan remains self-sufficient. But with a population expanding by 4 mln. a year, it will also soon turn to the world market for grain.

**Exercise 2. Pick up from the text all the details about growth in food production and the population growth.**

**Exercise 3. What prepositions are used with the following verbs in the text? Some verbs have no prepositions. Provide the whole sentence.**

To fall, to double, to increase, to rust, to belive, to use to grow, to depend.

**Exercise 4. Write a small essay on the topic.**

**Exercise 5. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

## THE INFLUENCE OF GLOBAL WARMING

World Resources Institute states that "Agricultural conversion to croplands and managed pastures has affected some 3.3 bn [hectares] – roughly 26 % of the land area. All totaled, agriculture has displaced one-third of temperate and tropical forests and one-quarter of natural grasslands." Energy development may also require large areas, like for hydroelectric dams. Usable land may become less useful through solemnization, deforestation, desertification, erosion, and urban sprawl.

Global warming may cause flooding of many of the most productive agricultural areas. Thus, available useful land may become a limiting factor. By most estimates, at least half of cultivable land is already being farmed, and there are concerns that the remaining reserves are greatly overestimated.

High crop yield vegetables like potatoes and lettuce use less space on inedible plant parts, like stalks, husks, vines, and inedible leaves. New varieties of selectively bred and hybrid plants have larger edible parts (fruit, vegetable, grain) and smaller inedible parts; however, many of the gains of agricultural technology are now historic, and new advances are more difficult to achieve.

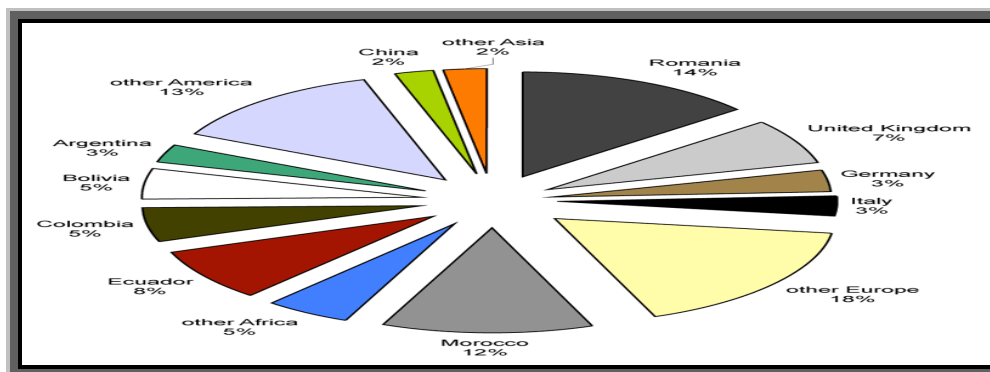
With new technologies, it is possible to grow crops on some marginal land under certain conditions.

Aquaculture could theoretically increase available area. Hydroponics and food from bacteria and fungi, like quorn, may allow the growing of food without having to consider land quality, climate, or even available sunlight, although such a process may be very energy-intensive. Some argue that not all arable land will remain productive if used for agriculture because some marginal land can only be made to produce food by unsustainable practices like slash-and-burn agriculture. Even with the modern techniques of agriculture, the sustainability of production is in question.

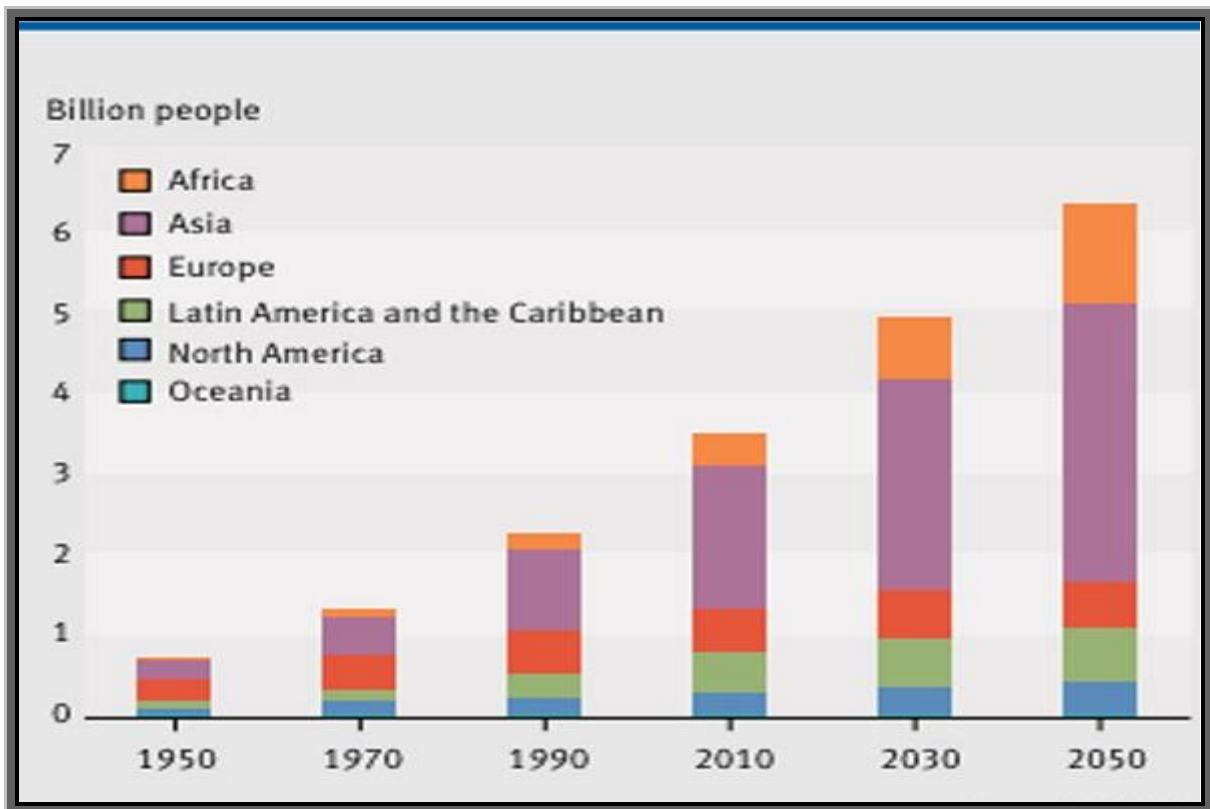
Some countries, such as the United Arab Emirates and particularly the Emirate of Dubai have constructed large artificial islands, or have created large dam and dike systems, like the Netherlands, which reclaim land from the sea to increase their total land area. Some scientists have said that in the future, densely populated cities will use vertical farming to grow food inside skyscrapers.

The space taken by humans themselves is not a problem. A number of thinkers who deny that overpopulation is a problem-like noted philosopher Justin West – have noted that the whole world population could live on land with the area of Texas, 261,914 mi<sup>2</sup> (678,350 km<sup>2</sup>) or 7.30174326 × 10<sup>12</sup> ft<sup>2</sup>. Divided by 7 bn (slightly larger than the current population of the world) yields an average of 1,043 ft<sup>2</sup> (96.9 m<sup>2</sup>) per person.

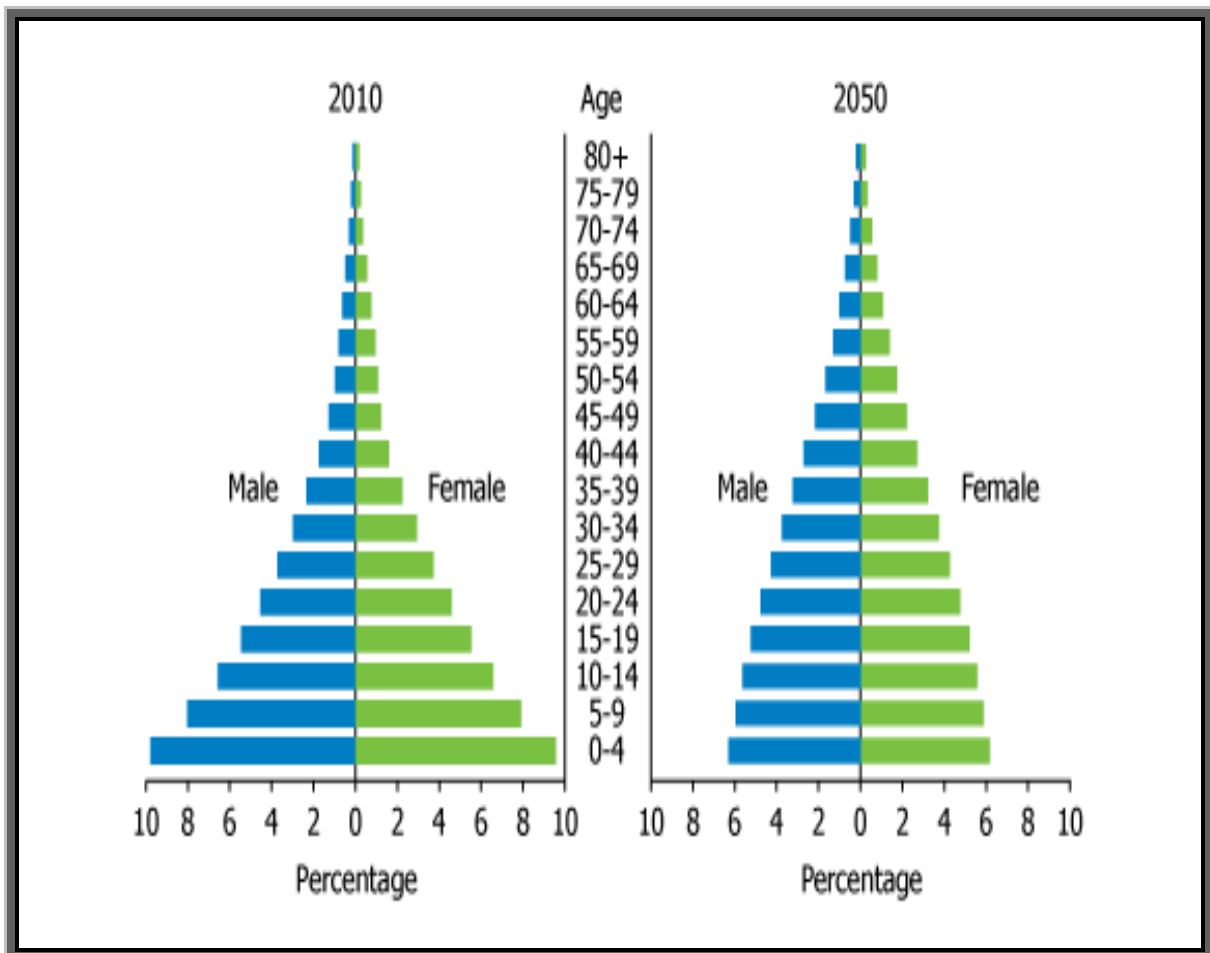
Were everyone allotted space thus, a family of 4 would have roughly a 4,000-square-foot (370 m<sup>2</sup>) home. Compacted this way, the rest of North America, and all of South America, Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia and Antarctica would be left vacant of humans & open to farming. This calculation assumes single-floor houses but also no public spaces such as roads, schools, hospitals, separate commercial or industrial buildings, or recreational space. Another criticism is that it results in an average distance between two people of just over 100 ft (30 m); experiments by John B. Calhoun and others suggest that overpopulation and overcrowding leads to a host of major social problems.



Foreign population by countries of origin 2017



Urban population 1950-2050



**Exercise 1. After translating the text in writing give a talk on energy in class.**

Population optimists have also been criticized for failing to account for future shortages in fossil fuels, currently used for fertilizer and transportation for modern agriculture. They counter that there will be enough fossil fuels until suitable replacement technologies have been developed, hydrogen in a hydrogen economy. In his 1992 book *Earth in the Balance*, Al Gore wrote, "... it ought to be possible to establish a coordinated global program to accomplish the strategic goal of completely eliminating the internal combustion engine over, say, a twenty-five-year period..."

Plug-in electric cars such as the Tesla Roadster suggest that Gore's prediction will come true. Earth has enough uranium to provide humans with all of their electricity needs until the sun blows up in 5 bn years, assuming that we develop large-scale breeder reactors. There has been increasing development in extracting renewable energy, such as solar, wind, and tidal energy.

If used on a wide scale, these could theoretically fulfill most, if not all, of the energy needs currently being filled by non-renewable resources. Most renewable energy forms rely on an oil-based economy to produce, i.e. you cannot make a wind turbine without the oil-run machinery to begin with, making the whole process moot. Some of these renewable resources also have ecological footprints, although they may be different or smaller than some non-renewable resources.

**Exercise 2. Summarize major points about wealth and poverty.**

As the world's population has grown, the percentage of the world's population living on less than \$1 per day (adjusted for inflation) has halved in 20 years.

The United Nations indicates that about 850 mln. people are malnourished or starving, and 1.1 bn people do not have access to safe drinking water. Thus, some argue that Earth may support 6 bn people, but only if many live in misery.

The proportion of the world's population living on less than \$1 per day has halved in 20 years, but these are inflation-unadjusted numbers and likely misleading. The UN Human Development Report of 1997 states: "During the last 15-20 years, more than 100 developing countries, and several Eastern European countries, have suffered from disastrous growth failures.

The reductions in standard of living have been deeper and more long-lasting than what was seen in the industrialized countries during the depression in the 1930s. As a result, the income for more than one bn people has fallen below the level that was reached 10, 20 or 30 years ago".

Similarly, although the proportion of "starving" people in sub-Saharan Africa has decreased, the absolute number of starving people has increased due to population growth. The percentage dropped from 38% in 1970 to 33% in 1996 and was expected to be 30% by 2010.

But the region's population roughly doubled between 1970 and 1996. To keep the numbers of starving constant, the percentage would have dropped by more than half. For example, North Korea and South Korea have similar population densities, natural resources, and even parallel cultures (ethnically based in Korean) sharing the same peninsular homeland. However, whereas North Korea is a poverty-stricken, totalitarian dictatorship where its people suffer widespread famine and are destitute, South Korea is a prosperous, capitalist country where the people are well nourished and materially / economically secure, even though South Korea's population is double that of North Korea.

This suggests that it is bad economic policies, not "overpopulation," that causes famine.

Various Indices of Economic Freedom suggest that countries with a strong level of economic freedom avoid famines, regardless of how high their population densities.

**Exercise 3. With the help of the information in the text explain the notion "Fertilizer".**

Modern agriculture uses large amounts of fertilizer. Since much of this fertilizer is made from petroleum, the problem of peak oil is of concern. According to articles in *Discover Magazine* (in 2003 & 2006), it is possible to use the process of thermal depolymerization to manufacture fertilizer out of garbage, sewage, and agricultural waste.



**Exercise 4. Transfer the given information from the text onto a table. The beginning has been done for you.**

No	Events	Data
1.	About _____ people are malnourished or starving.	850 mln.

**Exercise 5. Explain the relation between overpopulation and environment.**

Overpopulation has greatly impacted the environment of Earth starting at least as early as the 20<sup>th</sup> century. There are indirect economic consequences of this environmental degradation in the form of ecosystem services attrition. Beyond the scientifically verifiable harm to the environment, some assert the moral right of other species to simply exist rather than become extinct. Says environmental author Jeremy Rifkin, "our burgeoning population and urban way of life have been purchased at the expense of vast ecosystems and habitats. It's no accident that as we celebrate the urbanization of the world, we are quickly approaching another historic watershed: the disappearance of the wild."

Clearly, the past half century has been a traumatic one, as the collective impact of human numbers, affluence (consumption per individual) and our choices of technology continue to exploit rapidly an increasing proportion of the world's resources at an unsustainable rate.

During a remarkably short period of time, we have lost a quarter of the world's topsoil and a fifth of its agricultural land, altered the composition of the atmosphere profoundly, and destroyed a major proportion of our forests and other natural habitats without replacing them.

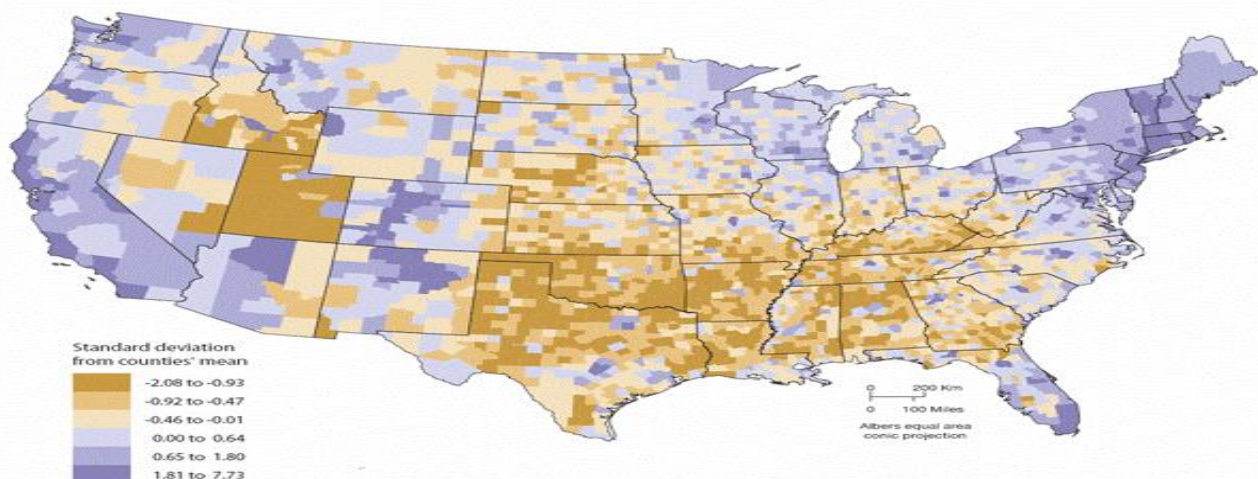
Worst of all, we have driven the rate of biological extinction, the permanent loss of species, up several hundred times beyond its historical levels, and are threatened with the loss of a majority of all species by the end of the 21st century."

A 2001 United Nations report has postulated that, although human activity can be blamed for much of the environmental degradation in the last century, overpopulation is not a major cause, but rising per-capita production and consumption and the use of particular technologies used in such production are more likely major factors.

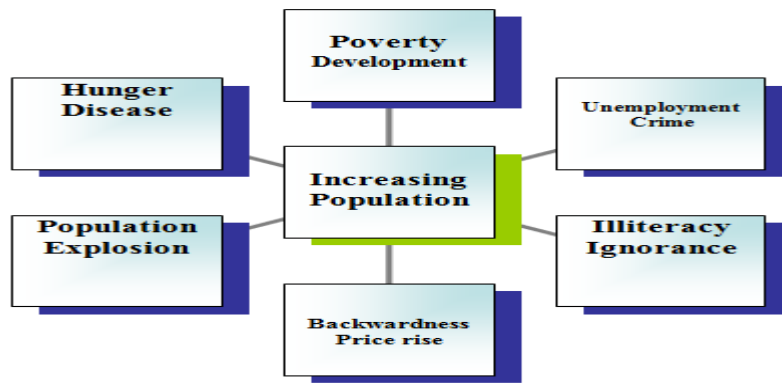
Further, even in countries which have both large population growth and major ecological problems, it is not necessarily true that curbing the population growth will make a major contribution towards resolving all environmental problems. However, as developing countries with high populations become more industrialized, pollution and consumption will invariably increase.

**Exercise 6. Summarize your findings on environment and issue in a short presentation.**

**Exercise 7. Make up a small report and give a talk in class.**



Map of the overall «Second Demographic Transition» factor (SDT) in the US by county



**Exercise 8. Read the text and pick up the essential details on cities in the form of quick notes.**

In 1800, only 3% of the world's population lived in cities. By the 20th century's close, 47% did so. In 1950, there were 83 cities with populations exceeding one mln.; but by 2007, this had risen to 468 agglomerations of more than one mln. If the trend continues, the world's urban population will double every 38 years, say researchers. The UN forecasts that today's urban population of 3.2 bn will rise to nearly 5 bn by 2030, when three out of five people will live in cities.

The increase will be most dramatic in the poorest and least-urbanized continents, Asia and Africa. Surveys and projections indicate that all urban growth over the next 25 years will be in developing countries. One bn people, one-sixth of the world's population, or one-third of urban population, now live in shanty towns, which are seen as "breeding grounds" for social problems such as crime, drug addiction, alcoholism, poverty and unemployment. In many poor countries slums exhibit high rates of disease due to unsanitary conditions, malnutrition, and lack of basic health care.

In 2000, there were 18 megacities – conurbations such as Tokyo, Mexico City, Mumbai (Bombay), São Paulo and New York City – that have populations in excess of 10 mln. inhabitants. Greater Tokyo already has 35 mln., more than the entire population of Canada. By 2025, according to the *Far Eastern Economic Review*, Asia alone will have at least 10 hypercities, those with 20 mln. or more, including Jakarta (24.9), Dhaka (25), Karachi (26.5), Shanghai (27) and Mumbai (with a staggering 33 mln.). Lagos has grown from 300,000 in 1950 to an estimated 15 mln. today, and the Nigerian government estimates that city will have expanded to 25 mln. residents by 2015. Chinese experts forecast that Chinese cities will contain 800 mln. people by 2020.

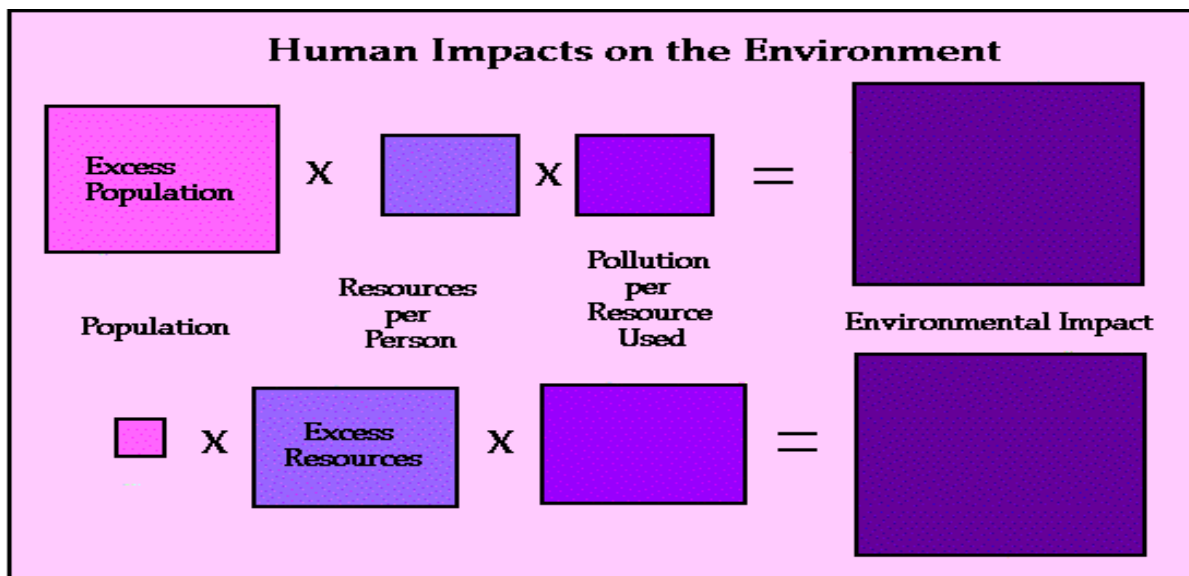
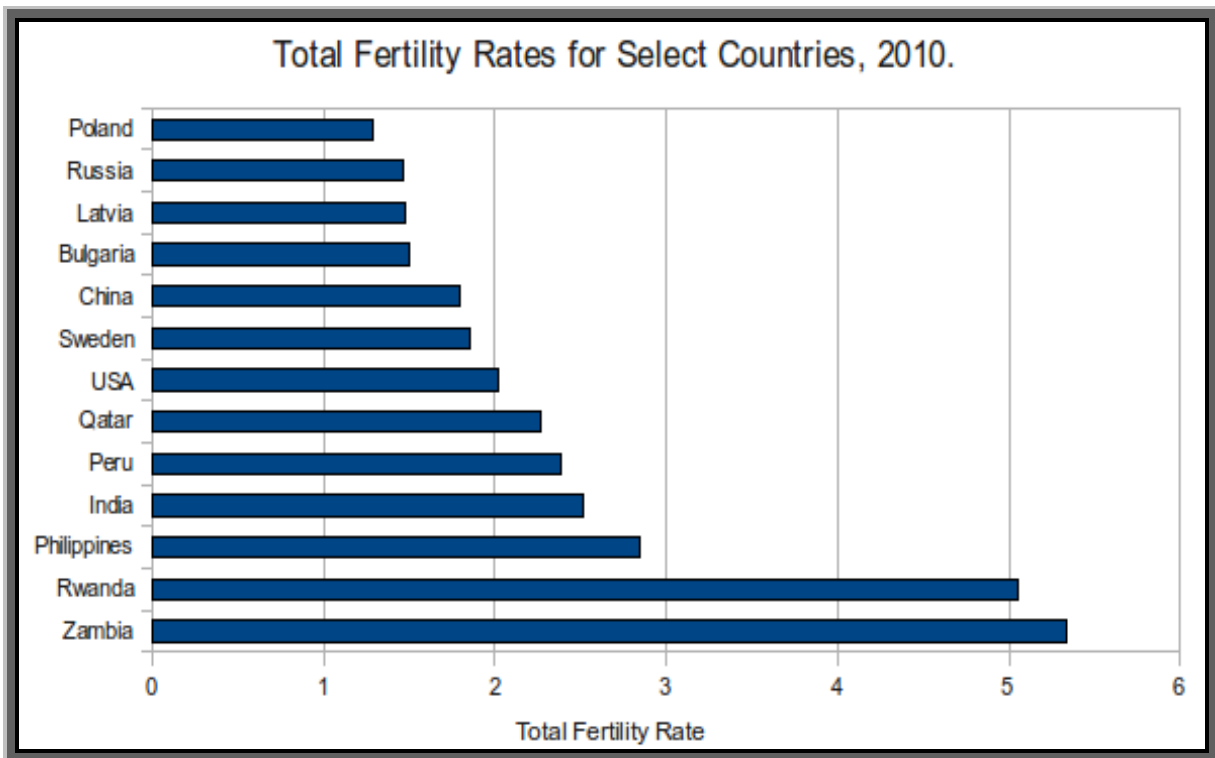
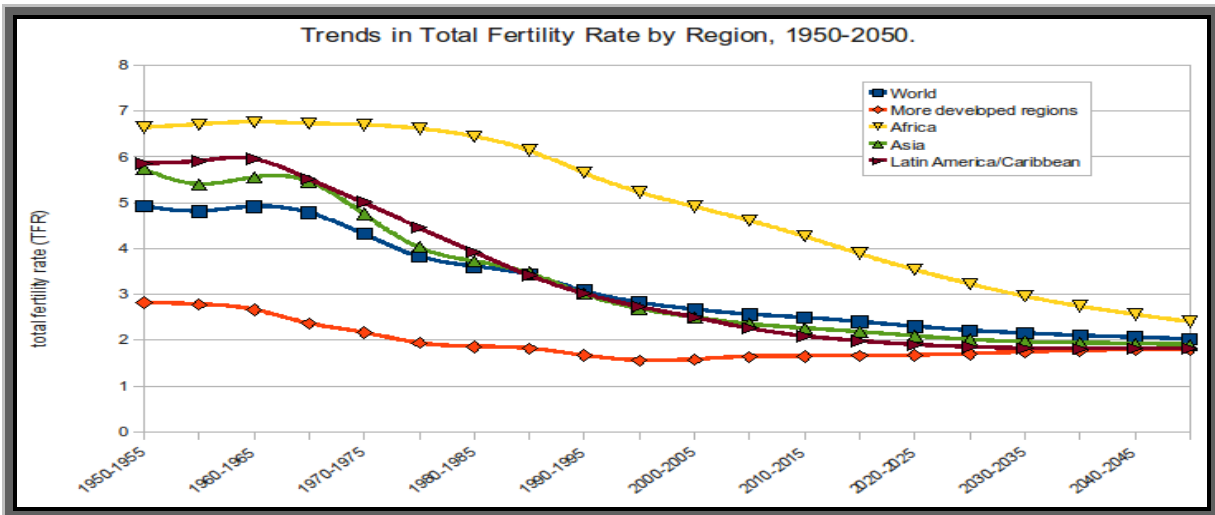
Despite the increase in population density within cities (and the emergence of megacities) you can see some great problems. UN Habitat states in its reports that urbanization may be the best compromise in the face of global population growth. Cities concentrate human activity within limited areas, limiting the breadth of environmental damage. But this mitigating influence can only be achieved if urban planning is improved and city services are properly maintained.

As set forth on page 18 of WWF's Living Planet report, the regions of the world with the greatest ecological footprint are ranked as follows as of 2012:

North America	Africa
Europe (European Union countries)	Europe (Non-European Union countries)
Middle-East and Central Asia	Latin-America and the Caribbean
Asia and Pacific Islands	

**Exercise 9. Read the text and name the definition of hypercities and megacities: their differences and common features. Analyze the ecological footprint by world region.**

**Exercise 10. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**



## EFFECTS OF OVERPOPULATION

Some problems associated with or exacerbated by human overpopulation:

*Inadequate fresh water* for drinking water use as well as sewage treatment & effluent discharge.

Some countries, like Saudi Arabia, use energy-expensive desalination to solve the problem of water shortages.

*Depletion of natural resources*, especially fossil fuels

Increased levels of *air pollution, water pollution, soil contamination and noise pollution*. Once a country has industrialized and become wealthy, a combination of government regulation and technological innovation causes pollution to decline substantially, even as the population continues to grow.

*Deforestation and loss of ecosystems* that sustain global atmospheric oxygen and carbon dioxide balance; about eight mln. hectares of forest are lost each year.

*Changes in atmospheric composition and consequent* global warming

Irreversible *loss of arable land* and increases in *desertification* Deforestation and desertification can be reversed by adopting property rights, and this policy is successful even while the human population continues to grow. *Mass species extinctions*. from reduced habitat in tropical forests due to slash-and-burn techniques that sometimes are practiced by shifting cultivators, especially in countries with rapidly expanding rural populations; present extinction rates may be as high as 140,000 species lost per year.

As of 2007, the IUCN Red List lists a total of 698 animal species having gone extinct during recorded human history. High *infant and child mortality*. High rates of infant mortality are caused by poverty. Rich countries with high population densities have low rates of infant mortality. Increased chance of the emergence of *new epidemics & pandemics*. For many environmental & social reasons, including overcrowded living conditions, malnutrition and inadequate, inaccessible, or non-existent health care, the poor are more likely to be exposed to infectious diseases.

*Starvation, malnutrition* or poor diet with ill health and diet-deficiency diseases (e.g. rickets).

However, rich countries with high population densities do not have famine. Poverty coupled with *inflation* in some regions and a resulting low level of capital formation. Poverty and inflation are aggravated by bad government and bad economic policies. Many countries with high population densities have eliminated absolute poverty and keep their inflation rates very low.

*Low life expectancy* in countries with fastest growing populations

*Unhygienic living conditions* for many based upon water resource depletion, discharge of raw sewage and solid waste disposal. However, this problem can be reduced with the adoption of sewers. For example, after Karachi, Pakistan installed sewers, its *infant mortality rate fell substantially*. *Elevated crime rate* due to drug cartels and increased theft by people stealing resources to survive Conflict over scarce resources and crowding, leading to *increased levels of warfare*.

**Exercise 1. Explain some problems associated with human overpopulation and their solutions.**





## MITIGATION MEASURES

While the current world trends are not indicative of any realistic solution to human overpopulation during the 21st century, there are several mitigation measures that have or can be applied to reduce the adverse impacts of overpopulation.

### Birth Regulations

Overpopulation is related to issue of birth control; some nations, like China, use strict measures to reduce birth rates. Religious and ideological opposition to birth control has been cited as a factor contributing to overpopulation and poverty.

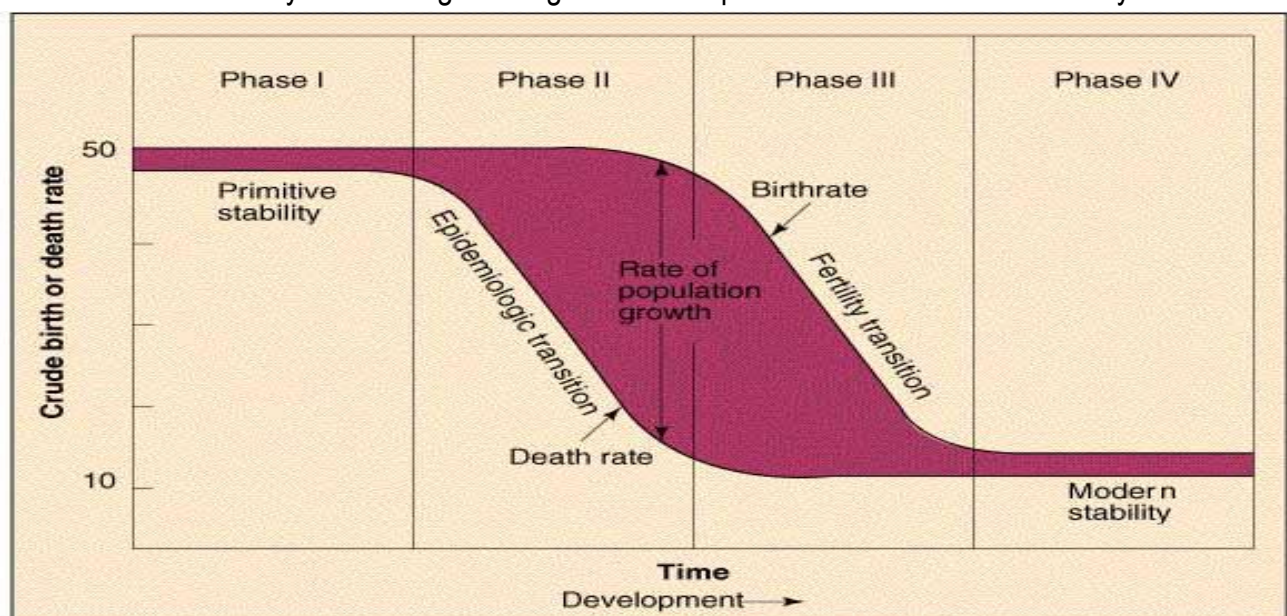
Some leaders and environmentalists (including Ted Turner) have suggested that there is an urgent need to strictly implement a China-like one-child policy globally by the United Nations, because this would help control and reduce population gradually and most successfully as is evidenced by the success and resultant economic-growth of China due to reduction of poverty in recent years.

Because such a policy would be uniformly and unanimously implemented globally and would be implemented by a reputable central-global organization (United Nations), it would face little political and social opposition from individual countries. Indira Gandhi, Prime Minister of India, implemented a forced sterilization programme in the 1970s.

Officially, men with two children or more had to submit to sterilization, but many unmarried young men, political opponents and ignorant men were also believed to have been sterilized. This program is still remembered and criticized in India, and is blamed for creating a wrong public aversion to family planning, which hampered Government programmes for decades.

Urban designer Michael E. Arth has proposed a "choice-based, marketable birth license plan" he calls "birth credits." Birth credits would allow any woman to have as many children as she wants, as long as she buys a license for any children beyond an average allotment that would result in zero population growth (ZPG). If that allotment was determined to be one child, then the first child would be free, and the market would determine what the license fee for each additional child would cost.

Extra credits would expire after a certain time, so these credits could not be hoarded by speculators. Another advantage of the scheme is that the affluent would not buy them because they already limit their family size by choice, as evidenced by an average of 1.1 children per European woman. The actual cost of the credits would only be a fraction of the actual cost of having and raising a child, so the credits would serve more as a wake-up call to women who might otherwise produce children without seriously considering the long term consequences to themselves or society.



## Education & Empowerment

One option is to focus on education about overpopulation, family planning, and birth control methods, and to make birth-control devices like male/female condoms and pills easily available.

An estimated 350 mln. women in the poorest countries of the world either did not want their last child, do not want another child or want to space their pregnancies, but they lack access to information, affordable means and services to determine the size and spacing of their families. In the developing world, some 514,000 women die annually of complications from pregnancy and abortion.

Additionally 8 mln. infants die, many because of malnutrition or preventable diseases, especially from lack of access to clean drinking water. In the USA, in 2001, almost half of pregnancies were unintended. Egypt announced a program to reduce its overpopulation by family planning education and putting women in the workforce. It was announced in June 2008 by the Minister of Health and Population Hatem el-Gabali. The government has set aside about \$90 mln. for the program.

## Extraterrestrial Settlement

In the 1970s, Gerard O'Neill suggested building space habitats that could support 30,000 times the carrying capacity of Earth using just the asteroid belt and that the solar system as a whole could sustain current population growth rates for a thousand years. Marshall Savage (1992, 1994) has projected a human population of five quintillion throughout the solar system by 3000, with the majority in the asteroid belt.

Arthur C. Clarke, a fervent supporter of Savage, argued that by 2057 there will be humans on the Moon, Mars, Europa, Ganymede, Titan and in orbit around Venus, Neptune and Pluto.

Freeman Dyson (1999) favours the Kuiper belt as the future home of humanity, suggesting this could happen within a few centuries. In *Mining the Sky*, John S. Lewis suggests that the resources of the solar system could support 10 quadrillion ( $10^{16}$ ) people.

K. Eric Drexler, famous inventor of the futuristic concept of molecular nanotechnology, has suggested in *Engines of Creation* that colonizing space will mean breaking the Malthusian limits to growth for the human species. Many authors (Carl Sagan, Arthur C. Clarke, Isaac Asimov have argued that shipping the excess population into space is no solution to human overpopulation, and that "the population battle must be fought or won here on Earth". (1999)

The problem for these authors is not the lack of resources in space (as shown in books such as *Mining the Sky*), but the physical impracticality of shipping vast numbers of people into space to "solve" overpopulation on Earth. However, Gerard O'Neill's calculations show that Earth could offload all new population growth with a launch services industry about the same size as the current airline industry in O'Neill, Gerard K. (1981).

**Exercise 1. Analyze the various points of view of the problem given in the text.**

Human economic activities and their impact on biodiversity					
	Habitat alteration	Over harvesting	Pollution	Additions	Climate change
Agriculture	✓		✓	✓	✓
Forestry	✓	✓			✓
Fishing	✓	✓		✓	
Urbanization	✓		✓	✓	
Manufacturing	✓		✓		✓

**Exercise 2. Fill in the gaps in the text from the list below.**

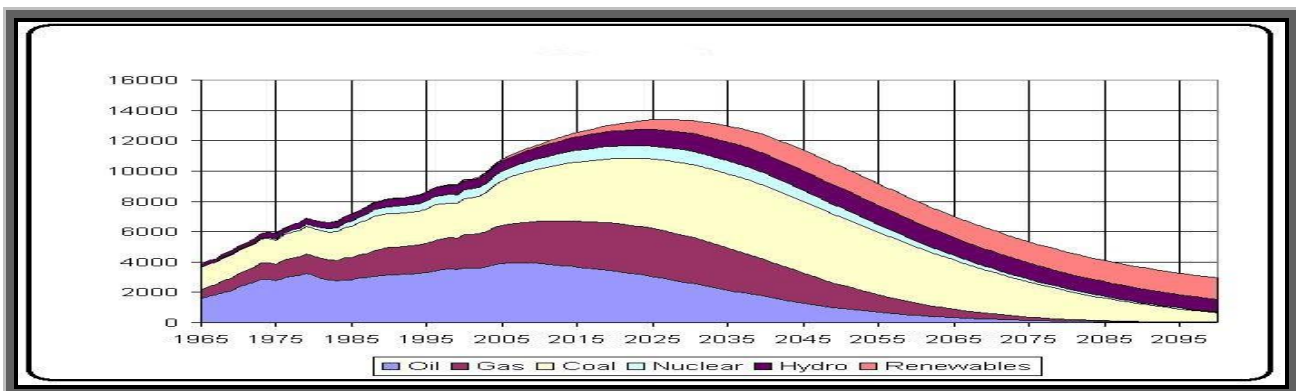
Including, various, humankind, course, humans (2), scientists, infertility, large-scale, governments, principle, scholars, modern vaccination, burden

Many philosophers, \_\_\_\_\_ Thomas Malthus, have said at \_\_\_\_\_ times that when \_\_\_\_\_ does not check population-growth, nature takes its course. But this \_\_\_\_\_ might not result in the death of \_\_\_\_\_ through catastrophes; instead it might result in infertility. German \_\_\_\_\_ have reported that a virus called Adeno-associated virus might have a role in male \_\_\_\_\_, but is otherwise harmless to humans. Thus, if this or similar viruses mutate, they might cause infertility on a \_\_\_\_\_, thus resulting in a natural and harmless human population-control over time. Some propose that \_\_\_\_\_ around the world should stop spending funds on child vaccination because children would and should survive naturally by \_\_\_\_\_ of "survival of the fittest", rather than artificially through vaccination, and argue that \_\_\_\_\_ survived even before the introduction of modern vaccination. They suggest that the funds saved from vaccination should instead be better spent on providing free-of-cost primary and higher education to everyone, particularly the meritorious but needy \_\_\_\_\_ and students. Alternatively, they argue that it was only the introduction of \_\_\_\_\_ that led to the growth in world population from less than 1 bn people to more than 6 bn people in the 20<sup>th</sup> century only. They argue that saving children who are unable to get proper education leads to unemployment and those uneducated children gradually become a \_\_\_\_\_ to society and to their nations, and many of them resort to becoming criminals.

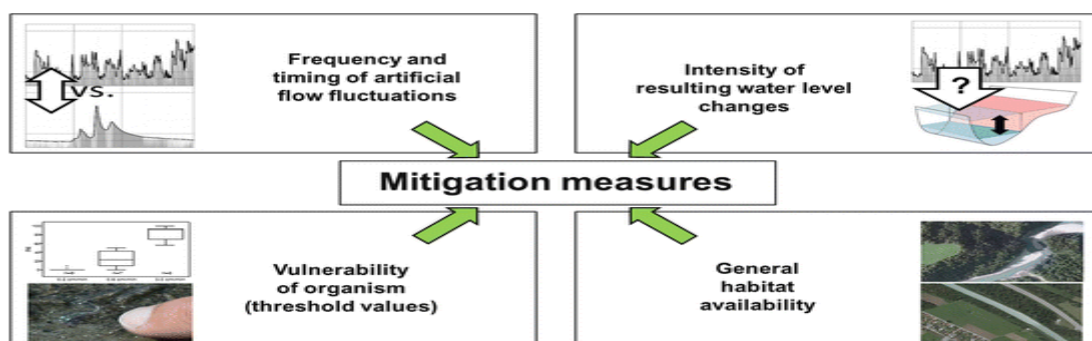
**Exercise 3. Make up a dialogue from the contents of the text and carry it on in class.**

**Exercise 4. Make up sentences with the words and phrases from active vocabulary.**

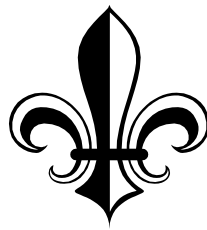
Bustling place of activity, to house, to build, the wealth of nation, history, founding, to impose tariffs, to ensure, to create, well-regulated, customs service, collection, protection, infrastructure projects, federal laws and regulations, eventually, to task, to set up, separate agencies, independent agencies, executive departments, to intend, to occupy, to be vacant, to save the building, demolition, building's restoration, competition, great opportunity, renovation, classified civil service, local authority, supporters, consolidation, law enforcement agencies, devastating events, to design, to meet the modern needs.



World energy use projection to 2100









## UNIT III. MODERN MIGRATION

### IMMIGRATION

Immigration is a not modern phenomenon. It owes its existence to the needs of an ever more intensely integrated global capitalist economy to have people move around for the purpose of work, for reproduction of labor power (studies, particularly higher specialized forms of knowledge) or political asylum across the borders of an increasingly obsolete interstate system. Immigrants are people who obtain legal status marked, at a minimum, by some form of residence permit that regulates the terms of their employment (see also expatriates).

Some, but by no means all, foreign workers and expatriates seek and reach citizenship in the state where they work. Immigrants are different from the undocumented labor force in that the latter does not have legal status in the country in which s/he works. (There can be a host of complex reasons for lack of legal status: lack of interest on part of the worker, the state's refusal to grant such permits to categories of foreign workers, institutional racism, etc.)

Not all undocumented workers are, strictly speaking, illegal: Because of the complex history of global migrations, several powerful states, such as the USA, Canada, etc. have had legal systems in which work without explicit consent of the state has fallen through legal "*cracks*."

Both immigrants and undocumented workers differ from tourists as the latter do not engage in income earning activities in the countries they visit, so their economic impact is restricted mainly to consumption and environmental consequences. Seasonal labor migration is often treated in the press and in political rhetoric as a form of immigration. The modern concept of immigration is related to the development of nation-states and nationality law and/or citizenship law.

Citizenship in a nation-state confers an inalienable right of residence in that state, but residency of non-citizens is subject to conditions set by immigration law.

The emergence of modern nation-states made immigration a political issue: by imagining its populations, in violation of multi-ethnic, multi-'racial', multi-cultural realities 'on the ground', as homogenous blocks, constituting a nation defined by shared, single ethnicity, 'race' and/or culture.

Legal and political restrictions on the presence of foreigners is a highly controversial political theme because such restrictions are introduced and maintained by states whose citizens have had a major, sustained and deeply consequential presence in states other than their own. The global volume of immigration has been strikingly low in relative terms.

The International Integration and Refugee Association estimated a mere 175 mln. international migrants in 2005, fewer than 3 % of the global population. Contrast that to the average rate of globalization (the proportion of cross-border trade in all trade), which exceeds 20 %.

The Middle East, some parts of Europe, small areas of South East Asia, and a few spots in the West Indies have the highest percentages of immigrant population recorded by the UN Census 2005.

The reliability of immigrant censuses is, however, lamentably low due to the concealed character of undocumented labor migration. The International Organization for Migration has estimated the number of foreign migrants to be over 200 mln. world-wide today. A now outdated theory of immigration distinguished between push factors and pull factors.

Push factors refer primarily to the motive for emigration from the country of origin. In the case of economic migration (usually labour migration), differentials in wage rates are prominent. If the value of wages in the new country surpasses the value of wages in one's native country.

He or she may choose to migrate as long as the travel costs are not too high. Particularly in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, economic expansion of the U.S. increased migrant flow, and in effect, nearly 20% of the population was foreign born versus today's value of 10%, making up a significant amount of the labor force. Poor individuals from less developed countries can have far higher standards of living in developed countries than in their originating countries. The cost of emigration, which includes both the explicit costs, the ticket price, and the implicit cost, lost work time and loss of community ties, play a major role in the pull of emigrants away from their native country. As transportation technology improved, travel time and costs decreased dramatically between the 18<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> century.

Travel across the Atlantic used to take up to 5 weeks in the 1700s, but around the time of the 1900s it took a mere 8 days. When the opportunity cost is lower, the immigration rates tend to be higher. Escape from poverty (personal or for relatives staying behind) is a traditional push factor, the availability of jobs is the related pull factor. Natural disasters and can amplify poverty-driven migration flows. This kind of migration may be illegal immigration in the destination country (emigration is also illegal in some countries, such as North Korea, Zimbabwe, and Somalia). The main problem with push-and-pull theories is three-fold:

- first, they state the obvious (people from poorer places will seek to go to richer ones);
- second, they are unable to explain the emergence of migrant flows (if push and pull were the only things in existence, people from the poorest countries would migrate to the richest ones, when in reality such flows are well-nigh non-existent);
- third, they are unable to explain the stability of the emerging patterns of migration (i.e., once a flow from country A to country B is established); it will stay on for a relatively long time, even if the initial conditions that had given the push and pull to the migration are not there any more (as the case of the German case of the Gastarbeiter, or guest worker program shows. Emigration and immigration are sometimes mandatory in a contract of employment: religious missionaries, and employees of transnational corporations, international non-governmental organizations and the diplomatic service expect, by definition, to work "overseas". They are often referred to as "*expatriates*", and their conditions of employment are typically equal to or better than those applying in the host country (for similar work).

For some migrants, education is the primary pull factor (although most international students are not classified as immigrants). Retirement migration from rich countries to lower-cost countries with better climate, is a new type of international migration. Examples include immigration of retired British citizens to Spain or Italy and of retired Canadian citizens to the U.S. (mainly to the U.S. states of Florida and Texas). Non-economic push factors include: persecution (religious and otherwise), frequent abuse, bullying, oppression, ethnic cleansing and even genocide, and risks to civilians during war. Political motives traditionally motivate refugee flows – to escape dictatorship for instance.

Some migration is for personal reasons, based on a relationship (be with family or a partner), such as in family reunification or transnational marriage. In a few cases, an individual may wish to immigrate to a new country in a form of transferred patriotism. Evasion of criminal justice (avoiding arrest) is a personal motivation. This type of emigration and immigration is not normally legal, if a crime is internationally recognized, criminals may disguise their identities or find other loopholes to evade detection. There have been cases, for example, of those who might be guilty of war crimes disguising themselves as victims of war or conflict and then pursuing asylum in a different country.

Barriers to immigration come not only in legal form; natural and social barriers to immigration can also be very powerful. Immigrants when leaving their country leave everything familiar: their family, friends, support network, and culture. They also need to liquidate their assets often at a large loss, and incur the expense of moving. When they arrive in a new country this is often with many uncertainties including finding work, where to live, new laws, cultural norms, language or accent issues, possible racism and other exclusionary behaviour towards them and their family.

These barriers act to limit international migration (populations move *en masse* to other continents, creating huge population surges, and strain on infrastructure & services, ignore these inherent limits on migration). Some states, such as Japan, have opted for technological changes to increase profitability (greater automation), and designed immigration laws specifically to prevent immigrants from coming to, and remaining within, the country.

However, globalization, as well as low birth rates and an aging work force, has forced even Japan to reconsider its immigration policy. Japan's colonial past has also created considerable pockets of non-Japanese in Japan. Most of these groups, e.g. Koreans, have faced extreme levels of discrimination in Japan. As a principle, citizens of one member nation of the European Union are allowed to work in other member nations with little to no restriction on movement.

For non-EU-citizen permanent residents in the EU, movement between EU-member states is considerably more difficult. After new waves of accession to the European Union, earlier members have often introduced measures to restrict participation in "*their*" labour markets by citizens of the new EU-member states. Austria, Belgium, Denmark, France, Germany, Greece, Italy, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Portugal and Spain each restricted their labour market for up to seven years both in the 2004 and 2007 round of accession.

Due to the European Union's – in principle – single internal labour market policy, societies that have seen relatively low levels of labour immigration until recently which have sent a significant portion of their population overseas in the past – such as Italy and the Republic of Ireland are seeing an influx of immigrants from EU countries with lower per capita annual earning rates, triggering nationwide immigration debates. Spain, meanwhile, is seeing growing illegal immigration from Africa.

As Spain is the closest EU member nation to Africa – Spain even has an old colonial city on the African continent, called Ceuta, not to mention the Canary Islands west of North Africa, in the Atlantic – it is physically easiest for African emigrants to reach. This has led to debate both within Spain and between Spain and other EU members. Spain has asked for border control assistance from other EU states. The latter have responded that Spain has brought the wave of African illegals on itself by granting amnesty to hundreds of thousands of immigrants. The UK and Germany have seen major immigration since the end of World War II and have been debating the issue for decades.

Foreign workers were brought in to those countries to help rebuild after the war, and many stayed. Political debates about immigration typically focus on statistics, the immigration law and policy, and the implementation of existing restrictions. In some European countries the debate in the 1990s was focused on asylum seekers, but restrictive policies within the European Union, as well as a reduction in armed conflict in Europe and neighboring regions have sharply reduced asylum seekers.

In the USA political debate on immigration has flared repeatedly since the US became independent. Some on the far-left of the political spectrum attribute anti-immigration rhetoric to an all-"white", under-educated and parochial minority of the population, ill-educated about the relative advantages of immigration for the US economy and society.

While this mentality shows an obvious bias, it is often hard for civil discussion to occur regarding immigration due to its highly emotional underpinnings. Since September 11, 2001, the politics of immigration has become an extremely hot issue. The politics of immigration have become increasingly associated with other issues, such as national security, terrorism, and in Western Europe especially, with the presence of Islam as a new major religion. Those with security concerns cite the 2005 civil unrest in France that point to the Jyllands-Posten Muhammad cartoons controversy as an example of the value conflicts arising from immigration of Muslims in Western Europe while failing to recognize the fact that most participants of the 2005 civil unrest were citizens of France, not immigrants themselves, and the essence of their protest was denial of equal rights, and blatant racism, on the part of the state.

Immigration has become an emotional political issue in many European nations.

**Exercise 1. Digest the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 2. Write out the vocabulary according to the topic.**

**Exercise 3. Analyze the information and answer the questions.**

1. What are Immigrants like? 2. What do foreign workers and expatriates do? 3. What kind of workers are illegal? 4. is often treated in the press and in political rhetoric as a form of immigration? 5. What is the modern concept of immigration? 6. The global volume of immigration has been strikingly low in relative terms, hasn't it? 7. How did The International Integration and Refugee Association estimate international migrants? 8. What countries have the highest percentages of immigrant population? 9. How has the International Organization for Migration estimated the number of foreign migrants? 10. What theory distinguished between push factors and pull factors? 11. What did particularly in the 19th century increased migrant flow? 12. Who can have far higher standards of living in developed countries than in their originating countries? 13. When do the immigration rates tend to be higher? 14. How many fold is the main problem with push-and-pull theories? 15. What are they? 16. Emigration and immigration are sometimes mandatory in a contract of employment, aren't they? 17. What is a new type of international migration? 18. What do non-economic push factors include? 19. What type of emigration and immigration is not normally legal? 20. What has Japan done to prevent immigrants from coming to, and remaining within, the country?

**Exercise 4. Remember the notion.**

Immigration – the action of coming to live permanently in a foreign country.

immigration of labourers – иммиграция рабочих [рабочей силы]

"immigration" – "паспортный контроль" (надпись)

immigration officer – иммиграционный чиновник

undocumented immigration – нелегальная иммиграция

to combat illegal immigration – бороться с незаконной иммиграцией

to curb immigration into a country – резко сокращать иммиграцию в страну

to limit / to restrict immigration – ограничивать иммиграцию

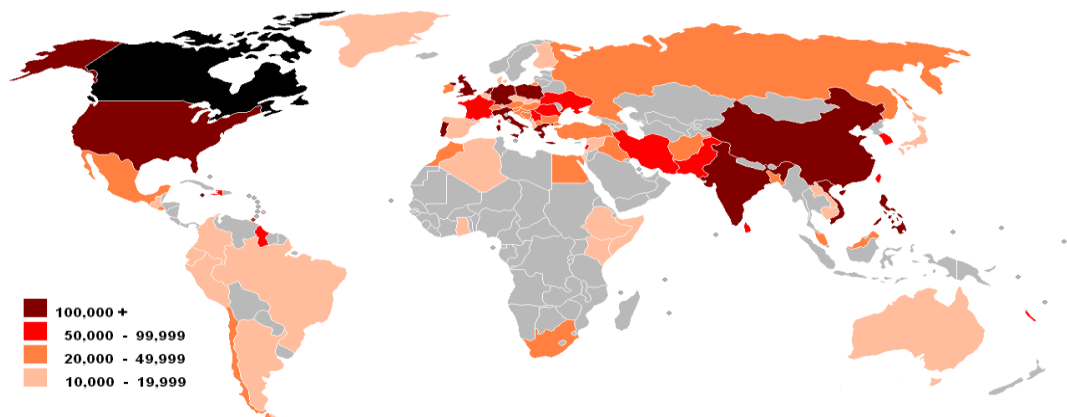
collective (large-scale, mass) immigration – массовая иммиграция

immigration into a country – иммиграция в страну

forced migration – вынужденное переселение (изменение места постоянного проживания под воздействием таких сил, как войны, стихийные бедствия и в силу насильственного переселения в результате работорговли, политики государства и т. п.)

return migration – обратная миграция (движение людей на родину или предыдущее место постоянного проживания)

**Exercise 5. Give a small talk in class.**



Immigrants and non-permanent residents of Canada in 2017 by country of birth



## ETHICS

Although freedom of movement is often recognized as a civil right, the freedom only applies to movement within national borders: it may be guaranteed by the constitution or by human rights legislation.

Additionally, this freedom is often limited to citizens and excludes others.

No state currently allows full freedom of movement across its borders, and international human rights treaties do not confer a general right to enter another state. According to Article 13 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, citizens may not be forbidden to leave their country.

There is no similar provision regarding entry of non-citizens. Those who reject this distinction on ethical grounds, argue that the freedom of movement both within and between countries is a basic human right, and that the restrictive immigration policies, typical of nation-states, violate this human right of freedom of movement.

Such arguments are common among anti-state ideologies like anarchism and libertarianism.

Where immigration is permitted, it is typically selective. Ethnic selection, such as the White Australia policy, has generally disappeared, but priority is usually given to the educated, skilled, and wealthy – which is in direct contradiction to the needs of the labour market (demanding unskilled and poor people with low levels of education, willing to do jobs wealthier locals refuse to do).

Less privileged individuals, including the mass of poor people in low-income countries, cannot avail of the legal and protected immigration opportunities offered by wealthy states.

This inequality has also been criticized as conflicting with the principle of equal opportunities, which apply (at least in theory) within democratic nation-states.

The fact that the door is closed for the unskilled, while at the same time many developed countries have a huge demand for unskilled labour, is a major factor in undocumented immigration.

The contradictory nature of this policy – which specifically disadvantages the unskilled immigrants while exploiting their labour – has also been criticized on ethical grounds.

Immigration policies which selectively grant freedom of movement to targeted individuals are intended to produce a net economic gain for the host country. They can also mean net loss for a poor donor country through the loss of the educated minority – the brain drain. This can exacerbate the global inequality in standards of living that provided the motivation for the individual to migrate in the first place. An example of the "*competition for skilled labour*" is active recruitment of health workers by First World countries, from the twenty-six World.

**Exercise 1. Render the main idea of the information.**

**Exercise 2. Make the sentences below as true (T) if they give the message of the text, and false (F) if they change the message.**

1. Freedom of Movement is not recognized as a civil right. 2. The freedom applies to movement within national borders. 3. The freedom is not limited to citizens and excludes others. 4. All states currently allow full freedom of movement across its borders. 5. International human rights treaties confer a general right to enter another state. 6. There is similar provision regarding entry of non-citizens. 7. The freedom of movement both within and between countries is a basic human right. 8. The restrictive immigration policies violate the human right of freedom of movement. 9. Priority is usually given to the educated, skilled, and wealthy. 10. The mass of poor people in low-income countries can avail of the legal and protected immigration opportunities offered by wealthy states. 11. Immigration policies didn't intend to produce a net economic gain for the host country. 12. This can't exacerbate the global inequality in standards of living. 13. This provided the motivation for the individual to migrate in the first place.

**Exercise 3. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

**Exercise 4. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

## IMMIGRATION BY COUNTRIES

Following Poland's entry into the EU in May 2004 it is estimated that by the start of 2007 375,000 Poles have registered to work in the UK, although the total Polish population in the UK is believed to be 750,000. Many Poles work in seasonal occupations and a large number are likely to move back and forth including between Ireland and other EU Western nations.

According to Eurostat, some EU member states are currently receiving large-scale immigration: for instance Spain, where the economy has created more than half of all the new jobs in the EU over the past five years. The EU, in 2005, had an overall net gain from international migration of +1.8 mln. people. This accounts for almost 85% of Europe's total population growth in 2005. In 2004, total 140,033 people immigrated to France. Of them, 90,250 were from Africa and 13,710 from Europe.

In 2005, immigration fell slightly to 135,890. In recent years, immigration has accounted for more than half of Norway's population growth. In 2006, Statistics Norway's (SSB) counted a record 45,800 immigrants arriving in Norway – 30% higher than 2005. At the beginning of 2007, there were 415,300 persons in Norway with an immigrant background (i.e. immigrants, or born of immigrant parents), comprising 8.3 % of the total population. Canada has the highest per capita net immigration rate in the world, driven by economic policy and family reunification.

In 2001, 250,640 people immigrated to Canada. Newcomers settle mostly in the major urban areas of Toronto, Vancouver and Montreal.

By the 1990s and 2000s, a majority of Canada's immigrants came from Asia. Canadian society is often depicted as being a very progressive, diverse, and multicultural.

Accusing a person of racism in Canada is usually considered a serious slur. All political parties are now cautious about criticizing of the high level of immigration, because, as noted by the Globe and Mail, "in the early 1990s, the old Reform Party was branded 'racist' for suggesting that immigration levels be lowered from 250,000 to 150,000." Japan accepted just 16 refugees in 1999, while the USA took in 85,010 for resettlement, according to the UNHCR.

New Zealand, which is smaller than Japan, accepted 1,140 refugees in 1999. Just 305 persons were recognized as refugees by Japan from 1981, when Japan ratified the U.N. Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees, to 2002. Japanese Minister Taro Aso has called Japan a "*one race*" nation.

This comment was heavily criticized by both Japanese and foreign media. In 2004 the number of people who became British citizens rose to a record 140,795 – a rise of 12% on the previous year.

This number had risen dramatically since 2000. The overwhelming majority of new citizens come from Africa (32%) and Asia (40%), the largest three groups being people from Pakistan, India and Somalia.

In 2005, an estimated 565,000 migrants arrived to live in the UK for at least a year, most of the migrants were people from Asia, the Indian sub-continent and Africa, while 380,000 people emigrated from the UK for a year or more, with Australia, Spain and France most popular destinations.

British emigration towards Southern Europe is of special relevance. Citizens from the European Union make up a growing proportion of immigrants in Spain. They mainly come from countries like the UK and Germany, but the British case is of special interest due to its magnitude.

The British authorities estimate that the British population in Spain at 700,000. Spain is the most favoured European destination for Britons leaving the UK. Since 2000, Spain has absorbed more than three mln. immigrants, growing its population by almost 10%. Immigrant population now tops over 4.5 mln.. According to residence permit data for 2005, about 500,000 were Moroccan, another 500,000 were Ecuadorian, more than 200,000 were Romanian, and 260,000 were Colombian.

In 2005 alone, a regularization programme increased the legal immigrant population by 700,000 people. Portugal, long a country of emigration, has now become a country of net immigration, and not just from the former colonies.

By the end of 2003, legal immigrants represented about 4% of the population, and the largest communities were from Cape Verde, Brazil, Angola, Guinea-Bissau, UK, Spain and Ukraine.

The overall level of immigration to Australia has grown substantially during the last decade.

Net overseas migration increased from 30,000 in 1993 to 118,000 in 2003-04.

The largest components of immigration are the skilled migration and family re-union programs. In recent years the mandatory detention of unauthorized arrivals by boat has generated great levels of controversy. During the 2004-05, total 123,424 people immigrated to Australia. Of them, 17,736 were from Africa, 54,804 from Asia, 21,131 from Oceania, 18,220 from UK, 1,506 from South America, and 2,369 from Eastern Europe. 131,000 people migrated to Australia in 2005-06 and migration target for 2006-07 was 144,000. New Zealand has relatively open immigration policies.

23% of the population was born overseas, mainly in Asia, Oceania, and UK, one of the highest rates in the world. In 2004-2005, a target of 45,000 immigrants was set by the New Zealand immigration Service and represented 1.5% of the total population.

According to the 2001 census projections, by 2050 57% of all New Zealand children will have Maori or Pacific ancestry, while 68% will be non-European.

From 1850 to 1930, the foreign born population of the USA increased from 2.2 mln. to 14.2 mln.. The highest percentage of foreign born people in the USA was found in this period, with the peak in 1890 at 14.7%. During this time, the lower costs of Atlantic Ocean travel in time and fare made it more advantageous for immigrants to move to the U.S. than in years prior. Following this time period immigration fell because in 1924 Congress implemented a quota system in which each country was only allowed to have 2% more immigrants per year based on their respective numbers in 1890.

The Immigration Act of 1924 favored immigrant source countries that already had many immigrants in the U.S. by 1890. Immigration continued to fall throughout the 1940's and 1950's, but it increased again afterwards but was still low by historical standards.

After 2000, immigration to the USA numbered approximately 1,000,000 per year.

In 2006, 1.27 mln. immigrants were granted legal residence. Mexico has been the leading source of new U.S. residents for over two decades; and since 1998, China, India and the Philippines have been in the top four sending countries every year. The U.S. has often been called the "*melting pot*", a name derived from USA' rich tradition of immigrants coming to the US looking for something better and having their cultures melded and incorporated into the fabric of the country.

Emma Lazarus, in a poem entitled "The New Colossus," which is inscribed on the pedestal of the Statue of Liberty tells of the invitation extended to those wanting to make the US their home.

Not like the brazen giant of Greek fame, with conquering limbs astride from land to land; here at our sea-washed, sunset gates shall stand. A mighty woman with a torch, whose flame is the imprisoned lightning, and her name Mother of Exiles.

From her beacon-hand glows world-wide welcome; her mild eyes command the air-bridged harbor that twin cities frame. "Keep, ancient lands, your storied pomp!" cries she with silent lips. "Give me your tired, your poor, your huddled masses yearning to breathe free, the wretched refuse of your teeming shore. Send these, the homeless, tempest test to me; I lift my lamp beside the golden door!"

Since World War II, more refugees have found homes in the U.S. than anywhere and more than 2 mln. refugees have arrived in the U.S. since 1980 (representing less than 1% of the entire US population). Of the top 10 countries accepting resettled refugees in 2006, the USA accepted more than twice as much as the next 9 countries combined.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the information and render its contents shortly in English.**

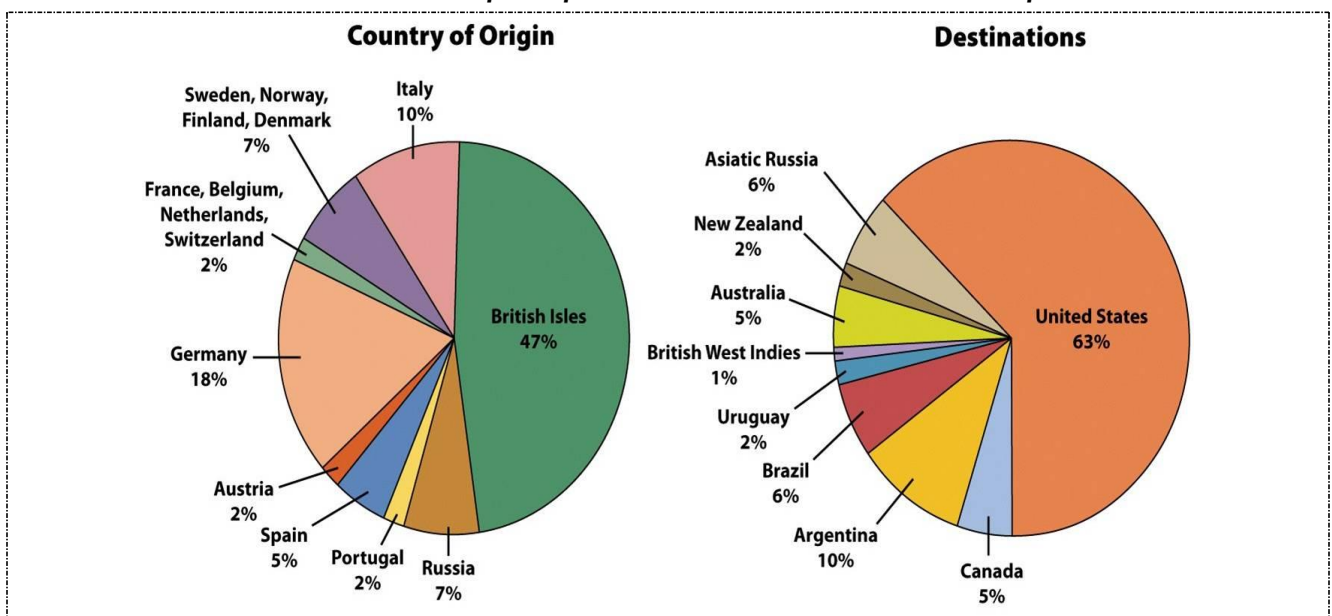
**Exercise 2. Find some key-words and with their help render the main ideas of the texts.**

**Exercise 3. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 4. Match phrases with numerical data without using the text. After that consult the text and comment on the difference.**

No	Events	Data
1.	Poland entered into the EU _____	in 2005.
2.	The EU had an overall net gain from international migration _____	in 2006.
3.	Total 140,033 people immigrated to France _____	in 2005.
4.	Immigration fell slightly to 135,890 _____	in 2006.
5.	Statistics counted a record 45,800 immigrants arriving in Norway _____	in 2007.
6.	250,640 people immigrated to Canada _____	in 2001.
7.	Japan accepted just 16 refugees _____	in 1999.
8.	The USA took in 85,010 for resettlement _____	in 1989.
9.	New Zealand accepted 1,140 refugees _____	in 2000.
10.	The number of people who became British rose to a record _____	in 2005.
11.	This number had risen dramatically _____	since 2001.
12.	A regularization programme increased the legal immigrant population _____	in 2005.
13.	Net overseas migration increased _____	in 2005-6.
14.	_____ of the population was born overseas in New Zealand.	23%
15.	The foreign born population of the USA increased _____	in 1860-1950.
16.	Immigration continued to fall throughout _____	the 1930's-1950s.
17.	China, India and the Philippines have been in the top four sending countries every year _____	since 1998.
18.	Mexico has been the leading source of new U.S. residents for over _____	2 decades.
19.	More than 2 mln. refugees have arrived in the U.S. _____	since 1980.
20.	1.27 mln. immigrants were granted legal residence _____	in 2007.

**Exercise 5. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**





## HUMAN MIGRATION

Human migration denotes any movement by humans from one district to another, sometimes over long distances or in large groups. The movement of populations in modern times has continued under the form of both voluntary migration within one's region, country, or beyond, and involuntary migration (which includes the slave trade, trafficking in human beings and ethnic cleansing).

People who migrate are called migrants, or, more specifically, emigrants, immigrants or settlers, depending on historical setting, circumstances and perspective. The pressures of human migrations, whether as outright conquest or by slow cultural infiltration and resettlement, have affected the grand epochs in history (the Decline of the Roman Empire); under the form of colonization, migration has transformed the world (e.g. the prehistoric and historic settlements of Australia and the Americas).

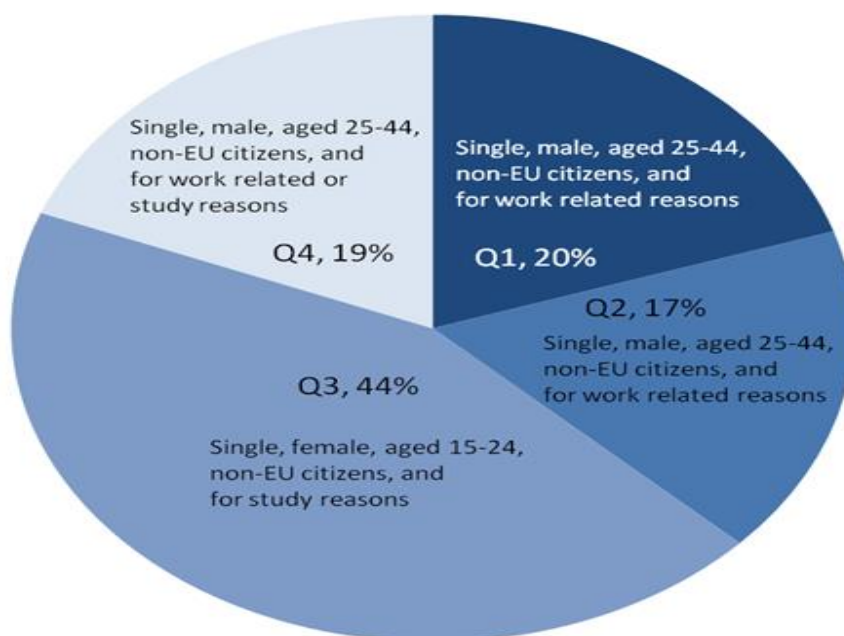
Population genetics studied in traditionally settled modern populations have opened a window into the historical patterns of migrations, a technique pioneered by Luigi Luca Cavalli-Sforza. Forced migration (see population transfer) has been a means of social control under authoritarian regimes, yet free initiative migration is a powerful factor in social adjustment (e.g. the growth of urban populations).

In December 2003 The Global Commission on International Migration (GCIM) was launched with the support of Kofi Annan and several countries, with an independent 19-member Commission, three-fold mandate and a finite life-span, ending December 2005. Its report, based on regional consultation meetings with stakeholders and scientific reports from leading international migration experts, was published and presented to UN Secretary-General Kofi Annan on 5 October 2005. Different types of migration include:

- Daily human commuting.
- Seasonal human migration is mainly related to agriculture.
- Permanent migration, for the purposes of permanent or long-term stays.
- Local.
- Regional.
- Rural to Urban, more common in developing countries as industrialization takes effect.
- Urban to Rural, common in developed countries due to a higher cost of urban living.

**Exercise 1. Show the routes of migrations of the population to the USA on the world map.**

**Exercise 2. Analyze the seasonal migration to the UK with the help of the chart.**



## INTERNATIONAL MIGRATION

Historical migration of human populations begins with the movement of *Homo erectus* out of Africa across Eurasia about a mln. years ago. *Homo sapiens* appear to have colonized all of Africa about 150,000 years ago, moved out of Africa 70,000 years ago, and had spread across Australia, Asia and Europe by 40,000 years ago. Migration to the Americas took place 20 to 15,000 years ago, and by 2,000 years ago, most of the Pacific Islands were colonized.

Later population movements notably include the Neolithic Revolution, Indo-European expansion, and the Early Medieval Great Migrations including Turkic expansion. Archaeological evidence indicates that the ancestors of the Austronesians' spread from the South Chinese mainland to Taiwan at some time around 8,000 years ago.

Evidence from historical linguistics suggests that it is from this island that seafaring peoples migrated, perhaps in distinct waves separated by millennia, to the entire region encompassed by the Austronesian languages. It is believed that this migration began around 6,000 years ago.

Indo-Aryan migration to and within Northern India is consequently presumed to have taken place in the Middle to Late Bronze Age, contemporary to the Late Harappan phase in India (ca. 1700 to 1300 B.C.). From 180 BC, a series of invasions from Central Asia followed, including those led by the Indo-Greeks, Indo-Scythians, Indo-Parthians and Kushans in the north-western Indian subcontinent.

From about 750 B.C. the Greeks began 250 years of expansion, settling colonies in all directions.

In Europe two waves of migrations dominate demographic distributions, that of the Celtic people, and the later Migration Period from the east. Other examples are small movements like ancient Scots moving from Hibernia to Caledonia and Magyars into Pannonia (modern-day Hungary).

Turkish peoples spread across most of Central Asia into Europe and the Middle East between the 6<sup>th</sup> and 11<sup>th</sup> centuries. Recent research suggests that the Madagascar was uninhabited until Malay seafarers from Indonesia arrived during the 5<sup>th</sup> and 6<sup>th</sup> centuries A.D. Subsequent migrations from both the Pacific and Africa further consolidated this original mixture, and Malagasy people emerged.

Before the expansion of the Bantu languages and their speakers, the southern half of Africa is believed to have been populated by Pygmies and Khoisan speaking people, today occupying the arid regions around the Kalahari Desert and the forest of Central Africa.

By about 1000 A.D. Bantu migration had reached modern day Zimbabwe and South Africa.

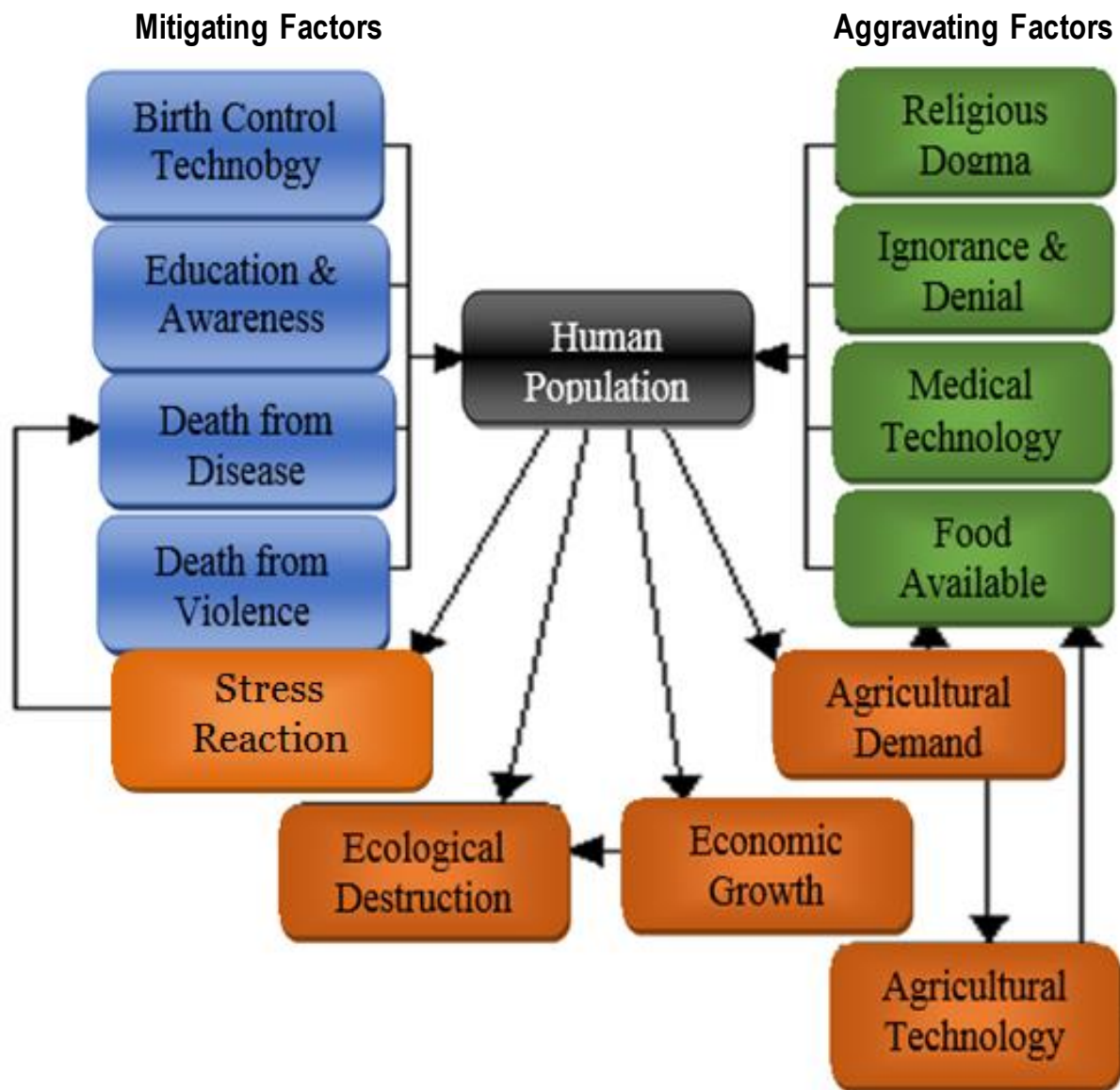
The Banu Hilal and Banu Ma'qil were a collection of Arab Bedouin tribes from the Arabian Peninsula who migrated westwards via Egypt between the 11<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries. Their migration strongly contributed to the arabization and islamization of the western Maghreb, which was until then dominated by Berber tribes. Ostsiedlung was the medieval eastward migration and settlement of Germans. The 13<sup>th</sup> century was the time of the great Mongol and Turkic migrations across Eurasia.

Between the 11<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> centuries, the Vietnamese expanded southward in a process known as outward expansion. Manchuria was separated from China proper by the Inner Willow Palisade, which restricted the movement of the Han Chinese into Manchuria during the Qing Dynasty.

As the area was off-limits to the Han until the Qing started colonizing the area with them later on in the dynasty's rule. The Age of Exploration and European Colonialism led to an accelerated pace of migration since Early Modern times. In the 16<sup>th</sup> century perhaps 240,000 Europeans entered American ports. In the 19<sup>th</sup> century over 50 mln. people left Europe for the Americas.

The local populations or tribes, such as the Aboriginal people in Canada, Brazil, Argentina, Australia, Japan and the USA, were usually far overwhelmed numerically by the settlers. More recent examples are the movement of ethnic Chinese into Tibet and Eastern Turkestan, ethnic Javanese into Western New Guinea and Brazilians into Amazonia-Israelis into the West Bank and Gaza, ethnic Arabs into Iraqi Kurdistan, and ethnic Russians into Siberia and Central Asia.

**Exercise 1. Rnder the score of the information briefly in English.**



## MODERN MIGRATIONS

While the pace of migration had accelerated since the 18th century already (including the involuntary slave trade), it would increase further in the 19th century.

Manning distinguishes three major types of migration: labor migration, refugee migrations, and, lastly, urbanization. Mln.s of agricultural workers left the countryside and moved to the cities causing unprecedented levels of urbanization. This phenomenon began in Britain in the late 18th century and spread around the world and continues to this day in many areas.

Industrialization encouraged migration wherever it appeared. The increasingly global economy globalized the labor market. Atlantic slave trade diminished sharply after 1820, which gave rise to self-bound contract labor migration from Europe and Asia to plantations.

Also overpopulation open agricultural frontiers and rising industrial centers attracted voluntary, encouraged and sometimes coerced migration. Moreover, migration was significantly eased by improved transportation techniques. Transnational labor migration reached a peak of three mln. migrants per year in the early twentieth century. Italy, Norway, Ireland and the Quongdong region of China were regions with especially high emigration rates during these years. These large migration flows influenced the process of nation state formation in many ways. Immigration restrictions have been developed, as well as diaspora cultures and myths that reflect the importance of migration to the foundation of certain nations, like the American melting pot. The transnational labor migration fell to a lower level from 1930s to the 1960s and then rebounded. The USA experienced considerable internal migration related to industrialization, including its African American population.

From 1910-1970, 7 mln. African Americans migrated from the rural Southern USA, where blacks faced both poor economic opportunities and considerable political and social prejudice, to the industrial cities of the Northeast, Midwest and West where relatively well paid jobs were available.

This phenomenon came to be known in the USA as its own Great Migration. The 20th century experienced also an increase in migratory flows caused by war and politics.

Muslims moved from the Balkan to Turkey, while Christians moved the other way, during the collapse of the Ottoman Empire. 400.000 Jews moved to Palestine in the early twentieth century.

The Russian Civil War caused some 3 mln. Russians, Poles and Germans to migrate out of the Soviet Union. World War II and decolonization also caused migrations.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the message and comment on the given details about modern immigration.**

**Exercise 2. Read the text and confirm the fact that World War II forced migrations.**

The Jewish across Europe, the Mediterranean and the Middle East formed from voluntary migrations, enslavement, threats of enslavement and pogroms.

After the Nazis brought the Holocaust upon Jewish people in the 1940s, there was increased migration to the British Mandate of Palestine, which became the modern day state of Israel as a result of the United Nations Partition Plan for Palestine.

Provisions of the Potsdam Agreement from 1945 signed by victorious Western Allies and the Soviet Union led to one of the largest European migrations, and definitely the largest in the 20th century. It involved the migration and resettlement of close to or over 20 mln. people.

The largest affected group was 16.5 mln. Germans expelled from Eastern Europe westwards.

The second largest group were Poles, mln.s of whom were expelled westwards from eastern Kresy region and resettled in the so-called Recovered Territories, Lithuanians, Latvians, Estonians and some Belarusians, were in the meantime expelled eastwards from Europe to the Soviet Union.

Finally, many of the several hundred thousand Jews remaining in the Eastern Europe after the Holocaust migrated outside Europe to Israel.

**Exercise 3. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**



**Exercise 4. Render the main idea of the information on contemporary migration.**

Target regions with currently high immigration rates are North America, Australia, Europe (except eastern Europe) and Russian Federation.

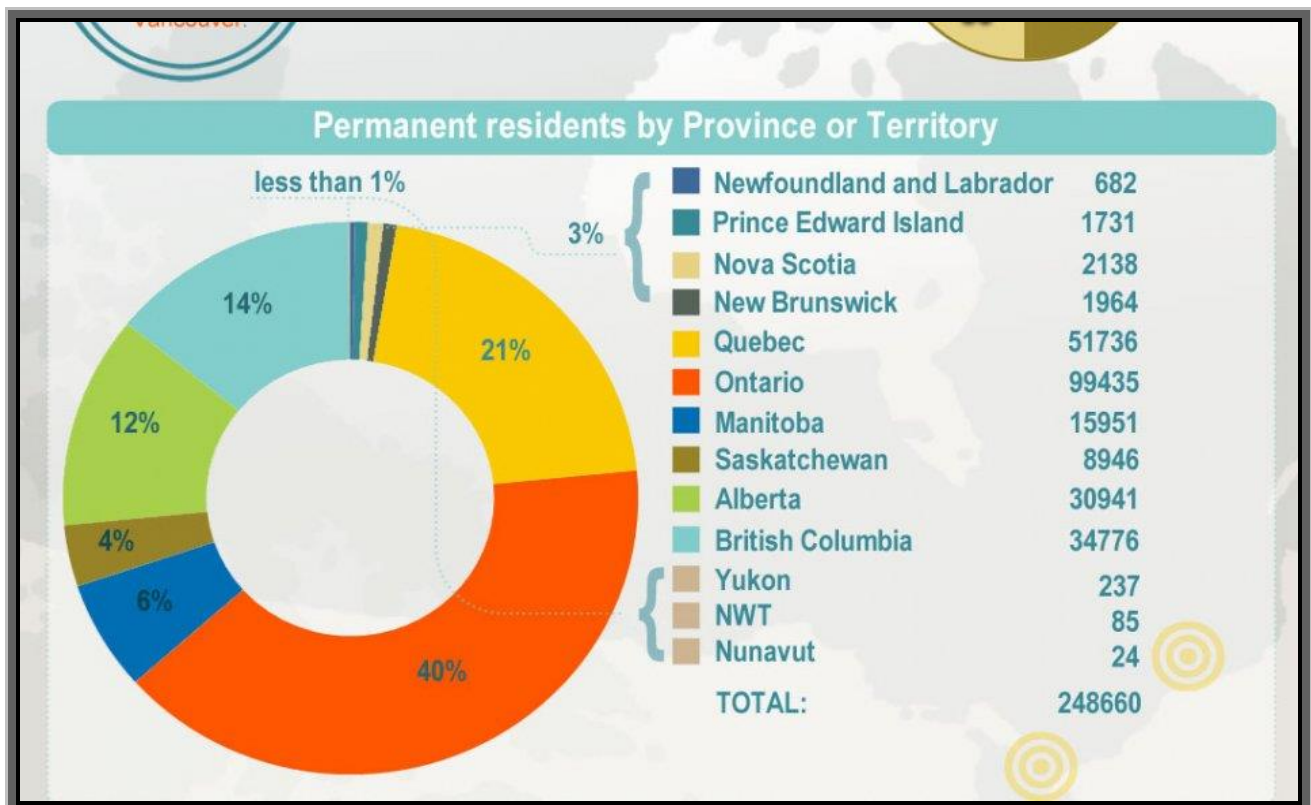
Bosnia and Herzegovina: 1.0% per year	Angola: 0.35%
Burundi: 0.8%	Portugal: 0.34%
Jordan: 0.63%	USA: 0.32%
Canada: 0.48%	Switzerland: 0.31%
Ireland: 0.48%	Netherlands: 0.27%
Argentina: 0.9%	Denmark: 0.25%
Australia: 0.38%	Belarus: 0.23%
New Zealand: 0.36%	Greece: 0.23%
UK: 0.22%	Germany: 0.92%
	Italy: 0.82%

Small countries like island states can have extremely high migration rates that fluctuate over short times due to their low overall population: Micronesia – 2% per year, Grenada – 1.6%, Samoa – 1.2%, Dominica – 0.93%, Suriname and Virgin Islands – 0.87%, Greenland – 0.83%, Guyana and Saint Vincent and the Grenadines – 0.75%; Liberia 2.7%, Kuwait 1.6%, Turks and Caicos Islands – 1.1%, San Marino – 1.1%.

**Exercise 5. Answer the questions.**

1. Where have the successive waves of Eurasian nomadic movement throughout history had their origins? 2. People were displaced from their home ground by other tribes, weren't they? 3. What are the types of migration like? 4. What are Ravenstein's "Laws of Migration" like? 5. What are other migration models like? 6. Why does the migration occur? 7. Who suggests the necessity of the international migration?

**Exercise 6. Analyze the data of Contemporary Migration.**



### **Exercise 7. Read the information and describe Climate Cycles of Migrations.**

The modern field of climate history suggests that the successive waves of Eurasian nomadic movement throughout history have had their origins in climatic cycles, which have expanded or contracted pastureland in Central Asia, especially Mongolia and the Altai. People were displaced from their home ground by other tribes trying to find land that could be grazed by essential flocks, each group pushing the next further to the south and west, into the highlands of Anatolia, the plains of Hungary, into Mesopotamia or southwards, into the rich pastures of China.

#### **Types of Migrations**

The *cyclic movement* which involves commuting, a seasonal movement, nomadism.

The *periodic movement* which consists of migrant labor, military service, and pastoral farming Transhumance.

The *migratory movement* that moves from the eastern part of the US to the western part. It also moves from China to Southeast Asia, from Europe to North America, and from South America to the middle part of the Americas.

*Rural exodus*, migration from rural areas to the cities.

#### **Ravenstein's "Laws of Migration"**

Certain laws of social science have been proposed to describe human migration. The following was a standard list after Ravenstein's proposals during the time frame of 1834 to 1913 as:

Every migration flow generates a return or counter migration.

The majority of migrants move a short distance.

Migrants who move longer distances tend to choose big-city destinations

Urban residents are less migratory than inhabitants of rural areas.

Families are less likely to make international moves than young adults.

#### **Other Migration Models**

Migration occurs because individuals search for food, sex and security outside their usual habitation (2008).

Zipf's Inverse distance law (1956).

Gravity model of migration and the Friction of distance.

Buffer Theory.

Stouffer's Theory of intervening opportunities (1940).

Lee's Push-pull theory (1967).

Zelinsky's Mobility Transition Model (1971).

Bauder's Regulation of labor markets (2006) "suggests that the international migration of workers is necessary for the survival of industrialized economies... It turns the conventional view of international migration on its head: it investigates how migration regulates labour markets, rather than labour markets shaping migration flows."



**Exercise 8. Analyze the causes of migrations.**

Causes of migrations have modified over hundreds of years. Some cases are constant, some of them do not carry the same importance as years ago (for example: in 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries labour migration did not have the same character like today). In general we can divide factors causing migrations into two groups of factors: Push and pull factors. In general:

*Push and Pull Factors* are economic, political, cultural, and environmentally based.

*Barriers / Obstacles* which is an example of Nigeria in the 1970s and 1980s.

Some certain factors are both push and pull like education, industry etc.

On the macro level, the causes of migration can be distilled into two main categories: *security dimension of migration* (natural disasters, conflicts, threats to individual safety, poor political prospects) and *economic dimension of migration* (poor economic situation, poor situation of national market).

**Push & Pull Factors**

Push and pull factors are those factors which either forcefully push people into migration or attract them. A push factor is forceful, and a factor which relates to the country from which a person migrates. It is generally some problem which results in people wanting to migrate. Different types of push factors can be seen further below. A push factor is a flaw or distress that drives a person away from a certain place. A pull factor is something concerning the country to which a person migrates. It is generally a benefit that attracts people to a certain place. Push and pull factors are usually considered as north and south poles on a magnet.

**Push Factors**

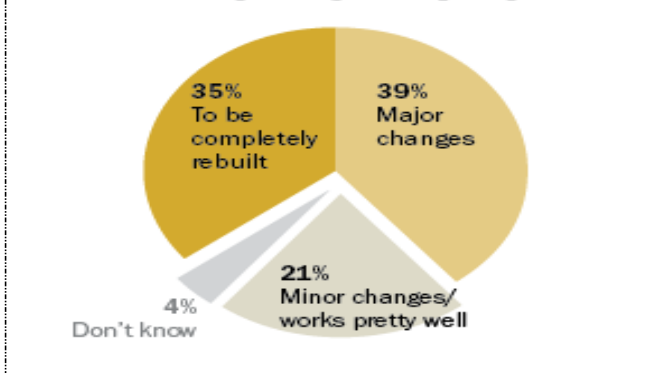
Not enough jobs Few opportunities "Primitive" conditions Political fear Poor medical care Not being able to practice religion Loss of wealth	Natural Disasters Death threats Slavery Pollution Poor housing Landlords Bullying Poor chances of finding courtship
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Pull Factors**

Job opportunities Better living conditions Political and/or religious freedom Enjoyment Education	Better medical care Security Family links Better chances of finding courtship
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------



*Percent who say immigration policy needs...*



## EFFECTS OF MIGRATION

Migration shapes many fields of life, having both advantages and disadvantages. Effects of migrations are:

- changes in population distribution;
- demographic consequences: since migration is selective of particular age groups, migrants are mostly young and in productive age; it can cause a demographic crisis – population ageing, what in turn can be followed by economic problems (shrinking group of economically active population has to finance extending group of inactive population);
- economic results of the greatest importance for the development of the countries. Migration has had a significant effect on world geography. It has contributed to
  - the evolution and development of separate cultures;
  - the diffusion of cultures by interchange and communication;
  - the complex mix of cultures in different regions of the world.

### Migration in the European Union

The wages in the Western Europe are generally higher than the rest of Europe – thus explaining why a large number of Eastern Europeans choose to migrate to Western Europe.

### Migration Patterns in India

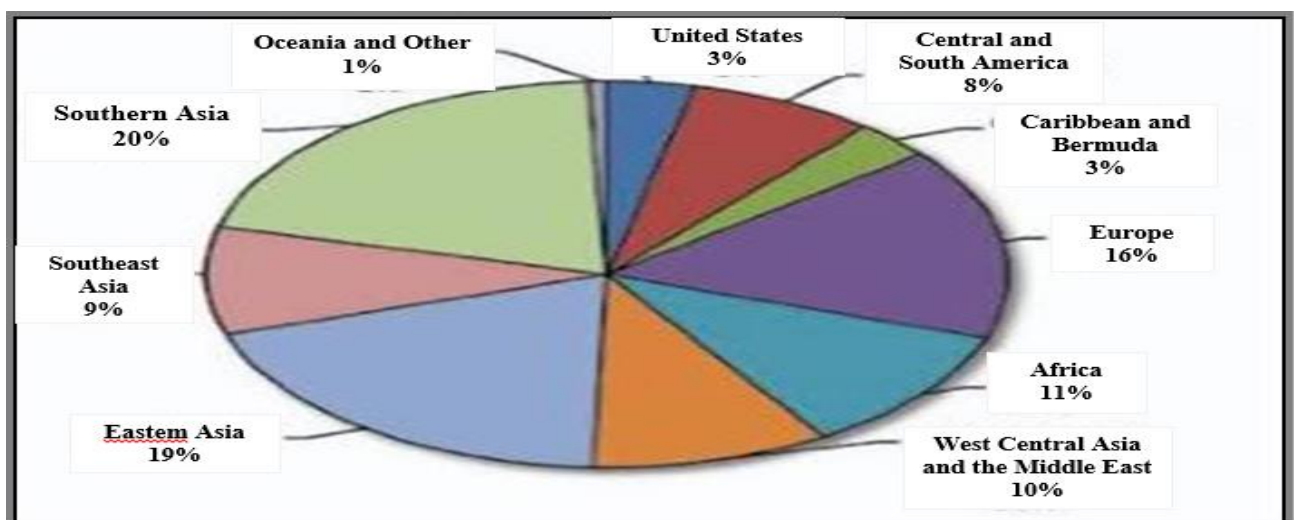
Estimates based on industry sectors mainly employing migrants suggest that there are around 100 mln. circular migrants in India. Caste, social networks and historical precedents play a powerful role in shaping patterns of migration. Migration for the poor is mainly circular, as despite moving temporarily to urban areas, they lack the social security which might keep them there more permanently.

They are keen to maintain a foothold in home areas during the agricultural season.

Research by the Overseas Development Institute identifies a rapid movement of labour from slower to faster growing parts of the economy. Migrants can often find themselves excluded by urban housing policies and migrant support initiatives are needed to give workers improved access to market information.

**Emigration** is the act of leaving one's native country or region to settle in another. It is the same as immigration but from the perspective of the country of origin. Human movement before the establishment of state boundaries or within one state is termed migration.

There are many reasons why people might choose to emigrate. Some are for political or economic reasons, or for personal reasons like finding a spouse while visiting another country and emigrating to be with them. Many older people living in rich nations with cold climates will choose to move to warmer climates when they retire. Some people seek new conditions in other countries.



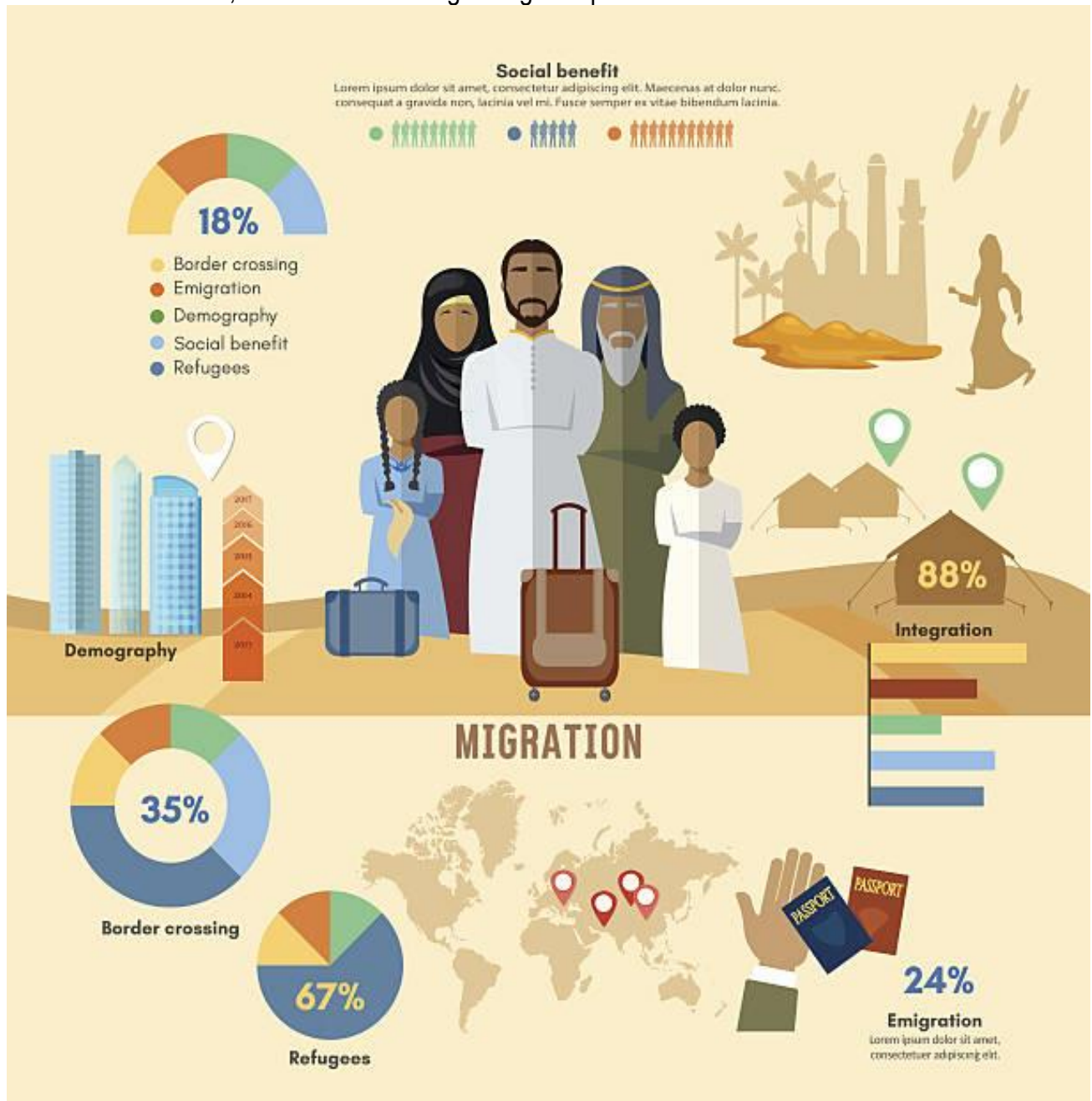


**Exercise 1. Analyze the passage and render the main idea briefly in English.**

**Exercise 2. Interpret the notion "Emigration".**

Many political or economic emigrants move together with their families toward new regions or new countries where they hope to find peace or job opportunities not available to them in their original location. Throughout history a large number of emigrants return to their homelands, often after they have earned sufficient money in the other country. Sometimes these emigrants move to countries with big cultural differences and will always feel as guests in their destinations, and preserve their original culture, traditions and language, sometimes transmitting them to their children.

The conflict between the native and the newer culture may easily create social contrasts, generally resulting in an uncomfortable situation for the "foreigners", who have to understand legal and social systems sometimes new and strange to them. Often, communities of emigrants grow up in the destination areas. A statue in Hanko, Finland, commemorating 100000 of emigrants starting a new life in the USA. Often, communities of emigrants grow up in the destination areas.



Emigration had a profound influence on the world in the 18th, 19th and 20th centuries, when mln.s of poor families left Europe for the USA, Canada, Brazil, Argentina, Rest of Latin America, Australia, and New Zealand. Even though definitions may be vague and vary somewhat, emigration / immigration should not be confused with the phenomenon of involuntary migration, such as instances of population transfer or ethnic cleansing. Motives to migrate can be either incentive attracting people away, known as *pull* factors, or circumstances encouraging a person to leave, known as *push* factors, for example:

**Push factors**

War or other armed conflict	Religious fundamentalism / religious intolerance
Famine or drought	Discontent with the natives, such as frequent harassment, bullying, and abuse
Disease	Discontent with immigration rate, causing frequent harassment, bullying, and abuse
Poverty	Lack of employment opportunities
Political corruption	Lack of various rights
Disagreement with politics	
Natural disasters	

These factors, excepting disagreement with politics and discontent with natives and immigrants, generally do not affect people in developed countries; even a natural disaster is unlikely to cause out-migration.

**Pull factors**

Higher incomes	Better behaviour among people
Lower taxes	Family reasons
Better weather	National prestige
Better availability of employment	Political stability
Better medical facilities	Religious tolerance
Better education facilities	Relative freedom

**Exercise 3. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**



## EMIGRATION RESTRICTIONS

East Germany erected the Berlin Wall to prevent emigration westward. Some countries restrict the ability of their citizens to immigrate to other countries. The Soviet Socialist Republics of the Soviet Union began such restrictions in 1918 with laws and borders tightening until even illegal emigration was nearly impossible by 1928. To strengthen this, they set up internal passport controls and individual "place of residence" permits, along with internal freedom of movement restrictions often called the 101 km, which rules greatly restricted mobility within even small areas.

At the end of World War II in 1945, the Soviet Union occupied several eastern European countries, together called the Eastern Bloc, with the majority of those living in the newly acquired areas aspiring to independence and wanted the Soviets to leave.

Before 1950, over 15 mln. immigrants emigrated from Soviet-occupied eastern European countries to the west in the five years immediately following World War II. By the early 1950s, the Soviet approach to controlling national movement was emulated by most of the rest of the Eastern Bloc.

Restrictions implemented in the Eastern Bloc stopped most East-West migration, with only 13.3 mln. migrations westward between 1950 and 1990. However, hundreds of thousands of East Germans annually immigrated to West Germany through a "loophole" in the system that existed between East and West Berlin, where the four occupying World War II powers governed movement.

The emigration resulted in massive "brain drain" from East Germany to West Germany of younger educated professionals, such that nearly 20% of East Germany's population had migrated to West Germany by 1961. In 1961, East Germany erected a barbed-wire barrier that would eventually be expanded through construction into the Berlin Wall, effectively closing the loophole.

In 1989, the Berlin Wall fell, followed by Unification of Germany and the Collapse of the Soviet Union. By the early 1950s, the Soviet approach to controlling international movement was emulated by China, Mongolia, and North Korea. North Korea still tightly restricts emigration, and contained the most strict emigration bans in the world even in the late 1980s, before the fall of the Berlin Wall, though some North Koreans illegally immigrate to China. Other countries with tight emigration restrictions at one time included Angola, Ethiopia, Mozambique, Somalia, Afghanistan, Burma, Democratic Kampuchea (Cambodia from 1975-1979), Laos, North Vietnam, Iraq, South Yemen and Cuba.

### **Exercise 1. Read the passage and describe emigration restrictions and answer the questions.**

1. Who restricts the ability of their citizens to immigrate to other countries? 2. How many immigrants emigrated from Soviet-occupied eastern European countries before 1950? 3. What country still tightly restricts emigration? 4. What countries have tight emigration restrictions at one time? 5. When did the Berlin Wall fall? 6. What happened after Unification of Germany? 7. When did East Germany erect a barbed-wire barrier? 8. Where would it eventually be expanded through construction? 9. What countries was the Soviet approach to controlling international movement emulated by? 10. When did North Korea contain the most strict emigration bans in the world? 11. Why did North Koreans illegally immigrate to China? 12. What countries with tight emigration restrictions at one time are there? 13. How many East Germans annually immigrated to West Germany through a "loophole" in the system that existed between East and West Berlin? 14. How many occupying World War II powers governed movement were there?

### **Exercise 2. Remembr the notion.**

to curb (stem) (the) emigration – ограничивать эмиграцию

to halt the mass emigration – останавливать массовую эмиграцию

to prohibit emigration – запрещать эмиграцию

free emigration – свобода эмиграции

right of emigration – право на эмиграцию wave of emigration – волна эмиграции

## EXISTENTIAL MIGRATION

Existential Migration is a concept derived from phenomenological research (Madison, 2006) into the lived experience of voluntary migrants who have chosen to leave their country of origin in order to live as foreigners in a new land. This research was originally published in a refereed journal and has over the past three years generated interest amongst existential practitioners, migration scholars, and psychologists interested in migration. According to Madison this process of migration is unlike economic migration, simple wanderlust, exile, or variations of forced migration.

"*Existential migration*" is conceived as a chosen attempt to express something fundamental about existence by leaving one's homeland and becoming a foreigner.

The research study generated impressively consistent themes based upon in-depth interviews with 20 co-researchers. These themes are largely corroborated by more conventional studies on "*culture shock*" and W-curse hypothesis of cross-cultural adaptation.

Madison's study generated themes that included sensitivities such as the importance of trying to fulfill individual potentials, the importance of freedom and independence, openness to experiences of the mystery of life, the valuing of difference and foreignness as a stimulus to personal awareness and broadening perspectives. Among this population there is a marked preference for the strange and foreign over the familiar or conventional. As well as the new concept of existential migration, the research proposed a novel definition of *home as interaction*; that the "*feeling of home*" arises from specific interactions with our surroundings that could potentially occur anywhere, at any time.

This is in contrast to the usual definition of home as a fixed geographical place.

The new concept challenges our usual definitions of being at home, the experience of foreignness, what constitutes belonging, and the nature of homelessness.

The insights gained from this new concept elaborate our existing understanding of migration in exciting ways. Existential migration suggests reformulations of the psychological underpinnings of migration studies, cultural anthropology, tourism studies, cross-cultural training, refugee studies, psychotherapy.

Madison's research presents its subject matter in a clear and evocative way, emphasizing the actual stories of voluntary migrants in order to convey the poignancy of the topic.

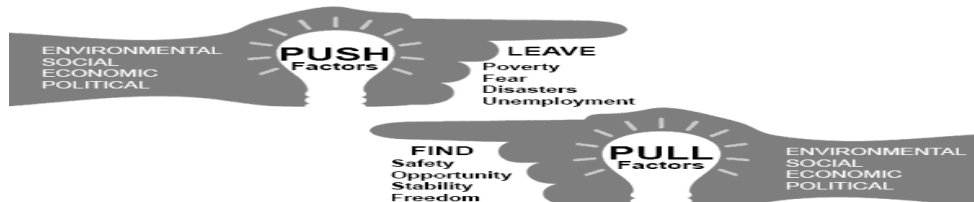
The phenomenological research that gave rise to the concept of existential migration also suggests a cautionary note regarding the psychological impact of increasing globalization.

While globalization is frequently presented as an economic evolution of capitalism and as a market necessity, there is scant discourse about the impact that these profound changes in world structure may have upon the experience of people in their daily lives. Although the phenomenological research on voluntary migration needs further critique, the first research does suggest that the world community may in fact be entering an age of global homelessness.

Of course recent economic turbulence has curtailed the increasing expectation that young professionals should be prepared to live abroad in order to enhance their career prospects and indeed many, especially in the financial sector, are unexpectedly returning home after foreign assignments.

The concept of Existential Migration has generated considerable comment from voluntary migrants around the world as well as psychological and social science researchers, though there remains precious little in print about these fundamental existential motivations for migration.

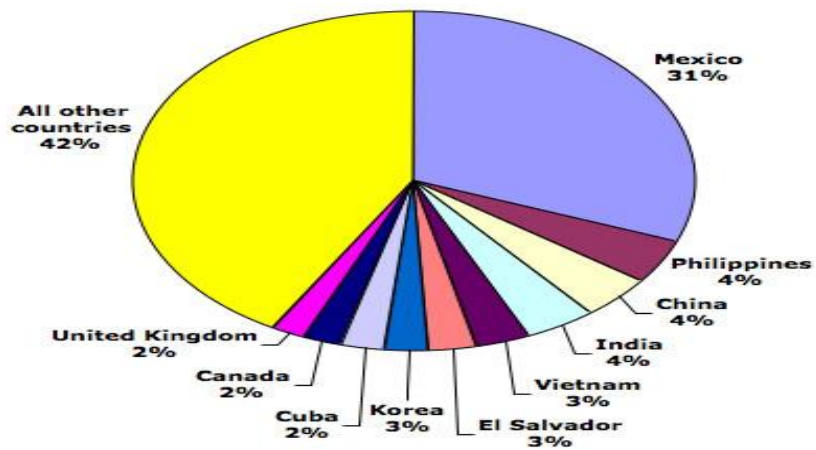
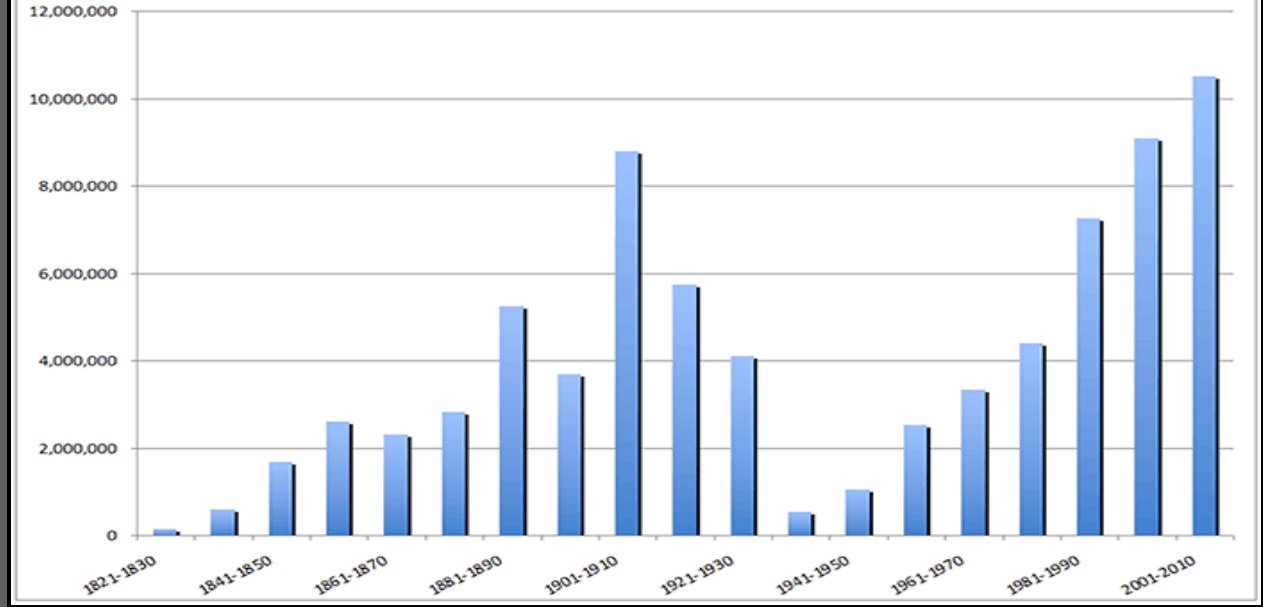
**Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.**







**Immigration into the United States, 1820-2010**



## INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR MIGRATION

International Organization for Migration	
Formation	1951
Type	Intergovernmental organization
Headquarters	Geneva, Switzerland
Membership	122 member states
Official languages	English, French and Spanish
Staff	6000

The International Organization for Migration is an intergovernmental organization. It was initially established in 1951 as the Intergovernmental Committee for European Migration (ICEM) to help resettle people displaced by World War II. It is the principal intergovernmental organization in the field of migration. IOM is dedicated to promoting humane and orderly migration for the benefit of all. It does so by providing services & advice to governments and migrants. IOM works to help ensure the orderly and humane management of migration, to promote international cooperation on migration issues, to assist in the search for practical solutions to migration problems and to provide humanitarian assistance to migrants in need, be they refugees, displaced persons or other uprooted people.

The IOM Constitution gives explicit recognition to the link between migration and economic, social and cultural development, as well as to the right of freedom of movement of persons. IOM works in the four broad areas of migration management: migration and development, facilitating migration, regulating migration, and addressing forced migration. Cross-cutting activities include the promotion of international migration law, policy debate and guidance, protection of migrants' rights, migration health and the gender dimension of migration. In addition, IOM has often organized elections for refugees out of their home country, as was the case in the 2004 Afghan elections and the 2005 Iraqi elections.

These elections were directed by Peter Erben supported by senior electoral managers such as Craig Jenness, Richard Atwood and Stuart Poucher.

IOM works closely with governmental, intergovernmental and non-governmental partners.

IOM, or as it was first known, the Provisional Intergovernmental Committee for the Movement of Migrants from Europe (PICMME), was born in 1951 out of the chaos and displacement of Western Europe following the Second World War. Mandated to help European governments to identify resettlement countries for the estimated 11 mln. people uprooted by the war, it arranged transport for nearly a mln. migrants during the 1950s. A succession of name changes from PICMME to the Intergovernmental Committee for European Migration (ICEM) in 1952, to the Intergovernmental Committee for Migration (ICM) in 1980 to the International Organization for Migration (IOM) in 1989, reflects the organization's transition over half a century from logistics agency to migration agency.

While IOM's history tracks the man-made and natural disasters of the past half century – Hungary 1956, Czechoslovakia 1968, Chile 1973, the Vietnamese Boat People 1975, Kuwait 1990, Kosovo and Timor 1999, and the Asian tsunami and Pakistan earthquake of 2004/2005 – its credo that humane & orderly migration benefits migrants & society has steadily gained international acceptance.

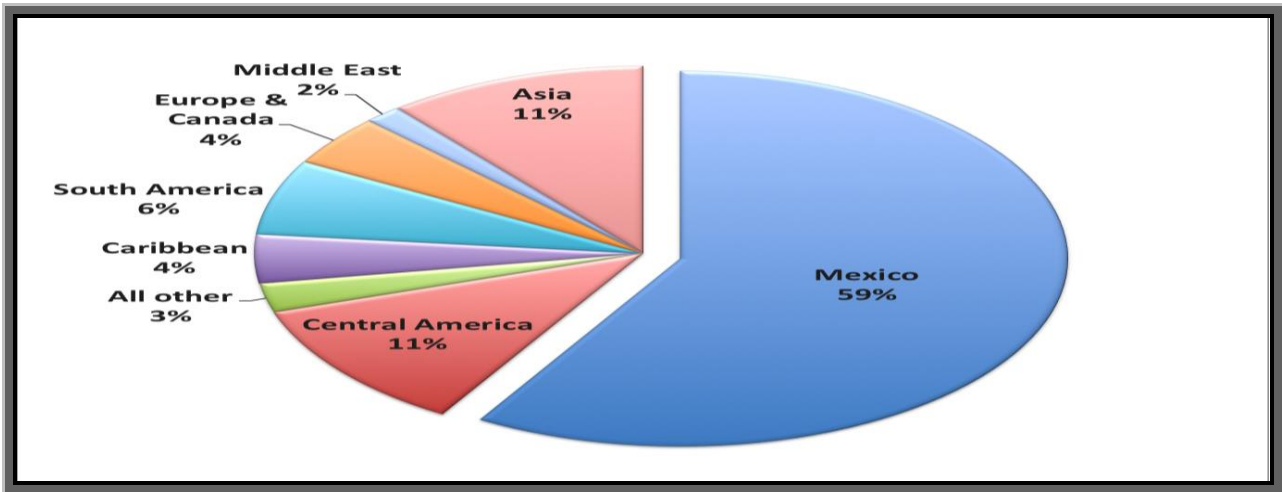
From its roots as an operational logistics agency, it has broadened its scope to become the leading international agency working with governments and civil society to advance the understanding of migration issues, encourage social & economic development through migration, and uphold the human dignity & well-being of migrants. The broader scope of activities has been matched by rapid expansion from a relatively small agency into one with an annual operating budget of close to \$1 bn and some 5,400 staff working in over 100 countries worldwide.

**Criticism**

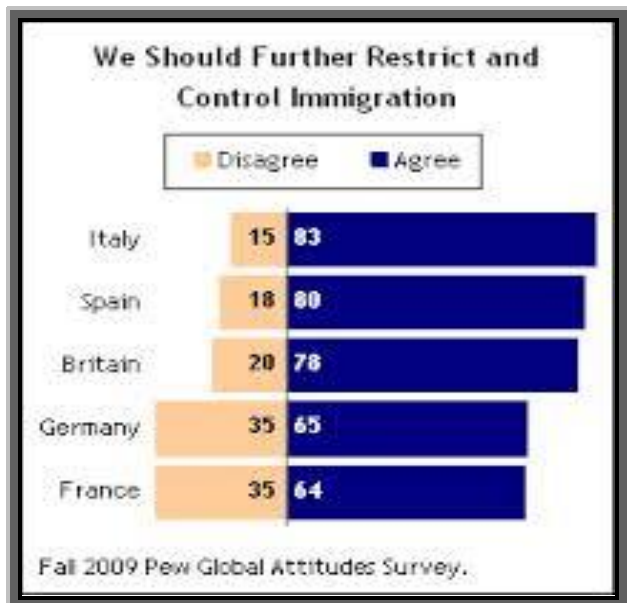
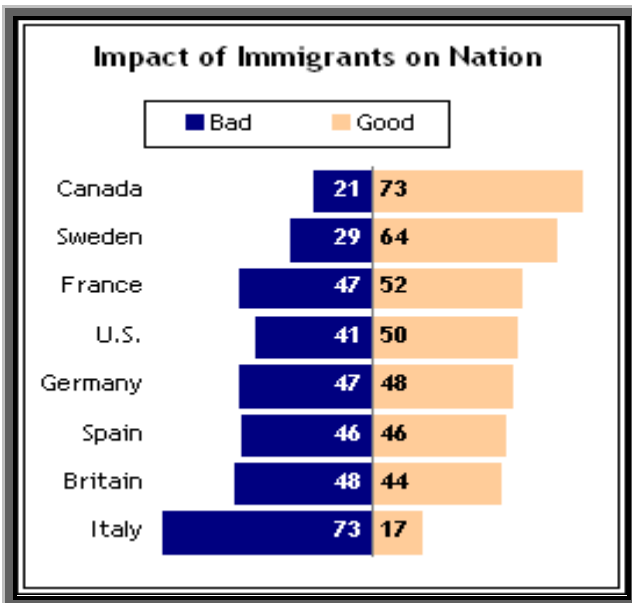
IOM has been criticized by antiracist groups, migrant organizations and NGOs for propagating and actively organizing practices such as deportations, militarized border controls or detention centers - all practices that they consider to be inhumane. However, none of these form part of IOM's brief and the possibility of repatriation for "failed" asylum seekers and visa overstayers who may have little prospect of regularizing their situation does offer a degree of choice to these categories of migrants.

To ensure the IOM's principle of "orderly migration," IOM spends much time in discussion with accepting countries.

**Exercise 1. Summarize the information and give a talk in class.**



Origins of the estimated 11-12 mln. undocumented immigrants living in the USA



.....

## CHAPTER IV. CUSTOMS TODAY

### UNIT I. CUSTOMS PROCEDURES

.....

#### INTRODUCTION

The operating environment for Customs today is a combination of rapid increase in international trade, accelerated technological advancement and heightened security concerns.

International trade has increased 15-fold over the half century. This momentum is expected to continue in the coming decades. The advancement of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) provides new challenges and opportunities for Customs administrations around the world.

The use of ICT has significantly enhanced international trade efficiency for both governments and the wider trading community. ICT has tremendously improved business communications and transactions by removing redundant layers in business practice, as well as the use and processing of paper documents. Various trade-related associations and business entities continue to encourage government agencies such as Customs to facilitate international trade by investing in integrated and automated systems that will work harmoniously with those already used by the industry and private sector.

On the other hand, the global trading system is also vulnerable to terrorist exploitation that would impair an otherwise stable global economy.

Customs administrations are thus in a critical position to provide increased security to the global supply chain. Traditionally, the primary task of Thai Customs involves control of the movement of goods, with particular emphasis on the collection of revenues and deterrence of illicit trade. However, in today's modern and global economy, our responsibilities are changing and need to be reviewed and revised as revenue collected by Customs is no longer the primary source of the government budget.

The traditional Customs methodologies of control are outdated in the modern era.

There is also an imperative for Customs authorities to find balance between trade facilitation and Customs control. A well-functioning Customs in today's global economy must provide traders and all stakeholders with transparency, predictability, and the timely clearance of goods.

In this context, Thai Customs embarks upon major organisational reform and a modernisation program in order to fulfil its key responsibilities on social protection and business competitiveness, and at the same time, balancing trade facilitation and control. The Thai Customs Department has formulated a vision statement defining what the organisation is striving to become: "World-Class Customs for Economic Competitiveness and Social Protection." To achieve this vision, three missions have been set for Thai Customs: (i) to be recognized as a world-class Customs administration; (ii) to enhance economic competitiveness; and (iii) to provide social protection. To ensure that the Customs meets its goals, a strategy has been formulated which includes the following thrusts and key actions:

- to achieve a world-class Customs administration;
- to focus on ICT for enhanced efficiency in customs services;
- to build transparency and open accountability through integrity and human resource development programs;
- to introduce modern customs techniques and instruments in Customs control;
- to facilitate trade and promote investment and tourism;

**Exercise 1. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**

**Exercise 2. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**



**Exercise 3. Use the verb in the correct form in the passage on Customs Procedures.**

In order to reduce business costs and improve the efficiency of Customs clearance, Thai Customs (prepare) to ratify the Revised Kyoto Convention (RKC) as the framework for Customs procedures and formalities. The simplification and harmonization of Customs procedures under the RKC can effectively (contribute) to the facilitation of international trade. In addition, the Customs Convention on Containers and the Customs Convention on the International Transport of Goods Under the Cover of TIR Carnets (TIR Convention 1975) form part of the Customs business plan for adoption, with the key objective to (develop) and (facilitate) international transit and carriage by containers through intermodal transportation.

**Exercise 4. Read the text and explain the notion "Risk Management".**

In an effort to achieve an appropriate balance between trade facilitation and regulatory control, Customs administrations are generally abandoning the traditional methodologies of selection and inspection and are utilising risk management principles to determine if Customs intervention is required or not. Risks facing Customs include the potential for non-compliance with Customs laws and regulations as well as the potential failure to facilitate international trade.

Customs, like any other organisation, needs to identify and manage its risks and in doing so can focus and allocate resources to where they are needed and not delay the flow of legitimate trade.

Risk management has recently received a particularly high attention in the RKC developed by WCO. The Thai Customs Department has established formal risk management policies and procedures that align with WCO's risk management techniques. The risk management has always been fundamental to the Thai Customs operations, and has guided the formulation of antismuggling policies; the functioning of border controls to verify the movements of goods and passengers; as well as the establishment of documentary controls and physical inspection procedures.

In this connection, various CRMS projects have been developed to support risk management.

The key project is the development of a Central/Local Profile for various Customs-related areas, including Customs clearance for imports and exports, warehouses and free zones; Intellectual Property Rights, precursor chemicals and goods hazardous to health and environment.

Additionally, to identify and target potentially high-risk movements and consignments, sophisticated tools have also been used.

These systems provide Customs with the necessary tools to address movements of consignments, persons and means of transport which present risks. They also ease the controls on the less risky aspects of trade and allow Customs to focus on the activities that present the greatest risk.

This reflects a balanced approach between control and trade facilitation. The management of risk, however, is not only limited to enforcement-related areas as mentioned above but also integral to all management process and done within the organization's management framework for CRMS.

Potential risks that may hinder the achievement of organization vision and objectives is systematically identified and addressed. Consequently, the central element of our CRMS planning framework includes a clear statement of objectives and identification of risks to be managed.

This ensures that the business strategies and all projects in the business plan take into account the risks that need to be managed.

**Exercise 5. Digest the information briefly in English.**



## CUSTOMS AUTOMATION

Prior to the introduction of our automated system, trade-related documents were manually processed by Customs officers. Given the constraints faced by the Thai Customs because of the increasing volume of international trade and limited number of officers, Customs implemented the Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) to control all Customs commercial operations. T

he system has been fully implemented at the seaports and airports nationwide. Thai Customs uses ICT to support its administration and business needs in two major areas: service delivery to importers and exporters; and office automation.

The automation of Customs service delivery to importers / exporters and related operators include the following main application areas: goods declaration processing; cargo processing; revenue collection; tax and duty drawback; collection of trade statistics; risk management profiles.

An office automation system, on the other hand, is designed to increase the productivity of Customs administration by supporting the coordinating & communicating activities of Customs offices.

The main application areas of office automation system include Legislation System and Human Resources System. Customs has shifted its focus from EDI to an open system philosophy that would enable it to electronically exchange information by other different means with all of its clients (commercial & non-commercial), partners (other government departments / agencies, both national and international) and employees. To build on earlier success, Thai Customs plans to implement the new generation of Customs computer automation system that utilises Internet services, which will also take into account the standards and guidelines expressed in the RKC. The principal Customs process and procedures to be redesigned include various main application areas, like cargo control, goods declaration processing, revenue accounting, tariff classification, Customs valuation, and Customs transit.

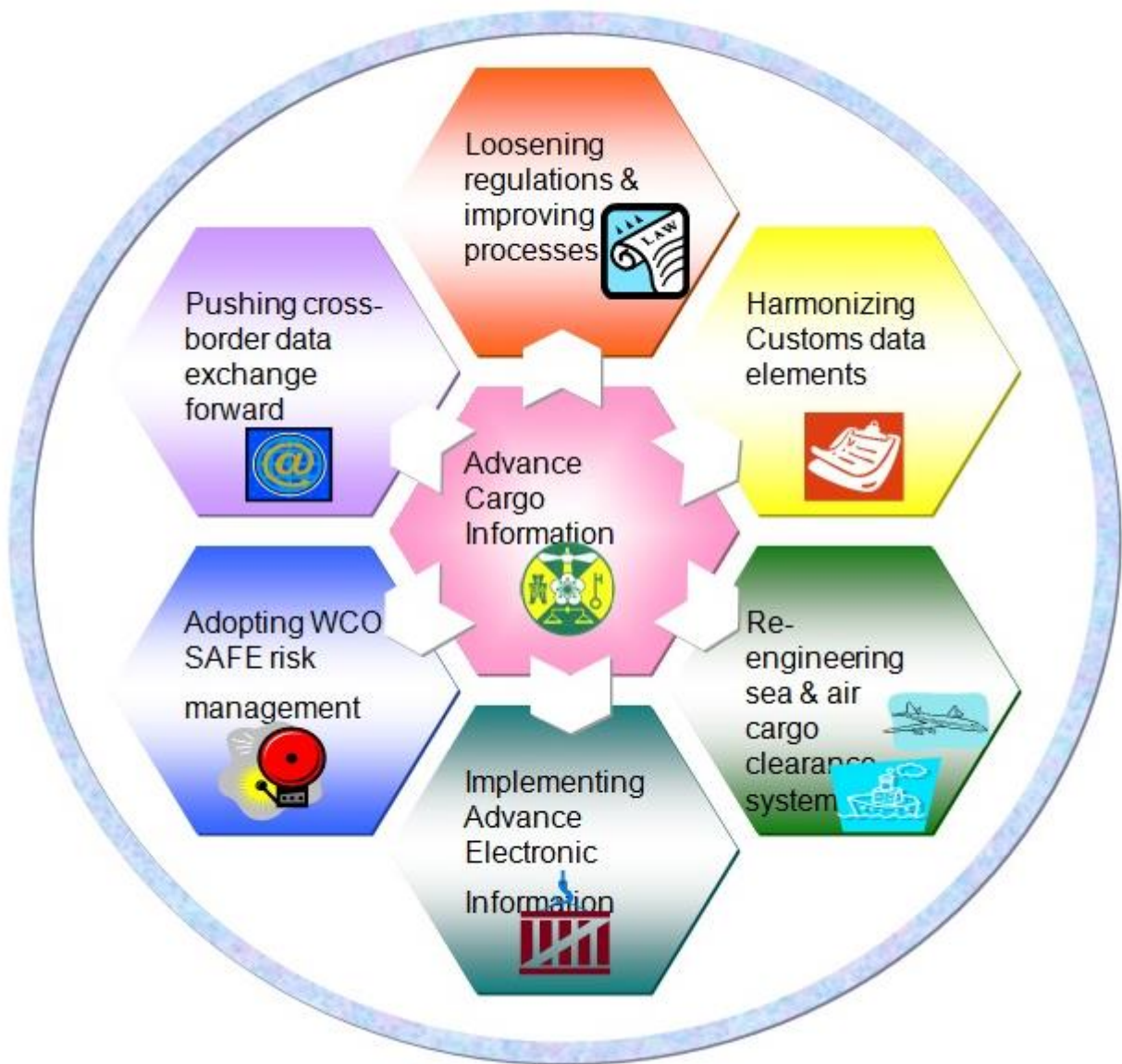
Furthermore, Thai Customs will also integrate the new Customs computer automation system with the systems of other government agencies and its clients, namely transport operators, banks, free zone and warehouse operators. The new system also must be able to handle various types of Customs services and clients, provide high security, high availability and quick response times.

***Exercise 1. Comment on the given details about customs automation.***

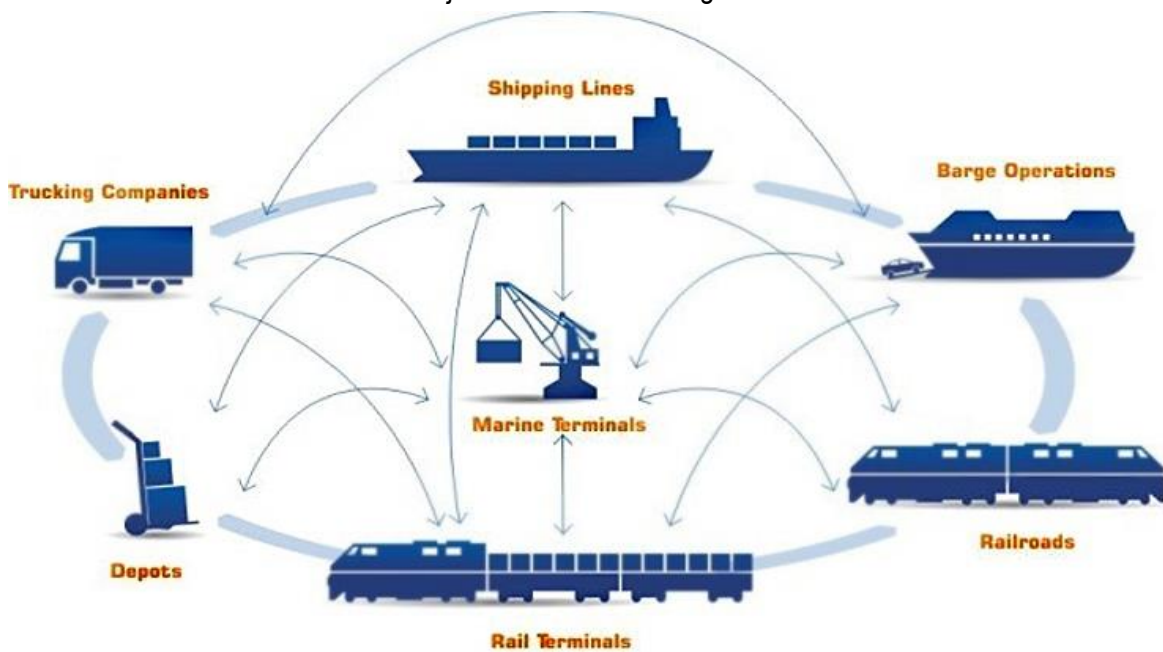
***Exercise 2. Tick off sentences that have the meaning found in the text. Some sentences do not have equivalents in the text at all.***

1. The system has not been fully implemented at the seaports and airports nationwide. 2. Thai Customs uses ICT to support its administration and business needs in three major areas. 3. The automation of Customs service delivery include ten the main application areas. 4. Thai Customs doesn't plan to implement the new generation of Customs computer automation system. 5. The principal Customs process and procedures include various main application areas. 6. Thai Customs will not integrate the new Customs computer automation system with the systems of other government agencies. 7. The new system is not able to handle various types of Customs services and clients. 8. Customs has shifted its focus from EDI to an open system philosophy. 9. Customs enables electronically exchange information by other different means with all of its clients, partners and employees. 10. The new system is not able to provide high security, high availability and quick response times.





Objective of advance cargo information





## NEW HEADQUARTERS FOR SRI LANKA CUSTOMS

Maga has acted as a catalyst for the sustainable growth of the local construction sector by setting industry benchmark in the various areas. Implementing comprehensive sustainability framework and achieving Platinum Rating and No 3 rank in country's Corporate Accountability Index.

In the last 3 years, large-scale infrastructure projects, urban development and rural infrastructure development have come to the forefront of national development goals.

In mid 2012, we completed the construction of the new Headquarters for the Sri Lanka Customs, a large-scale building project whose main civil works was completed at a value of LKR 4 bn. As the main contractor for this project, Maga Engineering played the lead role in bringing this project to life with the guidance of its client, the Sri Lanka Customs. We were partnered by the State Engineering Corporation of Sri Lanka (SEC), who provided the state-of-the-art design as consultants for the project.

With the nation's economic growth being fueled by our imports and exports sector bringing in new opportunities to our industries and the society at large, Sri Lanka Customs, plays a major role in ensuring the smooth flow in the transfer of goods and predominantly ensures the integrity of such transfers. The building achieves a position of national importance as it has allowed a vital government institution to bring together all its administrative divisions and human resources base, previously scattered across the city, in to one central location within its 430,000sqft floor area spanning 13 floors.

This has further strengthened their daily operations allowing them to function more efficiently.

The project location's proximity to the primary functional base of its operations, the Colombo port, has allowed Sri Lanka Customs to gain vital savings in operational cost.

Aside from space for its administrative functions, the building also includes a state-of-the-art auditorium, a restaurant, a museum and car parking facilities. Managed through a modern Building Management System (BMS), the building also contains state-of-the-art aluminum façade which underlines its presence as a modern architectural landmark in the city. The construction was carried out at a time of relative depression in the building sector.

There are severe penalties for all drug offences and crimes related to the abuse of children. In some circumstances you can be held without charge indefinitely. Convicted offenders may face a lengthy jail sentence. The mistreatment of Buddhist images and artefacts is a serious offence and tourists have been convicted for this. British nationals have been refused entry to Sri Lanka or faced deportation for having visible tattoos of Buddha.





## FACILITATION OF TRADE & TOURISM

Given that the timely release of goods is crucial to underpinning the competitiveness of traders, Thai Customs has implemented a number of projects to facilitate trade and tourism. The first project is the establishment of a "One Stop Service" office at major border economic zones to facilitate border trade and tourism. Similarly, Thai Customs also plans to establish a "Single Inspection" between and among six Customs Administrations of which their border Customs offices are located along the borders of Thailand, with the key objective of facilitating cross border transport of goods and people.

The "Single Inspection" allows importers / exporters to exchange information with a single authority to fulfil all, import or export related, regulatory requirements.

It also enables Customs of neighbouring countries to carry out inspection simultaneously or instantaneously at the border on a site that is located in the territory of either country.

Based on the One Stop Service system, the "Single Window" system will be developed and implemented. Importers / exporters involved in cross border trade, then, will be able to submit electronic declarations via the Internet to various controlling authorities for processing and approval in a single application. APIS, an automated system for risk managing passenger clearance, allows Customs to perform database queries on passengers and crew members prior to their arrival or departure from Thailand. All commercial air carriers operating inbound and outbound are required to electronically transmit details of passengers and crew members to Customs before a flight's departure.

Thailand's Prime Minister has requested that APIS be operational at "Suwannabhumi International Airport" by June 2006. Thai Customs is working to meet that deadline. Another project to facilitate trade and tourism is the duty free shop. The duty free shop is a type of bonded warehouse established to promote trade and tourism of Thailand. Eligible tourists/travellers can buy merchandise displayed in duty free shops free of import/export taxes and duties. Furthermore, the goods imported from abroad or those entitled for tax and duty refund upon exportation can be stored in this type of bonded warehouse. Local goods may be authorized for sale and display in the bonded warehouse.

Human resources management (HRM) is at the centre of CRMS. It is central to effective and efficient Customs administration. The management of HRM is multifaceted and includes recruitment, training, staff compensation and promotion, code of conduct, and disciplinary action.

These tasks are often implemented under a resource-constrained environment i.e. limited financial & human resources. Thai Customs promotes and supports the importance of "Integrity" as expressed in the WCO revised Arusha Declaration. Non-transparent practices undermine a country's external competitiveness and its attractiveness to domestic and foreign investment. If left unchecked, this negative image undermines the potential of economic development.

Recently, Thai Customs revised its "Customs Code of Conduct" to align with the WCO revised Arusha Declaration, with the aim to improve the integrity of Customs officers.

Furthermore, the "Transparent Customs" campaign was also introduced to ensure integrity and transparency of Customs performance. Thai Customs is utilising various management tools to enhance the performance, knowledge and skills of Customs officers, and improve employee performance and productivity, and staff recruitment.

Customs managers are currently being skilled in the use of management tools such as strategic management, matrix management, results-based management, competency-based management, knowledge management, and ICT-based management.

***Exercise 1. Analyze the information and use it in practice.***

***Exercise 2. Render the main idea of the information briefly in English.***

***Exercise 3. Make up some dialogues from the information above.***

***Exercise 4. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.***

## LEGISLATION MANAGEMENT

A key aspect of the CRMS program is legislative change since the Customs is responsible for administering a significant number of government and international body legislations. It is essential that legislative amendment is managed in a way which ensures industry awareness and prepares the stakeholders and players for procedural and other changes. Various projects amending existing legislation and regulations are now being introduced within the Customs administration.

It should be recognised that in attaining a smooth functioning of international trade and effective Customs administration, a regional and multilateral approach is required.

Lastly, the key role for Customs in today's economy – is to provide an appropriate balance between security and facilitation. This implies limiting the scope of intervention and ensuring that regulatory requirements are not burdensome. In seeking to achieve this balance, WCO has provided the Customs administrations worldwide various instruments. One of which is the "Framework of Standards to Secure & Facilitate Global Trade", a regime that will enhance the security and facilitation of international trade. This Framework sets forth the principles and the standards for adoption by WCO members as a minimum threshold to meet the challenges and opportunity of the 21st century.

The Framework of Standards comprises two pillars: one is dealing with Customs-to-Customs network arrangements and the other with Customs-to-Business partnerships.

The central principle to the Customs-to-Customs pillar is the use of advanced electronic information and technology to identify high-risk containers or cargo as early as possible in the supply chain, such as large-scale X-ray machines and radiation detection devices.

On the other hand, the main focus of the Customs-to-Business pillar is the creation of an international system for identifying private businesses that offer a high degree of security guarantees with respect to their role in the supply chain. These private businesses can obtain authorized status as a security partner. The new challenge for Thai Customs is therefore, developing a mechanism whereby the preconditions to balance security and facilitation can be responded to and implemented accordingly. However, as a result of CRMS, customs management has improved. Customs staff are empowered, enabling them to manage their work more effectively. A greater service delivery and customer orientation has been created, significantly reducing the intervention of Customs on legitimate trade and travel, and making more effective use of limited resources.

**Exercise 1. After analyzing the passage explain the notion "human resources management".**



**Exercise 2. Read the text and describe the kinds of customs houses.**

Every country has different kinds of customs: Railway Customs, Sea Customs, Auto Customs and Air Customs. And every country has its own Customs Regulations.

Customs restrictions include a list of articles prohibited to export or import. One must have an import or export licence. There are articles liable to duty and duty-free.

Railway Customs are located near Railway Station. Railway Customs ensure customs control over cargo and passengers arriving in our country by trains. They clear imported goods, which are transported, by trains. Sea Customs check cargoes and passengers travelling by sea.

Air Customs examine cargoes and passengers travelling by airplanes.

All Customs have the same tasks: to ensure the control over the order of import and export to impose taxes and duties on imported and exported goods to help to raise commodity circulation and prevent smuggling. If the traveller has any item, which comes under customs restrictions he is asked to declare it (name the item, state its value and other particulars). It sometimes happens that a passenger's luggage is carefully examined in order to prevent smuggling.

**Exercise 3. Read the text and explain customs formalities.**

During customs formalities at the Ukrainian border you may opt for the "green" channel – or the "red" channel, where you will be asked for a completed customs declaration, is for passengers carrying over \$1000 in cash (or the equivalent amount in any other currency) and / or goods to declare. Otherwise, you may go through the "green" channel.

Be prepared, however, that a customs officer may ask to inspect your luggage. Please remember to have your passport and ticket at hand.

The Hand luggage Check-in counter may be preferential upon departure for passengers with luggage of under 7kg, measuring not more than 55x40x20 cm (or, all three dimensions added up, 115 cm). As you arrive... While still abroad, you may want to feel in your customs declaration. If you wish to make use of it in future, make it out in duplicate. Except for citizens of the CIS or holders of diplomatic, special or service passport of states where there are relevant bilateral agreements, all other visitors are required to have Ukrainian visa. You must get one before arriving in Ukraine, as they are not issued at the airport. The other is medical insurance. If you have arrived without a policy, however, you may purchase one before passport control.

**Exercise 4. Summarize your findings on and issue in a short presentation (75 words).**



## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**customs (due, duty)** – пошлина

to pay customs on smth. – уплачивать таможенные пошлины за какой-л. товар

dutiable – подлежащий обложению пошлиной

import duty (licence) – импортная пошлина

export duty – экспортная пошлина

preferential duties – льготные пошлины

to impose duties, to tax – начислить пошлину

to withdraw duties – снять пошлину

duty-free entry – беспошлинный ввоз

duty-free shop – беспошлинный магазин

goods liable to duties / dutiable goods – товары, облагаемые пошлиной

A write-off Act for articles in the state of disrepair. – Акт на списание товаров, пришедших в негодность. The Customs Office is open... – Часы работы таможни... Reception hours for representatives of foreign firms. – Часы приема представителей зарубежных фирм.

**transfer** – а) перемещение *Syn. transference, transmission* б) объем пассажиров и груза

to transfer – а) переносить, перемещать *Syn. to move, transmit* б) перевозить, транспортировать, переправлять *Syn. to transport*

transfer of samples as gifts – безвозмездная передача образцов

talks on signing contracts – переговоры по подписанию контрактов

fragile parts – хрупкие части

complicated parts – сложные конструкции

without any damage to packing – без повреждения фабричной упаковки

**transport** – 1) перевозка, транспортировка *Syn. conveyance, carting*

Local production virtually eliminates transport costs. – Местное производство сводит расходы на перевозки практически к нулю.

2) транспорт, средства сообщения; транспорт(ное судно); транспортный самолет

Have you got your own transport? – У вас есть свой собственный транспорт? The extra money could be spent on improving public transport. – Дополнительные деньги можно было бы использовать на развитие общественного транспорта.

to **transport** – транспортировать (тж. о мыслях, чувствах) *Syn. move, shift, carry, relocate*

to transport by airplane – перевозить на самолете

He was transported to his childhood. – В воспоминаниях он перенесся в свое детство.

to transport to – перевозить, переносить, перемещать

to transport the house to a new site – перевезти дом на новое место

to transport troops from Great Britain to France – перебрасывать войска из Великобритании во Францию

**conveyance** – 1) связано с перемещением грузов; транспортировка

conveyance of goods from supplier to buyer – перевозка товаров от поставщика к покупателю

Postal arrangements for the conveyance of money, as well as letters. – Почтовые службы по перевозке денег, а также и писем.

2) любое транспортное средство *Syn. vehicle, transfer*

The convenience of public conveyances. – Удобства общественного транспорта.

**vehicle** – транспортное средство *Syn. carrier*

to drive (operate) a vehicle – управлять перевозочным средством

all-purpose vehicle – универсальное средство передвижения

hired (rented, self-drive) vehicle – арендуемый транспорт



space vehicle – космический корабль  
armored vehicle – бронированный автомобиль  
half-tracked vehicle – вездеход  
off-road vehicle – амер. внедорожное транспортное средство  
passenger vehicle – пассажирский транспорт  
(sport) utility vehicle; SUV – внедорожник  
delivery vehicle – (транспортное) средство доставки

**carrier** – а) транспортная контора, агентство; авиакомпания по перевозке пассажиров  
Switzerland's national carrier, Swissair, has been having a hard time recently. – Швейцарская национальная авиакомпания, Swissair, испытывала последний год значительные финансовые трудности.

б) транспортное средство, грузовое средство  
personnel carrier – транспорт по перевозке личного состава  
water carrier – а) водоналивное судно, водолей б) мор. авианосец  
aircraft carrier – а) авианосец б) транспортный самолет

There were armoured personnel carriers and tanks on the street. – На улицах были транспортеры с вооруженными солдатами и танки.

carrier agent – транспортный агент  
can carrier – сленг. козел отпущения; ответственное лицо

**cart** – повозка; подвода; телега

to draw / pull a cart – тянуть, тащить повозку  
to push a cart – толкать повозку  
shopping cart – тележка для покупок (в супермаркете)  
to put the cart before the horse – начинать не с того конца; ставить телегу впереди лошади

**Exercise 1. Make up sentences with the topical vocabulary.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the words and word-combinations into English.**

Таможенное право, закон о таможене, таможенное законодательство, таможенный тариф, таможенный сбор, таможенные пошлины, таможенное право, беспошлинный, таможенник, досмотрщик, таможенная декларация, таможенный контроль, таможенный досмотр, таможенные формальности, таможенные инструкции, таможенный инспектор, таможенные льготы, акцизный сбор, таможенный ордер на транзитный груз.

**Exercise 3. Translate the sentences.**

1. The rules for storage and return of the goods are stated on the reverse side of the receipt. 2. Things kept at the Customs Office can be collected by power of attorney by your nominated person living in the country. 3. Things, which are not collected within the stated time, become the property of the state. 4. Things are kept at the Customs warehouse for 2 months against the receipt in your name. 5. At the left-luggage office of the station they will give you a receipt "to bearer". 6. You'll have to pay charges for storing the goods at the customs warehouse. 7. The left-luggage office is open day and night. 8. You can leave these things at left-luggage office at the station or at Customs warehouse. 9. We were through customs with a minimum of formalities. 10. Cocaine seizures by customs have risen this year. 11. Arriving refugees were whisked through customs. 12. In order to clear goods through customs, the importer must complete a designated form and present a bill of lading from the foreign exporter. 13. He walked through customs. 14. Customs duties are taxes that people pay for importing and exporting goods.

**Exercise 4. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 5. Make up a small report and give a talk in class.**

# CUSTOMS FORMALITIES

## CHAPTER I. GENERAL PROVISIONS

### **Article 1**

The purpose of this Law is: to provide for the assessment and collection of duties taxes and fees on imported and exported goods; to provide for the control and regulation of the movement, storage and transit of such goods; to promote the prevention and suppression of fraud and smuggling; to participate in implementing the international trade policy of the Royal Government of Cambodia; to promote the application of international standards and best practices regarding customs control and trade facilitation. The Customs and Excise Department is responsible for the administration and enforcement of the provisions of this Law. The Department operates under the direct supervision of the Ministry of Economy and Finance.

### **Article 2**

The Customs Territory includes the land territory including offshore islands, as well as territorial waters and airspace of the country.

### **Article 3**

This Law must be applied: equally throughout the customs territory, equally to all persons, and without any immunity or dispensation to goods imported or exported by the state or on its behalf.

### **Article 4**

Customs operations are conducted throughout the customs territory, including a Customs Zone along land and coastal borders, under conditions established in this law.

The Customs Zone includes a coastal zone and a land zone:

a. The coastal zone extends from the coast to an outer limit located twenty (20) klm. offshore.  
b. The land zone extends: at coastal borders between the coast and a line drawn 20 klm. inland from the seashore and from the banks of rivers, streams and canals flowing to the sea as far as the first customs office located upstream, as well as in a 20 klm. radius around said customs office; at land borders, twenty klm. inland from the border. To facilitate the repression of fraud, the Minister of Economy and Finance may by Prakas:

a. extend the Customs Zone up to 60 klm. at specific locations and for specified periods of time;  
b. extend the Customs Zone to include an area up to three (3) klm.; around Customs Offices that are not in the Customs Zone referred to in the first and second paragraphs and sub-paragraph (a) of the third paragraph of this Article. Notwithstanding the provisions of the first paragraph of this Article, the Royal Government may by Sub decree:

a. Authorise customs officers to carry out their duties under this law outside the Customs Territory on a reciprocal basis in accordance with international agreements, treaties or conventions entered into by the Kingdom of Cambodia.

b. Allow customs officers of foreign countries to carry out their duties under their relevant laws respecting the import and export of goods in the Customs. Territory on a reciprocal basis, in accordance with international agreements, treaties or conventions entered into by the Kingdom of Cambodia. Customs formalities are carried out in Customs Offices unless otherwise stipulated by the Minister of Economy and Finance by Prakas. The Minister of Economy and Finance may determine by Prakas the establishment, functions and elimination of Customs Offices.

### **Article 5**

All imported and exported goods are subject to the provisions of this law. Goods entering or leaving the customs territory are subject, as applicable, to import duties and taxes or export duties and taxes as specified in the Customs Tariff.

In matters concerning the national interest, including emergencies, the Royal Government may order the total or partial suspension of duties and taxes on goods essential to the needs of the population, or suspend the import or export of certain goods.

#### **Article 6**

The Royal Government may by Anukret prohibit or restrict, subject to conditions, the import or export of certain goods for any of the following purposes:

- national security;
- public order and standards of decency and morality;
- the protection of human, animal or plant life or health;
- the protection of national treasures of artistic, historic or archaeological value;
- the conservation of natural resources;
- the compliance with the provisions of any legislation of country currently in force;
- the fulfillment of obligations under the Charter of the United Nations.

To combat smuggling and fraud, the Minister of Economy and Finance may identify certain sensitive or highly taxed goods as specially designated goods for the purposes of this Law, and may impose additional controls and restrictions on their transport, circulation, storage and possession.

#### **Article 7**

Unless the context demands otherwise, for the purposes of this law:

**Ad valorem duty** is duty calculated on the basis of the customs value.

**Specific Duty** is duty based on the weight, volume, or quantity of goods.

**Customs Bonded Warehouse** is a building, place or an area that meets certain requirements established by Customs that is used to store, to process, to display, to provide for sale, or for other related purposes, goods for which the import duties are deferred.

**Conveyance** is any vessel, aircraft or vehicle, used to transport persons or goods.

**Smuggling** is the illegal import or export of goods outside customs houses, as well as all violations of provisions of law and regulations relating to the holding and transport of goods within the Customs Territory. **Country of origin** is the country in which goods have been produced or manufactured according to the criteria laid down for the purposes of application of the Customs Tariff, of quantitative restrictions or of any other matters related to trade.

**Customs or Customs administration** is the Customs and Excise Department of the Ministry of Economy and Finance, including duly authorised customs officers, responsible for the administration of the customs law and the collection of duties and taxes and fees.

**Customs broker** is a person authorised to carry on the business of arranging for the customs clearance of goods, and who deals directly with Customs for and on behalf of another person.

**Customs clearance** is the accomplishment of the customs formalities necessary to allow goods to enter into home use, to be exported or placed under another customs procedure.

**Customs clearance area** is an area fully supervised by the Customs and Excise Department.

**Customs control** is the procedures imposed by Customs on the transport, movement and storage of imported and exported goods.

**Customs declaration** is a statement made for the purpose of importation or exportation in the form and manner as prescribed under the provisions of this Law.

**Customs examination** is the physical inspection of goods or documents by Customs to satisfy themselves that the nature, origin, condition, quantity and value of the goods are in accordance with the customs declaration.

**Customs formalities** is all the operations that must be carried out by the persons concerned and by Customs in order to comply with this Law or other laws enforced or administered by Customs.

**Customs manufacturing bonded warehouse** is a factory under customs control for dealing with imported goods suspended from duties and taxes to be used in manufacturing processes. **Customs office** is the customs administrative unit competent for the performance of customs formalities and the premises or other areas approved for that purpose under the provisions of this Law.

**Customs officer** is a person duly authorised to administer or enforce this Law.

**Customs value or value**, in relation to imported goods, means the Customs value of those goods determined in accordance with Article 21 of this Law. **Declarant** is a natural or legal person who makes a customs declaration or in whose name a declaration is made.

**Documents** is documents in any form, whether or not signed or initialed or otherwise authenticated by the maker, and includes: any form of writing on material; information recorded, transmitted, or stored by means of tape recorder, computer, or other device, and material derived from such information; a label or other marking or writing that identifies any thing to which it is attached or of which it forms part of; a book, map, plan, graph, or drawing; a photograph, film, negative, tape, or other device in which visual images are embodied so as to be capable of being reproduced.

**Duty** is a duty, tax, fee, or other charge imposed on goods by any of the provisions of this Law or other Laws and regulations enforced and administered by Customs.

**Free Zones** are areas established by the Royal Government where imported goods are not subject to duties and taxes under certain conditions. Goods are all kinds of movable property.

**Home use** is the free circulation of imported goods within the Customs Territory after release by Customs. **Importer** is a person who imports goods for themselves or on behalf of another person. Importer also includes the consignee of goods, and a person who is the owner or becomes the owner of the goods, or becomes entitled to the possession of those goods, before they have ceased to be subject to Customs control.

**Importation in relation to goods**, means the arrival of goods in the Customs Territory in any manner whatever, whether lawfully or unlawfully, from a point or place outside the Customs Territory.

**Release** is authorisation by Customs to remove goods from customs control after completion of customs formalities. **Security** is any financial guarantee, or other financial instrument used to secure the eventual payment of duties, taxes, or fees under this law.

**Specially designated goods** are goods so designated by Prakas by the Minister of Economy and Finance under the provisions of the second paragraph of Article 8 of this Law.

**Legal route** is any road, railway, waterway and any other route that Customs directs must be used for the transportation of imported or exported goods under customs control.

**Temporary admission** is the customs procedures under which certain goods can be brought into the customs territory conditionally relieved totally or partially from payment of import duties and taxes. Such goods are imported for a specific purpose and are intended for re-exportation within a specified period and without having undergone any change except normal depreciation due to the use made of them.

**Transit** is the customs procedure under which goods are transported under Customs control from one customs office to another. **Transshipment** is the customs procedure under which goods are transferred under Customs control from the importing means of transport to the exporting means of transport within the area of one customs office that is the office of both importation and exportation.

Direct Transport is the international transport of goods from the country of origin to the country of destination without passing through another country, unless this transit is necessitated by geographic or logistical reasons.

**Exercise 1. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**



## CHAPTER II. IMPORT & EXPORT

### Section 1 – Imports

#### Article 8

All imported goods must be reported at a customs office or other location as determined by the Director of Customs. The Minister of Economy and Finance may by Prakas regulate the time, manner, documentation requirements, circumstances and exceptions with respect to the reporting of imported goods.

#### Article 9

All imported goods shall be reported at the nearest customs office through the legal route:

- a. in the case of goods in the actual possession of a person arriving in Cambodia, or that form part of personal baggage, by that person;
- b. in the case of goods imported by courier or as mail, by the person who exported the goods to;
- c. in the case of goods, other than goods referred to in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b) of this paragraph, on board a conveyance arriving in, by the person in charge of the conveyance;
- d. in any other case, by the person on behalf of whom the goods are imported.

Every person reporting goods under this Article shall:

- a. answer truthfully any question asked by a customs officer with respect to the goods;
- b. where a Customs officer so requests, make the goods available for inspection by Customs in the manner prescribed by the Director of Customs.

#### Article 10

No person shall unload goods from a conveyance arriving in until the goods have been reported to Customs in accordance with this Law, except where the safety of the conveyance, or the goods, or persons on the conveyance, or third parties may be threatened by emergency conditions as prescribed by the Minister of Economy and Finance by Prakas.

#### Article 11

Customs may authorise the removal of the goods referred to in Article 10 from the customs clearance area prior to the payment of duties and taxes and fees, under customs control and after the fulfillment of customs formalities, for the purposes of: temporary storage; bonded storage; further transportation within or through the Customs Territory to a destination and along routing and within time limits approved by Customs, including transit, transshipment or transportation to or from or between customs offices, and customs temporary storage facilities and customs bonded warehouses.

#### Article 12

The goods referred to in Article 10 may be released by Customs after fulfillment of customs formalities, including the payment of any duties or taxes and/or provision of security, for such goods to be: imported for home use; temporarily admitted; used under duty-suspended conditions.

The Minister of Economy and Finance shall prescribe by Prakas conditions under which goods may be released prior to the payment of duties and taxes and fees.

#### Article 13

Imported goods may be released by Customs for temporary admission if at the time of importation it can be demonstrated that these goods will be re-exported.

Temporarily admitted goods shall be under customs control until such time as the conditions of their temporary admission have been fulfilled.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the Customs formalities and give the score of them.**

**Exercise 2. Write out the vocabulary according to the topic.**

**Exercise 3. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

## Section 2 – Exports

### Article 14

All goods to be exported must be reported at a customs office or other location as determined by the Director of Customs. The Minister of Economy and Finance may regulate by Prakas the time, manner, documentation requirements, circumstances and exceptions with respect to the reporting, movement, storage and transportation of goods to be exported. Every person reporting goods under this Article shall:

- a. answer truthfully any question asked by a customs officer with respect to the goods;
- b. where a customs officer so requests, make the goods available for inspection by Customs in the manner prescribed by the Director of Customs.

### Article 15

Prakas issued by the Minister of Economy and Finance establish the conditions under which Customs may authorise the temporary export of goods shipped outside the customs territory to be repaired, added to, or manufactured there, or for additional work, as well as the methods whereby these goods are subject to payment of import duties and taxes when they are re-imported.

## CHAPTER III

### Documents & books & records & other information on imports & exports

### Article 16

All persons engaged or involved in the commercial or institutional import or export of goods must keep or cause to be kept accurate documents books, records and other information, including information in electronic format, pertaining to import and export. Included in the first paragraph of this Article are importers, exporters, customs brokers, operators of temporary storage facilities and customs bonded warehouses, transportation operators, and other concerned parties. The documents, books, records and other information referred to in the first paragraph of this Article shall be kept for a period of ten (10) years at business premises in Cambodia.

### Article 17

At the request of Customs, persons referred to in the first paragraph of Article 51 of this Law are obliged to make available for examination documents, books, records and other information concerning imports and exports. Where the persons referred to in the first paragraph of this Article are not in place, their representatives are obliged to make available the documents, books, records and other information. As and when required by a customs officer, every such person referred to in the above paragraphs of this article must:

- a. provide copies of the documents, books and records and other information as required;
- b. answer any questions relevant to matters asked of them by a customs officer;
- c. where information is recorded or stored by means of an electronic or other device, operate the device, or cause it to be operated, to make the information available to the customs officer.

**Exercise 4. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.**

№	Activity	
	Article	Score
1.		

## CHAPTER IV. POWERS & OBLIGATIONS

### Article 18

Customs officers exercise powers established under this law in the Customs Zone. In the case of goods designated under the second paragraph of Article 8 of this Law, the powers of customs officers are exercised anywhere in the Customs Territory. With respect to goods being imported or exported, customs officers have the power to:

- a. inspect goods and open or cause to be opened any package or container of goods and take reasonable amounts of samples of those goods for examination;
- b. stop, board and inspect any conveyance and direct that the conveyance be removed to a customs office or other suitable place for examination;
- c. where there are reasonable grounds to suspect that an offence has been committed, inspect private residences or businesses to gather evidence or seize goods in accordance with the laws;
- d. check the identity of any person entering or leaving the customs territory, stop, question and search such a person if the officer suspects that the person has hidden any goods or other thing on, in, or about his or her body that would be evidence of the contravention of this Law or any other Laws.

The cost of the examinations referred to in sub-paragraph (a) and sub-paragraph (b) of the second paragraph of this Article shall be borne by the owner or holder of the goods or conveyance.

### Article 19

Customs officer may, at any time in accordance with the law, enter any premises or place where documents, records, or other information are kept pursuant to Article 51 of this Law and audit or examine those documents records, or other information, either in relation to specific transactions or to the adequacy and integrity of the manual or electronic systems by which such records are created and stored. Customs officers may inspect documents records, or other information or any property, process, or matter that the officer considers necessary or relevant for the purpose of collecting any duties and taxes under this Law, for the purpose of carrying out any other function of the officer, or for the purpose of collecting information required for the purposes of this Law.

Customs officers shall have full access to all lands, buildings, and places and to all documents records and information, whether in the custody or under the control of the licensee, importer, or exporter, or any other person. The customs officer may, without charge, make extracts from or copies of any such records or documents, take possession of by providing a report, retain any document or record presented in connection with any declaration required under this Law. The customs officer shall, at the request of the person in possession of the document or record, provide that person with a true copy of the document or record certified by Customs.

### Article 20

Sworn customs officers have all the powers of judicial police officers, when certified by the General Prosecutor of the Court of Appeals. Customs officers qualified as judicial police have the right to prepare and sign an official report on a customs offence, in their assigned territory.

During the investigation, prevention and suppression of customs offences, customs officers shall carry an authorised mission letter; wear their uniform, insignia, hierarchical ranking badge, unless otherwise directed by the Director of Customs. The official uniform, the insignia and the rank of the Customs officials shall be determined by Anukret.

### Article 21

Customs officers shall have the right to carry arms, and to use them in carrying out their duties in the following circumstances: for legitimate defence; when they cannot otherwise halt conveyances suspected to be involved in smuggling or other illegal activities whose operators do not obey the order to stop; for other reasons established by other Laws or regulations.

Arms used by customs officers in carrying out their duties must be provided and managed by the Ministry of the Interior.

**Article 22**

Sworn customs officers qualified as Judicial police may detain a person for up to forty-eight (48) hours in accordance with the Law on Criminal Procedures.

**Article 23**

All persons are prohibited from obstructing or impeding customs officers in the legitimate exercise of their powers under this law or any other laws of the country.

**Article 24**

Operators of conveyances must obey the orders of customs officers. Customs officers may make use of all appropriate equipment to halt conveyances when their operators do not stop when so ordered. When requested, civilian, police and military authorities are required to assist immediately customs officers in carrying out their duties under this Law.

**Article 25**

Customs officers have the right to seize temporarily goods and conveyances involved in violations of this law. Such goods and conveyances may be subject to confiscation by the competent court. Outside the Customs Zone, seizures may be carried out in customs offices, temporary storage facilities and customs bonded warehouses and other locations subject to the surveillance of customs. Goods designated under the second paragraph of Article 8 of this Law may be temporarily seized anywhere in the Customs Territory. Seizures may also be carried out anywhere in the Customs Territory in the event of pursuit in plain sight, or the unexpected discovery of goods, the fraudulent origin of which emerges from the statements of the person holding the goods or from documents in the possession of the person. Customs officers have the right to copy documents or records, and to seize documents, records and other things that are evidence of violations of this law.

**Article 26**

As circumstances allow, goods, conveyances or other things seized are taken to the customs office that is closest to the place of seizure. When there are several customs offices in the same locality, the objects seized may be transported to any one of them. When they cannot be taken immediately to the customs office or when there is no customs office in the locality, the objects seized may be entrusted to the custody of the accused or a third party at the seizure location or some other location. When the goods seized are not prohibited, and where the goods, conveyances, documents, records and other things seized are not required for evidence, they may be released to the owner upon providing security in accordance with the provisions of Article 41 of this Law.

**Article 27**

The seizing customs officer shall, without delay, write up a report on the seizure.

If the offender is present the report should indicate that it was read to him or her that he or she was asked to read and sign it and was given a copy immediately. When the offender is not present the report is to be posted within twentyfour 24 hours of its preparation at the nearest customs office, or the nearest municipal office if there is no local customs office.

**Article 28**

In cases where seizures are conducted on ships and decked vessels and unloading cannot be done immediately, those conducting the seizure shall affix seals on the ship's panels and hatchways.

**Article 29**

In the event of a seizure at a residence, non-prohibited goods are not moved, provided that the accused provides security in accordance with the provisions of Article 41 of this Law.



If the accused does not provide security, or if prohibited goods are involved, the goods are transported to the closest customs house or entrusted to a third-party custodian, either where the seizure took place, or at some other location.

#### **Article 30**

A person subject to a penalty or seizure of goods conveyance or other things may appeal in writing to the Director of Customs within 30 days of receiving notification of the penalty or seizure, stating the reasons for the appeal, and depositing security in accordance with Article 41 of this Law.

The Director of Customs shall make a decision on the appeal within 60 days of receipt of the appeal; otherwise, the appeal is granted.

### **CHAPTER V. PENALTY PROVISIONS**

#### **Article 31-32**

Any person who imports or exports goods, or attempts to import or export goods, in contravention of this Law or regulations commits a customs offence. Any person who commits a customs offence may be punished by administrative fines imposed by Customs, or by judicial penalties imposed by the competent Court, or both. Any person who commits minor violations of provisions of this law and regulations, including inaccuracies & omissions in completing declarations & failure to meet requirements & obligations, that have no impact on duties, taxes, prohibitions, or restrictions is subject to administrative fines of 100,000 riels to 500,000 riels when the irregularity is not more severely punished by this Law.

**Exercise 1. Summarize your findings and issue in a short presentation (75 words).**

**Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. You can close this suitcase. 2. You can take away this suitcase. 3. Since you say you've lost the key, you will have to open the suitcase without it. 4. You can pack all your things back. 5. You can take only one piece of these things into the country. (Copy) (one piece of each item) 6. These items will be seized and kept by the Customs. 7. You'll be given a receipt against which you collect your things on your way back. 8. You'll find the storage and return regulations on the reverse side of the receipt. 9. Valuable things are stored at the Customs House for 2 months, and then they become the state property. 10. These items will be seized and kept by the Customs. 11. The owner can collect and take the seized things back abroad. 12. Cocaine seizures by customs have risen this year. 13. We were through customs with a minimum of formalities. 14. Customs are the duties levied by a government on imported goods. 15. Customs are the procedures for examining baggage and freight, paying duty, etc. 16. Customs is the official organization responsible for collecting taxes on goods coming into a country and preventing illegal goods from being brought in.



**Exercise 3. Find English equivalents in the previous exercises for the Russian ones.**

1. Имеются ли в вашем чемодане книги? 2. Откройте этот чемодан. 3. Ознакомьтесь с правилами хранения и возврата вещей на оборотной стороне. 4. Эти предметы пропускаются в страну только в единичных экземплярах. 5. Не пропущенные таможей предметы владелец может вывезти в свою страну. 6. Вам выдадут квитанцию, по которой при возвращении домой вы сможете получить эти вещи. 7. Срок хранения предметов на таможне до 2 месяцев, потом они поступают в доход государству. 8. Вы можете забрать свои вещи. 9. Так как вы потеряли свой ключ, вам придется открыть без него. 10. Вам придется распаковать весь багаж. 11. Вы можете упаковать все свои вещи.

**Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. May I have the declaration, please? 2. Show me your customs declaration. 3. Come up to the desk, please! 4. Come up here, please! 5. Just a moment, Sir (Madam), can I keep you for a minute? 6. You must go through the customs. 7. Will you show me your baggage for Customs inspection? 8. Is it your baggage (suitcase, box, parcel handbag, briefcase, attached case)? 9. Is your baggage all here? 10. How many pieces do you have? 11. There are only 3 cases here. 12. Where is the rest of your baggage? 13. Please, move forward a bit and put your case down. 14. I'll have to put your suitcase into the X-ray machine. 15. You'll have to unpack all your baggage. 16. Put your suitcases into the machine one by one (not all at once), please. 17. Please, keep off the machine. (move aside, please.) 18. What things are there in your suitcase? 19. Have you got any books in your suitcase? 20. Open up your suitcase, please.

**Exercise 5. Find English equivalents in the previous exercises for the Russian ones.**

1. Это ваш багаж? (чемодан, коробка, сумка, портфель, сверток, дипломат) 2. Предъявите свой багаж для досмотра. 3. Предъявите таможенную декларацию. 4. Пройдите к стойке. 5. Подойдите сюда. 6. Минутку Сэр (Мадам), задержитесь у стойки на минутку. 7. Это весь ваш багаж? 8. Вы должны пройти таможенный контроль. 9. Можете закрыть свой чемодан. 10. Отойдите подальше от машины и поставьте свой чемодан вниз. 11. Поставьте ваши чемоданы в машину, но не все сразу, а по очереди. 12. Сколько у вас мест багажа? 13. Здесь только 3 чемодана. 14. Возьмите этот чемодан. 15. Что у вас в чемодане? 16. Где остальной багаж? 17. Принесите весь багаж сюда. 18. Пройдите немного вперед и поставьте свой багаж. 19. Эти предметы будут задержаны на хранение в таможне. 20. Мне придется проверить ваш багаж через рентгенаппарат.

**Exercise 6. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Есть ли у вас опись того, что находится в каждой коробке? 2. Разрешение на ввоз этих запасных частей к нам уже поступило. 3. Только эти предметы можно пропустить как сувениры. 4. Для пропуска этих предметов вам нужно представить письмо – протокол службы министерства, при котором вы аккредитованы. 5. Они должны иметь разрешение. 6. Вас будет встречать кто-нибудь из организации, пригласившей вас? 7. Эти образцы будут храниться на таможне до предъявления на них разрешения. 8. Ваши образцы будут оставлены на таможне и инспектор выпишет вам квитанцию на них. Мы не можем их пропустить. 9. В этом чемодане инструменты и детали. Что это? 10. Эти образцы без официального разрешения. Давайте попытаемся найти его.



**Exercise 7. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Предметы рекламно-сувенирного характера будут пропущены с оплатой таможенной пошлины. 2. По нашим правилам туристу разрешается провозить недорогие сувениры в разумных количествах. 3. Есть ли у вас разрешение на ввоз этих приборов от ГКНТ? (Государственный Комитет по науке и технике) 4. Сейчас я найду ваше разрешение и все проверю. 5. На ввоз этого рекламного материала у вас должно быть письмо протокольной службы организации, которая вас пригласила. 6. Эти приборы можно ввезти в страну.

**Exercise 8. Find Russian equivalents for English ones in the previous exercises.**

1. You must have a letter permitting the entry of these publications from the Protocol Department of the Organization, which invited you. 2. We can't clear these samples without an official permit. 3. Your samples will be seized at the Customs House and the inspector will make out a receipt for them. 4. These samples will be stored at the Customs House till you present an entry permit. 5. Will there be anybody to meet you from the organization invited you? 6. They must have the permit. Let's try to find it. 7. Refreshments goods and souvenirs' will be allowed for entry on payment of the duty. 8. You'll have to present a letter from the Protocol Department of the Ministry, at which you're accredited to get the Customs clearance for these publications. 9. According to our regulations tourist can bring / take inexpensive souvenirs in reasonable quantities. 10. I can let you have only these things as souvenirs. 11. There are some tools & parts in this suitcase. What are they? 12. Do you have a permit of the State Science and Technology Council to bring these instruments into the country? 13. We've already received the permit for bringing these spares into the country. 14. Do you have a packing list for each box? 15. These devises are allowed to enter the country. 16. Have you got a list (schedule, inventory) of everything in this box?

**Exercise 9. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Эти приборы можно ввезти в страну. 2. Я выдам вам квитанцию. 3. Эти книги мы конфискуем. 4. Хотел бы взглянуть на печатный материалы. 5. Что это за журналы? 6. Прошу предъявить весь печатный материал для таможенного досмотра. 7. Какую литературу вы с собой везете? 8. Что это за материал? 9. Эти журналы принадлежат вам? 10. Везете ли вы с собой литературу? 11. Провозимую литературу нужно обязательно предъявить таможене. 12. Вы можете получить назад эти рукописи, литературу и журналы. 13. Ввоз этой литературы запрещен. 14. Вы следуете транзитом через страну? 15. Имейте в виду, предметы, задержанные по причинам политического характера, не возвращаются.

**Exercise 10. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

1. In a moment I'll find your permit and check everything. 2. You can take these instruments into the country. You must show all printed materials for customs inspection. 3. Have you got any printed publications? 4. What kind of printed material have you got? 5. What material is this? 6. I'd like to have a look through the printed materials? 7. Please, show me all the printed materials you've got for the Customs Control. 8. What kind of magazines are these? 9. Do these magazines belong to you? 10. You can have these manuscripts, publications and journals back. 11. The entry of these publications is forbidden. We're confiscating these books. 12. I'll make out a receipt for you. 13. Please, remember that the publications seized for political reason are not returned. 14. I'll have to call immigration officer. 15. You can send the things, which you won't need during your trip to the place of destination separately.

**Exercise 11. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Вы должны заполнить таможенную декларацию и предъявить ручную кладь на контроль. 2. Пройдите на 2 этаж в транзитный зал, где вы закончите свое оформление. 3. Вам не нужно столько вещей на такой короткий срок, не так ли? 4. Оставьте часть вещей в багаже. 5. Эти предметы мы внесем в вашу декларацию. 6. Этот чемодан мы оглобмируем, в пункте выезда вы обязаны предъявить его таможене. 7. Предметы, которые вам не нужны в пути, вы можете послать багажом до места. 8. Пропущенные для личных нужд вещи, не подлежат отчуждению на территории нашей страны. 9. Из какой страны вы прибыли? В какую страну вы следуете? 10. Вы можете провести 1л крепких напитков, 2 л вина. 11. Нам придется вызвать представителя спецслужбы. 12. С собой вы можете взять только предметы, необходимые для личных потребностей при транзите. 13. Ваш багаж будет автоматически перегружен с самолета на самолет.

**Exercise 12. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

1. I'll seal this suitcase. You'll have to show it to the Customs official at the place of departure.
2. I'll write down these things in your declaration.
3. The things cleared for the personal use aren't subject to alienation on the territory of this country.
4. Leave some of them behind with your baggage, please.
5. I think you don't need so many things for such a short stay, do you?
6. Go up to the transfer hall on the first floor where your registration will be completed.
7. You must fill in a customs declaration first and then produce your hand baggage for inspection.
8. Your baggage will be reloaded on board the plane you are taking next.
9. You can keep your effects (things necessary for personal use) during your stopover.
10. What country have you come from?
11. What country are you going to?
12. You can take only 1 litre of strong liqueurs, 2 litres of wine.
13. Are you going through our country?





## TRANSIT PROCEDURE

The transit procedure allows you to shift customs handling to the external border to an inland location. As such, it is becoming more and more important for import and export processing. During this procedure, customs clearance does not take place when the goods cross the border, but when they reach their place of destination. The transit procedure can take place before or after customs processing. It is also useful for goods that are not intended to remain in the EC (European Community) customs territory, but instead are only passing through. You can use IT-supported transit procedures with Customs Management in your system for Global Trade Services (GTS). Electronic data interchange with the customs authorities takes place by sending and receiving EDI messages.

The transit procedure enables you to handle your goods shipments using the community transit procedures T1, T2, and TIR of the EU Single Administrative Document. You can also use the New Computerized Transit System (NCTS).

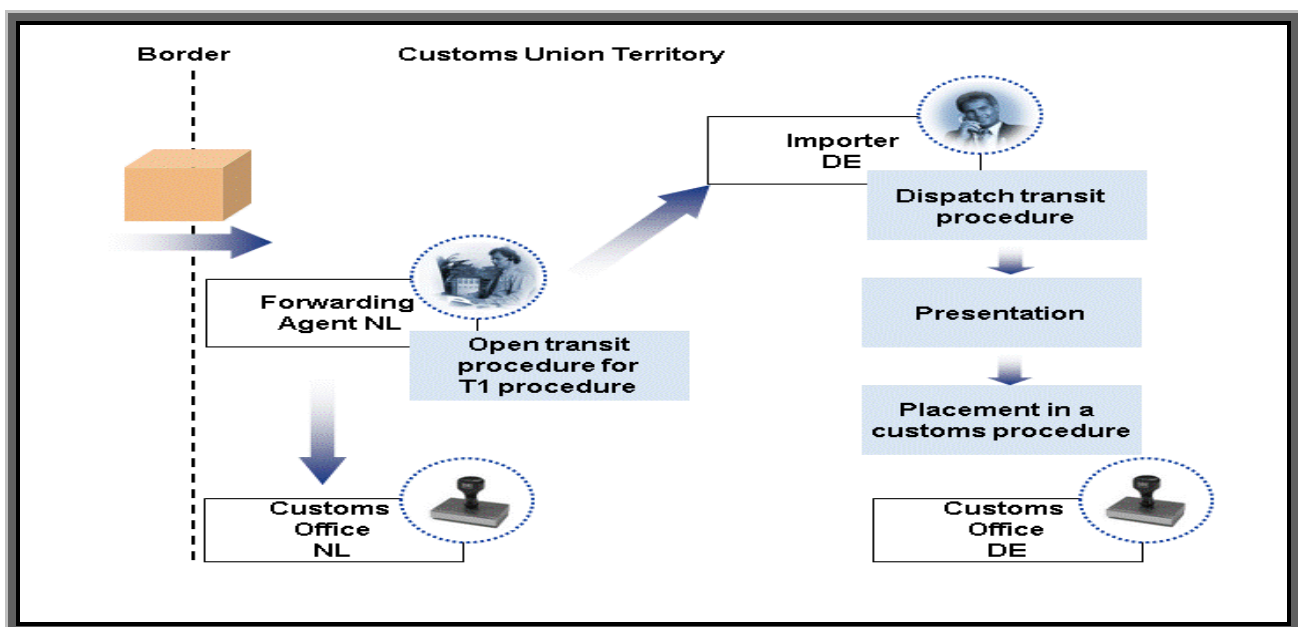
The communication features of the GTS system connect your company with the customs authorities in EU and EFTA member states for the following processes:

- As an approved consignor, you can use Customs Management to send a customs shipment to your responsible customs authorities to open the transit procedure. Depending on which approach your country takes, you either receive the shipping documents in the same manner or can generate them yourself after the reply from the authorities, and you can then pass them on to the carrier. At the same time, the office of departure notifies the office of destination about the expected goods receipt.

- As an approved consignee, you can receive goods in the transit procedure and discharge the transit procedure with Customs Management. You use an arrival notification to report the arrival of the goods to your responsible customs office, with the customs shipment and the movement reference number, which sends you an unloading permission. You can now unload the goods.

When you are unloading the goods, check the goods and their seals, and enter the results of this check in an unloading comment, which you send to the customs authorities. Depending on your country's specific requirements of the processes, you receive either a release or a safekeeping notification with a safekeeping period. Your goods are now considered to have been presented and the system creates a presentation document (see Presentation).

The following diagram outlines the links between opening and discharging transit procedures:



**Exercise 1. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Автотуристы**

1. Выйдите из машины. 2. Откройте багажник. 3. Подпишите обязательство об обратном вывозе вашей машины за границу. 4. Нам придется снять бензобак. 5. Откройте отделение для перчаток. 6. Выньте запасное колесо. 7. Покажите ящик с инструментом. 8. Поднимите капот. 9. Снимите багаж сверху. 10. Проверим обивку дверей. 11. Откройте канистру. 12. Пройдемте в бокс. 13. Нам нужно демонтировать запасное колесо. 14. Снимите чехлы с сидений. 15. Включите печку обогрева. 16. Предъявите содержимое аптечки. 17. Покажите огнетушитель. 18. Поставьте машину на контроль. 19. Предъявите документы на провоз багажа.

**Exercise 2. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercise.**

**Autotourists**

1. You'll have to sign the document stating you'll take your car back to your country. 2. Show me the first-aid box. 3. Switch on the heater, please. 4. Take off the covers from the seats. 5. I have to remove the tank. 6. Follow me to the box! 7. I'll have to dismount spare tyre. 8. Show me your toolbox. 9. Open the fuel can, please. 10. I'll check the door lining. 11. Open up the bonnet, please. 12. Open the glove compartment. 13. Take out the spare tyre, please. 14. Open up the boot. 15. Leave your car, please. 16. Show the fire extinguisher. 17. Put your car to control. 18. Show your papers for baggage transportation. 19. Take down the baggage from the roof rack, please.

**Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Путешествие на поезде**

1. Выход на посадку будет объявлен. 2. Прошу всех занять свои места. 3. Во время досмотра хождение по вагону запрещается. 4. Прошу выйти в коридор на время досмотра вашего купе. 5. Бланки таможенных деклараций у проводника вагона. 6. Просим подготовить вещи для таможенного контроля. 7. Какие чемоданы ваши? 8. Поставьте все ваши чемоданы на нижнюю полку. 9. Снимите ваш багаж и поднимите нижнюю полку. 10. Чьи вещи под нижней полкой? 11. Здесь весь ваш багаж? 12. У вас есть вещи наверху? 13. Наверху только ваш багаж?

**Exercise 4. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

**Travelling by train**

1. Whose baggage is under the lower berth? 2. Take down your baggage and lift the lower berth. 3. Put all your suitcases (baggage) on the lower berth, please. 4. Please get all your things ready for the customs control. 5. You can get the forms from the conductor. 6. Will you leave your compartment while I'm checking it. 7. You have to stay in your compartment during the customs examination. 8. All aboard. Please take your seats. 9. Boarding will be announced. 10. Whose baggage is yours?

**Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Путешествие на поезде**

1. Есть ли ваш багаж в почтовом вагоне? 2. Пройдите в багажное отделение с багажной квитанцией и декларацией. 3. Прошу пройти вас в служебное купе. 4. Укажите в декларации, есть ли у вас отдельно следующий багаж. 5. Ваш багаж не прибыл этим поездом. 6. Если вы будете предъявлять багаж, то вам придется сойти с поезда и подождать прибытия вашего багажа. 7. Если вы не хотите остаться и ждать своего багажа, то вам следует оставить переадресовку вашего багажа на ближайшую таможенную. 8. Если багаж будет получать ваше доверенное лицо, то оно должно предъявить таможеннику 2 декларации: выездную и на предметы в багаже. 9. Таможенный контроль отдельно следующего багажа туристов и лиц, следующих по частным делам, производится той таможней, через которую они выезжают. 10. Я хотел бы поговорить с таможенным офицером.

**Exercise 6. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

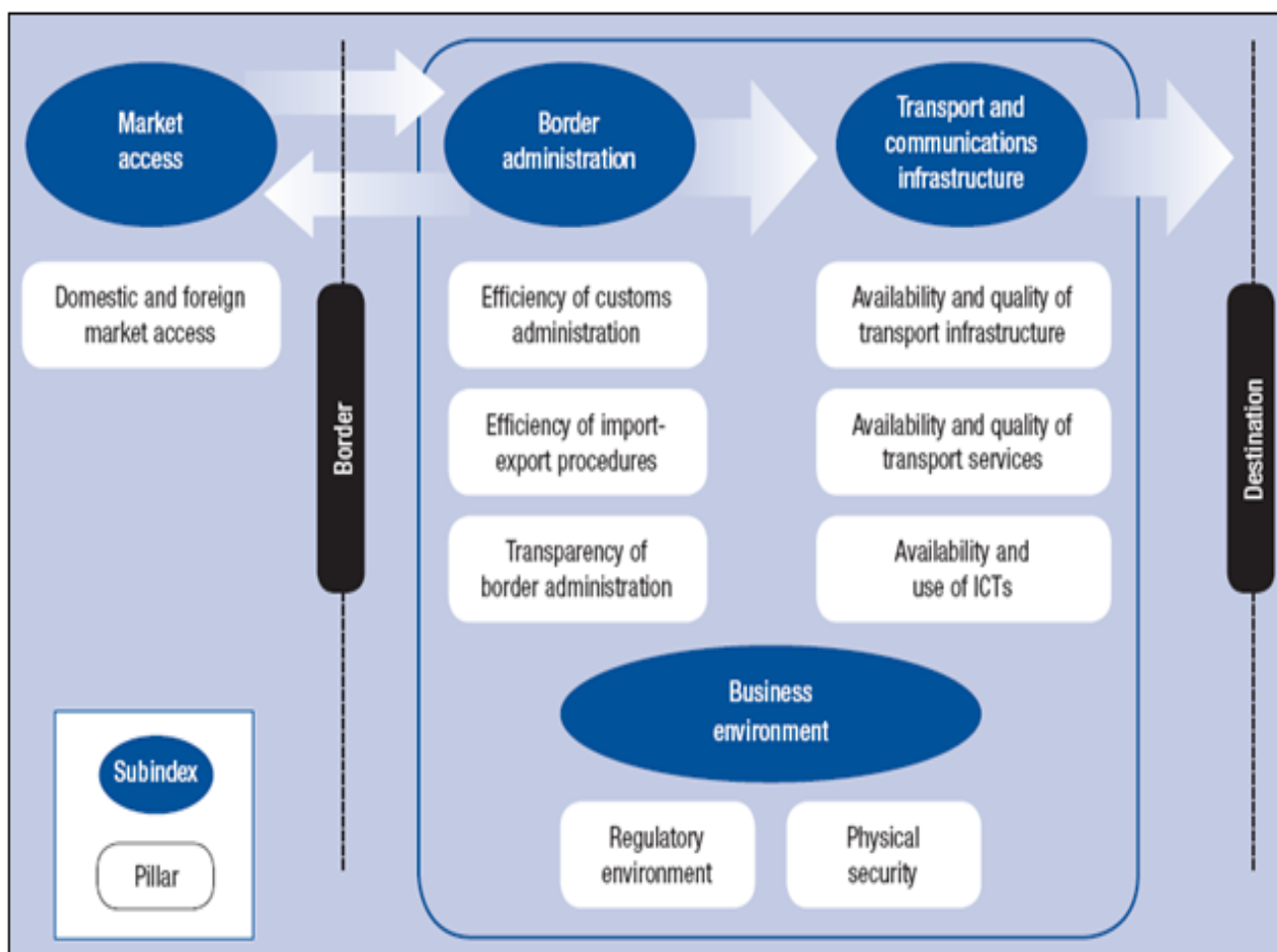
**Travelling by train**

1. I'd like to speak to the customs officer. 2. Unaccompanied baggage of tourists and persons on private trips is checked by the Customs office at the place of their departure. 3. The person who is to collect your things power of attorney must present. 2 declarations: exit declaration and one for articles in the baggage. 4. If you don't want to stay and wait for your baggage you should write an application requesting readdressing your baggage to the customs office nearest to your place residence. 5. If you want to show your baggage yourself you'll have to get off the train and wait till the baggage arrives. 6. Your baggage hasn't come by this train. 7. Please, state in your declaration if you've any unaccompanied baggage. 8. Follow me to the conductor compartment. 9. Take your baggage receipt & declaration and go to the baggage van. 10. Have you got any baggage in mail van? 11. Is the baggage on top all yours? 12. Do you keep anything on top? 13. Is your baggage all here?

**Exercise 7. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Авиатранспорт**

1. Где представитель вашей авиакомпании? 2. Представьте грузовой манифест, генеральную декларацию в 2 экземплярах и пассажирскую ведомость. 3. Согласно манифесту у вас на борту находится.... 4. Что это за груз? 5. Пригласите сюда дикпурьера. 6. Меня интересует, сколько у вас членов экипажа? 7. Сколько пассажиров у вас на борту? 8. Сколько дней вы пробудете в Киеве? 9. Предъявите ваш курьерский лист. 10. Нам нужен один член вашего экипажа для сопровождения нас во время таможенного досмотра.





**Exercise 8. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercise.**

#### Aviatransport

1. We want a member of the crew to accompany us during the customs examination of the plane. 2. Show me your courier list, please. 3. How long are you going to stay in Kyiv? 4. How many passengers were there on board of your plane? 5. How many members are there in your crew? 6. Will you call the diplomatic courier here? 7. What kind of cargo is it? 8. Under the Manifest there is... on board of your plane. 9. Show me the Cargo Manifest, General Declaration (in two copies) & the Crew List. 10. Where's the representative of your company?

**Exercise 9. Translate the sentences into English.**

#### Морской транспорт

1. Инспектор таможни во время стоянки судна в порту имеет право производить досмотр, опломбировать или опечатывать помещения, где хранятся грузы, не подлежащие сносу на берег. 2. Прошу вас заполнить вот эти реквизиты генеральной декларации. 3. Прошу вас подготовить все бумаги для оформления вашего судна. 4. Где вы грузились и в какие порты вы заходили в рейсе? 5. Генеральную декларацию я уже получил. 6. Грузовые документы будут вам возвращены после проверки груза. 7. Экземпляр грузового манифеста и коносаментов на некоммерческие грузы остаются в документах таможни. 8. Укажите на наличие на судне оружия и боеприпасов, взрывчатки, наркотиков. 9. В соответствии с таможенным правом мы обязаны опломбировать оружие. 10. Пломбы будут сняты при оформлении отправления судна за границу.

**Exercise 10. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

#### Sea transport

1. The seals will be removed on clearing the ship (when the ship has got clearance) before departure. 2. In accordance with the Customs Regulations we will have to seal the weapons. 3. State if there are weapons & ammunition, explosives or narcotics on board. 4. One copy of the Ship's Manifest and Bills of Lading for non-commercial cargoes is kept in the files of the Customs Office. 5. The shipping documents will be returned to you after the cargo is cleared. 6. I've got your Cargo Declaration. 7. Where did you have the cargo loaded & what ports did you call at on your way? 8. Will you prepare all the necessary documents for customs clearance of your vessel (ship)? 9. Will you fill in these General Declaration requisites? 10. A Customs Officer in charge is entitled to examine the ship during her stay at the port to seal the premises, where the cargo or articles forbidden to be taken ashore, are kept.





**Exercise 11. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Морской транспорт**

1. Вы лично будете нести ответственность в соответствии с законодательством страны в случае нарушения таможенного обеспечения. 2. Представьте список валюты. 3. Представьте список членов экипажа и количество валюты, полученной ими. 4. Еще раз опросите членов экипажа и установите истинное количество валюты. 5. На всю, имеющуюся на борту валюту, вам будет выдано удостоверение. 6. Судно во время стоянки в порту находится под таможенным контролем. 7. Эти запасные части вы можете получить с консигнационного склада. 8. Все перемены места стоянки судна должны осуществляться с разрешения таможни. 9. Передача каких-либо предметов с судна на берег и на другие суда должна проходить только с разрешения таможни. 10. Прошу еще раз напомнить экипажу, что они не должны сносить на берег предметы, не предназначенные для их личного пользования.

**Exercise 12. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

**Sea transport**

1. Will you remind your crew once again that it's forbidden to take ashore things, which are not for their personal use? 2. Any things may pass from your vessel ashore or on board of another vessel only by the permission of the Customs. 3. All movements of the ship are to be made by permission of the Customs House. 4. You can get the spare parts from the consignment stock. 5. The vessel during her stay at the ports to be under the Customs Office. 6. You'll be given a certificate for all the currency available on board of your ship. 7. Ask the crew once again to specify the real (true, actual) sum of the currency available. 8. Show me a list of the crew who've got currency and state the amount, please. 9. Show me your currency list, please. 10. In case any seal is broken or erased you will bear personal responsibility in accordance with our legislation.

**Exercise 13. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Досмотр экипажа**

1. Представьте список вещей экипажа. 2. Каждый член экипажа должен подписать этот документ против своей фамилии. 3. Каков состав экипажа по национальности? 4. В каком трюме груз для посольства? 5. Есть ли на судне запасная тара для партии груза в мешках... 6. Из каких трюмов полностью выгружено содержимое? 7. Была ли проведена их проверка? 8. Вахтенный, попросите помощника капитана подойти к трюму 3. 9. Вам известно, до начала выгрузки в этом трюме в верхнем ряду нарушено 8 ящиков оборудования. 10. Старший помощник, в трюме 3 есть ящики с неясной маркировкой. 11. Объясните, к какой партии относятся эти ящики? 12. Прошу выделить вашего представителя для проверки трюмов после разгрузки. 13. Кто будет вести *тальянский* счет – член судна или ваш представитель? 14. Вы будете подписывать акт сами или оставите доверенность на его оформление Инфлоту? 15. Предъявите ваш пропуск.

**Exercise 14. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

1. Your pass, please! 2. Are you going to sign the Act yourself or make out a power of attorney in the name of Inflo? 3. Who will tally the cargo: a member of the crew or your agent? 4. I'd like to have someone to help me examine the emptied holds. 5. Can you tell me of which consignment they are? 6. First mate, in hold three there are boxes with unreadable marking. 7. 8. Do you know that before unloading the goods in the upper row of this hold 8 cases with equipment were damaged? 9. Officer of the watch, can you ask the first mate to come to hold 3? 10. Have you checked them? 11. Which holds have been emptied? 12. Is there an extra package for the goods in sacks (boxes, cartons...)? 13. Where (in which hold or other place) do you keep diplomatic cargo? 14. Tell me the nationalities of the members of the crew. 15. Each member of the crew is to sign the document against his name. 16. Show me your crew declaration.

**Exercise 15. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. До которого часа увольнение? 2. Как называется ваше судно? 3. Что вы с собой несете? (Что у вас с собой?) 4. Эта валюта выдана вам капитаном? 5. Где вы взяли остальные деньги? (Кто дал вам эти деньги?) 6. Нам придется пройти на ваше судно и выяснить этот вопрос с капитаном. 7. Эти предметы сносить на берег запрещено. 8. Из какого порта вы прибыли? 9. Выход в город здесь. Желаю хорошо провести время. 10. Как вы отдохнули? Вы что-нибудь купили у нас? 11. Прошу следовать за мной. Хочу уточнить некоторые формальности. 12. Позвоню на пароход и сообщу, что вы задерживаетесь. 13. Все документы на отход вашего судна за границу оформлены. 14. Таможенного досмотра не будет при оформлении каботажного рейса. 15. Просим вас по прибытии в порт вручить эти документы представителю.

**Exercise 16. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercises.**

1. We ask you to hand these documents to the Customs Officer on arrival. 2. There would be no Customs Examination of the Coaster. 3. All formalities for your departure are over. (Your ship is cleared for departure.) 4. I'll call your ship and tell them we are keeping you for some time. 5. Will you follow me, please? I'll have to clear up some points. 6. Have you had a nice time? Have you bought anything? 7. Have a good time in our city! The exit to town is here. 8. What port did you come from? 9. It's forbidden to take these things ashore. 10. We'll have to clear up this point with your captain? 11. Who gave you this money? 12. Where did you get the rest? Did you get this currency from the captain? 13. What have you got about you? What things are you carrying? 14. What's the name of your vessel? 15. When are you to return?

**Exercise 17. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Грузовой транспорт**

1. Какой груз вы везете? 2. Кто отправитель груза? 3. Кто получатель груза? 4. Предъявите транспортную накладную, спецификацию, разрешение на совершение международных перевозок. 5. Какой фирме принадлежит авто? 6. Вам нужно заехать на таможеню, выполнить все формальности; груз может быть выдан получателю. 7. Пойдемте, проверим пломбы. 8. Водитель должен присутствовать при наложении пломб. 9. Есть груз для другой таможеню? 10. Мы проверим спецификации, выгрузим, остаток опломбируем и направим на другую таможеню.



**Exercise 18. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercise.**

**Cargo transport**

1. We'll check in your specification which is to be unloaded here and the rest will be sealed & sent to the address of the Customs Office.
2. Is there any cargo for any other Customs?
3. The driver is to be present while the seals are placed.
4. Let's go and check the seals.
5. You'll have to call at the Customs Office, make all the formalities and only after the goods can be release to the consignee.
6. What company does the lorry belong to?
7. Show me your waybill, specification, permit for international haulage.
8. Who is the consignee?
9. Who is the consigner?
10. What cargo do you carry?





## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**cargo** – груз cargo transportation – грузоперевозка  
to carry (haul) cargo – перевозить грузы  
to load (take on, stow) cargo – осуществлять погрузку  
to transfer cargo – переправлять груз  
to unload cargo – осуществлять разгрузку  
contraband cargo – контрабанда, незаконный, контрабандный груз general cargo – генеральный, смешанный, сборный груз  
cargo list – грузовой список, перечень грузов  
cargo body (compartment) – кузов, грузовой отсек  
cargo agents – транспортное агентство  
cargo boat (carrier, ship, steamer, vessel liner) – грузовое судно, грузовой лайнер  
cargo-and-passenger – грузопассажирский  
cargo transport – грузовое транспортное средство; грузовой самолет  
cargo pier – грузовой пирс  
cargo port – грузовой порт  
cargo terminal – грузовой причал; грузовой аэровокзал  
cargo compartment (load box) – грузовое отделение, грузовой отсек  
cargo ramp – грузовой перрон аэропорта  
cargo hatch – загрузочный люк  
cargo hold – грузовой трюм  
contraband cargo – контрабанда, незаконный груз, контрабандный груз  
general cargo – генеральный, смешанный, сборный груз  
cargo engaged for the vessel – груз, подлежащий перевозке на данном судне  
cargo capacity (volume) – грузоместимость  
cargo value – стоимость груза  
displacement of the cargo – смещение груза  
cargo tonnage – грузовой тоннаж; масса груза  
cargo flight – грузовой рейс  
cargo handling – погрузочно-разгрузочные работы  
cargo hold (space) – грузовой трюм  
cargo (freight) container (cargotainer) – грузовой контейнер; транспортная тара  
cargo gear – погрузочно-разгрузочное устройство  
cargo depot – грузовой склад  
cargo insurance – страхование грузов  
cargo preservation – сохранение груза  
cargo policy – грузовой полис  
cargo liability – ответственность за груз  
cargo manifest – грузовой манифест, декларация судового груза  
cargo operations – обработка груза  
cargo handling – погрузочно-разгрузочные работы  
cargo handling – facilities загрузочно-разгрузочное оборудование  
cargo flight – грузовой рейс  
cargo list – грузовой список, перечень грузов  
cargo rate – грузовой тариф  
cargo manifest – грузовой манифест, грузовая накладная  
cargo navicert – грузовое морское охранное свидетельство



cargo option – грузовой опцион, право замены груза  
 cargo plan – каргоплан, план размещения груза на судне (с целью рационального использования грузовых помещений и придания судну необходимой остойчивости)  
 cargo selectivity system – система избирательности грузов (подсистема таможенной системы обработки информации, определяющая способ проверки конкретной партии товара)  
 cargo receipt – расписка в получении груза  
**load** – груз *Syn.* burden, cargo, freight б) бремя, тяжесть; а) тяжесть, груз, ноша  
 to carry (transport) a load – перевозить груз  
 capacity (maximum, peak) load – максимальный груз  
 heavy load – тяжелый груз light load – легкий груз  
 load attributes – характеристики груза  
 to lessen (lighten) a load – облегчать груз  
 capacity / maximum / peak load – максимальный груз  
 to carry one's share of the load – "нести свой крест", нести бремя забот  
 That's a load off my mind! – Это избавило меня от тяжести.  
 load of care – бремя забот  
 3) партия груза на вагон, судно и т. п. (как единица измерения количества для груза)  
 4) нагрузка, загруженность (количество работы) 5) множество, обилие  
 His teaching load amounted to three and a half hours daily for five days a week.– Его преподавательская нагрузка составляла 3,5 часа в день при пяти рабочих днях в неделю.  
 case load – количество пациентов у врача, клиентов у юриста за определенный период  
 work load – нагрузка предприятия заказами, обеспеченность работой; объем подлежащих выполнению работ; рабочая норма  
 loads of things – множество, масса, куча вещей  
 б) сленг. количество спиртного, достаточное для опьянения  
 to have a load on – "нагрузиться", нализаться  
 to load – 1) а) грузить, грузиться (о корабле, вагонах) б) производить посадку  
 The men loaded the truck with strawberries. – Рабочие нагрузили грузовик клубникой.  
 sightseers loading onto a bus – экскурсанты, производящие посадку в автобус  
 в) вмещать (о количестве пассажиров, перевозимом транспортным средством)  
 This coach always loads well. – В этом вагоне много пассажирских мест.  
 2) обременять (заботами); нагружать, заваливать (работой)  
 She's been loaded down with family responsibilities all her life. – Всю свою жизнь она была обременена ответственностью за семью. His company was loaded down with debts. – На его фирме висело бремя долгов. Director decided to load more work on him. – Директор решил возложить на него дополнительный фронт работ.  
*Syn.* weigh down, burden, overwhelm, crush, oppress, afflict, trouble, worry, vex  
**burden** – ноша, груз, тяжесть; перен. бремя  
 to bear (carry, shoulder) a burden – нести груз  
 to alleviate (lighten, relieve) a burden – сбросить груз  
 to distribute a burden equitably – поровну распределить груз  
 crushing / heavy / onerous burden – тяжёлое бремя  
 financial burden – финансовые затруднения  
 tax burden – бремя налогов  
 to impose (place a burden) on smb. – перекладывать ношу на чьи-л. плечи  
 to share a burden – разделять трудности  
 burden of care – бремя забот

burden of proof – необходимость доказать виновность подсудимого

For it is the very a-b-c of common justice, that a defendant does not have to disprove charges; the burden of proof is on the prosecution. – Элементарный принцип правосудия гласит, что не обвиняемый должен доказать необоснованность обвинения, а обвинитель должен доказать вину обвиняемого. He became a burden to his family. – Он стал в тягость своей семье.

burden of care – бремя забот burden of proof – бремя доказательства

3) грузоподъемность (в наст. время относится только к кораблям); 4) накладные расходы

a ship of a hundred tons burden – корабль с грузоподъемностью в 100 тонн

a burden of one's choice is not felt – посл. своя ноша не тянет

to **burden** – 1) грузить *Syn.* load 2) обременять, затруднять (память, сознание, ресурсы)

burdened with variety of pursuits and duties – обремененный множеством дел и обязанностей

the burden and heat of the day – бремя ежедневных забот

We do not wish to tax your energies too much. We will bear some of the burden and heat of the day ourselves. – Мы не хотим слишком вас утруждать. Мы готовы разделить с вами бремя дневных забот.

burden costs – накладные расходы

burden of loss – бремя убытков

burden of taxation – бремя налогов

burden (load, store / stuff) one's (smb.'s) memory with smth.) – перегружать свою (чью-л.) память чем-л.

I don't want to burden your memory with too many details. – Я не хочу перегружать вашу память многочисленными подробностями.

**freight** – фрахт, стоимость перевозки; а) груз, фрахт *Syn.* load, goods, cargo, lading

express freight – морской груз большой скорости

ordinary freight – груз малой скорости

heavy load – тяжелый груз

to lie dormant – лежать мертвым грузом

deadweight – полная грузоподъемность судна

to carry (handle, ship) freight – вести груз

б) тоннаж, грузоподъемность 3) наем судна для перевозки грузов

freight absorption – включение транспортных издержек в цену

freight charges – грузовой тариф; плата за перевозку груза

freight classification – 1) классификационное тарифное руководство

2) классификация грузов для расчета тарифных ставок

freight area – место погрузки

freight bill – счет за провоз, счет за фрахт

freight agent – агент по фрахтовым операциям, фрахтовый агент

freight all kinds – сокр. ФАК – класс грузов, содержащий товары разного типа, облагаемый более высокими пошлинами, чем более конкретно классифицированный груз

**weight** – а) тяжесть; груз б) перен. бремя, тяжесть

a great weight off one's mind – гора с плеч (долой, свалилась)

He was an aged man and seemed enfeebled by the weight of years – Это был пожилой человек, и казалось, что бремя прожитых лет сильно ослабило его.

**consignee** – грузополучатель, консигнатор

consignee's risk – риск получателя

consignor – грузоотправитель

consignment – груз *Syn.* delivery, committal, allotment

партия отправленного / прибывшего товара, груз; транспортная накладная, фактура

to sell on consignment – продавать по накладным

to **consign** – передавать; поручать; предавать (to) *Syn. entrust*; (пред)назначать

They consigned the shipment to us. – Они передали нам груз. The paintings were consigned to our care. – Картины были переданы нам на хранение. The shipment of apples was consigned to London. – Груз яблок был предназначен для отправки в Лондон.

**consignation** – консигнация (форма комиссионной продажи товаров за границу); отправка товаров на консигнацию *Syn. consignment*

load down – давить (грузом) *Syn. bow (weigh) down*; угнетать, тяготить, давить

The postman is loaded down with all those parcels. – Почтальон прямо сгибается под тяжестью всех этих пакетов. The young man seemed to be loaded down with the worries of fatherhood. – По-видимому, юношу угнетали семейные заботы.

**delivery** – поставка, доставка

Extraordinary charges for the delivery of goods. – Жуткие цены за доставку.

to accept delivery – принимать

delivery at door – доставка заказов на дом

delivery van – фургон для доставки заказов

delivery service – служба доставки

overnight delivery – доставка на следующий день

early (first) delivery – первая разноска писем (утром)

to make a delivery – поставлять

to take (accept) delivery – принимать

on delivery – при доставке

payment on delivery – оплата при доставке

overnight delivery – ночная доставка

prompt delivery – своевременная доставка

We guarantee prompt delivery. – Мы гарантируем своевременную доставку.

delivery advice – извещение о доставке (груза)

delivery against cost – требование оплаты ценных бумаг наличными при поставке

pecial / express delivery – срочная доставка (почты), доставка с нарочным

rural free delivery – бесплатная доставка почты в сельскую местность recorded delivery – доставка заказной почтовой корреспонденции

delivery basis – базис поставки (условие внешнеторговой сделки, предусматривающее распределение между продавцом и покупателем обязанностей по продвижению товара)

delivery by installments – доставка по частям

delivery charge – плата за доставку

delivered at frontier – доставка до границы (термин, обозначающий, что ответственность поставщика распространяется только на доставку до таможенной "границы" страны назначения)

delivery contract – контракт на поставку

delivered ex-quay – доставка в порт

**way-bills** – автотранспортные накладные (список пассажиров; перечень пунктов некоторого пути, путевой лист; накладная, сопровождающая груз)

**fork lift** – вилчатый подъемник

**truck** – автопогрузчик

visual examination of the vehicle – внешний осмотр транспортного средства

**to seal** – а) скреплять (сделку) б) окончательно решать в) торжественно узаконивать

His answer sealed our fate. – Его ответ решил нашу судьбу.

under my hand and seal – за моей собственноручной подписью и с приложением печати

under the seal of secrecy (confidence, silence) – с условием хранить тайну, молчание  
seals of the Customs Office and the consigner – наличие пломб пограничной таможни и  
отправителя

seal of confession – церк. тайна исповеди

to seal (up) – запечатывать; печатывать, пломбировать; запечатывать, герметически  
закрывать, изолировать, замазывать

to seal – а) скреплять (сделку) б) окончательно решать в) торжественно узаконивать

His answer sealed our fate. – Его ответ решил нашу судьбу.

to seal (place) seals – налагать таможенные пломбы

breakage (removal) of seals – повреждение пломбы

to make customs formalities – оформить таможенные документы

protocol about a road accident – акт о ДТП

damage to tarpaulin – повреждение брезента

driving licence – водительские права

certificate for international haulage – свидетельство о пригодности автотранспортные  
средства для международных перевозок

**Exercise 1. Make up sentences with the topical vocabulary.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the phrases and words with adjective key-word "sea & maritime".**

Sea; maritime; naval; nautical; seaside; of marine origin; old salt; sea-dog; navy; seashore;  
sea-water; laminaria, sea kale; marines; Russ. fathom (= 7 ft.); sea shipping; shipping routes; naval  
forces; (sea) current; port arrival and departure building; marine passenger terminal; sea transport;  
conger (eel, sea-eel); bend (hitch); naval staff; sea-sickness; seagoing tug; sea gravel; rock-fish  
(scorpion-fish); seaside resort (watering-place, bathing-place, plage); sea-lion; sea carrier; sea  
transport; sea-sand; sea fishery; maritime banditry; maritime insurance; maritime forces; maritime  
town; maritime station; maritime climate; maritime commerce; maritime law; maritime worker;  
international maritime law; maritime air; maritime banditry; maritime belt; maritime boundary; maritime  
broadcast-communication net.

**Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. A common carrier is a person, who undertakes as his particular business the carriage for hire  
of goods of any person, who choose to employ him. 2. The liability of a common carrier is very great.  
It lasts as long as the goods are in his custody, that is, from the time of their delivery to him, during  
their transit, and for a reasonable time afterwards, until the goods are delivered to the consignee. 3.  
The term "inherent vice" has a wide meaning and includes natural deterioration and bad packing.  
4. Any agreement or condition exempting the carrier from liability for any loss or damage arising from  
wilful misconduct or gross negligence is absolutely void. 5. By despatch is meant the undertaking of  
the ship-owner that the ship will commence and complete the voyage within a reasonable time.

**Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Вы можете оставить эти вещи в камере хранения вокзала или сдать на хранение на  
таможню. 2. Камера хранения работает круглосуточно. 3. За хранение вещей на таможне взимается  
складской сбор. 4. В камере хранения вокзала выдается квитанция на 'предъявителя'. 5. Вещи  
хранятся на таможне 2 месяца по именной квитанции. 6. Вещи, невостребованные в указанные сроки,  
взимаются в доход государства. 7. Вещи, хранящиеся на таможне, могут быть выданы по вашей  
доверенности лицу, живущему в этой стране. 8. Правила хранения и возврата вещей указаны на  
обратной стороне квитанции.

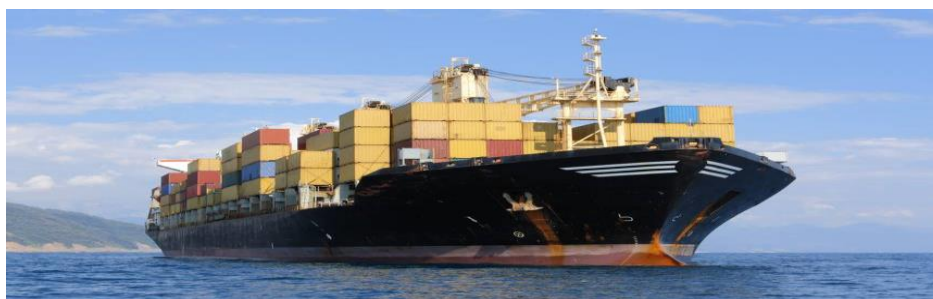
**Exercise 5. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 6. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**



**Exercise 7. Make up sentences with the words and word-combinations below.**

common earner	перевозчик на общих для всіх условиях
consignee	грузополучатель, адресат
custody	охрана, хранения, контроль
Act of God	стихийное бедствие, форс-мажор
Act of King's / Queen's enemies	ведения действия против государства
bailee	депозитарий
exempt somebody from liability	освобождать кого-то от ответственности
contract of affreightment	договор морской перевозки
contract of carriage of goods by sea	договор морской перевозки
freight	фрахт, груз, плата за перевозку
bill of lading	коносамент, накладная
charter-party	договор о фрахтовании судна
charterer	фрахтовик
voyage	рейс
day days	время стоянки
running days	календарные дни (выходные и праздники)
loading	загрузка
unloading	разгрузка
demurrage	плата за простой
perils of the sea	морские опасности
seaworthiness	способность к мореплаванию
despatch	скорость, быстрое выполнение
deviation	отклонение
barratry	безосновательное возбуждение судебного дела
prime & average accustomed	освобождать кого-то от ответственности
prime	добавка к фрахту за использование грузового оборудования судна и на покрытие лоцманських и других расходов
pilotage	прибавка к фрахту, вознаграждение капитана
wharfage	лоцманская дело
Lights	причальный збор



**Exercise 8. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercise.**

**The Left-luggage Office at Customs**

1. The rules for storage and return of the goods are stated on the reverse side of the receipt. 2. Things kept at the Customs Office can be collected by power of attorney by your nominated person living in the country. 3. Things, which are not collected within the stated time, become the property of the state. 4. Things are kept at the Customs warehouse for 2 months against the receipt in your name. 5. At the left-luggage office of the station they will give you a receipt 'to bearer'. 6. You'll have to pay charges for storing the goods at the customs warehouse. 7. The left-luggage office is open day and night. 8. You can leave these things at left-luggage office at the station or at Customs warehouse.

**Exercise 9. Study the definition of the following words and translate them.**

<b>Contract of affreightment</b> (carriage of goods by sea)	Affreightment is the special name given to the contract of carriage of goods by sea, for a price which is called the freight.
<b>Charter-party</b>	A charter-party is an agreement in writing whereby a shipowner agrees to let an entire ship, or a part thereof to any person (who is called the charterer) for the conveyance of goods on specified voyage.
<b>Bill of lading</b>	A bill of lading is a memorandum acknowledging the receipt of goods generally signed by the master of a ship. It also contains the terms and conditions of the carriage of the goods which have been agreed upon by the parties.
<b>Lay days</b>	"Lay days", or, as they are sometimes called, "running days", are the days allowed to the charterer for loading and unloading the ship.
<b>Demurrage</b>	"Demurrage" is the agreed sum payable for delay beyond the time stipulated.

**Exercise 10. Study the use of different phrases and suggest their Russian equivalents.**

**Act:** act complained of, act constituting an offence, act covert, act endangering life, act in furtherance of a crime, act performed without authority, act-in-law, act in pais, act of bankruptcy, act of commission, act of curatory, act of honour, act of hostility, act of indemnity, act of insolvency, act of law, act of mutiny, act of omission, act of parliament, act of protest, Act of Providence, act of public nature, act of sale, act of state, act overt, act of warranted by law.

**Freight:** freight advance, freight at risk, freight charge, freight clause, freight forward, freight home, freight agent, freight all kinds, freight area, freight carrier, freight or carriage paid to, freight payable at destination, freight prepaid, freight release, freight classification, freight depot, freight dock, freight forwarder, freight handling, freight hauling, freight hoist, freight in transit, freight insurance, freight (ton)miles (turnover), freight rate, freight services, freight stock, freight traffic density, freight vessel, freight-all-kinds rates, freightage.

**Voyage:** voyage charter, voyage insurance, voyage policy, voyage repair, voyager (seafarer, navigator), to go on a voyage, long voyage, maiden voyage, ocean voyage, round-the-world voyage, sea voyage, a voyage to the islands.



**Exercise 11. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the exercise below.**

1. Bringing personal effects together with foreign trade cargo is considered smuggling. 2. Who do these articles (things) in case №... belong to? 3. The consignee (the firm exhibiting the goods is to pay for loading, unloading & unpacking services. 4. You can find application forms at the Service Bureau. 5. Your representative is to write an application to the Customs Office before the Customs Control. 6. Have you presented all documents and specifications for the goods to the Customs? 7. Who presents the company? When is he coming? 8. Which firms are responsible for the delivery of the goods to the exhibition? 9. You'll have to present the necessary documents to the Customs Office to take the exhibits out of the country. 10. Who is responsible for purchasing? 11. Have the exhibits been packed? 12. Specialists of the Manufacturing Works have come to erect the equipment. 13. Packages with refreshment goods and souvenirs and leaflets are to be unloaded at the Customs warehouse.

**Exercise 12. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Места с представительскими товарами и проспекты выгружаются на склад таможни. 2. Специалисты завода-изготовителя прибыли для наладки оборудования. 3. Экспонаты уже упакованы? 4. Кто ответственный за упаковку? 5. Нужно представить все документы для вывоза товаров из страны. 6. Какие фирмы ответственны за доставку товаров на выставку? 7. Кто представитель фирмы? Когда он прибудет? 8. Вы представили все документы и спецификации на товары для таможенного контроля. 9. Ваш представитель должен подать заявку до начала таможенного контроля. 10. Бланки заявок находятся в бюро обслуживания. 11. Услуги по разгрузке-погрузке и распаковке груза оплачивает получатель. 12. Кому принадлежат вещи в ящике №..? 13. Перевозка личных вещей под видом внешнеторгового груза - контрабанда.

**Exercise 13. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Все выставочные грузы подлежат обратному вывозу за границу (за исключением пришедших в негодность, проданных по разрешению министерства, расходуемых материалов) могут быть выпущены по разрешению начальника таможни. 2. Продукты и напитки для фирмы выпускаются только при оплате таможенной пошлины. 3. Вам нужно дать письменное объяснение на имя начальника таможни по поводу наличия личных вещей в ящике. (вскрытие груза без таможни) 4. За утраченные экспонаты таможня взимает пошлину. 5. Спецификации нужны в 2 экземплярах. 6. Экспонат не значится в спецификации. 7. Экспонаты не предназначены для подарков. 8. Указанные предметы нужно представить инспектору по карантину растений и ветеринару. 9. Необходимо присутствие инспектора по качеству товаров. 10. Досмотр груза назначен на 9.00. 11. К началу досмотра просим подготовить все необходимые погрузочно-разгрузочные средства и достаточное количество рабочих. 12. Прошу ускорить разгрузку автомашин.

**Exercise 14. Find Russian equivalents for the English ones in the previous exercise.**

1. Please speed up the unloading (loading) of the truck. 2. You have to collect the required handling equipment and sufficient number of workers by the starting of examination. 3. Examination will be at 9.00. 4. The Quality Inspector is to be present here. 5. The stated goods are to be presented to the quarantine and vet control. 6. The exhibits are not intended as presents. 7. This exhibit is not stated in the specification. 8. Specifications are to be presented in duplicate. 9. In case of loss of exhibits the Customs Office imposes a fine. 10. You'll have to explain it in writing to the Chief why there were personal things among the exhibits in the box (the cases were opened in the absence of the representative of Customs Office). 11. Foodstuffs and spirits for the firm's needs are liable to duty. 12. All exhibits are to be taken back abroad (except the goods which are no longer of acceptable quality, sold by permission of the Ministry of Foreign Trade or used materials) are cleared by permission of the Chief of the Customs Office.

**Exercise 15. Translate the sentences into English.**

**Таможенные пошлины**

1. Таможенные пошлины на товары во внешнеторговом обороте взимаются централизованно.
2. Таможенные пошлины начисляются на основании ставок, утвержденных Министерством Внешней Торговли.
3. Предметы, ввозимые по фактур – лицензии пошлиной не облагаются.
4. Беспшлинно ввозятся образцы почвы и промышленности.
5. Пошлина составляет ...2% от стоимости предмета.
6. Пошлину вы можете заплатить в любое удобное для вас время.
7. У нас нет вывозных пошлин, кроме как на предметы старины и искусства.
8. Пошлину мы принимаем, как в национальной, так и в конвертированной валюте.
9. Сейчас я выдам досмотровую опись.
10. Если вы согласны заплатить пошлину, пройдите к начальнику таможни за разрешением.

**Exercise 16. Find Russian equivalents on Customs duties in the previous exercise.**

1. If you don't object to paying the duties, go to the Chief of the Customs Office to get permission.
2. I'll give you an Act of Customs examination in a moment.
3. Duties can be paid both in national and hard currency.
4. The articles taken out of the country are duty free except antiques and articles of art.
5. You can pay the duty any time convenient to you.
6. The duty makes...% value of the article.
7. Samples of soil & industry of the country brought back from abroad are duty free.
8. Articles brought into the country under facture-licenses are duty free.
9. Customs duties are imposed on the basis of tariffs approved by the Ministry of Foreign Trade.
10. Customs duties in foreign trade on goods are imposed according to the Regulation.

**Exercise 17. Translate the words and word-combinations.**

Wharfage, primage and average accustomed, lay days, perils of the sea, deviation, barratry, custody, sale and return, ownership, agency by ratification, bailee, common carrier, consignor, exempt from liability, visual examination of the vehicle, delivery charge, to seal the fate, to accept delivery, delivery area, delivery box.

**Exercise 18. Read the text below and characterize the customs officers working day.**

First of all I ought to tell you that some of the customs officers work every day and the others work in the shifts in a day or two. Usually the customs officer's working day begins at 9 o'clock and is over at 18 o'clock. But if you work in two shifts you have another schedule (time-table).

The day shift begins at 8 o'clock in the morning and ends at 8 o'clock in the evening.

The night shift begins 8 p.m. and ends at 8 a.m. I suppose, it is difficult to work at night. At work customs officers put on special uniform. Then they start their work. There are different kinds of Customs Houses (airport, seaport, and railway ones). They may be situated both in the airports and seaports and in the borders (frontiers) as well. The customs officers of airport carry out the customs examination of the passengers travelling by airplanes in special premises.

The seaport's customs officers carry out the customs examination of the passengers who make a voyage by sea right in their state-rooms (cabins) of the steamers and their cargo on the boards of the special cargo ships. The main customs officer's responsibilities (duties) are to set up the control of the passenger's movement, their baggage, cargo, and their documents.

If they find out the things (belongings) prohibited to export or import, smuggled goods, false currency, drugs, cold or fire arms – they send for the customs inspector of fighting smuggling and breaking of customs regulations (rules) department for making personal examination.

The main duties of customs officers are to prevent and to fight smuggling. Their work is very important for defending the economic interests of Ukraine.

**Exercise 19. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 20. Make up a small report and give a talk in class.**



**Exercise 21. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class.**

- Good morning. May I see your passport?
- Sure. Here it is.
- Thank you. Hmm. O.K. Do you have anything to declare?
- Yes, I do.
- What do you have?
- I have some liqueur and some cigarettes.
- How much liqueur do you have?
- One bottle.
- And how many cigarettes do you have?
- A carton.
- Fine. What about perfume. Do you have any perfume?
- No, I don't.
- Good. Now open your suitcase, please. Let's see.



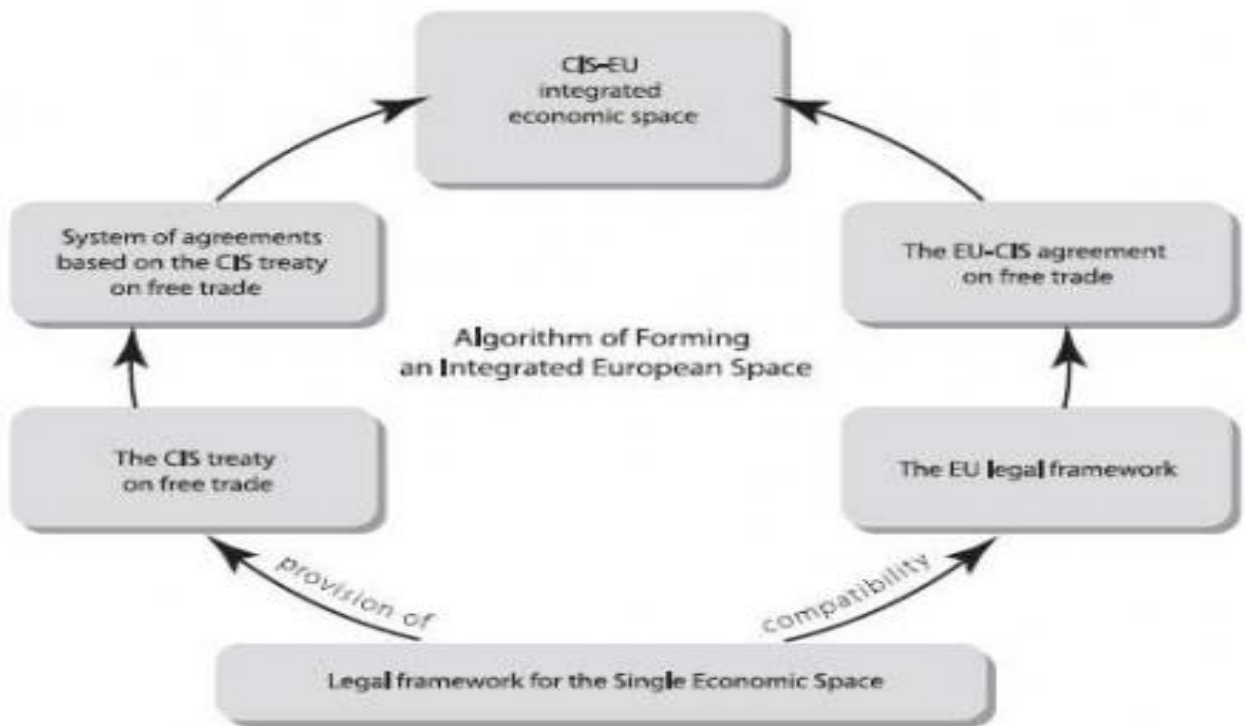
## UNIT II. EU CUSTOMS UNION

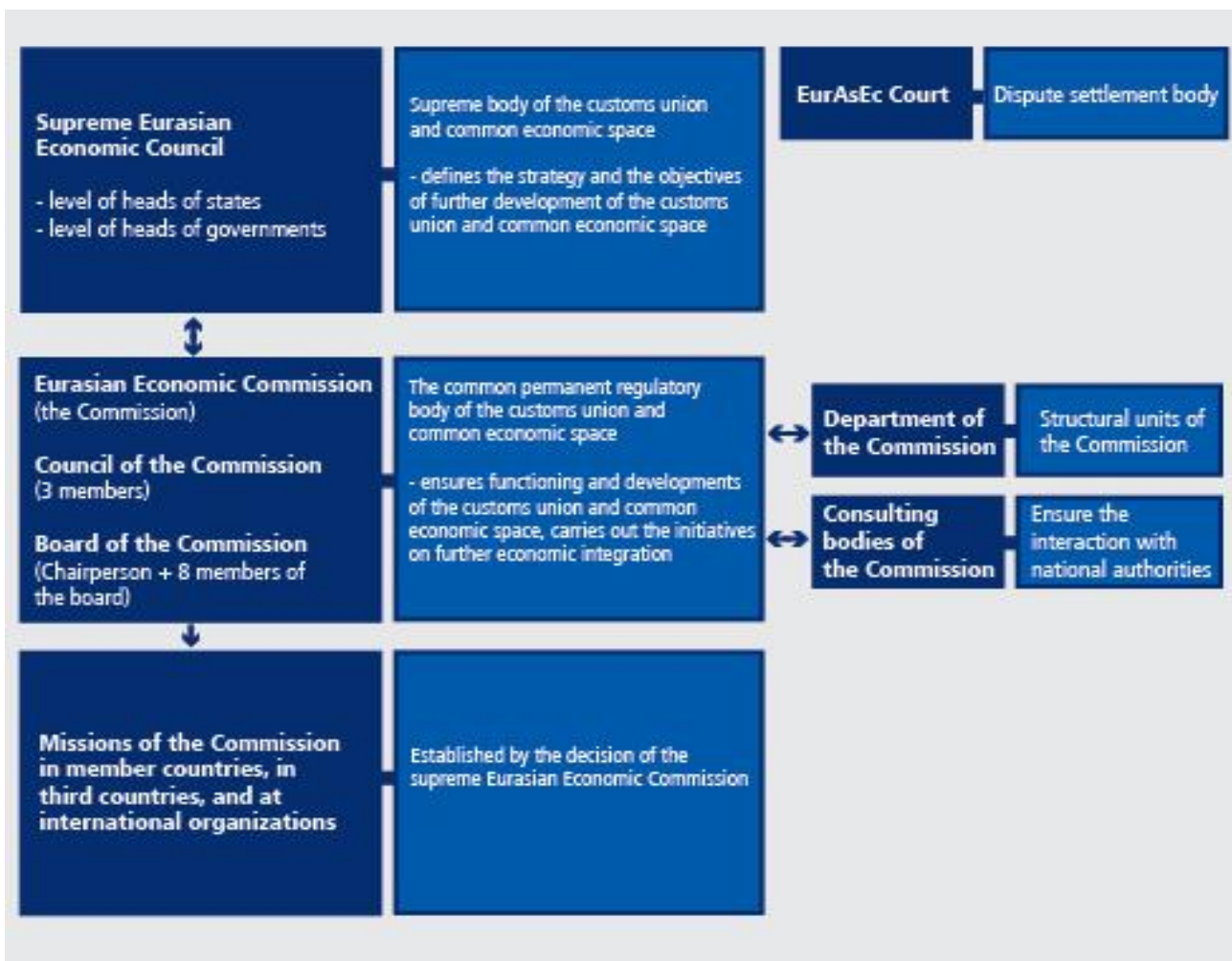
### INTRODUCTION

The 1st July 2008 marks the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the European Customs Union.

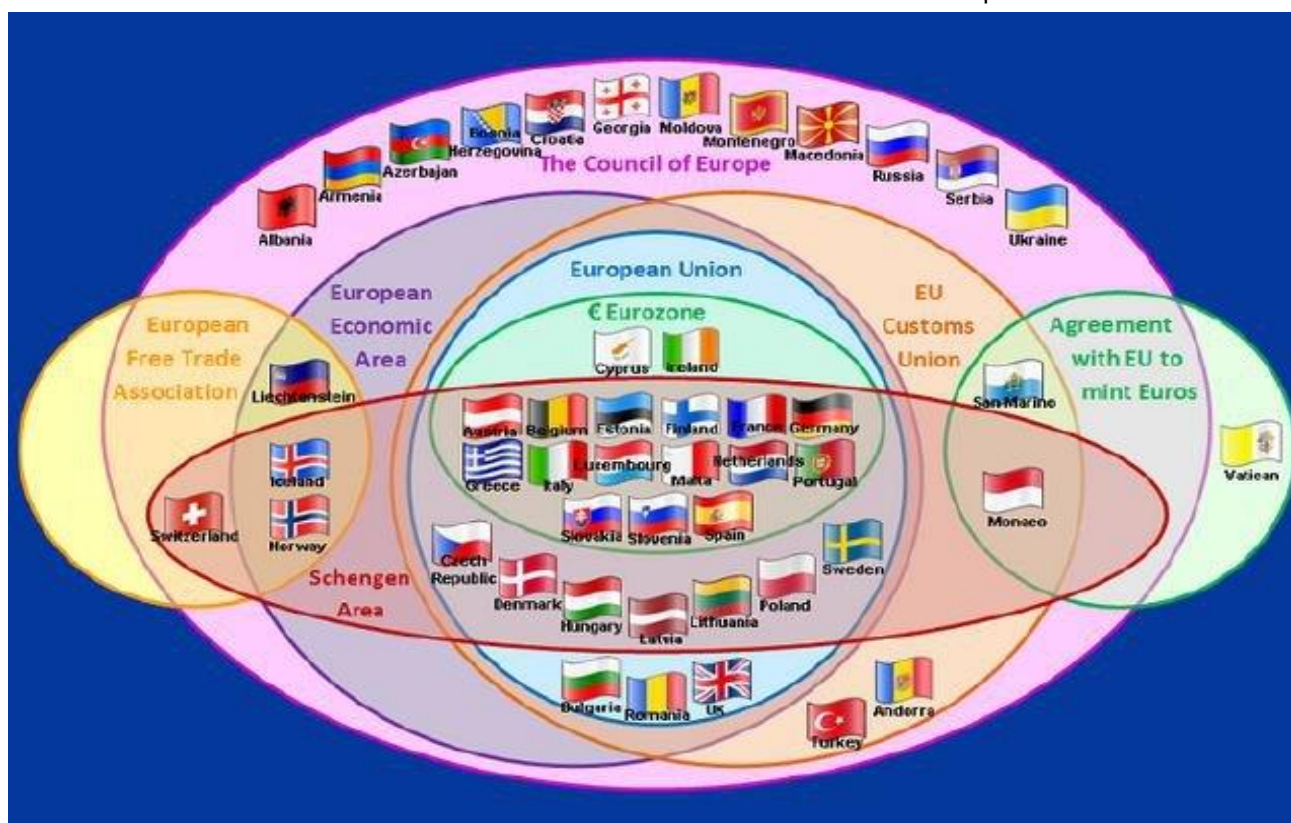
To celebrate this significant event, the European Commission has launched a website dedicated to this topic. The launch of the website marks the beginning of a communication campaign to highlight the important but often invisible role of the Customs Union in protecting citizens and facilitating trade. The campaign brings information to the public about key customs activities such as protection against counterfeit goods, including dangerous fake medicines, foodstuffs and toys.

It shows how customs control the movement of chemicals which can be misused and transformed into harmful drugs, how illegal imports of internationally protected and diseased animals is prevented and how legitimate trade is facilitated by the EU customs union. The website is currently available in English. French, German, Italian, Spanish, Polish and Hungarian versions will also be available soon. Check the site for events that will be organized all over Europe to mark the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the European Customs Union.





Bodies of the Customs Union & Common economic space



## THE CUSTOMS UNION

The Customs Union is essential to the operation of the EU's single market. A single market with no internal borders cannot work properly unless common rules apply at its external borders.

The volume of goods moving across the external borders of the E U is staggering in 2016.

- Around 173 mln. customs declarations were handled.
- The value of the EU's imports and exports totaled over \$2500 bn in.
- Only highly efficient customs authorities can manage such a huge workload without causing major delays or allowing fraudulent, undesirable or illegal consignments to slip through.
- Traders operate on a global market, with modern technology and fast means of delivery.
- Customs authorities therefore have to develop continuously to meet

the expectations of traders, while maintaining or even increasing the level of security enjoyed by European citizens. In addition, customs procedures are used to ensure proper implementation of a number of EU policies related to international trade. For instance:

- The EU's trade policy depends on the existence of a common customs tariff and also uses other customs mechanisms, such as those for establishing the customs value and the origin of goods.
- In the field of development policy, economic cooperation takes the form of granting trade preferences which, likewise, are built around the common customs tariff.
- The common agricultural policy uses numerous customs procedures and mechanisms

The European Union and the Customs Union in particular, has done a great deal to make life easier for travellers. Nevertheless you should be aware of a few basic rules on customs and taxation that might affect you as you move around Europe.

There are also a number of very practical things you should know if you plan to enter the EU or to leave it carrying food, cigarettes or cash for instance.

Customs' role in combating dangerous imports was featured in the magazines of major airlines. In addition, national customs services distributed posters, 820,000 leaflets and nearly 730,000 postcards in 22 languages in various places. The EU Customs Union's 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary was on display along holiday routes for much of the summer. On motorways bookmarks were handed out and billboards carried anniversary adverts. A special event on 4 July 2008 in Paris to mark 40 years of the EU Customs Union brought together EU Commissioner for Taxation and Customs Union, the 27 Directors General of national customs and other personalities.

A "Paris Declaration" on the future of European customs was adopted there. Have you ever considered that what may be commonplace and normal to you and to me may be strange or peculiar to others? Why is that so? Not all changes can be attributed to tradition or custom. And what causes these differences in the first place? How did some of them become "traditional"?

The European Union and the Customs Union in particular, have done a great deal to make life easier for travellers. Nevertheless you should be aware of a few basic rules on customs and taxation that might affect you as you move around Europe. There are also a number of very practical things you should know if you plan to enter the EU or to leave it carrying food, cigarettes or cash for instance.





## CUSTOMS CONTROL

Customs authorities perform customs controls along the external frontier of the EC and within Germany. As a rule, customs officers check travellers on a random basis without a specific initial suspicion.

They thus operate in a preventive way.

In order to be able to carry out necessary controls in a reasonable manner, customs officers have powers, but also obligations. In order to determine whether import or export regulations have been properly observed, customs officers may for example: stop persons, ask for identification documents and examine luggage and the means of transport (car).

If there is a reasonable suspicion that a person is illegally hiding goods under his or her clothing, customs officers may also physically search this person. However, only customs officers of the same sex may carry out this search. A person of the opposite sex may only carry out the search in the event of danger in delay (for example if a person is suspected of hiding a firearm on their body).

Occasionally it happens that articles are found during a customs inspection and it cannot be clarified immediately whether they are subject to prohibitions and restrictions or not. For example, it is sometimes impossible to determine immediately whether certain souvenirs are made of material from a protected species of animal or plant. In such cases, the articles in question can be seized and submitted to a test by experts. As a traveller you have an obligation to provide active assistance during a customs inspection. You must indicate the origin of goods you have with you; tolerate the removal of samples without compensation; at the request of customs officers, provide the assistance required for them to control luggage and means of transport (car). The forms of assistance that might be requested by customs officers include, for example, opening the boot of your vehicle or opening and unpacking your luggage and its contents. Furthermore, Customs is entitled to carry out controls in the cross-border movement of cash in order to combat money laundering.

### Customs Registration

For the maximum simplification of the customs goods registration procedure a contemporary storage zone is organized on the territory of ALIDI's logistic centre. That means all necessary ceremonial functions are registered in one place:

- You don't have to send your goods to a short term storage warehouse. A customs inspector comes to do customs examination directly to the logistic centre.
- A selective weighing, a trial & samples choice & goods marking control are carried out also here.
- A goods customs declaration is worked out and hand in the place.
- The registered goods are freely issued.

### Performed Operations

- Goods and means of transport declaration.
- Customs payment calculation.
- Consultation in selection of the documents for goods customs registration.
- Identifying goods code according to a customs nomenclature of external economic activity.
- Explanation "Incoterms-2000" by delivery conditions definition.
- Consultation in order to get license and certificates or register a passport.
- Working out contracts, invoices and specifications.
- Registration of letters and other documents at and for the customs.
- Registration of CMR, Carnet TIR.
- Being of interest of the customers including documents and necessary information presenting at the customs.
- All the actions that are required for the customs registration.

### Entry from non-EC countries

- Tax- and duty-free allowances for travellers.
- Importing fuel.
- Penalties for smuggling.
- Bringing your photographic equipment to Germany.
- Identification papers/visa on entry.
- Examples of rates of customs duty on imports.

You can bring in goods tax- and duty-free from countries outside the EC within the limits of the current tax- and duty-free allowances.

#### How much fuel can I bring from a country that does not belong to the EC?

The fuel in a vehicle's standard main tank as constructed by the manufacturer can be imported **tax- and duty-free**. An additional **10 litres** in the spare can is tax- and duty-free if the can is brought in with the car or motor cycle. The fuel is only tax- or duty-free if it is used in the vehicle involved.

However, the regulations of individual Member States on the possession and transport of dangerous materials must be observed. Additional charges, fines and penalties will be imposed for any violations of customs regulations. In the case of non-compliance with customs regulations in passenger traffic, a surcharge can be levied (on certain conditions) on the taxes and duties payable instead of initiating criminal or fine proceedings. The surcharge must be paid in addition to the import tax and duty.

As a rule the surcharge corresponds to the amount of the tax and duty that has been evaded.

Infringements of tax laws that do not constitute a criminal offence are called administrative tax offences and are punished by a fine of up to 50,000 Euro. Serious infringements of tax laws constitute criminal offences. They include, for example, smuggling goods that are liable for duty (tax evasion) and importing prohibited or restricted goods. A criminal tax violation is punishable by a fine or a prison sentence of up to 5 years – in particularly serious cases up to 10 years.

The amount of the fine or length of the sentence is decided in the course of the respective court proceedings, in which such legal concepts as intent or negligence are important factors.

The income of the person accused is also taken into account. When criminal or fine proceedings are initiated, the objects on which the proceedings are based can be seized or confiscated for use as evidence. In the EC, duty is only payable on non-community goods if they become a permanent part of the economic cycle. Therefore, in certain cases taxes and duty are not levied on goods that are needed in the EC for a short period only. Personal effects and goods used for sports purposes imported by travellers can be brought in for temporary use.

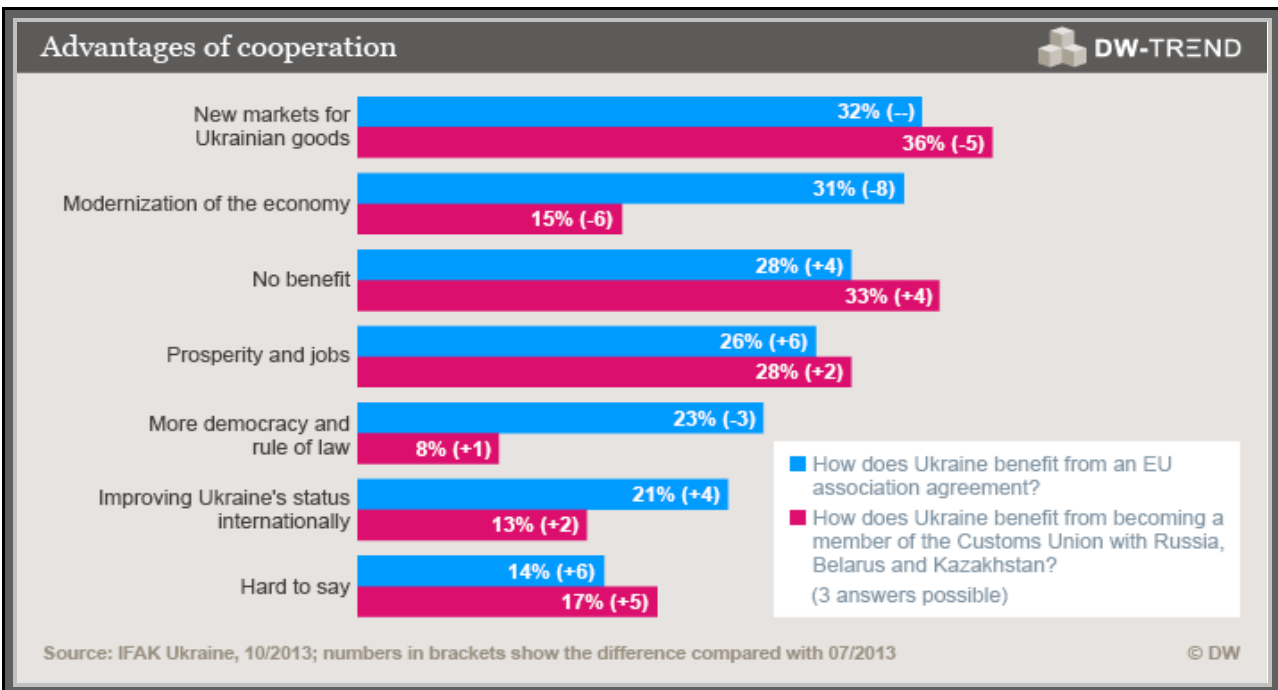
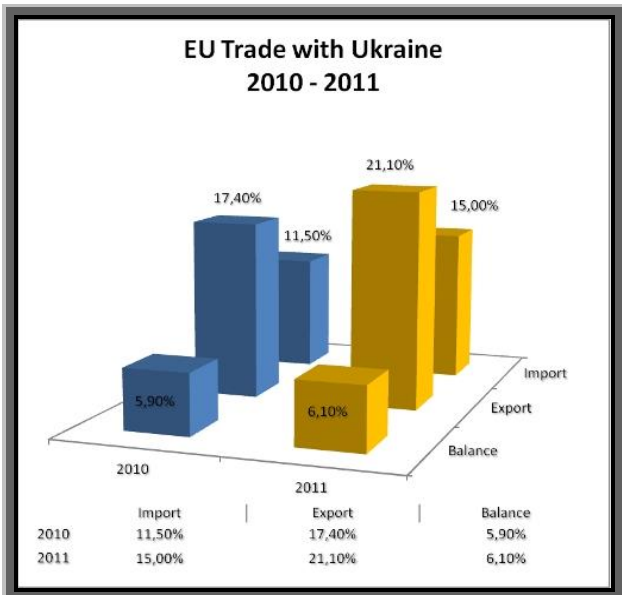
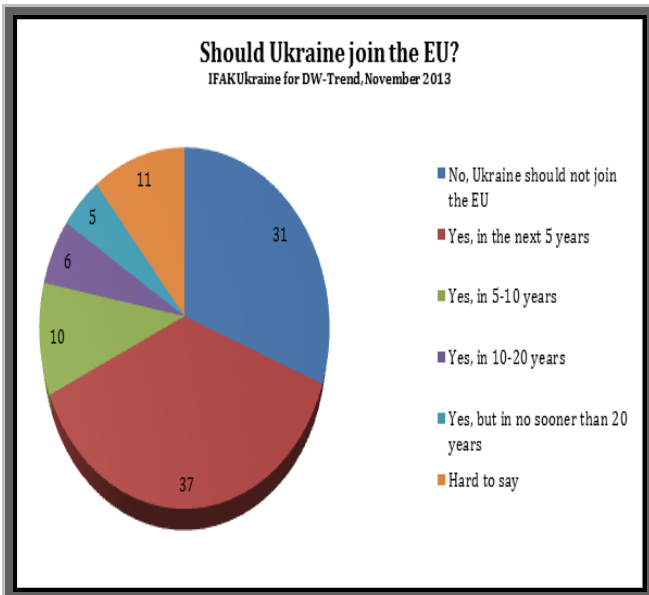
This usually happens without any formalities at all. These include personal belongings, clothing, sports equipment, etc. In the case of highly valuable objects, the customs authorities may require a deposit for the period of temporary use. The amount of the deposit will depend on the amount of the import charges. The customs authority's basic task is to monitor the cross-border transport of goods.

Monitoring the cross-border transport of persons is the job of the Federal Police in Germany. You can find information on the legal regulations on passports (e.g. identification documents, visas) from the Federal Police (only in German) or from the Foreign Office.

#### **Exercise 1. Analyze the information and render its contents briefly in English.**

#### **Exercise 2. Complete the sentences with the facts from the texts.**

1. The volume of goods moving across the external borders of the European Union is staggering in \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Customs authorities perform customs controls along \_\_\_\_\_. 3. The surcharge must be paid in addition to \_\_\_\_\_. 4. The income of the person accused is also taken into \_\_\_\_\_. 5. Personal effects and goods used for sports purposes imported by travellers can be brought in \_\_\_\_\_.



**Exercise 3. Read the information on Logo "40 years of Customs Union" and comment it.**

The logo symbolizes today's values and principles underpinning customs' roles. It expresses the movement of goods, cooperation across borders and the added value of coordination at European level. In order to be effective in protecting the citizen and facilitating trade, the 27 customs administrations in the European Union must act as one. The logo also refers to the circle of golden stars on the European flag that represent solidarity and harmony between the peoples of Europe.

**Classification – customs duty rates**

Trade policy and international duty related conflicts have an impact on EU customs duties and classification. Ongoing opportunities/discussion, e.g.:

- Agricultural products.
- Consumer electronics.
- Chemicals.
- Footwear.

## NATIONAL CUSTOMS SERVICES IN EU COUNTRIES

National customs services in EU countries cannot work in isolation. Nor can the European Customs Union itself in a global trade environment. Cooperation is crucial to the efficiency of EU customs authorities in the face of the many threats they have to ward off.

- Customs as a guarantor of the safety, health and security of the European citizen.
- Its role as a driver for simplification, facilitation, improving quality of life.
- The coordination role of the EC which makes 27 customs authorities work as if they were one.



Alongside the systems for exchanges of information between EU Member States provided for under the EU customs legislation, a number of contact groups have been established to tighten up cooperation between customs officers at the EU's major airports, biggest seaports and main land border posts. In addition, the EU has signed agreements with its main trading partners around the world. Based on those agreements, joint operations and pilot projects are being moved forward to enhance cooperation on the ground between customs officers from the EU and non-EU countries.



The EU has introduced measures to tighten security around goods crossing international borders. This will mean faster and better targeted checks. The results of these measures are positive for the public, industry and customs authorities alike. Customs authorities have introduced proper security checks to protect the internal market and, in close cooperation with major trading partners around the world, to secure international freight transport against smuggling of terrorist-related goods, such as weapons and explosives.

As part of the project to communicate "40 years of Customs Union" a logo was created. Its purpose is to provide the communication campaign with a clear visual identity, and to visually link the individual communication actions conducted at European and national level under a common umbrella. The objective of the project consists of better explaining and highlighting – on the occasion of the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the European Customs Union on 1 July 2008 - customs' roles:

***Exercise 1. Read the passage on graphics manual and bear it in mind.***

The graphics manual is intended to help users reproduce the logo correctly. It includes instructions on how to create the emblem and a definition of the standard colors.

National customs administrations may use the logo in the context of the communication campaigns aimed at highlighting the role of customs in the European Union.

This includes the reproduction of the emblem for individual communication actions such as sport events, Open Days, conferences as well as for information material and on Internet/Intranet sites. National customs administrations ensure that authorities at regional and local level as well as their partner networks use the logo in compliance with the above-mentioned objectives of the Commission's communication project. The logo may be used only in connection with actions that are compatible with the aims of the communication campaign.

Permission to use the emblem does not confer on those to whom it is granted any right of exclusive use, nor does it allow them to obtain ownership of the emblem or any similar trademark or logo, either by registration or any other means. Each case will be examined individually to ascertain whether it satisfies the criteria set out above.

***Exercise 2. Read the information on EU and analyze it.***

***Exercise 3. Make up some dialogues from the information above.***

***Exercise 4. Read the passage on Interactive services and bear it in mind.***



## INTERACTIVE SERVICES

### Tax and customs related services

- Online databases (Data Dissemination System – DDS)
- Tax consultations
- Customs consultations

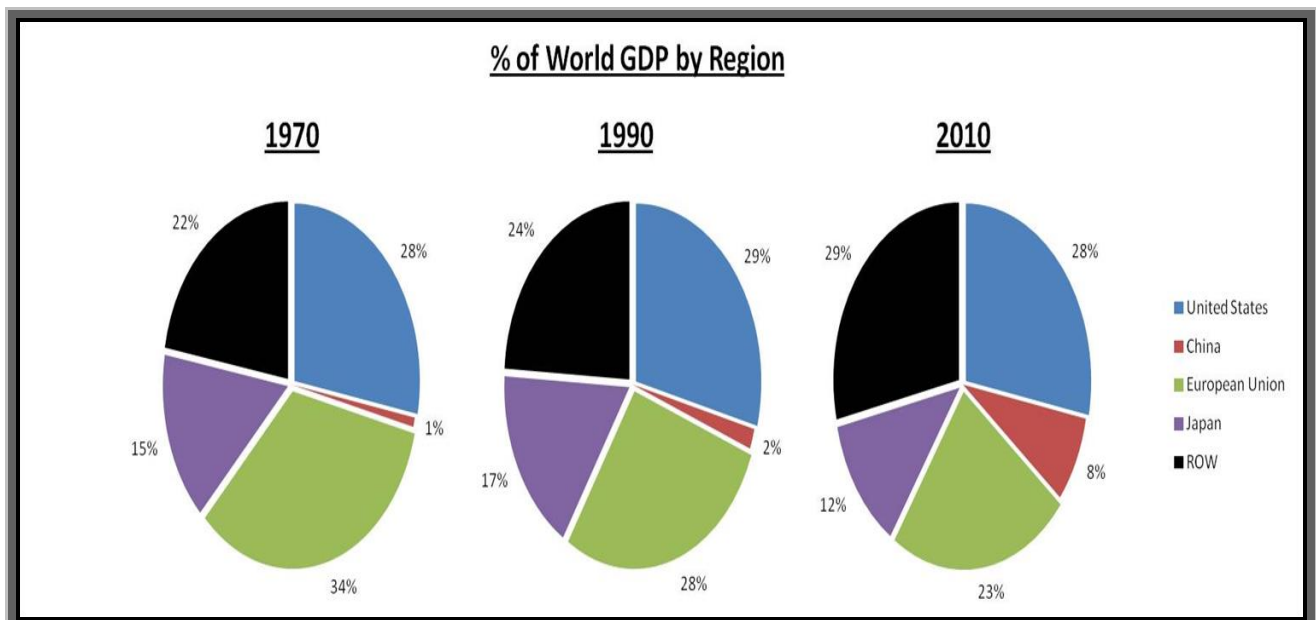
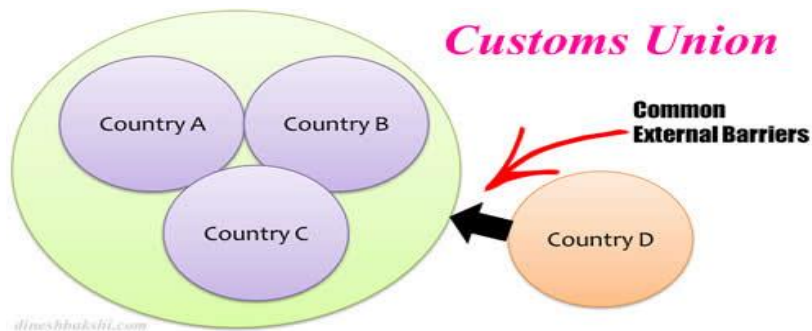
### General Services

- Advice and information services.
- EU Press room.
- EU Law online.
- PreLex.
- Questions about Europe? Contact Europe Direct.
- EU Bookshop.
- Statistics.

### Exercise 5. Answer the questions.

1. What is the graphics manual like? 2. What does it include? 3. What may national customs administrations use in the context of the communication campaigns? 4. What does it include? 5. Each case will be examined individually, won't it? 6. What does National customs administrations ensure? 7. The logo may be used only in connection with actions that are compatible with the aims of the communication campaign, may not it?

### Exercise 6. Make up a small report on the topic and give a talk in class.



Type of goods	Tariff rate as % customs value
Clothing made of	
- textiles	12 %
- leather	4 %
Shoes with uppers made of	
- leather	8 %
- other material	17% %
Gold and silver jewellery	2.5 %
Jewellery	4 %
Cameras	4.2 %
Lenses	6.7 %
Video/cameras, depending on technical details	free-14 %
Computers, notebooks, handhelds	Free
USB sticks, depending on technical details	free-14 %
Monitors, depending on technical details	free-14 %
GPS equipment	3.7 %
Bicycles	14 %
Sports equipment	2.7-4.7 %
- e.g. golf clubs	2.7 %
- e.g. tennis rackets	4.7 %
Ornaments made of	
- wood	Free
- plastic	6.5 %
- base metal (e.g. copper)	Free
Books, pictures	free (import VAT: 7 %)
Prints, posters, photographs	Free
Music cassettes, CDs, videos, DVDs	3.5 %
Motor vehicles	
- cars and quads (four-wheeled motor cycles)	10 %
- motor cycles, cubic capacity up to 250 cc	8 %
- motor cycles, cubic capacity over 250 cc	6 %
Furniture	Free-5.6 %
Cosmetic products	Free-6.5 %
CD players	9.5 %
DVD players	13,9 %
MP3 players depending on technical details	Free-14

## CUSTOMS REGULATIONS & FORMALITIES

The customs formalities for goods import and goods export in general are as follows:

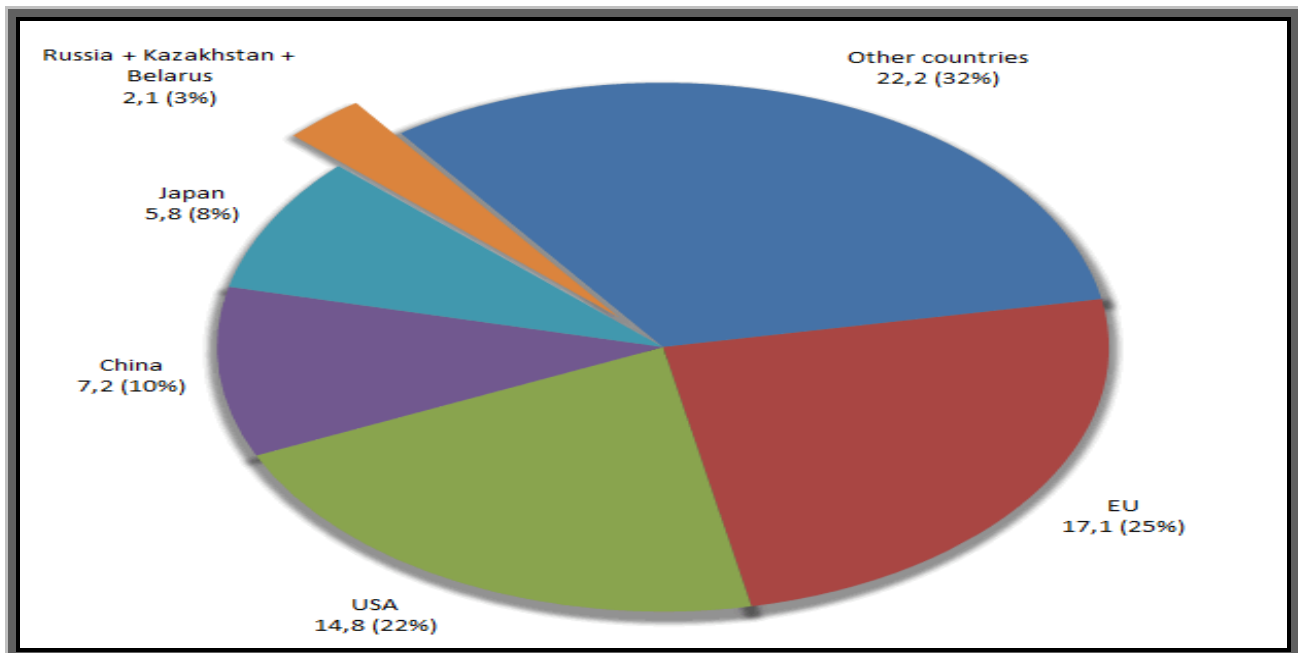
✚ The importer or exporter first checks whether or not the goods to import or export are prohibited or restricted goods by checking the notice controlling the goods concerned of the agency placing the notice in the government gazette or asking information from the government agency directly in charge. "Prohibited goods" means the goods absolutely not allowed to be imported or exported, e.g. obscene objects and narcotics of all kinds.

"Restricted goods" means goods subject to application for permission to the relevant government agency prior to import or export, e.g. goods which after having been imported may have impacts on peace and order and public good morals, medicines, medical instruments, chemical, fire-arms, communication instruments and toxic objects.

✚ The importer or exporter must declare the specification of the imported or exported goods in various entry forms so as to pay the tax and duty, the excise tax and the value added tax at the customer office of importation or exportation concerned.

✚ The importer or exporter must declare the goods kind, the duty rate, the excise rate correctly and in correspondence with such custom, excise tariff as prescribed. The customs rates are of two characters, namely: 1) condition-based duty. i.e. the rate determined according to the unit or weight of the goods; 2) price-based duty. i.e. the rate determined as a percentage of the price.

✚ The importer or exporter must submit the entry and the supporting document decking the specification of the imported or exported goods by calculation the tax and duty required to pay the various fees (if any) the excise tax, the value added tax and complying with the rules and regulations under the customs acts, under the administrative decrees, the custom tariff and other related laws while also paying other taxes and duties or depositing the tax and duty security money in full before applying for receipt of the imported goods or exporting the goods. The importer or exporter must be the person responsible for the correctness of the specifications declared in the various entry forms if they are false, the importer or exporter may be guilty of false declaration, which is subject to such punishment as prescribed in the customs law.



Inbound Customs Formalities

In the inbound customs formalities the required documents are relating to the performance of the import formalities.

**The Import Entry: (1 original, 3 copies)**

Import entry means the document completed by the importer showing the specification of the imported goods and other particulars according to the form prescribed by the Customs Department as evidence for checking about the tax and duty, other fees the excise tax and the value added tax.

**The Airway Bill (AWB): (1 original. 3 copies)**

Airway bill means the document issued by the airline company or agent to the consignor (the origin) and the consignee (the destination) by delivering the original to the consignor, while the copies would be sent along with the goods for delivery to the consignee. One airway bill may be used with only one import entry, except where there is a formality prescribing otherwise or the customs house deems it fit to approve that several import entries be separately made.

**The Delivery Order (D/O): (1 copy)**

Delivery order means the document issued by the airline to the consignee for using in releasing the goods at the cargo terminal. The importer must come to pick up the airway bill and the release order from the company or agent of the airline by himself or by which can do by making a written proxy and also making a copy of the ID card or the manager's signature Sample card from the importer company or owner to present to the company official or airline agent in order to pick up the said document.

**The Invoice, the packing list sticking to the back of every AWB:**

Invoice means the document showing details on the purchase/ sale of the goods prepared by the seller, which must contain the following details:

- The buyer's and the seller's names and addresses.
- The country of purchase. The country of shipment and the country of origin of the goods concerned.
- The invoice number and the date of agreement to buy / sell.
- The statements showing that the goods concerned
  - have been absolutely sold or are already subject to a sale contract;
  - are goods sent on consignment;
  - are sent to a firm, branch, etc.
- The details of the goods brought and sold – the name of the goods, the kind, the trademark or symbol of the goods, the number, the quantity. The net weight, the mark, the number, the quantity, the character, the package and the gross weight including the package.
  - The selling price or the value of the goods per unit and the price total or the total value of the goods in the currency of the purchase / sale.
  - The subsidy or reward or a money of a similar nature received as export promotion from the seller country (if any).

**Various Permits or Certificates: (if any)**

In the import of goods. There are some kinds of goods requiring the permission before importing – fire-arms, for which permission must first be received from the Police Department.

Customs permit: (1 original, 1 copy) means the goods certificate document intended for educing the goods concerned from the warehouse; it is the form required to submit in support of the import entry, which has an original and copies. After the clearance formalities have been completed, the original and the copies must be produced together with the goods to present to the customs officer for correctness inspection before the goods are released from the warehouse.





## **Import entry submission procedure:**

### **The import entry or the set entry form**

It is the entry form required to undergo the formalities at the international Airport customhouse and then to use for the checked and released goods at the cargo terminal, the submission procedures.

- The officer receives the entry, checks the validity of the document, checks the signature, checks the and then to use for the checks the formality passage card and issues the entry number.
- The customs clearance formalitics is registered.
- The supervisor designates the assessing and calculating officer.
- The officer inspects and appraises.
- The officer inspects and calculates.
- The supervisor orders an inspection.
- The tax and duty are paid at the Duty Sub-division.

The entry for which the tax and duty have already been paid is submitted. It must be brought to be processed at the cargo terminal.

### **Special import entry form**

It is the entry required to undergo the formalities at the cargo terminal.

The types of goods required to use with the special import entry:

Daily, periodically, fortnightly and newsphoto newspapers.

Aircraft and components and parts and accessories which are imported for use in place of old ones or for use in repairing.

Passengers belongings which are not brought along with them and do not brought along with them but come in freight not having the character of merchandise in trade.

Gifts sample goods not having the character of merchandise in trade which are exported each time in a taxable value not exceeding €10,000 regardless of how much the duty required to pay.

a. The goods concerned must not be goods granted the tax and duty reduction or exemption under the investment promotion law or other laws or the customs tariff law, except the general reduction under the Ministry of Finance notice.

b. The goods concerned must not be prohibited or restricted goods which are subject to a permit or formality inspection supporting certificate, except goods temporarily exempted from such permit or certificate.

### **Outbound Customs Formalities**

In the outbound customs formalities there are documents relating to the performance of the inbound formalities as follows:

#### **The Export Entry: (1 original, 2 copies)**

Export entry means the document completed by the exporter showing the specification of the exported goods and other particulars according to the form prescribed by the Customs Department to use as evidence for checking about the tax and duty, the tax and duty compensation and checking whether or not the goods have already passed the customs.

#### **The Invoice: (1 original, 2 copies)**

Invoice means the document showing details on the purchase / sale of the goods prepared by the seller for exported goods. Besides its being the document showing the price of the exported goods which must use the F.O.B. price. The Customs Procedure Code has required it to contain the particulars:

- The port of destination and the selling country:
- The names and addresses of the buyer and the seller, the invoice number and the date of agreement to buy and self.
- The mark, number, quantity, character, package and weight including the package.

- The details of the goods bought and sold, i.e. the name of the goods. The kind, the quality, the trademark or symbol of the number, the quantity and the net weight.
- The selling price or the value of the goods per unit and the total price or the total value of the goods. If the selling price is not F.O.B not declaring and deducting various expenses concerned, e.g. the insurance cost, the freight (outside the country) so as to get a price.

The discount, if any, shall be deducted before summing up the F.O.B. total.

**The packing list sticking on the back of every invoice**

Goods are packed in which package, what the package is like, what the package weight is, making it convenient and speedy to clear the goods.

**Foreign Transaction (F.T.) Form 2**

F.T. Form 2 means the printed form established by the Bank of Europe under the Currency Exchange Act for the exporter to enter various particulars about the export of the goods concerned and the conditions concerning foreign currency payment, used in case of each export with a value exceeding €500,000. Goods exempted from being required to have F.T. Form 2.

**Various Export Permits & Certificates (if any)**

In the export of goods from the kingdom, some goods may be exported only when they have passed some conditions. Good of this character are called restricted goods. That is, they may be exported only when prior permission has been received from the relevant agency.

For example, for the goods to be exported to the USA of America, prior permission must be applied from the Ministry of Commerce or for some types of goods there must be a standard certificate in order that they can be exported. E.g. silverware, silk, etc, the details of which can be seen in the section of controlled goods data and goods subject to application for permission from other agencies before passing the customs, for all of which contact must be made to submit the application for the permit or the certificate about 10 working days earlier.

**Various Applications**

In the where the importer has a particular intention which is in accordance with the rules and regulations of the laws. He shall also submit and application notifying of that intention along with he submission of the entry for passing the customs.

**The Export Entry Schedule**

Only in the case where the exporter intends to apply for a refund of the duty on a raw material imported for the production, mix, composition and packing of goods exported.

The export entry schedule is a document prepared by the exporter according to the form prescribed by the Customs department.

It is an important document required to be prepared by the exporter, consisting of 1 original and 1 copy the requirements of which are similar to those in the export entry but would emphasize that the raw material code, the importer code, the exporter code the production formula, the kind of goods and the evidence of application for the duty refund in four of the entitled person under the law (the raw material importer or the export processor) must be declared, to whom the exporter must certify the right transfer with the company seal and the company signature affixed Declaration of particulars in the export entry and the trace particular declaration form.

**Exercise 1. Transfer the given information from the passages onto a table.**

No	Activity			
	Document	When	Where	Score

## CUSTOMS IN EUROPEAN UNION

Customs authorities across the EU are aiming to become the most modern administrations of all in order to serve all Europeans better. In the next ten years, two major initiatives will be phased in.

The electronic customs plan will establish secure, interoperable IT systems for exchanges of data and should lead to a paperless customs system by 2018. European citizens will benefit from a more secure flow of goods, greater protection and less bureaucracy. Modernisation of the Community Customs Code is the legal side of electronic customs. It will pave the way for electronic exchanges of information between national customs and other authorities, which will boost the fight against dangerous products and increase consumer protection. Customs authorities in the EU use the most modern ICT (information and communication technologies) and equipment to perform their tasks.

Information is analysed mainly by automated systems which enable customs to single out high-risk shipments for checking. High-tech scanning equipment enables customs officers to have a look inside containers carried by sea without completely unloading them.

A European network of customs laboratories is working on a common quality policy that will ensure uniform interpretation of new technical standards across the EU. The laboratories are cooperating on joint use of specialised equipment. They are also sharing their scientific knowledge and test results, to make sure that tests carried out on products in one EU country will not have to be repeated in another. The customs laboratories' role is constantly expanding to meet new challenges in the areas of health, environmental monitoring and combating counterfeiting.

The EU Customs Union means:

- No customs duties at internal borders between the EU Member States.
- Common customs duties on imports from outside the EU.
- Common rules of origin for products from outside the EU.
- A common definition of customs value.

Agreement on these four principles between the six founder Member States (Belgium, France, Germany, Italy, Luxembourg and the Netherlands) led to completion of the Customs Union on 1 July 1968, one and a half years earlier than planned in the 1957 Treaty of Rome. After 1 July 1968 drafting of the Community customs legislation was pushed forward to make sure that wherever goods are imported into the EU, the same rules are applied. A legal framework was established covering such important points as:

- Ensuring the common tariff is applied all along the EU's external borders.
- Introducing a common approach on warehousing procedures.
- Facilitating movements of goods in "customs transit".
- Replacing the wide variety of customs documents with a single administrative document. All

the rules on the above-mentioned points were finally brought together in a single piece of legislation, the Community Customs Code adopted in 1992.

The types of goods allowed to undergo the formalities at the cargo terminal without need for an invoice submitted accompanying the entry.

- Sample goods and gifts.
- Various printed matters, documents or reports.
- Various movie films and news reporter.
- Various news or event recording tapes.
- Aircraft components and parts and accessories.
- Daily periodically fortnightly newspapers and newsphotos.
- Passengers' goods which are not brought along with them and do not have the character of merchandise.

## CUSTOMS TODAY

The customs administrations across the European Union are uniquely equipped to play a central role in policing the EU's external borders. This means, for instance, combating smuggling, seizing dangerous counterfeit goods, freeing internationally protected animals and fighting criminal networks, thereby defending the safety and security of European citizens. There is not one EU customs service but 27 national customs administrations working together on the basis of a European policy. And a common legal framework (the Community Customs Code) sets out the rules and procedures to be applied. The 27 customs administrations must act as one.

### **Mission Statement**

Customs authorities shall be primarily responsible for supervision of the Community's international trade, thereby contributing to fair and open trade, to implementation of the external aspects of the internal market, of the common trade policy and of the other common Community policies having a bearing on trade, and to overall supply chain security. Customs authorities shall put in place measures aimed, in particular, at:

- Protecting the financial interests of the Community and its Member States.
- Protecting the Community from unfair & illegal trade while supporting legitimate business activity.
- Ensuring the security and safety of the Community and its residents, and protection of the environment, where appropriate in close cooperation with other authorities.
- Maintaining a proper balance between customs controls & facilitation of legitimate trade.

### **The Two Faces of Customs**

Customs services in the EU play a dual role. Customs officers still act as collectors of customs levying import duties and taxes but increasingly they also work as "watchdogs" securing the Union's external borders to protect citizens' health and safety. Checks to enforce security and safety rules can only be performed at the EU's external borders. It is inevitable that certain cargo shipments which could pose a risk to the safety or security of the EU and its citizens must be stopped and checked.

These checks are different from the task of levying import duties, which customs authorities can perform at a later stage along the supply chain, for example on the premises of the importer or exporter, to avoid congestion at the EU's external borders.

**Watchdog** – лицо или группа лиц, следящие за тем, чтобы компании, фирмы не совершали противозаконных или безответственных действий

**Watchdog committee** – контрольная комиссия, созданная органом законодательной или исполнительной власти; в ее задачи входит контроль за расходом общественных средств или за деятельностью нижестоящего органа власти.

Первым такое название в политическом обиходе получил Совет Конгресса по надзору за разведывательной деятельностью (Congressional Intelligence Oversight Board), в задачи которого входит надзор за деятельностью ЦРУ [CIA]

**The watchdog of the treasury** – "сторожевой пёс министерства финансов", политический деятель (сенатор или член палаты представителей), добивающийся экономии средств в той или иной области.

### **The Watchdog**

Border checks to guarantee the safety and security of European citizens are performed by customs officers in close cooperation with other border agencies, such as veterinary and product safety authorities. Two particular causes of concern for customs authorities with respect to health and safety are counterfeit goods and drug precursors.

**Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.**

**Exercise 2. Write a small essay on the topic.**

**Exercise 3. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**



**Exercise 4. Remember the information below.**

**The Collector of Customs**

Every shipment of goods which enters the European Union has to be declared to customs.

On the basis of the customs declarations, customs officers check the shipment and levy the import duties and taxes due. In 2007, import duties totalling over €15 bn were levied, which is equivalent to 13.2% of the revenue side of the EU budget.

**Trade Facilitation**

Since the Community Customs Code entered into force on 1 January 1993, simplified customs procedures have been introduced to make life easier for European importers and exporters, who generate 22% of world trade. Simplified procedures allow checks to be carried out at the locations most convenient for traders and at the most opportune point in the logistical process. Use of these procedures is subject to authorizations granted to compliant operators once customs have ascertained that they are reliable. Audits also regularly check compliance by authorized operators.

The leaders of the World's Customs administrations recognize their responsibilities to develop a new strategic perspective and policies that will shape the role of Customs in the 21st Century. A blueprint for the management of trade and borders and the role of Customs should embody ambitious aspirations and yet be balanced by pragmatism.

The challenges are many: the globalization of business and trade; development and poverty reduction; complex new governance rules; international terrorism; environmental protection; and the increase in trans-national threats.

Equally, the opportunities for bold, proactive and innovative responses are just as numerous: a global Customs network; better management of borders; a strategic framework with globally beneficial objectives; a deepening Customs understanding of supply chains and their management; leveraging new technology; and the strengthening of Customs partnerships not only with trade but also with other border, law enforcement and other relevant government agencies.

Taking advantage of these opportunities will enable Customs to protect the fiscal and financial interests of the state, to protect national economies from illicit movement of goods, to support the international trading system by creating level playing fields for business, to enhance national competitiveness, to facilitate legitimate trade, and to protect society.

The benefits of an adaptable, strategically focused Customs administration are immense and include reduced compliance costs for legitimate traders, more effective and efficient targeting of high-risk movements, and greater confidence and mutual recognition among Customs administrations of each other's programmes and controls.

During the 50th Anniversary of the World Customs Organization, in 2002, the leaders of national Customs administrations reflected on the main issues impacting on the effective and efficient functioning of Customs in the future.

In the first 8 years of the 21st Century, Customs has been faced with considerable and at times contradictory demands arising from the globalization of trade. On the one hand, there is a need for effective security and control of international supply chains while on the other hand, there are increasing demands for greater facilitation of legitimate trade.

**Exercise 5. Analyze the passage and render its contents shortly in English.**



## CUSTOMS OFFICER

Hong Kong Customs and Excise Department (HKC&E) is headed by the Commissioner of Customs and Excise. As at April 1, 2004, the department has an establishment of 4 931 posts, of which nine are directorate officers, 3 804 are members of the Customs and Excise Service, 504 are Trade Controls Officers and 614 are staff of the General and Common Grades. Hong Kong is one of the busiest container ports in the world. It handled 20.4 mln. TEUs (20-foot equivalent units) in 2003.

Of these, 12.1 mln. TEUs were handled at the Kwai Chung Container Terminal. In 2003, 70 910 ocean-going ships and 365 190 coastal vessels entered and left Hong Kong. Ships and vessels are subject to customs check. Cargoes are either examined on board sea freighters or after off-loading. In 2003, a total of 8.6 mln. passengers arrived in Hong Kong from the Mainland and Macau by sea and by helicopters. They were processed at the China Ferry Terminal in Tsim Sha Tsui and the Hong Kong-Macau Ferry Terminal in Central. In addition, a daily average of 49 helicopter flights between Hong Kong and Macau are operated at the Hong Kong-Macau Ferry Terminal. Four Customs launches conduct maritime patrol in the territorial waters round the clock whereas four high-speed pursuit crafts and two shallow water patrol launches are employed to carry out interception at sea.

The C&ED is an active member of the World Customs Organization (WCO) and Asia Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC). It exchanges intelligence and works closely with overseas customs administrations and law enforcement agencies. The department has also entered bilateral Cooperative Arrangements with other customs authorities on administrative assistance. At the working level, the department and the Mainland customs have each established designated liaison officers to facilitate the exchange of intelligence through direct telephone hotlines.

### Mission

- To protect the Special Administrative Region against smuggling.
- To protect and collect revenue on dutiable goods.
- To detect and deter narcotics trafficking and abuse of narcotic drugs.
- To protect intellectual property rights.
- To protect consumer interests.
- To protect and facilitate legitimate trade and industry and to uphold trading integrity.
- To fulfill international obligations.

### Values

- Professionalism and Respect.
- Lawfulness and Justice.
- Accountability and Integrity.
- Foresight and Innovation.



## CUSTOMS OFFICER IN UK

Officers working for HM Revenue and Customs (HMRC) collect a range of taxes and duties, control imported and exported goods, and prevent banned items from entering or leaving the UK. The powers of customs officers derive from the Customs Management Act 1979.

Officers are appointed by the Commissioners of Revenue and Customs, who are in turn appointed by the Queen. Failure to return a commission by an officer is an offence, as is imitating or obstructing an officer. At any time, any officer may board and search: ships within the limits of a port; aircraft at aerodromes; vehicles that are:

- entering, leaving or about to leave the UK;
- within the prescribed area;
- within the limits of entering, leaving a port, any land adjacent to a port and occupied wholly for the purpose of activities carried on at the port;
- at entering or leaving an aerodrome;
- at entering or leaving a wharf, transit shed, customs warehouse or free zone.

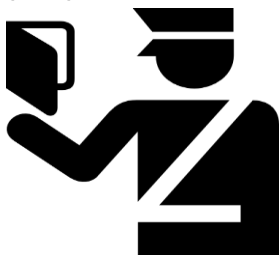
Officers shall have free access to every part of any ship or aircraft at a port or aerodrome and of any vehicle as described above or is brought to a customs and excise station, may:

- cause any goods to be marked before unloading from the ship, aircraft or vehicle;
- lock up, seal, mark or otherwise secure any goods carried in the ship, aircraft or vehicle or any place or container in which they are so carried;
- break open any place or container which is locked and of which the keys are withheld;
- seize any goods found concealed on board any such ship, aircraft or vehicle.

Carrying away an officer is an offence. Officers may inspect aircraft and aerodromes, and prevent the departure of aircraft if they have not given their permission for them to depart. They may stop ships in UK territorial waters for the purposes of checking that they have been cleared to leave the UK. Officers may examine any goods carried or to be carried in a coasting ships at any time while they are on board the ship, or at any place in the UK to which the goods have been brought for shipment in, or at which they have been unloaded from, the ship.

Officers may ask questions with respect to the baggage of people entering or leaving the UK and any thing contained therein or carried with them. They may inspect such baggage.

Any person entering the UK from outside the EU who fails to declare any thing or to produce any baggage or thing as required (unless it they are entitled to exemption from duty and tax by virtue of any order under section 13 of the Customs and Excise Duties (General Reliefs) Act 1979) commits an offence. Any thing chargeable with any duty or tax which is found concealed, or is not declared, and any thing which is being taken into or out of the UK contrary to any prohibition or restriction can be seized. Officers on anti-smuggling duties may haul up, leave or moor vessels where they wish. They may also enter any part of the coast (or of the shore or bank of any river or creek), railway or aerodrome (or land adjoining any aerodrome), and over any land in Northern Ireland within the prescribed area. They may not, however, enter any garden or pleasure ground. An officer may board or enter any ship, aircraft, vehicle, house or place and take such steps as are reasonably necessary to stop or prevent the sending of a signal or message connected with smuggling.



### **Officers may seize:**

- ships or aircraft that have been in the UK or vehicles that have been in a port or aerodrome and are constructed, adapted, altered or fitted for concealing goods;
- ships that have thrown overboard, staved or destroyed any part of the cargo to prevent seizure while the ship is in UK waters or where the ship, having been properly summoned to bring to by any vessel in the service of Her Majesty, fails so to do and chase is given;
- ships or aircraft that have been within the limits of any port in the UK or the Isle of Man, or any aircraft has been in the UK or the Isle of Man where the master or commander fails to account for a substantial part of the cargo that has been on board.

Officers may fire upon ships liable to forfeiture or examination where they have failed to bring to after the commander of any vessel in the service of Her Majesty has hoisted the proper ensign and caused a gun to be fired as a signal and chase has been given. Officers may ask any person entering or leaving a free zone (as designated by the Treasury) questions with respect to any goods.

That person shall, if required by the officer, produce those goods for examination at such place as the Commissioners may direct. Officers may board a vehicle at any time while it is entering or leaving a free zone search any part of it. Officers may, at any time, enter upon and inspect a free zone and all buildings and goods within the zone.

Officers may enter any premises, vehicles, vessels, aircraft, hovercraft or structures used in connection with an excise licence, and may inspect the premises and search for, examine and take account of any machinery, vehicles, vessels, utensils, goods or materials belonging to or in any way connected with that trade. Officers must be accompanied by a constable at night.

If the premises are those of a distiller, rectifier, compounder, brewer for sale, producer of wine, producer of made-wine, maker of cider or occupier of an excise warehouse, an officer, after having demanded admission into the premises and declared his name and business at the entrance may break open any door or window of the premises or break through any wall for the purpose of obtaining admission. Officers or people acting in their aid must be accompanied by a constable at night.

If an officer has reasonable grounds to suspect that any secret pipe or other means of conveyance, cock, vessel or utensil is kept or used by a distiller, rectifier, compounder, registered brewer, producer of wine, producer of made-wine and maker of cider, that officer may, at any time, break open any part of the premises of that trader and forcibly enter them and so far as is reasonably necessary break up the ground in or adjoining those premises or any wall thereof to search for that pipe or other means of conveyance, cock, vessel or utensil.

If the officer finds any such pipe or other form of conveyance leading to or from the trader's premises, he may enter any other premises from or into which it leads, and so far as is reasonably necessary break up any part of those other premises to trace its course, and may cut it away and turn any cock thereon, and examine whether it conveys or conceals any goods chargeable with a duty of excise, or any materials used in the manufacture of such goods, in such manner as to prevent a true account thereof from being taken.

Every such pipe or other means of conveyance, cock, vessel or utensil as mentioned, and all goods chargeable with a duty of excise or materials for the manufacture of such goods found therein, may be seized. Officers must be accompanied by a constable at night, and damage caused by unsuccessful searches shall be made good by the Commissioners.

Officers may, at a reasonable time of day, enter any premises used for the conduct of a business. If they have reasonable cause to believe that any premises are used for gaming to which section 10 of the Finance Act 1997 (gaming duty) applies or are used in connection with the supply, importation or exportation of goods. If they believe serious fraud is occurring in connection with such gaming, they may obtain a court warrant to enter the premises using reasonable force.



Officers may detain any person who has committed, or whom there are reasonable grounds to suspect of having committed, any offence for which he is liable to be detained under the customs and excise Acts at any time within 20 years from the date of the commission of the offence.

Officers may seize any ship, aircraft, vehicle, animal, container (including any article of passengers' baggage) or other thing which has been used for the carriage, handling, deposit or concealment of any thing that has become liable to forfeiture under the customs and excise Acts, or any other thing mixed, packed or found with the thing so liable. They may also seize all the tackle, apparel or furniture in any ship, aircraft, vehicle or animal. That has become liable to forfeiture under the customs and excise Acts. Ships (but not their contents) of over 250 tons (but not hovercraft) are exempt unless the voyage itself was the offence that caused the seizure, or the ship was being chased.

**Officers may "examine and take account of" any goods:**

- which are imported.
- which are in a warehouse or Queen's warehouse.
- which are in a free zone.
- which have been loaded into any ship or aircraft at any place in the UK.
- which are entered for exportation or for use as stores.
- which are brought to any place in the UK for exportation or for shipment for exportation or as stores.
- in the case of which any claim for drawback, allowance, rebate, remission or repayment of duty is made.

Officers may take samples of certain goods, enter premises with a writ of assistance or search warrant, stop and search vehicles or vessels where there are reasonable grounds to suspect that they are carrying any goods which are:

- chargeable with any duty which has not been paid or secured.
- in the course of being unlawfully removed from or to any place.
- otherwise liable to forfeiture under the customs and excise Acts.

Officers may detain people to search their possessions for dutiable alcoholic liquor, or tobacco products, which are chargeable with any duty of excise and liable to forfeiture under the customs and excise Acts. If an officer has reasonable grounds to suspect that

- any person who is on board or has landed from any ship or aircraft.
- any person entering or about to leave the UK.
- any person within the dock area of a port.
- any person at a customs and excise airport.
- any person in, entering or leaving any approved wharf or transit shed which is not in a port.
- any person in, entering or leaving a free zone, or
- in Northern Ireland, any person travelling from or to any place which is on or beyond the boundary is carrying any article which is chargeable with any duty which has not been paid or secured or (if being imported or exported) of which any prohibition or restriction is in force, they may detain them and search them. This search may be a rub down, strip or intimate search, and must be approved by a superior officer or justice of the peace.



## USA CUSTOMS OFFICER

In the USA a customs officer is a Federal law enforcement officer working to enforce customs laws as well as over 400 laws for all Federal Agencies. Customs Officers enforce these laws on every person or thing that enters or leaves U.S. Some include: detecting and confiscating contraband, making sure that import duties are paid, and preventing those without legal authorization to do so from entering the USA. In the past, the USA, customs officers were part of the Department of Treasury and were the oldest Law Enforcement Agency in the U.S. dating back to 1789.

U.S. Customs (CBP) is the 2nd highest revenue collector in the USA though fines, collection of duties, and illegal money seized, only the IRS collects more money for the Federal Government.

Every day U.S. Customs arrests 135 suspects of different crimes, seizes 2,313 pounds of narcotics, confiscate 196 firearms, intercept 210 fraudulent documents, prevents 54 criminal aliens from entering the U.S., and arrests 1 suspected terrorist. Customs Officers hold the most authority of any Law Enforcement agency. They need no probable cause to search, detain, or seize anything or any person. Today customs officers work for the Department of Homeland Security with-in the U.S. Customs and Border Protection (CBP). Customs Officers are at every international Airport, Seaport, and all land border crossings.

**Exercise 1. Describe the main features of an officer.**

**Exercise 2. Analyze the topical vocabulary and remember it.**

**Warrant** – ордер (на арест, обыск); предписание; приказ

to serve a warrant on – выписать ордер на чье-л. имя

The police have a warrant to search the house. – У полиции есть ордер на обыск дома. There is no warrant for such a belief. – Это убеждение совершенно необоснованно [беспочвенно]. Once your application has been accepted, you will be issued with a travel warrant, which you can exchange for a ticket. – После того, как ваше заявление будет принято, вам будет выдано транспортное свидетельство, которое вы сможете обменять на билет.

arrest warrant – ордер на арест

commitment warrant – приказ о заключении под стражу

search warrant – ордер на обыск

valid warrant – действующий приказ, имеющий юридическую силу

void warrant – недействительный приказ

He had no warrant for saying that. – У него не было основания говорить это.

to **warrant** – 1) служить оправданием, основанием; 2) подтверждать, гарантировать, ручаться

Nothing warranted his behaving like that. – Ничто не оправдывало такого его поведения.

I warrant, man, we shall bring you round. – Я ручаюсь, парень, что мы тебя переубедим. I

cannot warrant the coins to be genuine. – Не могу гарантировать подлинность монет. I'll warrant him an honest fellow. – Ручаюсь, что он честный человек. The law warrants this procedure. – Закон допускает [предусматривает] такую процедуру.

3) гарантировать защиту и сохранность, охранять

Let him come! I will warrant him from harm or from injustice. – Пусть он зайдет! Я защищу его от зла или несправедливости.

**Exercise 3. Translate the sentences.**

1. I'll warrant you'll thank me for it in years to come. 2. Magistrates issued a warrant for his arrest. 3. We'll issue you with a travel warrant. 4. The employees feel that industrial action is warranted. 5. The vendor warrants the accuracy of the report. 6. There is no warrant for this assumption. 7. That offense is serious enough to warrant a court marshal.

**Exercise 4. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**

## DIALOGUES

### Customs officer & a passenger

- Will you show me your exit visa, please?
- Just a moment! Here it is.
- Have you filled in your declaration form?
- Yes, of course. Here it is.
- Do you have any expensive gold items?
- Yes. This ring and a lighter.
- You'd better write them down here. Could you open this *travelling bag*?
- Oh, yes.
- What's in this small plastic box?
- There is some jewellery in it.
- Jewellery?
- Yes, an *amber broach*, and also an *amber necklace*.
- Where did you buy them?
- In a small souvenir shop. Here are the receipts.
- Very nice. Now will you please put your baggage on the belt?
- Well, the examination is over.
- Am I through?
- Yes, you can carry on. Sorry *to have kept you so long*. Goodbye.
- Goodbye.



- Good morning, sir.
- Good morning. Can I help you?
- Yes, of course. Where can I *go through the customs*?
- You can find it near *the information desk*.
- Thanks.



- Hello, officer!
- Good morning, sir.
- Here are my passport and my declaration. But I have nothing to declare.
- Are you sure?
- Yes, of course. But what *items* are subjects of duty?
- You can see it here in the *announcement* (notice)
- Oh, there are a lot of things, which I have *to declare*.
- Thanks for your help, sir.
- *Don't mention*, it's my duty.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogues by heart and carry them on with your classmate in class.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Have a cigarette! 2. Would you like to light (up) cigarette? 3. He puffed on a cigarette. 4. I would like to smoke a cigarette. 5. Our soldiers rolled cigarettes during the war. 6. He used to roll his own cigarettes. 7. You should extinguish (put out, stub out) a cigarette. 8. There is a live cigarette on the floor. 9. He liked king-size cigarettes. 10. Do you like mentholated cigarettes? 11. Have you got a pack (packet) of cigarettes? 12. Some people like filter-tipped cigarette. 13. He went out to buy a packet of cigarettes. 14. This is a filter-tipped (low-tar/menthol) cigarette.

**Exercise 3. Read the text below and give a short summary of it and title it.**

I would like to tell you why I have chosen a profession of a customs officer. The choice of my profession was not random. It was not yesterday that I made it. Yet as a schoolboy I decided (made up my mind) to study customs affair and qualify as a customs officer. There are several reasons that account for (explain) my choice. Firstly my elder brother is in legal profession.

A few years ago he graduated from a department of law of Kyiv State University. But it happened so that since that time he has worked as a customs inspector at the Customs House in Borispol Airport. He often spoke with me about his job and gave me a lot of good advice.

From the conversation with my brother I realized well enough that the work of a customs official abounds (is full of) in hardships and problems, which at times are difficult to solve. It requires courage and determination. Besides, I know that customs officers are not ill paid unlike people of many other occupations in our country. Over few years our state has been going through a very difficult period (times). In such a difficult for our state situation many criminal elements try to penetrate into Ukraine.

They import different smuggled (contraband) goods such as narcotics (drugs), cold and fire arms, pornographic video films, false currency and other goods prohibited to export and import. Besides the citizens of Ukraine and other neighboring and far-distant countries transport through Ukraine masterpieces of art, pictures of outstanding and famous painters, museums' displays, different articles of antiques and many others.

The main duty of customs officers is to do all their best to prevent smuggling. Setting up a control over the passengers' movement, their luggage and cargo they defend the economic interests of Ukraine. So, I think I've made a correct choice to be useful for my country.

### DIALOGUE

- Excuse me, please. May I ask you some questions?
- Of course, you may.
- Thank you. Do you like your job?
- Yes, I like it. I like to communicate with people. And working at the passengers department is connected with people.
- What are your duties?
- My duties are 1) inspection of personal belongings and hand baggage; 2) the control under the movement of currency; 3) working with passengers and declarations.
- Is it difficult to do this?
- Sometimes it is very difficult especially when people don't want to understand our rules.
- What's the main problem of your work?
- It is smuggling, of course. It is difficult to detect smuggling articles.
- Do you have all necessary equipment?
- Yes, but it doesn't solve the problem.
- Well, I wish you good luck. Thank you.
- Thank you. Goodbye.

#### **Active vocabulary**

Choice of, profession, at random, customs affair, department of law, job, customs official, hardships and problems, to solve, criminal elements, masterpieces of art, articles of antiques, the main duty, to prevent smuggling.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class. Render the contents of the dialogue in Indirect Speech in English.**

**Exercise 2. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**



## DIALOGUES

- Hi! Helen! Where are you going? You are *so in a hurry*.
- Hello, Ann ! *I'm hurrying to my work*.
- And where do you work, Helen?
- You see I work at one of the Customs Houses. In our border town there are Railway, Sea and Air Customs Houses, you know.
  - And which of them do you work at, *I wonder?*
  - At the seaport. At the passenger's department.
  - And what do you do there?
  - The matter is that there are many different Customs Regulations. According to them there are some restrictions to import and export of some passenger's things, belongings, goods and cargoes. We have a special list of articles prohibited *to import* and *export*.
    - How interesting! Do you like your job? What else can you tell me about your work?
    - Well. As to the customs officers' duties, for example, it doesn't depend on what Customs House he works at. They are the same (similar).
      - And what do you do during the day?
      - We ensure the control over import and export, impose taxes and duties on imported and exported goods, help to raise commodity circulation and do our work we prevent smuggling.
      - But if the passenger has any items, which come under customs restrictions?
      - We ask him *to declare* them (name the items, state their value and other particulars). It sometimes happens that the customs inspector carefully examines a passenger's luggage in order to prevent smuggling.
        - If it is interesting to you I can tell you many things about the customs officer's duties. But now I'm really to go. I'm not used to be late for the work. Let's see tonight at my place. We'll have a chat; drink coffee and I will answer your *entire questions* about the work at the Customs. OK?
        - It's great. I'll be happy to see you again. I'm *really interested in* your work. See you soon. Be in a hurry then.
- Ok. Till tonight. Good luck!



- May I ask you some questions?
- Of course, you may.
- Thank you. What are the main duties of the inspector of the *cargo department*?
- At first, it is checking-up a cargo declaration.
- Isn't it boring to work with papers all the time?
- Declaration – is it only a part of our work. We work with *cargoes* and their owners, or with *declarants*.
  - Is it difficult?
  - Sometimes it is very difficult and we are very tired.
  - What is the aim of the control?
  - Our aim is *to protect economic interests* of Ukraine.
  - Well, *I wish you good luck*.
  - Thank you. Goodbye.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogues by heart and carry them on with your classmate in class.**

**Exercise 2. Render the contents of the dialogues in Indirect Speech in English.**

**Exercise 3. Translate the dialogues paying attention to italic phrases.**

**Exercise 4. Write a small essay on the topic.**

**Exercise 5. Read the facts and describe the customs departments and customs services.**

There are a lot of services at the Customs Houses. The Customs Houses set up the control over the order of conveyance of loads. There are:

**A quarantine of plans**

It intends for the control over the importation and the exportation of plants with the purposes to except the importation of plants, which are affected by diseases. It intends for an embargo on the export of valuable plants or plants which are prohibited to export from the country. The veterinary service makes the control over the order of the importation and exportation of animals, which are forbidden (prohibited) to the conveyance and animals, which are infections.

**Frontier-guards**

It secures the passport control in conformity with the rules of crossing the frontier.

**The representative of the Ministry of Culture**

He secures the control over the order of the importation and the exportation of articles of culture (icons, pictures, and cultural values).

**A special inspector**

He secures the existence of forms of the declaration and explains the order of their filling in.

**A service of safety (security) of flights**

Representatives of this service secure the control with Customs officers. They do all necessary that things, which are threatening for the security of flights, ate not on boards. There are representatives of the militia frontier guard of the service of security. Together with customs officers they ban the transportation of weapons and ammunition, etc.

**Active vocabulary**

Control, passport control, importation, exportation, conformity, frontier, plants, animals, infections, the declaration, to fill in, representatives, frontier guard, weapons, ammunition, ecological service.

**Exercise 6. Give a short characteristic of departments in the customs house of Ukraine.**

## Logistics

### Transportation

- Supply Chain Management
- Shipment Automation
- Global Trade Services
- Delivery & Dispatch Management
- Track & Trace
- Partner registration

### Warehouse

- Order management
- Sort Automation
- Inventory Control & Visibility
- Pick, pack & ship
- Material handling

### Railways

- Reservation
- Ticketing
- Mobile Services
- Revenue management
- Automotive Tracking

## INTERNATIONAL DAY OF CUSTOMS OFFICER

January 26, International Day of Customs Officer is a professional holiday of worldwide customs authorities. On January 26, 1953 in Brussels, there took place the first session of the Council for Customs Coordination, which in 1994 was given its current name – the World Customs Organization (WCO). The World Customs Organization (WCO) unites 171 world states, which are accounted for 98% of the world trade volume. The Russian Federation has been a member of the World Customs Organization (WCO) since 1992 года, actively working as permanent member of the Political Commission and the Financial Committee of the World Customs Organization (WCO).

The World Customs Organization (WCO) is an intergovernmental organization headquartered in Brussels, Belgium. The WCO is noted for its work in areas covering the development of international conventions, instruments, tools on topics such as commodity classification, valuation, rules of origin, collection of customs revenue, supply chain security, international trade facilitation, customs enforcement activities, combating counterfeiting in support of Intellectual Property Rights (IPR), integrity promotion, & delivering sustainable capacity building to assist with customs reforms & modernization.

The WCO maintains the international Harmonized System (HS) goods nomenclature, and administers the technical aspects of the World Trade Organization (WTO) Agreements on Customs Valuation and Rules of Origin. In 1947, thirteen European countries established a Study Group to examine customs issues identified by the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT).

This work led to the adoption in 1950 of the Convention establishing the Customs Co-operation Council (CCC), which was signed in Brussels.

On January 26, 1953 the CCC's inaugural session took place with the participation of 17 founding members. WCO membership subsequently expanded to cover all regions of the globe.

In 1994, the organization adopted its current name, the World Customs Organization.

Today, WCO members are responsible for customs controls in 179 countries representing more than 98 % of all international trade. The WCO is internationally acknowledged as the global centre of customs expertise and plays a leading role in the discussion, development, promotion and implementation of modern customs systems and procedures. It is responsive to the needs of its members and its strategic environment, and its instruments and best-practice approaches are recognized as the basis for sound customs administration throughout the world.

The WCO's primary objective is to enhance the efficiency and effectiveness of member customs administrations, thereby assisting them to contribute successfully to national development goals, particularly revenue collection, national security, trade facilitation, community protection, and collection of trade statistics.

### ***Active vocabulary***

Customs authorities, worldwide, ceremonial events, to celebrate, to appear, to develop, co-operation, in the framework, apart from, to strength, member countries, customs procedures, organizational structure, to operate, to be responsible for, the primary assignment, customs legislation, implementation of effective processes, methods of customs control and clearance, the purpose of study and application, an important line, implementation of the technology, participants, customs law, unreliable declaration, intergovernmental agreements, mutual assistance pursuant, to take place, commissions, permanent members, dynamic structure, activities, efficient operation, international organizations, embassy officers.

***Exercise 1. Read the text and give a short summary of it.***

***Exercise 2. Analyze the instruments of the WCO activities.***

***Exercise 3. Make up some dialogues from the information above.***

***Exercise 4. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.***

***Exercise 5. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.***

## FUTURE ROLE OF THE WCO

The WCO is an inter-governmental organization representing its Members at global level.

In order to address the challenges facing Customs, the WCO needs a new supportive strategy that includes:

- ❖ Strengthening the value proposition offered by Customs to support the international trading system, facilitate international trade and enhance safety and security at the border by:
  - developing an improved understanding of the challenges confronting Customs and formulating options to address these challenges;
  - creating awareness amongst stakeholders of the new role and responsibilities of Customs;
  - developing and maintaining standards and instruments that are responsive to the needs of WCO Members.

- ❖ Representing the Customs community's point of view at global level and strengthening relationships with other international organizations by establishing and maintaining high-level and technical relationships with relevant international organizations (the WTO, UN and specialized agencies, IMO, the World Bank and the IMF) to promote Customs and the role of the WCO.

Providing sustainable Customs capabilities through capacity building:

- developing a clear line of sight between the global Customs mission and implementation at national level;
- developing efficient, effective and responsive Customs administrations that can execute a wide variety of border and supply chain controls.

Repositioning the WCO Secretariat to support its Members by:

- building a policy, research and strategy capacity that identifies and disseminates high quality analysis of global trends and developments;
- supporting existing and introducing new mechanisms for good governance and accountability, including governance in relation to regional structures;
- promoting implementation of WCO instruments by monitoring implementation and compliance by Members and developing a better understanding of implementation challenges;
- reviewing revenue options to sustain WCO operations.

The fast-changing global environment demands that governments and Customs leaders respond to these changes. The challenges are formidable and it is imperative for the international trading system that they are addressed. This visionary statement by global Customs leaders is aimed at meeting the requirements of governments, citizens and other stakeholders.

The New Strategic Direction for Customs in the 21st Century foresees Customs administrations playing a new and dynamic role in providing their governments with a unique set of capabilities to achieve their respective programmes. For decades to come, Customs will remain a vital force for security and the enhancement of the economic well-being of nations.

The WCO has already created an important platform through the adoption of the Standards and a range of international instruments for sharing information, increasing standardization of the regulatory requirements of managing international trade, strengthening risk management and detecting fraud and other threats.

The WCO has developed the most comprehensive programme to date for sustainable capacity building of Customs administrations world-wide. It epitomizes sincere partnership and must reflect the inextricable link between developed and developing countries and their economies. This partnership is based on a new understanding of global interdependence and must foster a spirit of solidarity, mutual help and respect and active cooperation.

**Exercise 1. Explain the future role of the WCO.**

**Exercise 2. Write a small essay on the topic.**



## THE INSTRUMENTS OF THE WCO ACTIVITIES

In order to achieve its objectives, the WCO has adopted a number of customs instruments, including but not limited to the following: *The International Convention on the Harmonized Commodity Description and Coding System* (HS Convention) was adopted in 1983 and came into force in 1988.

The HS multipurpose goods nomenclature is used as the basis for customs tariffs and for the compilation of international trade statistics. It comprises about 5000 commodity groups, each identified by a six digit code arranged in a legal and logical structure with well-defined rules to achieve uniform classification. The HS is used for many other purposes involving trade policy, rules of origin, monitoring of controlled goods, internal taxes, freight tariffs, transport statistics, quota controls, price monitoring, compilation of national accounts, and economic research and analysis.

*The International Convention on the Simplification and Harmonization of Customs procedures (revised Kyoto Convention or RKC)* was originally adopted in 1974 and was subsequently revised in 1999; the revised Kyoto Convention came into force in 2006.

The RKC comprises several key governing principles:

- transparency and predictability of customs controls;
- standardization and simplification of the goods declaration and supporting documents;
- simplified procedures for authorized persons;
- maximum use of information technology;
- minimum necessary customs control to ensure compliance with regulations;
- use of risk management and audit based controls;
- coordinated interventions with other border agencies;
- a partnership with the trade. It promotes trade facilitation and effective controls through its

legal provisions that detail the application of simple yet efficient procedures and also contains new and obligatory rules for its application.

*ATA Convention and the Convention on Temporary Admission (Istanbul Convention)*. Both the ATA Convention and the Istanbul Convention are WCO instruments governing temporary admission of goods.

The ATA system, which is integral to both Conventions, allows the free movement of goods across frontiers and their temporary admission into a customs territory with relief from duties and taxes. The goods are covered by a single document known as the ATA carnet that is secured by an international guarantee system.

*The Arusha Declaration on Customs Integrity* was adopted in 1993 and revised in 2003.

The Arusha Declaration is a non-binding instrument which provides a number of basic principles to promote integrity and combat corruption within customs administrations. *The SAFE Framework of Standards to Secure and Facilitate Global Trade* was adopted in 2005.

The SAFE Framework is a non-binding instrument that contains supply chain security and facilitation standards for goods being traded internationally, enables integrated supply chain management for all modes of transport, strengthens networking arrangements between customs administrations to improve their capability to detect high-risk consignments, promotes cooperation between customs and the business community through the Authorized Economic Operator (AEO) concept, and champions the seamless movement of goods through secure international trade supply chains.

The WCO Secretariat is headed by a Secretary General, who is elected by the WCO membership to a five year term. The WCO is governed by the Council, which brings together all Members of the Organization once a year, in a meeting chaired by an elected Chairperson. Additional strategic and management guidance is provided by the Policy Commission and the Finance Committee. Several WCO committees: the Harmonized System Committee, the Permanent Technical Committee, the Technical Committee on Customs Valuation, Technical Committee on Rules of Origin, the Capacity Building Committee provide best practices on customs competencies.



Abbreviation	WCO
Formation	January 26, 1952; 62 years ago
Type	Intergovernmental organization
Location	Brussels, Belgium
Membership	180 customs administrations
Official language	English and French
Secretary General	Kunio Mikuriya (January 2009 – present)
Former name	Customs Co-operation Council (CCC)



**Exercise 1. Render the score of the passage.**

On 30 June 2007, the Council of the World Customs Organization (WCO) decided to accept the request of the European Community to join the WCO as of 1st July 2007.

This decision grants to the European Community rights and obligations on an interim basis akin to those enjoyed by WCO Members. Full accession will be possible once an amendment to the Convention establishing a Customs Co-operation Council, allowing economic and customs unions to join is ratified by the 172 current Members of the organisation. The WCO plays an important role in promoting international customs co-operation and addressing new challenges for customs and trade.

It is deeply involved in designing and implementing policies worldwide that integrate measures, which help ensure supply chain security, combat counterfeiting, promote trade and development, as well as guarantee efficient collection of customs revenues. Membership of the WCO highlights and confirms the central role and competence of the Community in international discussions on customs issues including customs reform. Community involvement in the WCO will focus on the full spectrum of customs issues, in particular the following broad areas:

- nomenclature and classification in the framework of the Harmonised system;
- origin of goods;
- customs value;
- simplification and harmonization of customs procedures and trade facilitation;
- development of supply chain security standards;
- development of IPR enforcement standards;
- capacity building for customs modernisation and reforms, including in the context of development cooperation;
  - mutual Administrative Assistance for the prevention, investigation and repression of customs offences.

The EC is a contracting party to several WCO Conventions, and contributes to the work of this organisation, including by ensuring presence and coordination with the Member States in defining and representing Community positions in the relevant bodies managing these conventions.

**WCO Regional Training Centres**



## CUSTOMS OF THE XXI CENTURY

The role of Customs is to control the movement of goods and thereby secure the state's interests and safeguard revenue collection. The key aims have been to ensure compliance with state policies and laws applicable to the cross-border movement of goods, to combat smuggling, and to secure borders, whilst ensuring the facilitation of legitimate trade.

Although much of this role will remain the same, the responsibilities in relation to the international movement of goods have broadened, and will continue to broaden, from the traditional role of collecting duties and taxes on international trade in support of the fiscus, to include executing controls and other activities that serve a wider set of government objectives.

The rationale for Customs performing an extended role derives from the following:

- the fact that goods crossing the border are subject to Customs supervision;
- the in-depth specialist skills that Customs have that are required to perform these roles;
- the general understanding and know-how of Customs with respect to international trade, supply chains and traders.

Furthermore, Customs administrations not only administer trade but also possess the unique know-how and positioning to manage crises associated with the cross-border movement of goods.

The common globally accepted mission of Customs is to develop and implement an integrated set of policies and procedures that ensure increased safety and security, as well as effective trade facilitation and revenue collection. This is achieved through efficient and effective use of tools and information in dealing with the international movement of goods, conveyances and people connected with the goods. The objectives that underpin the mission are:

- Promoting certainty, predictability and security of the international movement of goods and people accompanying goods by establishing clear and precise Standards.
- Eliminating duplication and delays in international supply chains such as multiple reporting requirements and inspections.
- Supporting the international trading system by creating level playing fields for business at global, regional and national levels.
- Strengthening cooperation between Customs administrations as well as between Customs and business and Customs and other government agencies by creating meaningful and beneficial partnerships.
- Providing Customs administrations with the capacity to promote regulatory compliance in a manner that facilitates legitimate trade.

Globalization and the other strategic drivers necessitate a new approach to managing the movement of goods through international trade supply chains and across borders. This requires the development of a New Strategic Direction for Customs.

**Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.**

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. What is the role of Customs? 2. What are the key aims? 3. Have the responsibilities in relation to the international movement of goods broadened? 4. What serves a wider set of government objectives? 5. What does the rationale for Customs performing an extended role derive from? 6. What is subject to Customs supervision? 7. What do Customs administrations do? 8. Do they possess the unique know-how and positioning to manage crises associated with the cross-border movement of goods? 9. What is the common globally accepted mission of Customs? 10. How is it achieved? 11. What are the objectives that underpin the mission? 12. What necessitates a new approach to managing the movement of goods through international trade supply chains and across borders?



## NEW STRATEGIC DIRECTION

*Globally networked Customs:* The new challenges of the 21st Century demand a new concept of Customs-to-Customs cooperation. There is a need for closer real-time collaboration between Customs administrations and between Customs and business in facilitating legitimate trade and undertaking Customs controls. The new requirement is to create, in partnership between the various stakeholders of the public and the private sectors, a global Customs network in support of the international trading system. Mutual recognition is an important enabler.

This includes mutual recognition of Customs controls and Authorized Economic Operator (AEO) programmes. The concept of networked Customs is critical for the 21st Century model of managing seamless end-to-end international supply chains.

End-to-end supply chain management enables risks to be assessed in more depth and managed earlier where necessary, it reduces the need to intervene with goods in the choke point of the port of arrival, and it allows for the tracking and tracing of goods throughout supply chains.

The basic operation relies on secure, real-time exchange of information between business and Customs and between the Customs administrations in a supply chain starting with the export administration.

This will require:

- Internationally standardized data requirements for export, transit and import and the implementation of the WCO Unique Consignment Reference number as part of a Cross-Border Data Reference Model.
- Interconnected systems and aligned Customs databases to enable the electronic exchange of data between Customs administrations as early as possible in the international movement of goods.
- Mutual recognition and coordination protocols between exporting, transit and importing administrations to eliminate unnecessary duplication of controls in international supply chains.
- Standards to enable the development of a system of mutual recognition for AEOs.
- A set of rules governing the exchange of information between Customs administrations.

*Better coordinated border management:* This entails coordination and cooperation among all the relevant authorities and agencies involved in border security and regulatory requirements that apply to passengers, goods and conveyances that are moved across borders. The establishment of better coordinated border management for the cross-border movement of goods requires:

- The recognition of Customs or the agency responsible for the Customs function as the lead front-line administration at national borders for controlling the movement of goods. According to the UN Trade Facilitation Network, Customs administrations are usually best suited to develop integrated procedures for processing goods at points of entry.
- The introduction of the electronic Single Window concept that allows a trader to provide all necessary information and documentation once to the designated agency that, in turn, distributes the information to all relevant agencies.

*Intelligence-driven risk management:* The expanding responsibilities and opportunities facing Customs administrations require a more sophisticated understanding of the risk continuum. It is well understood that scarce resources need to be targeted to the higher end of the risk continuum.

The challenges facing Customs administrations are two-fold: how best to apply the rapidly expanding body of knowledge of risk management to identify and mitigate risk at the operational level, & how to apply this knowledge of risk management beyond the operational level & in the management of Customs administrations. The key to this will be the building of feedback learning loops that will allow Customs administrations to integrate risk-related activities.

To learn from past decisions to enable them to build an organization that is forward-looking, with more sophisticated predictive capacity, rather than being merely responsive. *Customs-Trade partnership:* Customs should enter into strategic pacts with trusted economic operators.

Customs needs to understand the concerns of business, while business needs to know the requirements of Customs. There is a need to translate the relationship into a partnership that results in mutually beneficial outcomes.

*Implementation of modern working methods, procedures and techniques:* demands regarding the rapid movement of goods, combined with complex regulatory requirements, require modern innovative approaches. These include audit-based controls undertaken away from the border, moving from transaction-based controls alone to using systems-based controls where the level of risk allows, as well as moving away from paper-based systems.

There is a need to review existing procedures on the basis of international conventions (including the WCO Revised Kyoto Convention) & international best practice.

*Enabling technology & tools:* Customs must take advantage of new and emerging technologies to enhance, amongst others, processing, risk management, intelligence and non-intrusive detection.

*Enabling powers:* In order to address these challenges, Customs administrations require appropriate legislative provisions that strengthen enforcement powers, the provision of advance information and the sharing of information domestically and internationally.

These powers are necessary, in particular, in order to combat organized crime more effectively. More needs to be done to increase the safety of Customs officers.

*A professional, knowledge-based service culture:* The future orientation of Customs requires moving towards a knowledge-based and customer-orientated model. Staff competencies need to support timely customer-focused processes and services that minimize the administrative burden on legitimate trade. Training and organizational culture should support high levels of integrity, demonstrating consistency, transparency, honesty and fairness. Effective change management and leadership skills also need to be developed.

*Capacity building:* Customs administrations need to ensure that they have the capacity and skills across all dimensions of the operating model to perform all Customs functions most efficiently and effectively. It goes without saying that the concept of «Networked Customs» relies on professional and competent Customs administrations, and that intensified and focused capacity building efforts are required to achieve this objective. The Columbus Programme of the WCO is an ambitious international effort to build Customs capacity.

Some of the challenges that need to be addressed include how to manage scarce resources to deliver sustainable capacity building, how to promote effective performance criteria, monitoring and follow-up, how to avoid duplication of efforts and how to manage impediments in the recipient country. Leadership from both developed and developing-country Customs administrations as well as a true partnership are critical to ensure sustainable capacity building.

*Integrity:* The fight against corruption remains an important task that should be undertaken over the years to come. The WCO Arusha Declaration will remain the reference document for all Customs administrations. All the efforts of the Columbus Programme could be undermined and even eliminated without integrity.

**Exercise 1. Analyse the facts and other information given in the book.**

**Exercise 2. Write an essay (100 words) about the activities of Customs Houses all over the world.**





**Exercise 3. Read the rules on Customs Control and explain them.**

An inspection of personal belongings is performed when there are grounds to believe that a citizen is moving items which are prohibited or restricted to take in / out / across the customs border of Ukraine at all without special permit. In such cases a customs house has the right to conduct an inspection of the packed baggage of that citizen. An inspection of personal belongings of citizens is performed in the presence of that citizen or his authorised representative acting on the basis instructions. The inspection of personal belongings in the absence of a citizen is performed:

- in the case there are grounds to suspect that unaccompanied baggage contains items dangerous to the lives or health of people, animals, plants or may materially harm citizens and enterprises;
- when personal belongings are sent by international mail;
- in the case if a traveller abandoned or left his or her belongings and violated (broke) the obligation(rules) of transit of personal things across the territory of Ukraine.

**Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Show me your passport, visa and declaration. 2. Get your passport & your declaration ready. 3. What's the purpose of your visit? 4. Have you gone through the Passport Control? 5. Your passport (visa) has expired. 6. Your visa has to be renewed. (prolonged, extended) 7. You have to turn to the immigration Officer. 8. Where did you get your visa? 9. Your visa is single. 10. Your visa does not provide entry into the country by car. 11. Read our Regulations on plant quarantine, please. 12. Do you have any foodstuffs, fruits, vegetables, flowers, and seeds with you? 13. The entry of these things into the country is prohibited. 14. The entry of collections of insects and plants is prohibited. 15. Foodstuffs of organic origin will be examined by our Vet Control. 16. Agricultural products and seeds will be checked by our quarantine inspector. 17. Do you have a vet certificate for your dog? Show me it, please. 18. Wait a minute, I'll call our vet inspector. 19. Show me your certificate about an injection for cholera, please. 20. You'll have to come with me and you'll be inoculated.

**Exercise 5. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.**

1. Могу ли я вам помочь? Как самочувствие? 2. Предъявите ваш сертификат о прививке холеры. 3. Подождите минутку, я вызову представителя ветеринарной службы. 4. У вас оформлен ветеринарный сертификат на вашу собаку? Предъявите его, пожалуйста. 5. Сельскохозяйственные продукты и семена будут проверены инспектором по карантину. 6. Продукты животного происхождения будут проверены ветврачом. 7. Коллекции растений /насекомых запрещены для ввоза в страну. 8. Ввоз этих продуктов запрещен. 9. Есть ли у вас продукты питания, фрукты, овощи, цветы, семена? 10. Ознакомьтесь с правилами по карантину растений. 11. Ваша виза не дает вам права въезда на машине в страну. 12. Ваша виза однократная. 13. Где вы получили визу? 14. Обратитесь к офицеру-пограничнику. 15. Вам нужно продлить визу. 16. Срок действия вашего паспорта истек. 17. Вы уже прошли паспортный контроль? 18. Какова цель вашего визита? 19. Приготовьте паспорта и декларации. 20. Предъявите ваш паспорт, визу и декларацию.

**Exercise 6. Remember that.**

passport for traveling abroad – заграничный паспорт;  
passport formalities – паспортные формальности;  
passport regime (regulations) – паспортный режим;  
passport-free zone – зона безвизового режима;  
passport-holder – владелец паспорта; подданный;  
British passport-holder – британский подданный.

**Exercise 7. Translate the sentences paying attention to the construction "to be going + Infinitive".**

- We are going to take part in this work.
- My friends are going to pass their exams ahead of time this year.
- I am not going to leave Lviv during my summer vacation, I shall work at some enterprise.
- My friend and I are going to have our vacations together.
- I am going to meet him at the club tonight.
- We are going to translate this text at the workshop.
- I shall be going to visit the theatre today.
- We are going to visit Paris this week.
- I am not going to leave Kiev.
- My friends are going to the picnic.
- My granddaughter is going to see her friends in the children's garden.
- My grandson is going to begin talking.
- They are going to travel together.

**Exercise 8. Read the text about personal examination and add some facts.**

After going through the passport control the passenger has to be examined by the customs officer. If a customs officer has serious reasons to suspect that a passenger is carrying about himself objects liable to confiscation by the customs or he has hidden some articles from Customs examination the officer has the right to make a personal inspection of a suspected person and may even search him.

He may ask the passenger to strip. But he must remember that the personal examination can be made only with the permit of the Customs Office Chief or his deputy.

Personal examination can be made in a separate room in the presence of 2 witnesses. All of them, a suspect, an officer and witnesses must be of the same sex. The customs officer is entitled to rummage every piece of baggage and to use special devices while making personal examination.

The list of all seized things and the protocol of examination must be made and signed by the officer in charge, by two witnesses and by the person accused. A person who is found guilty of smuggling may be punished by the fine or taken to court. Smuggled articles are detained.

The accused person must receive one copy of the act of personal examination and according to the Customs Code the Chief of Customs or his deputy can come to the decision to submit the matter (case) to the court. The accused person has the right to appeal to the court against this decision within 10 days from the date of issue of the act. The decision of the court will be final and binding. If the passenger does not appeal to the court within the stated time the Chief's decision comes into force and the seized articles become the state property.





**Exercise 9. Read the text about baggage and render its main idea in English.**

It is impossible to imagine our modern life without travelling. People travel by trains, by airplanes (airliners), by sea steamers, by river boats, by buses, by cars. They travel for (with) different purposes: on business, on holiday (leave), for pleasure. And all of them take different things with them, so called baggage or luggage. If you look at the passengers hurrying to the airports, seaports, railway or bus stations you can see suitcases, travelling bags, packages, cases in their hands. They can carry their baggage themselves, take a trolley or call a porter. Passengers are allowed to take one piece of carry-on baggage. Passengers can (may) leave their luggage at (with) the left-baggage offices, which are open all day through (day and night). They can take their baggage away at any time they like.

Baggage is usually brought by the line or by the special worker. There are left-baggage offices at all large airports, seaports, railway and bus station both in our country and abroad. But carry-on baggage must not be larger than 55x40x20 centimetres.

For safety reasons this baggage should be securely stowed either under your seat or in an overhead locked before takeoff and landing-baggage allowance is 7 kg.

**Active vocabulary**

To take the baggage, to imagine, the left-baggage offices, for safety reasons, carry-on baggage, landing-baggage allowance, to travel by train, to travel by sea, to travel by air, to hurry to, airport, seaport, railway station.

**Exercise 10. Read, translate the words and their derivatives.**

To administer - administration - administrative - administrator; law - lawful - lawsuit - lawyer; to protect - protection - protectionist - protectionism; to represent - representation - representative; to direct - directly - direction - directive - directness - indirect; to elect - elector - election - electoral; to differ - difference - indifferent - indifference; to observe - observer - observance; to supervise - supervisory - supervision; to depend - dependent - dependence - independent - independence independently; to detect - detectable - detectability - detected - detection - detective - detecting.

**Exercise 11. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the exercise below.**

**Личный досмотр**

1. На основе результатов досмотра и в соответствии с таможенным кодексом начальник таможи вынес решение передать дела в соответствующие органы для решения вопроса привлечения вас к уголовной ответственности. 2. Вы подвергнуты штрафу в 50\$, поэтому я должен задержать их. 3. Вам сообщили дату рассмотрения материалов начальником таможи? 4. Это решение можно обжаловать в 10 дневный срок со дня его вынесения. 5. Эти действия таможенного инспектора оформляются актом производства личного досмотра. 6. Вы получите один экземпляр. 7. Хотели бы вы сделать заявление при составлении протокола задержания контрабанды? 8. Вы сделаете какие-либо заявления, прежде, чем будет подписан акт задержания? 9. Правильно ли отражено в протоколе описание способов сокрытия предметов (от таможенного контроля. 10. Прошу подписать свое заявление и акт. 11. Вам нужно написать объяснение того, что произошло. 12. Распишитесь вот здесь. Здесь записано: "беседа велась на понятном мне языке, и с содержанием протокола ознакомлен". 13. Прошу расписаться в получении копии в ознакомлении с содержанием протокола. 14. Вы можете пожаловаться в течение 10 дней в таможду, которая перешлет ваше письмо в главное управление. 15. Если вы не согласны с решением, вы можете обратиться в суд по месту нахождения таможи или в районный суд в Киеве.

### **Exercise 12. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

#### **Personal Examination**

1. If you disagree with the decision of the Chief Customs Department you can appeal to the People's Court where the Customs Office is located or to the People's Court in Kyiv. 2. The decision not appealed against within the stated time comes into force. 3. The seized articles become state property. 4. Did you keep anything from the Customs examination? 5. We'll have to make personal exam. Please, follow me to another room. 6. Regulations such actions are regarded as smuggling therefore your tape-recorder is seized by the present protocol. 7. I ask you to present the things and valuables, which were not declared of your own free will. 8. I'm asking you again if you've got anything in your clothes (shoes, on your body), kept from the Customs examination. 9. I ask you to show everything you have in your pockets (of jacket, coat, wind breaker, overcoat, inside pockets.). 10. It seems you've left something behind. Open your handbag, please. 11. I insist you show the all the things. 12. Take off your suit (dress, blouse...) 13. I'll check your suit with the help of this device. 14. The device shows, you're hiding some articles. Show them to us. 15. We'll have to resort to other measures.

### **DIALOGUE**

- Good morning. May I see your *passport and declaration*?
- Yes, of course. Here you are. Is everything all right?
- Let me see. Have you got any *drugs or weapons*?
- No, I haven't.
- So, you have to write in words «No, I haven't». Open your car boot, please.
- But I'm in a hurry...
- As these things haven't been *declared* either in your Declaration or during interrogation they are going *to be seized as smuggled articles*.
- But I'll pay you...
- We'll have to make out an *act of seizing smuggled goods*. You'll have a copy of the act. Follow me, please.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class. Render the contents of the dialogue in Indirect Speech in English. Translate the dialogue paying attention to italic phrases.**

### **Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

#### **Personal Examination**

1. We'll have to make out an Act of Personal examination in this case. 2. You'll have a copy of this Act. 3. Would you like to make a statement in respect of the Act of Seizure? 4. Do you have to make any statement before the Act of Seizure is signed? 5. Does the Act state right the ways of hiding (concealment of) things (publications currency & valuable thing) from the customs examination? 6. Please, sign you application and the Act. 7. You'll have to write an explanation of what has happened. Will you sign it here? 8. We've found nothing. We're sorry. 9. It says: "The interrogation was conducted in the language I know and I understood the context of the protocol". 10. On the basis of the Act of personal exam in accordance with the Customs Code, Chief of the Customs (his deputy) has come to the decision to submit the matter to Court to institute criminal proceedings against you. 11. You are to pay the fine of \$50 so I'll keep (seize) them. 12. Did they tell you the date when your case would be considered by the Chief of the Customs? 13. You can appeal against this decision within 10 days of the date of its issue. 14. Will you sign here that you've received the copy and know what the Acts says? 15. You can appeal within 10 days to the Customs, which will send your letter to the Chief Customs Department.

### Exercise 3. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.

#### Личный досмотр

1. Постановление, не обжалованное в указанные сроки, вступает в силу. 2. Задержанные предметы – в доход государству. 3. У вас есть что-то скрытое от таможенного контроля? 4. Мы вынуждены произвести личный досмотр. Прошу со мной в другую комнату. 5. Настаиваю на предъявлении всех вещей. 6. Снимите ваш костюм (платье...) 7. Мы проверим одетый на вас костюм этим прибором. 8. Прибор показывает, что вы скрываете какие-то предметы. Предъявите их, пожалуйста. 9. В противном случае мы должны принять другие меры. 10. Прошу вас выдать предметы, не предъявленные таможенному контролю. 11. Еще раз спрашиваю вас, имеете ли вы что-либо в одежде (обуви, на теле) скрытое от таможни? 12. Прошу вас предъявить содержимое ваших карманов (пиджака, пальто, плаща, внутренних карманов) 13. Мне кажется, вы не все показали таможенному контролю. Откройте вашу сумку. 14. Извините, мы ничего не нашли. 15. Таможенное законодательство квалифицирует такие действия как контрабанду, поэтому ваш магнитофон задерживается по протоколу.

#### DIALOGUE

- Did you keep anything from the customs examination?
- No, I didn't.
- It seems to me that you keep something from us. We'll have to make a *personal examination*.
  - And do you have a *written permission* from your chief?
  - Of course. Here it is. Please, follow me to another room. I ask you to present the things and valuables, which you've not declared at your own free will.
  - I didn't keep anything from the *customs examination*.
  - I ask you to show everything you have in your pockets.
  - But I have nothing to declare.
  - Take off your suit. I'll check it with the help of this *device*.
  - But you'll find nothing.
  - I don't think so. The device shows you're hiding some articles. According to the Customs Regulations such actions are regarded as smuggling, these articles are seized by the present protocol.
  - But I'll pay...
  - It's too late.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class. Render the contents of the dialogue in Indirect Speech in English. Translate the dialogue paying attention to italic phrases.**



## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**examination** – 1) досмотр *Syn. investigation, research, inspection, scrutiny*  
2) осмотр, обследование (свойств, качеств, состояния какого-л. объекта)

to do (make) an examination – проводить осмотр

onceover (perfunctory inspection) – беглый осмотр

custom-house (inspection) examination – таможенный досмотр

3) исследование, изучение (фактов, документов и т. п.)

a careful (close, complete, in-depth, thorough) examination – тщательное изучение

luggage examination – досмотр багажа

drug inspection – досмотр на предмет обнаружения наркотиков

to see up (to, to the end); watch (as far as); look through (to, till) – досматривать

to undergo an examination (by experts) – проходить экспертизу

to make an examination – производить экспертизу

results of examination – результат экспертизы

opinion / decision of a commission of experts – заключение экспертизы

to **examine** – производить досмотр

customs examination list – досмотровая роспись

inspector (examiner; customs official) – досмотрщик

to unbutton, unzip / zip, button – расстегнуть / застегнуть

to take off one's coat – снять пальто

to turn inside out – вывернуть наизнанку

to rip off the lining/ rip the seams – отпороть подкладку / распороть швы

to ear off an insole, a heel – оторвать стельку, каблук

double bottom (top, wall) – двойное дно, крышка, стенка

hollow heel, cover (of a book) – полый каблук, обложка книги

inside a doll (bell, nut, tooth-cap) – внутри куклы, пояса, ореха, колпачка тюбика зубной

пасты

**scrutiny** – 1) внимательный, испытующий взгляд 2) внимательный осмотр; исследование

He was looking downward with the scrutiny of curiosity. – Он внимательно с любопытством смотрел вниз.

to bear scrutiny – проходить тщательное исследование

His record will not bear close scrutiny. – В его документах есть к чему придраться.

close, strict scrutiny – подробное рассмотрение

constant scrutiny – постоянное наблюдение

open to scrutiny – открытый для исследования

under scrutiny – исследуется

under constant scrutiny – под постоянным наблюдением

**inquiry** – вопрос; запрос; расспрашивание; наведение справок

to conduct (make) an inquiry – наводить справки

to launch an inquiry – расспрашивать

discreet inquiry – осторожное выспрашивание

exhaustive (thorough) inquiry – подробное расспрашивание

official inquiry – официальное расследование

to make inquiries about a matter – наводить справки о деле

**investigation** – расследование, следствие (into, of)

to launch an investigation into charges of corruption – начать исследования проявлений коррупции



painstaking (thorough) investigation – тщательное расследование

On / upon closer investigation we discovered the cause of the fire. – После более тщательного расследования мы обнаружили причину пожара.

criminal investigation – уголовное расследование

impartial investigation – беспристрастное расследование

police investigation – полицейское расследование

**inspection** – (о)осмотр; инспектирование; официальное расследование; экспертиза

to carry out (conduct, make) an inspection – проводить осмотр

close (thorough) inspection – тщательный осмотр

cursory (perfunctory) inspection – беглый осмотр

technical inspection – технический осмотр

visual inspection – визуальная проверка

inspection tour – инспекционная поездка

On closer inspection the money turned out to be counterfeit. – При ближайшем рассмотрении деньги оказались фальшивыми.

continuous inspection – непрерывный, постоянный контроль

inspection of documents – проверка документов

right of inspection – право осмотра

routine inspection – текущий осмотр

**Exercise 1. Make up sentences with the topical vocabulary.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Can I help you? How do you feel? 2. Are you having a headache? 3. Let's have your temperature taken. 4. Take this medicine. 5. Medical service in our country is free. 6. You can have your money changed into... at the Exchange Office. 7. You can go to the Exchange Office after the Customs Control. 8. The Exchange Office is open from 9 a.m. to 9 p.m. (day and night, 9 a.m. to 9 p.m. (day and night, without any lunch-hours). 9. The Exchange Office is located in... that house. 10. The Exchange Office is closed for lunch from 1 ...till 2 p. m.... 11. Your declaration gives you the right to change your currency into... on showing your entry customs declaration. 12. What currency have you got and very much? 13. How much' do you like to change? 14. Is your currency declared? 15. Sorry, we don't buy damaged and spotted banknotes. 16. I can't buy these banknotes, they have been withdrawn from circulation. 17. I can't give you these banknotes back, but I will give you a receipt. 18. Take your money, please. 19. Count your money, please. 20. See if the sum is right.

**Exercise 3. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.**

1. Вам придется пройти со мной, и мы вам сделаем прививку. 2. У вас болит голова? 3. Давайте измерим температуру. 4. Принимайте это лекарство. 5. Медицинское обслуживание у нас бесплатное. 6. Можете поменять свои деньги.... в обменном пункте. 7. Вы можете пройти в обменный пункт после таможенного контроля. 8. Обменный пункт открыт с 9 до 9 - круглосуточно, без перерыва на обед. 9. Обменный пункт расположен... в том здании. 10. Обменный пункт закрыт на обед с... 13 до 14.... 11. Ваша декларация дает вам право поменять вашу валюту на... при предъявлении вами декларации. 12. Какая у вас валюта и сколько? 13. Сколько вы хотели бы поменять? 14. Ваша валюта задекларирована? 15. Извините, мы не покупаем поврежденные и испачканные банкноты. 16. Не могу купить эти банкноты, они изъяты из оборота. 17. Не могу вернуть вам эти банкноты, но дам расписку. 18. Возьмите деньги. 19. Посчитайте деньги. 20. Проверьте, правильная ли сумма.

**Exercise 4. Give some Russian equivalents to international ones.**

Protocol, management, administration, result, contraband, presentation.

**Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. You must keep your certificate. 2. You can't change back your unexpended currency into foreign one without this certificate. 3. With this certificate you can re-exchange your unexpended national currency into foreign currency when leaving our country. 4. The certificate is valid for three months from the date of exchange. 5. Since your currency is not declared, I can change it for national currency, but I can't give you a certificate. 6. You should re-exchange your national currency before you go through the customs. 7. Write down what currency you'd like to have. 8. I can change back the amount not more than the one indicated in your certificate. 9. You must countersign your cheque in my presence. 10. Put one more signature. 11. We can cash travellers' cheques only to the real holder. 12. Fill in your cheques and sign them. 13. Please, give me your cheques, guarantee card and your passport. 14. How many eurocheques would you like me to cash? 15. The amount of your cheques must not exceed the guaranteed maximum amount.

**Exercise 6. Read, translate and learn the meanings of the words-synonyms.**

to confess to admit to acknowledge to recognize

To confess means "to acknowledge oneself to be guilty of" or "to admit one's own wrongdoing very much against one's will". If someone confesses to doing something wrong, they admit that they did it. You use expressions like "I confess", "I must confess", or "I have to confess" to apologize slightly for admitting something you are ashamed of or that you think might offend or annoy someone.

To admit means "to agree because it is impossible to deny, to receive or accept as true; as: to admit one's mistakes, to admit the truth of something. If someone is admitted to an organization or group, they are allowed to join it. To acknowledge means "to agree or admit (generally publicly) that something is true". To recognize means "to accept, to admit to be true, genuine, lawful". To identify (someone or something) from having encountered them before; know again

**Exercise 7. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in exercise 5.**

1. Мы можем оплатить дорожные чеки только действительному владельцу. 2. Так как ваша валюта не задекларирована, я могу обменять ее, но не могу выдать справку. 3. Напишите, какую валюту вы хотите. 4. Справка действительна 3 месяца с даты обмена. 5. По этой справке вам обменяют неизрасходованную валюту на... при выезде из страны. 6. Без этой справки вы не можете обменять неизрасходованную валюту. 7. Вы должны хранить эту справку. 8. Вы должны обменять валюту до прохождения таможенного контроля. 9. Могу обменять сумму не выше той, которая указана в справке. 10. Вы должны подписать чек в моем присутствии. 11. Поставьте еще одну подпись. 12. Заполните чеки и подпишите их. 13. Дайте мне ваши чеки, паспорт и гарантийную карту. 14. Сколько еврочеков вы хотели бы чтобы мы оплатили вам? 15. Сумма ваших чеков не больше гарантированно максимальной суммы.

**DIALOGUE**

- Is this your luggage, sir?
- Yes, these three.
- Anything you have to declare?
- No, nothing.
- Uh – huh...what about these two bottles of whisky? And the bottle of gin?
- Oh, dear! This was much fuss about our lost tickets I forgot all about them.
- But the bottle of whisky is half – empty!
- Yeah. I know. I drank it to calm myself down. Do I have to pay duty on them.
- Yes, sir. You will have to.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class.**

**Exercise 2. Read the text about narcotics (drug) and discuss the problem with your classmates.**

Fighting drug business is one of the main problems of each government and each country.

Drugs greatly affect our health and welfare. During last years when Ukraine became an independent state and when our international relations greatly extended our country faced this problem. Law forbids storage and sale of drugs on the territory of any country. In accordance with Customs Regulations one of the main duties of the customs officer is to prevent traffic of drugs. Drugs can enter the country together with passenger's luggage, cargo or with the means of transportation.

That is why customs officers must be very careful when examining passenger's personal belongings, handbags, suitcases and their cargo in order not to allow carrying narcotics into our country. They must be very attentive when examining different kinds of medicine in order to find narcotics and appliances for their use. If a passenger has no narcotics he must write in his declaration from in word: «No, I haven't got any narcotics».

A customs officer must know that if a passenger wants to take some medicine into Ukraine, he has to apply to the *Ministry of Health of Ukraine* and obtain a permit for such medicine. If the customs officer has serious reasons to suspect that a person is carrying narcotics in this case he can make a personal examination of that person. While making such personal examination an officer can use special devices to detect narcotics.

**There are different kinds of narcotics, which the customs officer has to know.**

- opium and its derivatives: morphine and heroin, codeine;
- stimulants: Chloral Hydrate, Barbiturates, Glutethimide, Meprobamate;
- depressant: Chloral Hydrate Barbiturates, Glutethimide, Meprobamate;
- cannabis: Marijuna, Hashish;
- hallucinogens: **LSD**, Mescaline and Phencyclidine.

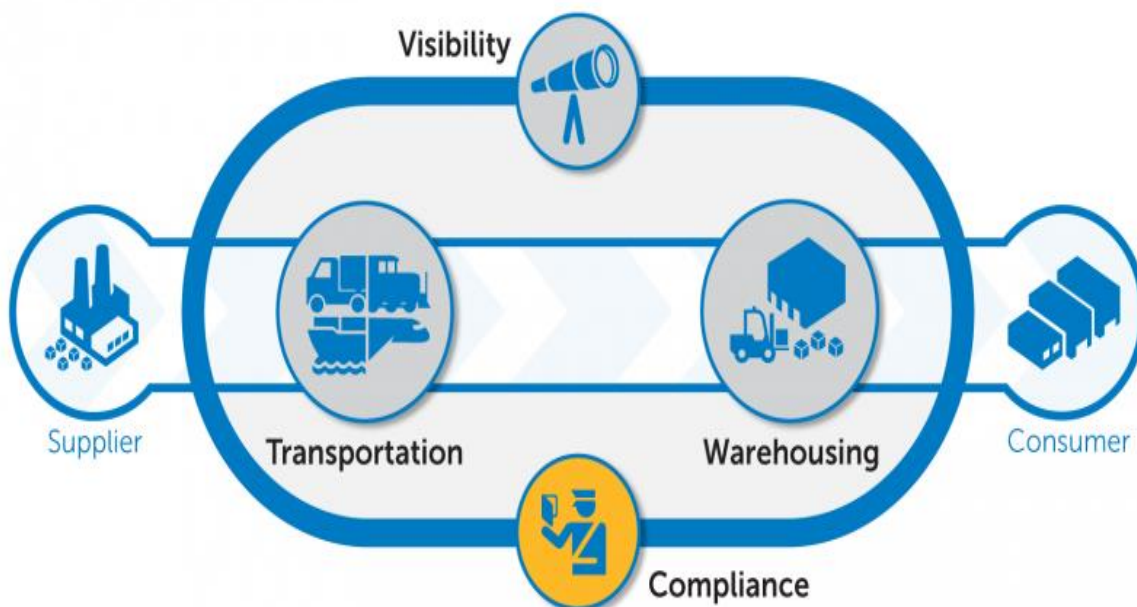
**Active vocabulary**

Drug business, an independent state, international relations, to face the problem, main duties, means of transportation, careful, personal belongings, to carry into, narcotics, handbags, suitcases, attentive, to use, special devices, to detect narcotics.

**Exercise 3. Find some synonyms to ones given below.**

Investigation, control, relation, transportation, devices, principle, theory, law.

**Exercise 4. Analyze the structure of the Customs with the help of the chart.**



## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**drug** – наркотик

a drug addict – наркоман

a drug dealer / pusher – торговец наркотиками

to take drugs – принимать наркотики

to peddle (push, sell) drugs

to traffic in drug – торговать наркотиками

hard drugs – сильный наркотик

soft drugs – слабый наркотик

illegal (illicit) drug – нелегальный наркотик

She has drugged all her life. – Все свою жизнь она употребляла наркотики.

drug abuse – токсикомания

drug addict – наркоман *Syn. druggie, druggy, junkie, junky*

drugola – взятка полиции (за прикрытие торговцев наркотиками)

drugs smuggler – занимающийся контрабандой наркотиков

to be a drug addict – быть наркоманом

drug addiction – морфинизм, наркомания *Syn. morphinism, addiction to morphine*

legitimate drug – наркотик законного происхождения

illegitimate drug – наркотик незаконного происхождения

drug crime – преступление, связанное с наркотиками

drug criminal – лицо, совершившее преступление или совершающее преступления в связи с наркотиками; преступник-наркоман

drug industry – наркотиковый бизнес

drug intoxication – наркотическая интоксикация

to use drugs; to dope – употреблять наркотические средства

positive reaction to drugs – положительная реакция на наркотики

**to dope** – наркоманить Did he dope? – Был ли он наркоманом?

Poetry was comparatively popular because it was dope. – Поэзия была довольно популярна, потому что это был наркотик.

dope fiend – наркоман

to take dope – принимать наркотики

dope pedlar (peddler, pusher, runner) – "человек", торговец наркотиками (розничный, обслуживающий ограниченный круг клиентов)

dope stick – сленг. сигарета

Don't pull any of that dope on me. – Не вешай мне лапшу на уши. I suggested it to a detective, but he laughed at me and said the article was nothing but dope. – Я предложил это детективу, но он рассмеялся и сказал, что это просто газетная утка.

**junky** – наркоман; торговец наркотиками

narcotine – наркотин

narcotism – состояние под наркозом; наркоз; наркотическое влияние чего-л.

narcotic activity – наркотическая активность

narcotic drug – наркотик

to narcotize – притуплять (боль), утишать *Syn. to dull, deaden*

narcotic action – наркотическое действие

narcotic addict (narcotist) – лицо, потребляющее наркотик(и), наркоман

narcotic agent – агент (полицейской) службы по борьбе с наркотиками

narcotic officer – сотрудник службы по борьбе с наркотиками



narcotic dependence – привыкание к наркотику  
 narcotic bureau – амер. полицейское бюро по борьбе с наркотиками  
 narcotic peddler – розничный торговец наркотиками  
 narcotic trade – торговля наркотиками  
 narcotics ring – шайка торговцев наркотиками  
 narcotics control – полицейское подразделение по контролю над наркотизмом  
 opium – опий, опиум  
 opium-eater – курительщик опиума  
 opium den (joint) – притон курительщиков опиума  
 marijuana – конопля *Syn. cannabis, hemp* марихуана (наркотик)  
 marijuana cigarette – закрутка анаши  
 hashish – гашиш *Syn. hasheesh*  
 hashishism – анашизм, гашишная наркомания  
 cocaine – кокаин, коки  
 cocaine inebriation – кокаиновое опьянение  
 cocaine paralysis – кокаиновый паралич  
 cocaineism – кокаиновая наркомания  
 snow-bird – кокаинист  
 to cocaine – впрыскивать кокаин  
 to make an injection – сделать укол  
 traces of injections – следы уколов  
 specific smell – специфический запах

**Exercise 1. Make up sentences with the topical vocabulary.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

#### **Narcotics**

1. If you want to take this medicine into the country you'll have to apply to the Ministry of Health and obtain a permit. 2. Is this medicine for your own use? 3. Why do you have so much medicine for a short stay here? 4. Have you got any narcotics (drugs) or appliances for their use?

**Exercise 3. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.**

#### **Наркотики**

1. Есть ли у вас наркотики или приспособления для их употребления? 2. Почему вы везете так много медикаментов на столь короткий срок пребывания? 3. Эти лекарства ваши? 4. Чтобы ввезти это лекарство в страну нужно обратиться в Министерство здравоохранения и получить разрешение.

**Exercise 4. Make up sentences with the active vocabulary.**

A great deal of, agencies, phenomenon, to compose, serious, to mention, trouble, drastic narcotics, widespread, hard narcotics, synthetic drugs, chemical and pharmaceutical enterprises, to produce drugs, amphetamines, to transfer, to distribute, to fight, drug addicts, drug dealers, drug strategy, law enforcement, international co-operation, education, prevention, treatment, research, to provide the control, drug abuse, treatment and rehabilitation of addicts, to do (make) an examination; cursory (perfunctory, superficial) examination; custom-house examination; post-mortem examination; a careful (close, complete, in-depth, thorough) examination; to bear scrutiny; close (strict) scrutiny; constant scrutiny; open to scrutiny; under scrutiny; under constant scrutiny; to carry out, conduct an inquisition; a cruel, senseless inquisition.

**Exercise 5. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 6. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**

**Exercise 7. Add some information about the problems of drug abuse in Ukraine.**

Many countries in the world are now confronted with a serious problem of drug abuse, despite a great deal of effort made by the agencies concerned. But drug abuse is only one constituent of this phenomenon, which is composed of drug abuse, narcobusiness and narcomafia. The problem of smuggling and the illegal transit of drugs through Ukraine are becoming more serious. Some years ago the Ukraine militia mentioned in its report of fighting drug trafficking, that there were two varieties of this trouble: cannabis (marijuana and hashish) and the extract of poppy straw.

Today the situation has changed. Drastic narcotics are becoming widespread in Ukraine. Our special services revealed some narcotics, smuggling routes from Columbia and the Golden Triangle (*Birma, Thailand and Laos*). Apart from the problem of hard narcotics like cocaine and heroine there is another dangerous problem of spreading synthetic drugs and first of all amphetamines.

And this problem is «*simplified*» by local chemists. The matter is that many of our chemical and pharmaceutical enterprises are at a stand still now. They are of great interest for international narcomafia, which tries to use them to produce drugs.

One of the most popular synthetic drugs today is perhaps ecstasy. At first it was considered to be harmless but later on it proved to be extremely harmful for health.

It is not completely removed from the body. The expressive word «*ecstasy*» only designates a whole group of narcotics from the category of amphetamines. They are strong psycho – stimulants.

One tablet (120 milligrams) is enough to give a rapid fresh surge of energy. Its influence is very attractive for the youth. This circumstance determined the main place where ecstasy is distributed: discotheques. There, one has no problem tasting the relatively cheap ecstasy.

Today the accent has transferred from fighting drug addicts to fighting drug dealers. The major elements of our nation drug strategy are law enforcement, international co-operation, education and prevention, treatment and research. Fighting drug abuse demands the co-ordination between customs, police, judicial bodies, health service and other authorities. For this purpose there has been created the *Interdepartmental Drug Data Basis* in Ukraine.

The drug fighting laws and legislation have been made in our country. These laws provide for control of smuggling and the illicit trafficking measures for prevention of drug abuse, treatment and rehabilitation of addicts, etc. Now there are 70,000 addicts registered in Ukraine but in fact 9,4 should multiply this figure (the coefficient used in all countries). Despite the financial difficulties our law enforcement agencies do their best in fighting drug abuse.

**Exercise 8. Read, find the "comparative construction" and translate the sentences.**

1. The better people know the laws, the less they violate them. 2. The more developed is society, the more perfect are its laws. 3. The better and more efficiently a collective works, the more profit the enterprise will make. 4. The better our work is organized, the more effective is our labour. 5. The more you learn, the more you know.

**Exercise 9. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. I am forbidden tobacco. 2. God forbid! 3. Visitors are prohibited from feeding the animals. 4. I put a positive interdict on my rooms being exhibited. 5. The ban against the tournament was fruitless. 6. She always blessed the old and banned the new. 7. I was forbidden from leaving Russia. 8. God forbid that this should happen to anyone ever again. 9. If you forbid someone to do something, or if you forbid an activity, you order that it must not be done. 10. Time forbids to do it. 11. They were strictly forbidden to engage in any business. 12. They were forbidden the country. 13. He was forbidden the house. 14. It is forbidden categorically (expressly / outright). 15. I was forbidden from leaving Russia. 16. My doctor has forbidden me to eat sugar. 17. All cars are forbidden. 18. The cliffs forbid any easy turning movement.

**Exercise 10. React the dialogues.**

- Is this your luggage?
- Yes, that's the entire luggage I have. I have only one suitcase.
- Have you anything to declare? Any presents, for example?
- Yes, I've got some presents.
- Would you show them to me?
- Yes, here they are.
- Have you any foreign currency.
- No, I've no foreign currency.
- Any jewelry or spirits?
- No, I haven't.



- Excuse me, could you help me *to fill my declaration in*?
- With pleasure. Here you have to write your full name, citizenship, a country of arriving and destination and a purpose of your visit.
- Well, and where can I describe my luggage?
- It is here. Have you got *weapons, narcotics or antiques*?
- No, I haven't.
- So, write in words "No, I haven't". And do you have foreign and Ukrainian currency?
- Yes, I have 800 US\$.
- Write here in figures and in words the *amount of your currency*. And do you
- have anything else to declare?
- No, I haven't.
- So, put the date and *sign the declaration*.
- Is it all?
- Yes.
- Thank you very much!
- You are welcome!

**Exercise 11. Learn the dialogues by heart and carry them on with your classmate in class. Render the contents of the dialogues in Indirect Speech in English. Translate the dialogues paying attention to italic phrases.**

**Exercise 12. Translate the words and word-combinations into English in the correct form.**

**Punishment for drug abuse**

A recent attempt by New Jersey's attorney general to lessen (наказания) for use of marijuana had caused fierce (споры) around the country. Those who detest the drug users sneer and scowl at the light treatment of offenders. They reject the attorney general's recommendation as lacking (мало смысла), claiming it would only encourage more drug abuse. They consider (наркозависимость) much like vermin that must be stamped out. Such citizens continually wait for stiffer penalties.

Those in favour of a milder approach to the drug problem point to the poor results achieved by (тюремные сроки). They feel addicts should be given medical help. Also, in enforcing harsh drug laws, police tend to be viewed as a symbol of (нежелательный) authority. The problem demands a solution. We cannot remain neutral or unconcerned, nor can we afford to muddle through with ineffective measures, for this is not a trifling matter.

**Exercise 13. Translate the following word-combinations using the dictionary and learn them.**

To go beyond the law; to keep within the law; international law; to read law; law and order; to follow the law to go in for law; to practice law; to be at law with smb.; to go to law; to give law to smb.

**Exercise 14. Explain the law-terms and make up sentences with them.**

A drug addict (druggie, junkie, junky); a drug dealer (pushe); to take drugs; to peddle (push, sell, traffic in) drugs; hard drugs; soft drugs; an illegal (illicit) drug; a drug abuse (drug addiction (addiction to drugs); addiction; chronic (hopeless) addiction; alcohol addiction; to stamp out; vermin(s); dependence; drug dependence (dependency).

**Exercise 15. Read, translate and learn the meanings of the words-synonyms.**

**Crime** is an offence for which there is severe punishment by law.

**Tort** is (legal) private or civil wrong for which the wronged person may get redress in a law court.

**Felony** is a major serious crime such as murder, armed robbery.

**Offence** is an illegal act or crime and means breaking of a rule or law.

**Exercise 16. Find the words with the opposite meaning among the following words.**

Independent, latter, unofficial, high, dependent, former, official, low, to begin, to come, with, interesting, to leave, without, to be over, uninteresting, over, theory, civil, practice, under, military, legal, to begin, lowest, forceful, illegal, to complete, forceless, supreme.

**Exercise 17. Read and learn the proverbs and write their Ukrainian equivalent.**

- Promise little, but do much.
- Be slow to promise and quick to perform.
- Don't trouble trouble till trouble troubles you.
- What is once done cannot be undone.
- Anything that is worth doing is worth doing well.
- Handsome is as handsome does.
- A fault confessed is half redressed.
- Guilty though guiltless.
- A guilty conscience is a half-accuser.

**Exercise 18. Read, translate and learn the meanings of the words-synonyms.**

**penalty fine**

Penalty is punishment for wrongdoing (for failure to obey rules, for breaking a law, rule or contract) or a thing imposed as a punishment (for example imprisonment or a fine). Under (or on) penalty of; under the threat of. The charge carries a maximum penalty of ten years' imprisonment.

A punishment is imposed for breaking a law, rule, or contract. It is a disadvantage suffered as the result of an action or situation. For example: the cold never leaves my bones these days – one of the penalties of age. To be under penalty of =under the threat of. For example: He ordered enterprises to fulfil contracts under penalty of strict fines. Fine is a sum of money that must be paid as a punishment for breaking a law or rule. To fine somebody" means to punish a person by fine. (to impose; pay; slap; levy a fine on – налагать штраф).

**Exercise 19. Read and translate the sentences.**

- The maximum penalty for this crime is 10 years' imprisonment.
- The penalty for non-performance of contract is heavy.
- It is part of the contract that there is a penalty for late delivery.
- He was fined for dangerous driving.
- Offenders may be liable to a heavy fine.
- The man was fined for an offence.
- The court fined her 150\$.
- The motorist was fined for dangerous driving.
- He's only a working-man, you see. He hasn't got your fine ways.

**Exercise 20. Read and learn the proverbs and write their Ukrainian equivalents.**

- A fault confessed is half redressed.
- Debt is the worst kind of poverty.
- Many men, many minds.
- Lost time is never found again.
- Easy come, easy go. (or) Lightly come, lightly go.
- A good beginning makes a good ending.
- As you make your bed, so you must lie on it.
- It's not the gay coat that makes the gentleman.

**Exercise 21. Read, translate and learn the proverbs.**

- Necessity knows no law.
- Law makers should not be law breakers.
- Greater the crime, higher the gallows.
- Laws catch flies, but let hornets go free.
- One law for the rich and another for the poor.

**Exercise 22. Read, translate and learn the meanings of the words-synonyms: guilt blame fault.**

All the three words denote responsibility for a misdeed or something wrong.

**Guilt** is the strongest of the three words and should be used when speaking of a serious offence or crime. Guilt is a condition or fact of having done wrong or a blame or responsibility for wrongdoing. **Blame** is used when we want to say that we disapprove or hold someone responsible for something wrong or for a failure. Blame is a responsibility for something done badly or wrongly. Fault is responsibility for a mistake, offence or doing something wrong.

**Fault** and **blame** are synonymous when used in the sense of responsibility for a bad result or something wrong. Both "to be blame" and "to be someone's fault" are used to denote responsibility for deeds of a less serious nature than "to be guilty".

**Exercise 23. Remember that.**

Guilt complex – комплекс вины;  
to bear guilt for smb. – принимать вину за кого-л.;  
to admit one's guilt – признавать свою вину;  
to expiate one's guilt – искупать свою вину.

**Exercise 24. Make up the correct word-combinations out of the words and translate them.**

a) compulsory, criminal, grave, injured, public, censure, crime, measure, record, party

b) to entail, to impose, to issue, to mete out, to serve, a penalty, a warning, a sanction, a reprimand, legal consequences.

**Exercise 25. Read and learn the following Latin phrases.**

Scientia potentia est.	Знания – сила.
Ex libris.	Из книг.
Errare humanum est.	Человеку свойственно ошибаться.
Cogito ergo sum.	Я думаю, значит, я существую.
Manus manum lavat.	Рука руку моет.
Tabula rasa.	Чистый лист.
A casu ad casum.	От случая к случаю.
Vivere est cogitare.	Жить – значит думать.
Alma mater.	Мать-кормилица.
Ignorantia non est argumentum.	Незнание – не освобождает от ответственности.



**Exercise 26. Arrange the following words.**

**a) in pairs of synonyms**

to want, reply, to enter, little, answer, spot, to leave, to begin, to wish, to some in, fast, several, to go away, come, to start, place, quickly, small.

**b) in pairs of antonyms**

far, thick, slowly, long, thin, quickly, patiently, to lift, near, impatiently, to lower, to find, short, forward, cold, to loss, wet, behind, backward, warm, dry, in front of.

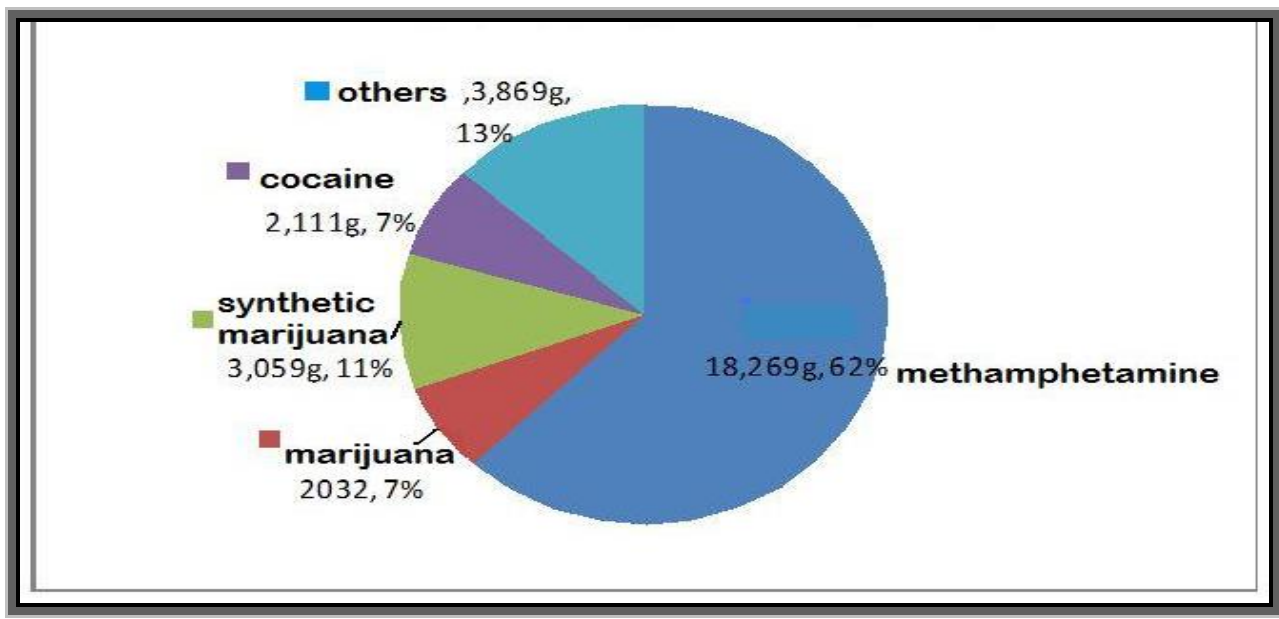
**Exercise 27. Translate the sentences. Pay attention to the translation of the words.**

- The penalty for murder was death.
- They have a rightful claim to their parents' land.
- No one can dispute Nick's claim to the inheritance.
- There is a heavy fine for driving drunk.
- They lost case in the High Court, and had to pay damages.
- The police have a clear case against him.
- Suit is an argument brought to a court by a private person or company, not by the police or government.
- Nothing justifies murdering another human being.
- She was summoned to appear in court as a witness.

**Exercise 28. Read, translate and learn the proverbs.**

- No news (is) good news.
- Nothing venture, nothing have.
- So many men, so many minds.
- (There is) no smoke without fire.
- Silence gives consent.
- To have art and part to something.
- What's done cannot be undone.
- You can't judge a tree by its bark.

**Exercise 29. Analyze the information and use it in practice.**



Drug seized in 2017

## DECLARATION

Customs is an authority or agency in a country responsible for collecting customs duties and for controlling the flow of goods, including animals, transports, personal effects, and hazardous items, into and out of a country. The movement of people into and out of a country is normally monitored by immigration authorities, under a variety of names and arrangements.

The immigration authorities normally check for appropriate documentation, verify that a person is entitled to enter the country, apprehend people wanted by domestic or international arrest warrants, and impede the entry of people deemed dangerous to the country.

Each country has its own laws and regulations for the import and export of goods into and out of a country, which its customs authority enforces. The import or export of some goods may be restricted or forbidden. In most countries, customs are attained through government agreements and international laws. A customs duty is a tariff or tax on the importation (usually) or exportation (unusually) of goods. Commercial goods not yet cleared through customs are held in a customs area, often called a bonded store, until processed. All authorised ports are recognised customs areas.

In some countries, customs procedures for arriving passengers at many international airports and some road crossings are separated into red & green channels. Passengers with goods to declare (carrying items above the permitted customs limits and/or carrying prohibited items) go through the red channel. Passengers with nothing to declare (carrying goods within the customs limits only and not carrying prohibited items) go through the green channel.

These passengers are subject only to spot checks and save time. However, if a passenger going through the green channel is found to be carrying goods above the customs limits or prohibited items, he or she may be prosecuted for making a false declaration to customs, by virtue of having gone through the green channel.

Australia, Canada, Ireland, New Zealand, the UK, and the USA do not officially operate a red and green channel system; however, some airports copy this layout.

Airports within the European Union (EU) also have a blue channel. As the EU is a customs union, travellers between EU countries do not have to pay customs duties.

Passengers arriving from other EU countries go through the blue channel, where they may still be subject to checks for prohibited or restricted goods. In addition, limitations exist on various tobacco and alcohol products being imported from other EU member states, and if those limitations are being exceeded use of the blue channel would be inappropriate.

Luggage tickets for checked luggage travelling within the EU are green-edged so they may be identified. UK policy is that entry into a particular channel constitutes a legal declaration. Some countries in the Schengen area, such as Sweden, have airports that merge the blue and green lanes.

Customs is part of one of the three basic functions of a government – namely, administration; maintenance of law, order, and justice; and collection of revenue.

However, in a bid to mitigate corruption, many countries have partly privatised their customs.

This has occurred by way of contracting pre-shipment inspection agencies, which examine the cargo and verify the declared value before importation occurs.

The country's customs is obliged to accept the agency's report for the purpose of assessing duties and taxes at the port of entry. While engaging a pre-shipment inspection agency may appear justified in a country with an inexperienced or inadequate customs establishment, the measure has not been able to plug the loophole and protect revenue. It has been found that evasion of customs duty escalated when pre-shipment agencies took over. Privatization of customs has been viewed as a fatal remedy.

***Exercise 1. Analyze the passages and render their contents shortly in English.***

***Exercise 2. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.***

**Exercise 3. A statement showing goods being imported on which duty will have to be paid.**

1. Defined configuration, constitution, or makeup of an item, including its geometrical dimensions, color, density, weight, and other visual characteristics that give it a unique identity and differentiate it from other items.
2. Logically structured document with a fixed arrangement of captioned spaces, designed for entering, extracting, or communicating the required information.

**Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

**Declaration**

1. Where is your customs declaration?
2. Have you filled in the declaration?
3. Will you show me the declaration?
4. You should fill in your declaration first.
5. You can find forms on the tables in the middle of the hall.
6. There are forms in different languages.
7. You can fill in only one form for all your family.
8. You have to state all members of your family going with you.
9. You don't have to put it in the declaration.
10. You have filled in the form wrong.
11. You haven't answered this question.
12. You've failed to answer this question.
13. You've missed point 6.
14. Will you write down all your answers in words (in full), instead of these dashes?
15. Children under 16 aren't to fill in it. You'll have to state it in the declaration.

**Exercise 5. Read the text on Customs Declaration and give the main idea of it.**

Declaration is an important document permitting to visit any foreign country. Foreign citizens are allowed to visit Ukraine if they have visa and customs Declaration.

Remember that Customs declaration is not renewable in case of its loss. You must keep your declaration for the whole duration of your stay in Ukraine or abroad.

Person giving false information in the Customs Declaration or to the Customs Officers shall render themselves liable under laws of Ukraine:

1. When filling the Customs Declaration for the person must state: full name, citizenship; arriving from country; a destination; purpose of visit; duration of one's stay.
2. It is necessary to declare all currency, which a person has, not only in figures but in words, too. Crosses and dashes are not allowed in the declaration.
3. A person has to declare any kinds of weapons and ammunition, narcotics, drugs and appliances for their use, antiques and all articles made of precious metals, precious stones. In addition to the objects listed in the customs declaration a person must submit for inspection: manuscripts, films, pictorial matter, stamps, video and audio tape records etc. Citizens under 16 must not fill in the declaration – their things must be declared by their parents.

There are 2 kinds of declaration: *the passenger declaration* and *the cargo declaration*. The passenger declaration is not to be filled in by diplomats and the deputies of the Supreme Soviet. You must be careful when filling in a form. The declaration is to be kept during the whole stay in Ukraine and to be presented on leaving the country. Keep for the duration of your stay in Ukraine or abroad.

In case you lose this declaration, you may be deprived of the right to transfer all the items mentioned in this declaration across the border of Ukraine. Persons giving false information in the customs declaration or to the customs officers shall render themselves liable under the laws of Ukraine.

**Exercise 6. Translate the words and phrases into Russian and make up sentences with them.**

To issue (make) a declaration; solemn declaration; public declaration; customs declaration; currency declaration; declaration against interest; declaration day; declaration in support; declaration of insolvency; declaration of intent; declaration of majority; declaration of neutrality; bill of entry; to adopt / sign a declaration; Universal Declaration of Human Rights; declaration of the poll; declaration of war; to sign a declaration; declaration of rights; a declaration of income; declaration of intension; declaration on oath; declaration of payment; declaration against interest.

**Exercise 7. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

**Declaration**

1. Crosses and dashes are not allowed in the declaration. 2. Will you take a new form? 3. Fill it in once again, please. 4. You failed (forgot) to write (put) the data and to sign it. 5. Will you sign it here, please. 6. Be careful by filling in the form. 7. You are to declare everything before you go through the Customs. 8. Don't worry, try to remember where you could have put the it. 9. The declaration is to be kept during your stay in the country and to be presented on leaving the country. 10. You must keep the form until you leave the country. 11. Don't lose the form otherwise, you might have trouble when you leave it. 12. Be careful and try not to lose the declaration. 13. You might have trouble on leaving the country. 14. You must show 2 forms: entry and exit. 15. Will you read all the points carefully?

**Exercise 8. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.**

1. Это необходимо указать в декларации. 2. Поправки в декларации не разрешаются. 3. Возьмите новый бланк. 4. Вы должны заполнить только один бланк на всю семью. 5. Не потеряйте декларацию, иначе у вас будут проблемы при выезде. 6. Будьте осторожны и попытайтесь не потерять декларацию. 7. У вас могут возникнуть проблемы при выезде из страны. 8. Вы должны предъявить 2 формы: въездную и выездную. 9. В декларации укажите всех членов семьи, следующих с вами. 10. Это не обязательно записывать в декларацию. 11. Вы заполнили декларацию неправильно. 12. Вы должны все задекларировать до прохождения таможи. 13. Не волнуйтесь, вспомните, куда вы могли ее положить. 14. Декларация сохраняется на все время пребывания в стране и предъявляется при выезде. 15. Вы должны сохранить ее до выезда.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for Russian ones.**

1. Ответьте на все вопросы словами, а не ставьте прочерк. 2. Вы заполнили декларацию? 3. Предъявите вашу декларацию. 4. Сначала заполните декларацию. 5. Вы найдете бланки на столах в центре зала. 6. Перепишите ее, пожалуйста. 7. Вы забыли поставить вашу подпись и дату. 8. Будьте внимательны, заполняя декларацию. 9. Подпишите здесь. 10. Внимательно прочтите все пункты. 11. Бланки деклараций на нескольких языках. 12. Вы не ответили на этот вопрос. 13. Вы неправильно ответили на этот вопрос. 14. Вы пропустили пункт 6. 15. Дети до 16 лет декларацию не заполняют.

**Exercise 10. Remember that.**



## CUSTOMS DECLARATION

Full name.....

Citizenship.....

Arriving from.....

Country of destination.....

Purpose of visit.....

(business, tourism, private, etc.)

My luggage (including hand luggage) submitted for Customs inspection consists of .....pieces

In my luggage and with me I have:

1. Weapons of all descriptions and ammunition.....

2. Narcotics or narcotics paraphernalia.....

3. Poisonous, radioactive and explosive substances.....

4. Antiques and objects of art (paintings, drawings, icons, sculptures, etc.).....

5. Ukrainian currency, Ukraine State Loan bonds, Ukrainian State lottery tickets.....

6. Russian rubles.....

7. Other foreign currency (bank notes, exchequer bills, coins) payment vouchers (bills, cheques, letters of credit, etc.) securities (shares bonds, etc) in foreign currency, precious metals (gold, silver, platinum, metals of platinum group) in any form or condition, crude and processed natural precious stones (diamonds, rubies, emeralds, sapphires and pearls), jewelry and other articles made of precious metals and stones or fragments thereof, as well as state papers:

Description	Total amount/ quantity for official		
	in figures	in words use	

8. Ukrainian currency, foreign currency, payment vouchers, valuables or other item belonging to other persons or legal entitle.....

I am aware that in addition to the objects listed in the Customs Declaration I must submit for inspection: printed matter, manuscripts, films, audio and video tapes or cassettes, magnetic media (i.e., computers disks, etc.) postage stamps, fine arts items, means of self-defense, foodstuff, high-frequency equipment, weapons other than firearms, as well as mineralogical and paleontological samples. I also declare that my luggage sent separately consists of.....pieces.

Date.....201....

Owner of luggage.....(signed)

### For official use

A. Cleared on entry to (exit from) Ukraine. Under obligation to return objects listed below to (from) Ukraine, with no right to transfer them to the other parties during visit.

№	Description of objects (with typical indication)	Quantity (in words)	Total value (in words)	Customs
	B. Authorization to spend (change) abroad	YES	NO	



**Exercise 1. Explain the score of the declaration for official use.**

**Exercise 2. Read everything about visa and remember these facts.**

In August 24, 1991 Ukraine proclaimed independent and international status. It means the introduction of visa regime for foreign citizens. Foreign citizens are allowed to visit Ukraine if they have visas, which are issued by consular establishment of Ukraine abroad. To obtain Ukrainian visa a foreigner has to provide the following: a) a valid passport; b) two photos; c) an invitation; d) to pay a visa.

There are some kinds of visas: entrance, exit, and transit. Visa is an important document permitting a foreigner to visit any country.

**Exercise 3. Answer the questions.**

1. Have you ever travelled to a country where you needed a visa? 2. How did you apply for it? 3. Why do some countries require visas? 4. Have you ever been to the USA? 5. Have you ever been to the UK? Did you need a visa? Have you ever travelled to Europe? Did you need a Schengen visa?

**Exercise 4. Translate the words and phrases with the key-word "visa".**

To apply for a visa; to cancel a visa; to deny smb. a visa; to extend (renew) a visa; to get (receive) a visa; to grant (issue) a visa; student visa; tourist visa; entrance (entry) visa; exit visa; diplomatic visa; Schengen visa; visa abolition agreement; VISA card; visa of passport; visa on a document; permanent visa; to obtain a visa; to issue a visa (to) to endorse / visa a passport.

**Exercise 5. Find Russian equivalents to international ones.**

Visa, passport, document, visit, transit, application, permanent, grant, tourist, student, diplomat, status, proclamation, declaration, appeal.



## TRAVELLING TO THE UK OUTSIDE THE EU

You have to go through Customs if you arrive in the UK after travelling from or through a country that is not in the EU. **You must declare:**

- any goods over the allowances listed below that you have bought in a country that is not in the EU;
- any prohibited or restricted goods;
- any commercial goods.

If you have something to declare, go to the red point or into the red channel. Only go through the green (nothing to declare) channel if you are sure that you have no more than the Customs allowances and no prohibited, restricted, or commercial goods.

If you arrive by air and are transferring to a flight to another EU country, you do not collect your hold baggage until you reach your final destination. At *the transfer point*, you only have to declare goods in your cabin baggage. At your *final destination*, you must declare goods in your *hold baggage*.

This is usually the same if you are transferring to a UK domestic flight, but in some cases Customs must clear both your cabin baggage and your hold baggage at the transfer airport. The airline will tell you when this is necessary. You may be arriving with goods for your personal use that you have bought and paid duty and tax on in another EU country. You will not have to pay any more duty or tax as long as you can show, if Customs ask you to, that you have paid duty and tax (by producing the receipt, for example) and that the goods are for your personal use.

### For travellers arriving from outside the EU

- 200 cigarettes or 100 cigarillos or 50 cigars or 250g of tobacco;
- 2 litres of still table wine; 1 litre of spirits or strong liqueurs over 22% volume or 2 litres of fortified wine, sparkling wine, or other liqueurs;
- 60 cc/ml of perfume; 250 cc / ml of toilet water;
- £ 136 worth of all other goods including gifts and souvenirs.

*People under 17 cannot have the tobacco or alcohol allowance.*

### All other goods

If you bring something in worth more than the limit of £136, you will have to pay charges on the full value, not just on the value above £136. If you are travelling as a family or group, you cannot pool your individual allowances towards an item worth more than the limit. You will have to pay charges on the full value of the item.

### *Prohibited and restricted goods from outside the EU*

Certain goods are prohibited or restricted to protect health and the environment. We cannot list all the goods involved but we have listed some of them below.

*Prohibited goods* (that is, goods, which are banned completely:

*Unlicensed drugs*, such as heroin, morphine, cocaine, cannabis, amphetamine, barbiturates, LSD.

*Offensive weapons*, such as flick – knives, swordsticks, knuckledusters, and some martial arts equipment.

*Obscene material*, and indecent and obscene material featuring children, such as books, magazines, films, videotapes, laser discs, and computer software.

*Counterfeit and copied goods* such as watches, clothes, and CDs, also any goods with false marks of their origin.

*Restricted goods* (that is, goods which you cannot import without authority such as a licence):

*Firearms, explosives, and ammunition*, including electric shock devices (such as stun guns) and gas canisters. (Contact your advice centre).

*Dogs, cats, and other animals*, including rabbits, mice, rats, and gerbils. You must not bring these in unless you have a British import (rabies) licence.

*Live birds*, including family pets, unless they are covered by a British Health Import licence.

*Meat, poultry*, most of their products including bacon, ham, sausages, pate, eggs, milk, cream.

But you are allowed 1kg of meat per person as long as it is cooked and in airtight containers. Certain plants and their produce. This includes trees, shrubs, potatoes, certain fruit, bulbs, and seeds.

*Radio transmitters* such as CB radios that are not approved for use in the UK.

### **Active vocabulary**

To to go through customs, to travel, to arrive (in, at, from), channel, transfer, final destination, flight, hold baggage, to pay duty, to pay tax, the customs allowance, outside, prohibited, restricted, goods, counterfeit goods, copied goods, firearms, explosives, ammunition, obscene material, airtight containers.

### **Exercise 1. Study the use of the words in different phrases.**

*VISA: a business ~ ; a diplomatic ~ ; an entry ~ ; an exchange visitor ~ ; an exit ~ ; a multiple ~ ; an official (service) ~ ; a tourist ~ ; a transit ~ ; a valid ~ ; to apply for a ~ ; to cancel a ~ ; to deny ~ ; to extend the validity of a ~ ; to grant a ~ ; to issue a ~ ; to make an application for a ~ ; to prolong the validity of a ~ ; to refuse a ~ .*

## **DIALOGUE**

- Good morning, Miss Tilson.
- Good morning, sir.
- I need a visa *to enter your country*.
- All right. What's your name?
- My name is Diamond.
- And what is the purpose of your trip? *Business or pleasure?*
- Pleasure.
- When are you planning to leave?
- In two weeks.
- All right. And how long do you *intend to stay?*
- I think for about a month.
- Are you going alone?
- No, with my wife. Actually, this will be our *honeymoon*.
- Fine. Fill in these forms, in duplicate, for each of you. You need two photos and your passport, of course. It takes about four days *to process the visa applications*, so you may pick them up next Friday.

### **Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class.**

### **Exercise 2. Translate the singlerooted words and phrases.**

Detection; to detect; detecting; detectable; a detected cheat; detected crime; detected criminal; detected error; detected offence; detected offender; an amateur detective; private detective; detective novel; detective bureau; detective constable; detective force; detective investigation; detective investigator; detective police; detective story; detective-inspector; detectophone.



**Exercise 3. Make up sentences with the words and phrases from active vocabulary.**

**Exercise 4. Look at the list of items in the table. Discuss which of them you think travellers are allowed to bring into the countries indicated. Fill in the first two columns.**

P= permitted      X = completely banned      R = restricted

Items	All countries	Your country	The UK
small handgun			
a family pet			
antique pistol			
a box of 200cigaret.			
a pornographic video			
a porno magazine			
a kitchen knife			
a flick-knife			
a salami sausage 2kg			
two liters of vodka			
a kilo of fresh oranges			
a souvenir painting / J40			
a CB radio			

**Exercise 5. Read a recorded telephone message giving information on visa requirements for travellers to the USA. Decide whether the following statements are true or false.**

- A British citizen only requires a visa if he or she is staying for more than 19 days.
- Citizens from Japan can participate in the visa-waver programme.
- You are allowed to work while in the US.
- You can enter on any airline or sea carrier.
- You are allowed to make return trips to Mexico while you are in the US
- If you need a visa for a holiday the correct visa is a B1 / B2 visa.
- You should get your visa before you buy your travel ticket
- If you have already been refused a visa you will not get one when you apply again.
- Postal applications take about three weeks.

**Exercise 6. Translate the words & word-combinations into Russian; make up sentences with them.**

To forbid; to forbid smb. the country; to forbid the house; time forbids; to forbid categorically (expressly, outright); to forbid categorically/expressly/outright; forbidden; forbidden fruit; forbidden ground; forbidden act; a forbidding look; a forbidding task; a forbidding coast; his attitude was forbidding; forbidding walls; forbiddenness; prohibited imports; prohibited articles; prohibited goods; prohibited time; to prohibit; prohibition; prohibitive; to interdict; interdictory; to ban; under ban; ban of the rule; to belong to an outlaw terrorist group; outlaw strike; to outlaw smoking in public.

**Exercise 7. Translate the sentences.**

1. They were strictly forbidden to engage in any business. 2. Time forbids to do it. 3. I am forbidden tobacco. 4. God forbid! 5. Environmental laws forbid alteration of the coast. 6. Custom forbids any modernisation. 7. The doctor has forbidden him to drink alcohol. 8. "Walking on the grass is forbidden".

**Exercise 8. Read the text and give a short summary of it.**

This is the American Embassy visa information line. This service includes information on various types of visa and related matters. A visa is not required for British citizens for most holidays and business visits of ninety days or less. In total citizens of 25 countries are able to travel to the US without a visa. You must be a citizen of one of the following countries: the UK, Andorra, Argentina, Australia, Austria, Belgium, Brunei, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Liechtenstein, Luxemburg, Monaco, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, San Marino, Spain, Sweden, and Switzerland. In addition to being a citizen of a qualifying visa – free travel country, you cannot stay in the US for longer than ninety days, you cannot perform productive work, and you are not allowed to accept paid or unpaid employment while in the US. If you are entering by air or sea (including ferry) you must hold a return ticket or an onward ticket, and you must enter on board an air or sea carrier that has agreed to participate in the programme.

Please check with your airline to make sure they participate in the programme. If your onward ticket terminates in Canada, Mexico, Bermuda, or one of the Caribbean Islands, you must be a resident of that country of destination. You must carry an unexpired passport valid for more than ninety days. If you are entering the US overland from Canada or Mexico you don't need to have a visa.

However, you need to complete a visa – waiver application form at the border crossing. Once you enter the US you may make side – trips to Canada, Mexico, and the needing a visa. If you are not a citizen of one of the countries named, or you plan to be in the US for longer than 90 days, you need a visa. A B1/ B2 visitor's visa is the appropriate visa for holiday and business visits. You cannot perform productive work or accept paid or unpaid employment while in the US. If you require a visa for travel to the US the embassy strongly recommends that you obtain a visa before purchasing your ticket. You may apply for a visa through the post. Unfortunately, because of the high demand, an appointment to apply in person at the embassy may not be available for several weeks.

In addition, those who have been refused visas twice in the past six months are not eligible for further consideration. Please note that applications by post take three weeks. To apply by post, please send a completed visa application form, your passport, a receipt showing payment of the visa application fee, a passport-sized colour photo, and a stamped self- addressed envelope.

**Active vocabulary**

Various types of visa, total citizens, (un)paid employment, to enter, onward ticket, unexpired passport, destination, to be a resident of, to terminate, waiver application form, to obtain, a receipt, sized colour photo.

**Exercise 9. The following people have all contacted your travel agency for advice on visas for travelling to the USA. What information would you give them?**

- Masato Suzuki from Japan, flying to San Francisco for four weeks' holiday in California, followed by a trip to Canada, and then home to Japan.
- Greg Sheldon from New Zealand, planning a six-month world trip. He'll probably arrive in the US from Mexico and stay a month or so. He hasn't got much money.
- Mr. and Mrs. Henderson, a retired British couple travelling for a two – week holiday in the US and then staying with their son and his family in Canada for an unknown period (3 to 6 months).
- Mehmet Ozgun, a Turkish national resident in the UK, who needs to visit the US on business in two weeks' time.
- Annika Johanson and Carina Lundgren, two students from Sweden who want to spend three to four months over the summer travelling round the US. They hope to find some casual work to help finance their trip.



# Kinds of customs control



---

## CHAPTER V. SMUGGLING

---

### INTRODUCTION

People smuggling is a term which is used to describe transportation of people across international borders to a non-official entry point of a destination country for a variety of reasons.

Typically those being transported may not have adequate formal travel documents or prior approval to enter the destination country. Over a thousand men, smuggled into Oman, return to Pakistan by boat after they were arrested and imprisoned.

Thousands of South Asians are smuggled into the Middle East each year, but many are caught and sent back. People smugglers are often used by refugees fleeing persecution, although many people who are smuggled are seeking to better their employment and financial opportunities.

However, with the growing restrictions on refugee policies worldwide, illegal immigrants escaping persecution or extremely difficult living conditions are often interpreted as mere economic migrants. Interpol, in a recent communication, described people smuggling as follows: People smuggling has become the preferred trade of a growing number of criminal networks world-wide which are showing an increasing sophistication in regard to move larger numbers of people at higher profits than ever. In the Southwest USA, a "coyote" is a person paid to smuggle illegal immigrants across the border between Mexico and the USA. Snakeheads are smugglers from China who smuggle people into the USA and other Western countries. A people smuggler will facilitate illegal entry into a country for a fee, but on arrival at their destination, the smuggled person is usually free.

Trafficking involves a process of using physical force, fraud or deception to obtain and transport people. Women, who form the majority of trafficking victims, are particularly at risk from criminals who exploit lack of opportunities, promise good jobs or opportunities for study, and then force the victims to be prostitutes.

**Human trafficking** is the recruitment, transportation, harbouring, or receipt of people for the purposes of slavery, forced labor (including bonded labor or debt bondage), and servitude. It is the fastest growing criminal industry in the world, with the total annual revenue for trafficking in persons estimated to be between \$5 bn and \$9 bn. The Council of Europe states that "people trafficking has reached epidemic proportions over the past decade, with a global annual market of about \$42.5 bn." Trafficking victims typically are recruited using coercion, deception, fraud, the abuse of power, or outright abduction. Threats, violence, and economic leverage such as debt bondage can often make a victim consent to exploitation. Exploitation includes forcing people into prostitution or other forms of sexual exploitation, forced labour or services, slavery or practices similar to slavery and servitude.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the passages and render their contents shortly in English.**



**Exercise 2. Read the overview and explain the notions "smuggling" and "trafficking".**

Human trafficking differs from people smuggling. In the latter, people voluntarily request smuggler's service for fees and there may be no deception involved in the (illegal) agreement. On arrival at their destination, the smuggled person is usually free. On the other hand, the trafficking victim is enslaved, or the terms of their debt bondage are highly exploitative. The trafficker takes away the basic human rights of the victim. Victims are sometimes tricked and lured by false promises or physically forced.

Some traffickers use coercive and manipulative tactics including deception, intimidation, feigned love, isolation, threat and use of physical force, debt bondage, or other abuse. People who are seeking entry to other countries may be picked up by traffickers, and misled into thinking that they will be free after being smuggled across the border. In some cases, they are captured through slave raiding, although this is increasingly rare. Trafficking is a fairly lucrative industry. In some areas, like Russia, Eastern Europe, Hong Kong, Japan, and Colombia, trafficking is controlled by large criminal organizations. However, the majority of trafficking is done by networks of smaller groups that each specialize in a certain area, like recruitment, transportation, advertising, or retail.

This is very profitable because little startup capital is needed, and prosecution is relatively rare.

Trafficked people are usually the most vulnerable and powerless minorities in a region. They often come from the poorer areas where opportunities are limited, they often are ethnic minorities, and they often are displaced persons such as runaways or refugees (though they may come from any social background, class or race). Women are particularly at risk from sex trafficking.

Criminals exploit lack of opportunities, promise good jobs or opportunities for study, and then force the victims to become prostitutes. Through agents and brokers who arrange the travel and job placements, women are escorted to their destinations and delivered to the employers.

Upon reaching their destinations, some women learn that they have been deceived about the nature of the work they will do; most have been lied to about the financial arrangements and conditions of their employment; and find themselves in coercive or abusive situations from which escape is both difficult and dangerous. Trafficking of children often involves exploitation of the parents' extreme poverty. The latter may sell children to traffickers in order to pay off debts or gain income or they may be deceived concerning the prospects of training and a better life for their children.

In West Africa, trafficked children have often lost one or both parents to the African AIDS crisis.

Thousands of male (and sometimes female) children have also been forced to be child soldiers. The adoption process, legal and illegal, results in cases of trafficking of babies and pregnant women between the West and the developing world.

In David M. Smolin's papers on child trafficking and adoption scandals between India and the USA, he cites there are systemic vulnerabilities in the intercountry adoption system that makes adoption scandals predictable. Thousands of children from Asia, Africa, and South America are sold into the global sex trade every year.

Often they are kidnapped or orphaned, and sometimes they are actually sold by their own families. Men are also at risk of being trafficked for unskilled work predominantly involving forced labor which globally generates \$31bln. according to the International Labour Organization. Other forms of trafficking include forced marriage, and domestic servitude.

**Exercise 3. Comment on the given details in the text about trafficking.**

Additional 1,500-2,200 persons are trafficked through Canada into the USA. In Canada, foreign trafficking for prostitution is estimated to be worth \$400 mln. annually. According to the Future Group report, Canada in particular has a major problem with modern-day sexual slavery, giving Canada an F for its "abysmal" record treating victims. The report concluded that Canada is "an international embarrassment" when it comes to combating this form of slavery. The report criticizes Canada cabinet ministers for "passing the buck" on the issue.

**Exercise 4. Read the article and render the contents shortly in English. Explain the difference between human trafficking and people smuggling.**

Due to the illegal nature of trafficking and differences in methodology, the exact extent is unknown. According to USA State Department data, an "estimated 600,000 to 820,000 men, women, and children are trafficked across international borders each year, approximately 70 % are women and girls and up to 50 % are minors. The data also illustrates that the majority of transnational victims are trafficked into commercial sexual exploitation."

However, they go on to say that "the alarming enslavement of people for purposes of labor exploitation, often in their own countries, is a form of human trafficking that can be hard to track from afar." The figures for persons trafficked for labor exploitation are likely to be greatly underestimated. Reporters have witnessed a rapid increase in prostitution in Cambodia, Bosnia, and Kosovo after UN and, in the case of the latter two, NATO peacekeeping forces moved in.

Peacekeeping forces have been linked to trafficking and forced prostitution. Proponents of peacekeeping argue that the actions of a few should not incriminate the many participants in the mission, yet NATO and the UN have come under criticism for not taking the issue of forced prostitution linked to peacekeeping missions seriously enough.

A common misconception is that trafficking only occurs in poor countries. But every country in the world is involved in the underground, lucrative system. A "source country" is a country that girls are trafficked from. Usually, these countries are destitute and may have been further weakened by war, corruption, natural disasters or climate. Some source countries are Nepal, Guatemala, the former Soviet territories, and Nigeria, but there are many more. A "transit country", like Mexico or Israel, is a temporary stop on trafficked victims' journey to the country where they will be enslaved.

A "destination country" is where trafficked persons end up. These countries are generally affluent, since they must have citizens with enough "disposable income" to "buy the traffickers' products". Japan, India, much of Western Europe, and the USA are all destination countries.

According to the National Human Rights Center in Berkeley, California, there are currently about 10,000 forced laborers in the U.S., around one-third of whom are domestic servants and some portion of whom are children. The Associated Press reports based on interviews in California and in Egypt that trafficking of children for domestic labor in the U.S. is an extension of an illegal but common practice in Africa. Families in remote villages send their daughters to work in cities for extra money and the opportunity to escape a dead-end life. Some girls work for free on the understanding that they will at least be better fed in the home of their employer. This custom has led to the spread of trafficking, as well-to-do Africans accustomed to employing children immigrate to the U.S. Research conducted by University of California at Berkeley on behalf of the anti-trafficking organization *Free the Slaves* found that less than half of people in slavery in the USA, about 46% , are forced into prostitution. Domestic servitude claims 27% , agriculture 10% , and other occupations 17% .

An estimated 14,000 people are trafficked into the USA each year, although again because trafficking is illegal, accurate statistics are difficult. According to the Massachusetts based Trafficking Victims Outreach and Services Network in Massachusetts alone, there were 55 documented cases of human trafficking in 2005 and the first half of 2006 in Massachusetts. In 2004, the Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP) estimated that 600-800 persons are trafficked into Canada annually.

**Exercise 5. Transfer the given information from the text onto a table. The beginning has been done for you.**

No	Event	Data
1.	The number of trafficked people (women and children)	820,000

**Exercise 6. Make the sentences below as true (T) or false (F) if they change the message.**

1. Each year 80 % women and girls are trafficked across international borders. 2. The majority of transnational victims are trafficked into commercial sexual exploitation. 3. The alarming enslavement of people for purposes of labor exploitation is a form of human trafficking. 4. The figures for persons trafficked for labor exploitation are likely to be greatly overestimated. 5. Reporters have witnessed a rapid increase in prostitution in Cambodia, Bosnia, and Kosovo. 6. Peacekeeping forces have not been linked to trafficking and forced prostitution. 7. Proponents of peacekeeping argue that the actions of a few should incriminate the many participants in the mission. 8. A common misconception is that trafficking only occurs in poor countries. 8. Every country in the world is involved in the underground, lucrative system. 9. These countries may have been further weakened by war, corruption, natural disasters or climate. 10. Some source countries are Nepal, Guatemala, the former Soviet territories, and Nigeria. 11. There are currently about 100,000 forced laborers in the U.S. 12. Around two-thirds of forced laborers are domestic servants and some portion of whom are children. 13. Families in remote villages send their daughters to work in cities for extra money and the opportunity to escape a dead-end life. 14. Some girls work for free on the understanding that they will at least be better fed in the home of their employer. 15. More than half of people in slavery in the USA, about 46% , are forced into prostitution. 16. Domestic servitude claims 27% , agriculture 10% , and other occupations 17% . 17. An estimated 20,000 people are trafficked into the USA each year. 18. There were 55 documented cases of human trafficking in 2008. 19. In 2006 are estimated that 600-800 persons are trafficked into Canada annually. 20. In Canada foreign trafficking for prostitution is estimated to be worth \$400 mln. annually.

**Exercise 7. Make up sentences with the words and word-combinations and translate them.**

Illegal nature; to estimate; international borders; transnational victims; to be trafficked; commercial sexual exploitation; alarming enslavement; purposes' labor exploitation; human trafficking; to track from afar; to underestimate; to over estimate; to witness; a rapid increase; prostitution; peacekeeping forces; to move in; to link; to force prostitution; to argue; to incriminate; participants in the mission; to come under criticism for; to take the issue of; a common misconception; to occur; poor countries; to involve; underground, lucrative system; to destitute; to weaken by war, corruption, natural disasters or climate; to end up.

**Exercise 8. Analyze the problem of trafficking in Asia.**

In Asia, Japan is the major destination country for trafficked women, especially from the Philippines and Thailand. The US State Department has rated Japan as either a "Tier 2" or a "Tier 2 Watchlist" country every year since 2001 in its annual *Trafficking in Persons* reports. Both these ratings implied that Japan was (to a greater or lesser extent) not fully compliant with minimum standards for the elimination of human trafficking trade. There are currently an estimated 300,000 women and children involved in the sex trade throughout Southeast Asia. It is common that Thai women are lured to Japan and sold to Yakuza-controlled brothels where they are forced to work off their price.

By the late 1990s, UNICEF estimated that there are 60,000 child prostitutes in the Philippines, describing Angeles City brothels as "notorious" for offering sex with children. UNICEF estimates many of the 200 brothels in the notorious Angeles City offer children for sex. Many of the Iraqi women fleeing the Iraq War are turning to prostitution, while others are trafficked abroad, to countries like Syria, Jordan, Qatar, the United Arab Emirates, Turkey, and Iran.

In Syria alone, an estimated 50,000 Iraqi refugee girls and women, many of them widows, are forced into prostitution. Cheap Iraqi prostitutes have helped to make Syria a popular destination for sex tourists. The clients come from wealthier countries in the Middle East – many are Saudi men. High prices are offered for virgins. As many as 200,000 Nepali girls, many under 14, have been sold into the sex slavery in India. Nepalese women are favored in India because of their light skin.



**Exercise 9. Answer the questions.**

1. What country is the major destination country for trafficked women in Asia? 2. Was Japan fully compliant with minimum standards for the elimination of human trafficking trade? 3. There are currently an estimated 300,000 women and children involved in the sex trade throughout Southeast Asia, aren't there? 4. When was estimated that there are 60,000 child prostitutes in the Philippines? 5. How many brothels in the notorious Angeles City offer children for sex? 6. How many Iraqi women fleeing the Iraq War are turning to prostitution? 7. What countries are people trafficked abroad? 8. How many Iraqi refugee girls and women are estimated in Syria? 9. What has helped make Syria a popular destination for sex tourists? 10. Where do clients come? 11. Who are offered high prices for? 12. At what age do Nepali girls come from Nepali? 13. How many girls have been sold into the sex slavery in India? 14. What kinds of girls are favored in India? Why? 15. Why may a family be punished in parts of Ghana? 16. Is the system of slavery legal or illegal in Africa? 17. What do people do in the system of slavery of ritual servitude? 18. Who usually uses young virgin girls sexually? 19. In what case does not the woman gain the title of "wife"? 20. What is your attitude to these problems?

**Exercise 10. Analyze the situation with trafficking in Africa.**

In parts of Ghana, a family may be punished for an offense by having to turn over a virgin female to serve as a sex slave within the offended family. In this instance, the woman does not gain the title of "wife." In parts of Ghana, Togo, and Benin, shrine slavery persists, despite being illegal in Ghana since 1998. In this system of slavery of ritual servitude, sometimes called *trokosi* (in Ghana) or *voodoosi* in Togo and Benin, young virgin girls are given as slaves in traditional shrines and are used sexually by the priests in addition to providing free labor for the shrine.

**Exercise 11. Explain broadly the causes of trafficking.**

Trafficking in people has been facilitated by porous borders and advanced communication technologies; it has become increasingly transnational in scope and highly lucrative. Unlike drugs or arms, people can be "sold" many times. The opening up of Asian markets, porous borders, the end of the Soviet Union and the collapse of the former Yugoslavia have contributed to this globalization. Some causes and facilitators of trafficking include:

- lack of employment opportunities;
- organized crime;
- regional imbalances;
- economic disparities;
- social discrimination;
- corruption in government;
- political instability;
- armed conflict;
- mass resettlement without proper resettlement and rehabilitation packages;
- profitability;
- insufficient penalties against traffickers;
- minimal law enforcement on global sex tourism industry;
- legal processes that prosecute victims for prosecution instead of the traffickers;
- poor international border defence.

**Exercise 12. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.**

	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				

## TRAFFICKING IN EUROPE

Since the fall of the Iron Curtain, the impoverished former Eastern bloc countries such as Albania, Moldova, Romania, Bulgaria, Russia, Belarus and Ukraine have been identified as major trafficking source countries for women and children. Young women and girls are often lured to wealthier countries by the promises of money and work and then reduced to sexual slavery.

It is estimated that 2/3 of women trafficked for prostitution worldwide annually come from Eastern Europe, three-quarters have never worked as prostitutes before.

The major destinations are Western Europe (Germany, Italy, Netherlands, Spain, UK, Greece), the Middle East (Turkey, Israel, the United Arab Emirates), Asia, Russia and the USA. An estimated 500,000 women from Central and Eastern Europe are working in prostitution in the EU alone.

In the UK, the Home Office has stated that 71 women were trafficked into prostitution in 1998. They also suggest that the actual figure could be up to 1,420 women trafficked into the UK during the same period. However, the figures are problematic as the definition used in the UK to identify cases of sex trafficking – derived from the Sexual Offences Act 2003 – does not require that victims have been coerced or misled.

Thus, any individual who moves to the UK for the purposes of sex work can be regarded as having been trafficked – even if they did so with their knowledge and consent.

The Home Office does not appear to be keeping records of the number of people trafficked into the UK for purposes other than sexual exploitation. In Russia, many women have been trafficked overseas for the purpose of sexual exploitation; Russian women are in prostitution in over 50 countries. Annually, thousands of Russian women end up as prostitutes in Israel, China, Japan or South Korea.

Russia is also a significant destination and transit country for persons trafficked for sexual and labor exploitation from regional and neighboring countries into Russia, and on to the Gulf States, Europe, Asia, and North America. In poverty-stricken Moldova, where the unemployment rate for women ranges as high as 68% and one-third of the workforce live and work abroad, experts estimate that since the collapse of the Soviet Union between 200,000 and 400,000 women have been sold into prostitution abroad – perhaps up to 10% of the female population.

In Ukraine, a survey conducted by the NGO La Strada Ukraine in 2001–2003, based on a sample of 106 women being trafficked out of Ukraine found that 3% were under 18, and the U.S. State Department reported in 2004 that incidents of minors being trafficked was increasing.

It is estimated that half a mln. Ukrainian women were trafficked abroad since 1991 (80% of all unemployed in Ukraine are women). The ILO estimates that 20 % of the five mln. illegal immigrants in Russia are victims of forced labor, which is a form of trafficking. However even citizens of Russian Federation have become victims of human trafficking. They are typically kidnapped and sold by police to be used for hard labor, being regularly drugged and chained like dogs to prevent them from escaping. There were reports of trafficking of children and of child sex tourism in Russia.

The Government of Russia has made some effort to combat trafficking but has also been criticized for not complying with the minimum standards for the elimination of trafficking.

***Exercise 1. Read the article below and explain the notion "the Iron Curtain".***

***Exercise 2. Analyze the other problems linked with trafficking.***



## HUMAN TRAFFICKING & SEXUAL EXPLOITATION

There is no universally accepted definition of trafficking for sexual exploitation. The term encompasses the organized movement of people, usually women, between countries and within countries for sex work with the use of physical coercion, deception and bondage through forced debt.

However, the issue becomes contentious when the element of coercion is removed from the definition to incorporate facilitating the willing involvement in prostitution. For example, In the UK, The Sexual Offences Act, 2003 incorporated trafficking for sexual exploitation but did not require those committing the offence to use coercion, deception or force, so that it also includes any person who enters the UK to carry out sex work with consent as having being trafficked.

Save the Children stated "The issue gets mired in controversy and confusion when prostitution itself is considered as a violation of the basic human rights of both adult women and minors, and equal to sexual exploitation per sexual trafficking and prostitution become conflated with each others.

On account of the historical conflation of trafficking and prostitution both legally and in popular understanding, an overwhelming degree of effort and interventions of anti-trafficking groups are concentrated on trafficking into prostitution". Sexual trafficking includes coercing a migrant into a sexual act as a condition of allowing or arranging the migration. Sexual trafficking uses physical coercion, deception and bondage incurred through forced debt.

Trafficked women and children, for instance, are often promised work in the domestic or service industry, but instead are usually taken to brothels where their passports and other identification papers are confiscated. They may be beaten or locked up and promised their freedom only after earning – through prostitution – their purchase price, as well as their travel and visa costs.

The main motive of a woman (in some cases an underage girl) to accept an offer from a trafficker is better financial opportunities for herself or her family. In many cases traffickers initially offer "legitimate" work or the promise of an opportunity to study. The main types of work offered are in the catering and hotel industry, in bars and clubs, modeling contracts, or au pair work.

Traffickers sometimes use offers of marriage, threats, intimidation and kidnapping as means of obtaining victims. In the majority of cases, the women end up in prostitution.

Also some (migrating) prostitutes become victims of human trafficking. Some women know they will be working as prostitutes, but they have an inaccurate view of the circumstances and the conditions of the work in their country of destination. In Japan the prosperous entertainment market had created huge demand for commercial sexual workers, and such demand is being met by trafficking women and children from the Philippines, Colombia and Thailand.

Women are forced into street prostitution, based stripping and live sex acts. However, from information obtained from detainees or deportees from Japan, about 80 % of the women went there with the intention of working as prostitutes.

The Fundamentalist Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, in the US and Canada, has also been implicated in the trafficking of underage women across state and international boundaries (US/Canada). In most cases, this is for the continuation of polygamous practices, in the form of plural marriage. Trafficking victims are also exposed to different psychological problems. They suffer social alienation in the host and home countries. Stigmatization, social exclusion and intolerance make reintegration into local communities difficult. The governments offer little assistance and social services to trafficked victims upon their return. As the victims are also pushed into drug trafficking.



## EFFORTS TO REDUCE HUMAN TRAFFICKING

Governments, international associations, and nongovernmental organizations have all tried to end human trafficking with various degrees of success.

Actions taken to combat human trafficking vary from government to government. Some have introduced legislation specifically aimed at making human trafficking illegal. Governments can also develop systems of co-operation between different nation's law enforcement agencies and with non-government organizations (NGOs). Many countries though have come under criticism for inaction, or ineffective action. Criticisms include failure of governments in not properly identifying and protecting trafficking victims, that immigration policies might re-victimize trafficking victims, or insufficient action in helping prevent vulnerable people becoming trafficking victims.

A particular criticism has been the reluctance of some countries to tackle trafficking for purposes other than sex. In the UK, after intense pressure from Human Rights organizations, trafficking for labour exploitation were made illegal in 2004 (trafficking for sexual exploitation being criminalized many years previously). However, the 2004 law has been used very rarely and by mid-2007 there had not been a single conviction under these provisions.

Other actions governments could take is raise awareness. This can take on three forms. Firstly in raising awareness amongst potential victims, in particular in countries where human traffickers are active. Secondly, raising awareness amongst police, social welfare workers and immigration officers.

In countries where prostitution is legal or semi-legal, raising awareness amongst the clients of prostitution, to look out for signs of a human trafficking victim. Laws against trafficking in the USA exist at the federal and state levels. Over half of the states now criminalize human trafficking though the penalties are not as tough as the federal laws. Related federal and state efforts focus on regulating the tourism industry to prevent the facilitation of sex tourism and regulate international marriage brokers to ensure criminal background checks and information on how to get help are given to the potential bride.

Raising awareness can take on different forms. One method is through the use of awareness films or through posters.

**Exercise 1. Put questions to the text and summarize the contents of the passage.**

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. What organizations have tried to end human trafficking? 2. How do they do it? 3. Do actions taken to combat human trafficking vary? 4. Have any organizations introduced legislation specifically aimed at making human trafficking illegal? 5. What can governments develop? 6. Have many countries come under criticism for inaction, or ineffective action? 7. What do criticisms include? 8. Might immigration policies re-victimize trafficking victims? 9. What prevents vulnerable people becoming trafficking victims? 10. What has been the reluctance of some countries to tackle trafficking for purposes other than sex? 11. Where was trafficking for labour exploitation made illegal in 2004? 12. What other actions could governments take? 13. How many forms can this take on? 14. What can be done first? 15. What is the second step? 16. What is the third step? 17. At what level do laws against trafficking exist in the USA? 18. Where the penalties are more severe? 19. Where do related federal and state efforts focus? 20. Can raising awareness take on different forms? 21. How many states criminalize human trafficking though the penalties? 22. What focuses on regulating the tourism industry to prevent the facilitation of sex tourism?



## INTERNATIONAL LAW

In 2000 the United Nations adopted the Convention against Transnational Organized Crime, also called the Palermo Convention, and two Palermo protocols there to:

- Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Women and Children.
- Protocol against the Smuggling of Migrants by Land, Sea and Air.

All of these instruments contain elements of the current international law on human trafficking.

### **Council of Europe**

The Council of Europe Convention on Action against Trafficking in Human Beings was adopted by the Council of Europe on 16 May 2005. The aim of the convention is to prevent and combat the trafficking in human beings. The Convention entered into force on 1 February 2008. Of the 47 member states of the Council of Europe, so far 21 have signed the convention and 17 have ratified it.

The USA federal government has taken a firm stance against human trafficking both within its borders and beyond. Domestically, human trafficking is a federal crime under Title 18 of the USA Code. Section 1584 makes it a crime to force a person to work against his will, whether the compulsion is effected by use of force, threat of force, threat of legal coercion or by "*a climate of fear*" (an environment wherein individuals believe they may be harmed by leaving or refusing to work).

Section 1581 similarly makes it illegal to force a person to work through "*debt servitude*."

Human trafficking as it relates to involuntary servitude and slavery is prohibited by the 13th Amendment. Federal laws on human trafficking are enforced by the USA Department of Justice Civil Rights Division, Criminal Section.

The Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000 allowed for greater statutory maximum sentences for traffickers, provided resources for protection of and assistance for victims of trafficking and created avenues for interagency cooperation. It also allows many trafficking victims to remain in the USA and apply for permanent residency under a T-1 Visa.

The act also attempted to encourage efforts to prevent human trafficking internationally, by creating annual country reports on trafficking and tying financial non-humanitarian assistance to foreign countries to real efforts in addressing human trafficking. The USA Department of State has a high-level official charged with combating human trafficking, the Director of the Office to Monitor and Combat Trafficking in Persons ("anti-trafficking czar"). The current director is Mark P. Lagon.

International NGOs such as Human Rights Watch and Amnesty International have called on the USA to improve its measures aimed at reducing trafficking. They recommend that the USA more fully implement the United Nations Convention against Transnational Organized Crime Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children and for immigration officers to improve their awareness of trafficking and support the victims of trafficking.

Several state governments have taken action to address human trafficking in their borders, either through legislation or prevention activities. For example, Florida state law prohibits forced labor, sex trafficking, and document servitude, and provides for mandatory law enforcement trainings and victim services. A 2006 Connecticut law prohibits coerced work and makes trafficking a violation of the Connecticut RICO Act.

***Exercise 1. Digest the information briefly in English.***

***Exercise 2. Answer the questions.***

1. What did the UN adopt in 2000? 2. What is The Council of Europe Convention on Action against Trafficking in Human Beings like? 3. What did The Victims of Trafficking and Violence Protection Act of 2000 in the USA allow? 4. What did Amnesty International do? 5. What kind of actions have Several state governments taken? 6. What other international organizations do on the topic? 7. Can you add some information and make a report?



## NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS

Human rights organizations, including Amnesty International, Anti-Slavery International and Human Rights Watch have campaigned against human trafficking.

Several non-governmental organizations (NGOs) and human rights organizations have been formed to combat human trafficking. Some of these include:

**Somaly Mam Foundation**, founded in 2007 at the United Nations with the support of UNICEF, UNIFEM, and IOM, the Somaly Mam Foundation is known for empowering victims of human trafficking to become activists and agents of change.

With the leadership of world renowned Cambodian activist, Somaly Mam, the organization has garnered support from influential leaders and celebrities such as Susan Sarandon, Daryl Hannah, Diane von Furstenberg, and Hillary Clinton. The foundation also runs activities to support Rescue and Rehabilitation of victims in Southeast Asia and works to increase global awareness to inspire action.

**Polaris Project**, founded in 2002, is an international anti-human trafficking organization with offices in Washington DC, New Jersey, Colorado, and Japan. Polaris Project's comprehensive approach includes operating local and national human trafficking hotlines, conducting direct outreach and victim identification, providing social services and housing to victims, advocating for stronger state and national anti-trafficking legislation, and engaging community members in grassroots efforts.

**Tiny Stars**. Using the Protect Act of 2003, Tiny Stars works closely with Federal Law enforcement agencies to capture American child predators. Founded by Jake Collins in 1997, Tiny Stars focuses on identifying, tracking, and capturing pedophiles who victimize girls between the ages of 8-14 years old. To advance its mission, the organization has developed a network of undercover agents, often former agents of the CIA, FBI, or Navy SEALs. Tiny Stars has more recently begun conducting operations and fundraising under the name Global Centurion.

**National Human Trafficking Resource Center (NHTRC)** is a program funded by the Department of Health and Human Services. The NHTRC operates the National Human Trafficking Resource Center Hotline 24-hours a day, 365 days a year.

**The Emancipation Network** is an organization devoted to ending this trafficking and saving those enslaved. It was founded in 2005 on Cape Cod, MA by Sarah Symmons.

Their mission statement is "Fighting human trafficking with empowerment and hope".

By training survivors and those at high risk in handicrafts, "offering them a means for self-sufficiency and an economic alternative to further exploitation", women can rebuild themselves, physically and emotionally. One of the most difficult problems faced by survivors and those that help them is stereotypes that follow them once people know that they were prostitutes.

"Stigmatization of un-pure women is highly prevalent in Middle Eastern countries, where women who were forced into prostitution are ostracized by their own communities".

Another goal of T.E.N. is to bring awareness to American communities.

T.E.N. offers a program in which people can host parties at which the products by survivors are sold and education on the subject is presented. "Ultimately, they plan to help create a critical mass of concerned persons who can work together to bring pressure to bear on those who tolerate the modern practice of slavery".

**Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.**

	Organization	When	Where	Score
1.				

**Exercise 2. Give the summary of no more than 50 words.**

**Exercise 3. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**

**Exercise 4. Analyze the text and write out the names of organizations and find more information about them to make up report.**

**Exercise 5. Summarize the information on Lack of accurate data and possible overestimation.**

Estimates of the number of people trafficked for sexual purposes are contentious – problems of definition can be compounded by the willingness of victims to identify as being trafficked. Distinguishing trafficking from voluntary migration is crucial because the ability of women to purposefully and voluntarily migrate for work should be respected. In a 2003 report the Thai sex worker support organization EMPOWER stated that many anti-trafficking groups fail to see the difference between migrant sex workers and women forced to prostitute themselves against their will.

They documented a May 2003 "raid and rescue" operation on a brothel in Chiang Mai that was carried out without the consent of the workers, resulting in numerous human rights violations.

In her 2007 book *Sex at the Margins: Migration, Labour Markets and the Rescue Industry*, sociologist Laura Magna Agustin has likewise criticized what she calls the "rescue industry" for viewing most migrant sex workers as victims of trafficking that need to be saved, with the effect of severely restricting international freedom of movement. Agustín does not deny human trafficking or forced prostitution takes place, but rather that the 'rescue industry' overestimates figures.

Much criticism of the recent publicity around sex trafficking and the associated demands for legal sanction against prostitutes or their customers, has come from sexual health / AIDS organizations. Their principle concern being that such measures hinder efforts to prevent the spread of HIV/AIDS. The epidemiologist Elizabeth Pisani, in her book *The Wisdom of Whores: Bureaucrats, Brothels, and the Business of AIDS*, examines the phenomenon of sex trafficking and its impact on HIV prevention in detail. She concludes that forced trafficking (as opposed to voluntary involvement in sex work) is wildly over estimated.

Whilst most mainstream human rights groups acknowledge all forms of trafficking, there is growing criticism of the focus on trafficking for sexual exploitation at the expense of tackling other forms such as domestic or agricultural trafficking. In many countries, particularly the USA and the UK, the overwhelming majority of interventions concentrate on sex trafficking.

On 8 July 2008, Fiona Mactaggart MP, a prominent UK government spokesperson on the issue, admitted that the UK government concentrated on disrupting sex trafficking. Quoting from Sigma Huda, UN special reporter on trafficking in persons, she said "For the most part, prostitution as actually practiced in the world usually does satisfy the elements of trafficking ..."

**Exercise 6. Answer the questions.**

1. What are estimates of the number of people trafficked for sexual purposes? 2. Is it crucial to distinguish trafficking from voluntary migration? 3. Why is it crucial? 4. When and where did EMPOWER state that many anti-trafficking groups fail to see the difference between migrant sex workers and women forced to prostitute themselves against their will? 5. What operation did they document? 6. What did sociologist Laura Magna Agustin say in her book? 7. Where has criticism of the recent publicity around sex trafficking come?

**Exercise 7. Remember that.**

*Trafficking* – торговля запрещенным товаром (наркотиками, оружием, людьми и т. д.); human (being) trafficking (traffic) – торговля людьми; drugs trafficking – наркоторговля; to eradicate drug trafficking – искоренять наркобизнес; to combat drug trafficking – бороться с незаконным международным оборотом наркотиков; illegal (illicit) trafficking – незаконная торговля; to go into action against drug trafficking – вступать в борьбу с торговлей наркотиками; drug trafficker – торговец наркотиками.

**Exercise 8. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**

**Exercise 9. Fill in the gaps in the sentences with the facts from the text in the correct form.**

1. Report stated that \_\_\_\_\_. 2. They documented on numerous human rights \_\_\_\_\_. 3. Most migrant sex workers as victims of trafficking need to be saved with \_\_\_\_\_. 4. Agustín does not deny human trafficking or forced prostitution, but \_\_\_\_\_. 5. Much criticism of the recent publicity around sex trafficking for legal sanction against \_\_\_\_\_. 6. Prostitutes or their customers has come from \_\_\_\_\_. 7. Measures hinder efforts to prevent the spread of \_\_\_\_\_. 8. The epidemiologist Elizabeth Pisani in her book \_\_\_\_\_ examines the phenomenon of sex trafficking. 9. She concludes that \_\_\_\_\_. 10. Most mainstream human rights groups acknowledge all forms of \_\_\_\_\_. 11. There is growing criticism of the focus on trafficking for \_\_\_\_\_. 12. Sexual exploitation is rising at the expense of tackling other forms such as \_\_\_\_\_. 13. In many countries, \_\_\_\_\_, the overwhelming majority of interventions concentrate on sex trafficking. 14. The UK government concentrated on \_\_\_\_\_. 15. Prostitution is actually practiced in the world and usually satisfies the elements of \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 10. Find similar situations with the text "Health & Safety" and make up dialogues with your classmates and carry them on in class.**

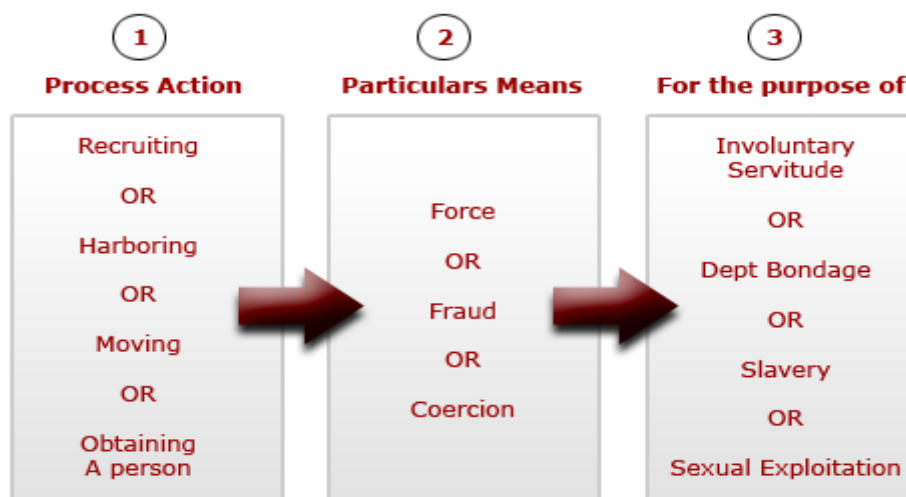
Customs services fight counterfeiting, which is a growing and increasingly dangerous phenomenon affecting not only luxury fashion goods, but also medicines, toothpaste and body care products.

Counterfeit products seized by customs in the last few years include car parts, even brakes, and fake sunglasses which can damage eyesight. It goes without saying that fighting and dismantling that kind of trafficking contributes to improving the health and safety of citizens.

Seizures of such items by customs officers in the EU have reached huge numbers recently. Customs authorities also protect public health by keeping a close watch on "drug precursors", those innocuous chemicals all too often diverted to manufacture drugs such as ecstasy or amphetamines.

Smuggling, also known as trafficking, is the clandestine transportation of goods or persons past a point where prohibited, such as out of a building, into a prison, or across an international border, in violation of the law or other rules. There are various motivations to smuggle, most but not all of which are financial. These include the participation in illegal trade, such as drugs, illegal immigration or emigration, tax evasion, providing contraband to a prison inmate, or the theft of the items being smuggled. Examples of non-financial motivations include bringing banned items past a security checkpoint (such as airline security) or the removal of classified documents from a government or corporate office.

**3 Elements Necessary to Meet Trafficking Definition:**



## AGAINST TRAFFICKING ACTIVITIES

Coalition Against Trafficking in Women (CATW) was founded 1988 as the outcome of a conference titled "Trafficking in Women" organized by several American feminist groups.

CATW was the first international non-governmental organization (NGO) working against trafficking and gained consultative status with ECOSOC (UN) in 1989. The CATW has influenced anti-sex industry and anti-trafficking legislation in places all over the world, including the Philippines, Venezuela, Bangladesh, Japan, Sweden and the USA.

CATW's definition of trafficking is understood as all forms of selling or buying bodies of women or children. CATW opposes a distinction between forced and voluntary prostitution as they see all forms of prostitution (and pornography) as a violation of the dignity of women and as violence against women. In this regard, they are strongly opposed to the perspective of the Global Alliance against Traffic in Women. Aside from prostitution, CATW is opposed to all forms of trafficking, "including...pornography, sex tourism, and mail-order bride selling".

### Statistics

According to the USA government, upwards of 50,000 women and children are trafficked each year in the nation, mainly from Latin American countries, Russia and Southeast Asia. An accurate number of trafficked women in Europe could not be determined. In 2008, the USA Department of State reported that two mln. children were exploited in the global sex trade. In such cases, children are forced into marriage by relatives or sold into sexual slavery. In fact, most women in prostitution were trafficked into the industry as children.

### Structure

The Coalition consists of regional networks and affiliated groups. It is an umbrella organization that is directed by the regional networks, having good organizational strength because of this particular setup. The organization has national coalitions in countries including the Philippines, Bangladesh, Indonesia, Thailand, Venezuela, Puerto Rico, Chile, Canada, Norway, France and Greece. The Coalition has the ability to be geographically mobile, it is not needed since people on every continent can join a regional chapter.

### Branches

After the "Conference on Women Empowering Women: A Human Rights Conference on Trafficking in Asian Women" held in Manila, Philippines in April 1993, CATW created an Asia Pacific chapter. Such acts enabled to "establish the necessary institutional mechanisms for the protection and support of trafficked persons", and to provide "penalties for its violations and for other purposes".

The Australian branch of CATW is also part of the Asia Pacific chapter. CATWA has a few aims, some of them being the promotion toward recognizing that all forms of trafficking and sexual exploitation are an abuse of universal human rights, bringing international attention to all forms of sexual exploitation, the development of strategies to support women leaving the prostitution industry and pressuring the government to create exit programs and havens for women leaving the said industry. The Australian branch is for women only. Other branches can also be found in Africa, Europe, Norway, Northern Norway, Latin America and the Caribbean islands.

### Tactics

CATW is an organization of low-risk activism, meaning they use tactics that typically don't disrupt the public or otherwise lead to disobedience. They tend to achieve their said objectives by using fundraising as a means to provide safe houses for victims and to purchase other resources.

They schedule and attend meetings with the targets of their lobbying efforts (mainly countries with lax or no human trafficking laws) and politicians to submit resolutions and enact legislation against sexual exploitation and other forms of human trafficking.

## Prevention

In working to prevent human trafficking, CATW educates students and communities all over the globe about the problem. It trains educators, law enforcement and government officials, and community leaders in recognizing and combating human trafficking.

CATW also testifies before national congresses, parliaments, law reform commissions, and regional and United Nations committees.

## Campaigns & Programs & Projects

The following is a list and brief description of some of CATW's global campaigns.

*Measures to Combat Trafficking in Human Beings* – addresses gaps in current anti-trafficking programs and policies that avoid focusing on gender equality, the demand and the links between trafficking and prostitution (Albania, Bulgaria, Croatia, Czech Republic).

*The Prevention Project* – multi-tiered project to prevent sex trafficking and sexual exploitation by developing best practices in areas of the world (some participating countries include Italy, Nigeria, Mali, Mexico, the Republic of Georgia). *Project to Curb Male Demand for Prostitution* – combats sex trafficking and prostitution by discouraging its demand (some participating countries include the Baltic Countries, India, the Philippines). *Human Rights Documentation Project* – conducts training sessions that inform and educate women's organizations on feminist research methods (countries: Asia and Russia).

## Solution

The Coalition's main solution to the problem of human trafficking and sexual exploitation is to decriminalize women in prostitution and hold solely responsible the men who seek their services. It also seeks to "reject state policies and practices that channel women into conditions of sexual exploitation" ... and "provide education and employment opportunities that enhance women's worth and status".

## Anti-Human Trafficking Legislation

Countries and nations all over the globe are working diligently to combat the problem of sex trafficking. Listed below are some of the key legislation that have been (or will be) enacted to fight the aforesaid issue.

*Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 (US)* – passed on October 28, 2000; most comprehensive U.S. law to address various aspects of human trafficking both internationally and domestically.

*Convention Against Transnational Organized Crime (United Nations)* – adopted in 2000 and also known as the Palermo Convention; its two protocols (the Palermo Protocols) are the Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children; and Protocol Against the Smuggling of Migrants by Land, Sea and Air. *Council of Europe Convention on Action against Trafficking in Human Beings (Europe)* – adopted by the Council of Europe in May 2005; aims to prevent and combat trafficking in human beings. *Project Concern International (Ethiopia)* – seeks to decrease trafficking in persons and to improve protection and assistance of victims; will accomplish these goals by improving delivery of victim protection and assistance services and by increasing prosecution of perpetrators of human trafficking.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the activities of organizations and the Anti-Human Trafficking Legislation.**





## SMUGGLED GOODS

Much smuggling occurs when enterprising merchants attempt to supply demand for a good or service which is illegal. As a result, illegal drug trafficking, and the smuggling of weapons (illegal arms trade), as well as the historical staples of smuggling, alcohol and tobacco, are widespread.

As the smuggler faces significant risk of civil and criminal penalties if caught with contraband, smugglers are able to impose a significant price premium on smuggled goods.

The profits involved in smuggling goods appears to be extensive.

Profits also derive from avoiding taxes or levies on imported goods. For example, a smuggler might purchase a large quantity of cigarettes in a place with low taxes and smuggle them into a place with higher taxes, where they can be sold at a far higher margin than would otherwise be possible.

It has been reported that smuggling one truckload of cigarettes within the USA can lead to a profit of \$2 mln.. With regard to people smuggling, a distinction can be made between people smuggling as a service to those wanting to illegally migrate, and the involuntary trafficking of people.

An estimated 90% of people who illegally crossed the border between Mexico and the USA are believed to have paid a smuggler to lead them across the border. People smuggling can also be used to rescue a person from oppressive circumstances. For example, when the Southern USA allowed slavery, many slaves moved north via the Underground Railroad. Similarly, during The Holocaust, Jews were smuggled out of Germany by people such as Algot Niska.

With regard to crossing borders we can distinguish concealment of the whole transport or concealment of just the smuggled goods: Avoiding border checks, such as by small ships, private airplanes, through overland smuggling routes, smuggling tunnels and even small submersibles.

This applies for illegally passing a border oneself, for illegal immigration or illegal emigration.

In many parts of the world, particularly the Gulf of Mexico, the smuggling vessel of choice is the go-fast boat. Submitting to border checks with the goods or people hidden in a vehicle or between (other) merchandise, or the goods hidden in luggage, in or under clothes, inside the body (see body cavity search, balloon swallow and mule (smuggling)), etc.

Many smugglers fly on regularly scheduled airlines. A large number of suspected smugglers are caught each year by customs worldwide.

Goods and people are also smuggled across seas hidden in containers, and overland hidden in cars, trucks, and trains. A related topic is illegally passing a border oneself as a stowaway.

The high level of duty levied on alcohol and tobacco in Britain has led to large-scale smuggling from France to the UK through the Channel Tunnel. The combination of acknowledged corruption at the border and high import tariffs led smugglers in the 1970s and 1980s to fly electronic equipment such as stereos and televisions in cargo planes from one country to clandestine landing strips in another, thereby circumventing encounters at the frontier between countries. For illegally passing a border oneself, another method is with a false passport (completely fake, or illegally changed, or the passport of a lookalike). In popular perception smuggling is synonymous as illegal trade. Even social scientists have misconstrued smuggling as illegal trade. While the two have indeed identical objectives, namely the evasion of taxes and the importation of contraband items, their demand and cost functions are altogether different requiring different analytical framework.

As a result, illegal trade through customs stations is differently considered, and smuggling is defined as international trade through "unauthorized route". A seaport, airport or land port which has not been authorized by the government for importation and exportation is an "unauthorized route".

The legal definition of these occurs in the Customs Act of the country. Notably, some definitions define any "undeclared" trafficking of currency and precious metal as smuggling. Smuggling is a cognizable offense in which both the smuggled goods and the goods are punishable.

**Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.**

**Exercise 2. Try to render the score of the information on history of smuggling affairs.**

Smuggling has a long and controversial history, probably dating back to the first time at which duties were imposed in any form. In Britain, wool was smuggled to the continent from late 16<sup>th</sup> century and smuggling became economically significant at the end of the 17<sup>th</sup> century, under the pressure of high excise taxes. In 1724 Daniel Defoe wrote of Lymington, Hampshire, on the south coast of England. "I do not find they have any foreign commerce, except it be what we call smuggling and roguing; which I may say, is the reigning commerce of all this part of the English coast, from the mouth of the Thames to the Land's End in Cornwall." The high rates of duty levied on tea and also wine and spirits, and other luxury goods coming in from mainland Europe at this time made the clandestine import of such goods and the evasion of the duty a highly profitable venture for impoverished fishermen and seafarers. In certain parts of the country such as the Romney Marsh, East Kent, Cornwall and East Cleveland, the smuggling industry was for many communities more economically significant than legal activities such as farming and fishing.

The principal reason for the high duty was the need for the government to finance a number of extremely expensive wars with France and the USA.

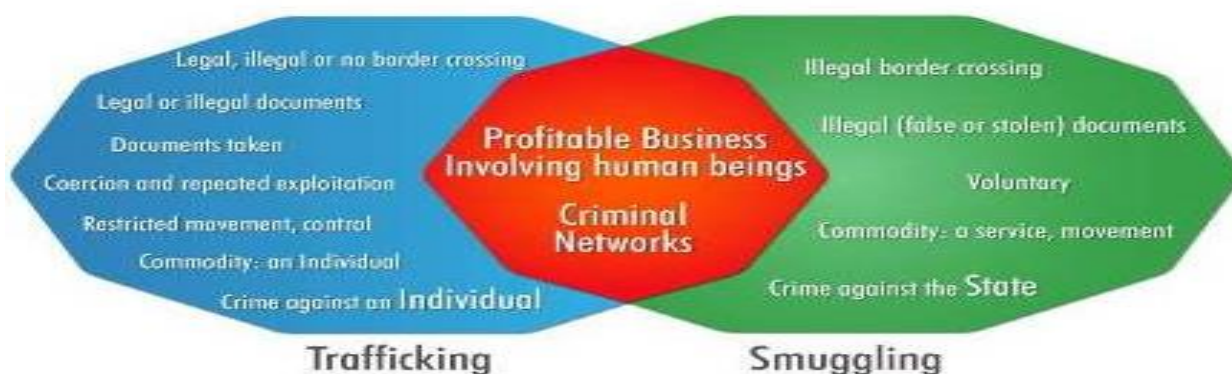
In retrospect, before the era of sordid drug smuggling and human trafficking, smuggling had achieved a retrospective romance, in the vein of Robert Louis Stevenson's *Kidnapped*. Few places on the British coast did not claim to be the haunts of wreckers or mooncussers. The thievery was boasted about and romanticized until it seemed a kind of heroism. It did not have any taint of criminality and the whole of the south coast had pockets vying with one another over whose smugglers were the darkest or most daring. *The Smugglers Inn* was one of the commonest names for a bar on the coast".

In North America, smuggling in colonial times was a reaction to the heavy taxes and regulations imposed by mercantilist trade policies. After American independence in 1783, smuggling developed at the edges of the USA at places like Passamaquoddy Bay, St. Mary's in Georgia, Lake Champlain, and Louisiana. During Thomas Jefferson's embargo of 1807-1809, these same places became the primary places where goods were smuggled out of the nation in defiance of the law.

Like Britain, a gradual liberalization of trade laws as part of the free trade movement meant less smuggling. In 1907 President T. Roosevelt tried to cut down on smuggling by establishing the Roosevelt Reservation along the USA-Mexico Border. Smuggling revived in the 1920s during Prohibition, and drug smuggling became a major problem after 1970.

**Exercise 3. Render the contents of the passage on Etymology briefly in English.**

The word probably comes from the Proto-Germanic verb *smeugan* (Old Norse *smjúga*) = "to creep into a hole". Other sources say it comes from the word *smooky* (fog) which was used in West Flanders. To smuggle - move (goods) illegally into or out of a country; to import or export (prohibited or dutiable goods) secretly; to bring or take secretly, as against the law or rules. If someone smuggles things or people into a place or out of it, they take them there illegally or secretly.



## HISTORY OF ANTI-SMUGGLING ACTIVITIES

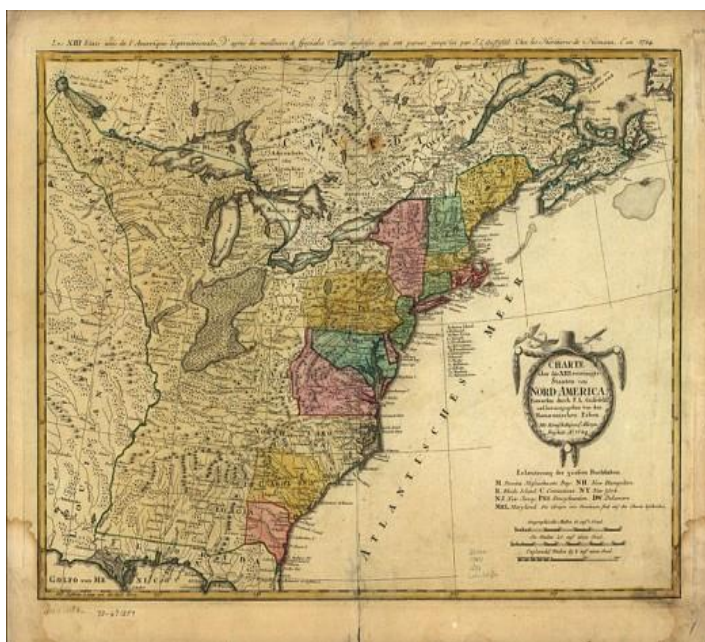
George Grenville, the chief architect of the Sugar Act, would go still further with his revised tax policies towards the American Colonies. Hello and welcome to tutorial number three on the American Revolution's origins. So far we've gone through the early attempts of Britain to manage her colony's economy and North America and the subsequent legacy of the French and Indian War. Last time we noticed how the relationship between Britain and the American colonies soured after that, especially when it came to the imposition of the Revenue Act and the establishment of a peace time army. Now we're going to look at the Sugar Act and how divisive its provisions and their implications became.

We're in the mid 1760's now, and there's a kind of changing of the guard in colonial administration in England. New, younger leaders are coming to the fore, and they have new ideas for how the colonies should be run and for how old policies could be rebooted. When George Grenville comes to power, he sees an opportunity to revise the earlier Navigation Acts as well as to re-implement the Molasses Act of 1733 in a slightly modified way. British sugar interests want Grenville to keep applying the 6 pence duty per barrel on imported French molasses, but Grenville's advisors convince him that this kind of move will not only damage the colonial economy, but make it really hard for British molasses to compete. I'll explain the latter part on British molasses in a minute.

Grenville finally opts to lower the duty to 3 pence, but at the same time, he wants the anti-smuggling laws that have allowed un-dutied French molasses to enter America to actually be enforced. Before this, no Americans really paid the duty at all, and smuggling of the molasses was rampant. In fact, that's how John Hancock of Declaration fame earned most his fortune. This adjusted policy of Grenville's would finally, theoretically, allow British molasses would compete: now that Americans would be forced to actually pay the duty on French molasses, and with it now reduced to 3 pence per barrel, the price for French molasses and that for British would be virtually the same.

Despite the lowering of the duty, most American businessmen are still not excited with the Sugar Act. After all, they had never really paid *any* duty before. This led to intensified smuggling efforts. In turn, the British intensified their efforts to police it. What comes next is really important.

The British decide that men caught and accused of smuggling will be tried by royal admiralty courts whereas before they had been tried by juries of their peers. Now this was not really unfair of the British crown, because people accused of similar crimes in England were already being tried before admiralty courts. In fact, this move made the law more consistent throughout the empire.





A French map of the thirteen original colonies. This was the coastline that British ships had to police in order to enforce anti-smuggling laws. George III in his coronation robes. He had been king for only four years by the time of the Sugar Act. But many Americans, some convinced that their rights were getting increasingly trampled on, came to see this as a great offense. What made all this worse though, was that there was an increasing call from corners of the Americas to have a say in the policies that determine how Americans are taxed by Parliament.

The Sugar Act was case in point; Americans had to pay duties on a product they desired without having a vote on that tax. British responses were, for the most part, cold and domineering in this case. The response was generally that American colonists were not "true" Englishmen, and as such, they had no formal rights to participate in Parliament, the body that legislated law.

This was not necessarily meant to agitate or marginalize the colonists, but it was definitely the letter of the law and the predominant mindset of British lawmakers and the king, despite the fact that a minority in Parliament argued for increased consideration of colonial rights.

The British certainly felt within their rights with regard to all these actions. Quite arguably, they were, especially as it pertained to existing law. But the message for many Americans was undeniably quite different, and those same Americans saw that message becoming clearer: the British saw them as second-class citizens without rights of recourse to the Parliament or a say in lawmaking.

Think of the famous line: "no taxation without representation". In addition to the issue of representation, we also have the institution of admiralty courts which were not subject to the decisions of juries, yet another development which will be used by colonists to argue that Americans had inferior status to normal British citizens under the law – even though that wasn't really true with relation to the courts. I'd like you to now add to this resentment to the antagonism felt between both sides at the end of the French and Indian War as well as to the anger felt by many Americans over the presence of the peace-time army.

Next we move on to the Stamp Act and its influence on the path towards revolution. Things, and tempers, are definitely heating up. Cheers, and see you soon!

**Exercise 1. 1. Pick up from the text all the details associated with smuggling and trafficking.**

**Exercise 2. Read the passage and bear the facts in mind.**

In the 1990es, when economic sanctions were imposed on Serbia, a large percent of the population lived off smuggling petrol and consumer goods from neighboring countries. The state unofficially allowed this to continue or otherwise the entire economy would have collapsed.

In modern times, as many first-world countries have struggled to contain a rising influx of immigrants, the smuggling of people across national borders has become a lucrative extra-legal activity, as well as the extremely dark side, people-trafficking, especially of women who may be enslaved typically as prostitutes.







## TYPES OF TRAFFICKING

### Human Trafficking

Trafficking in human beings, sometimes called human trafficking, or in the much referred to case of sexual services, sex trafficking – is not the same as people smuggling. A smuggler will facilitate illegal entry into a country for a fee, but on arrival at their destination, the smuggled person is free; the trafficking victim is coerced in some way. Victims do not agree to be trafficked: they are tricked, lured by false promises, or forced into it. Traffickers use coercive tactics including deception, fraud, intimidation, isolation, threat and use of physical force, debt bondage or even force-feeding with drugs to control their victims. Whilst the majority of victims are women, and sometimes children, other victims include men, women and children forced or conned into manual or cheap labor.

Due to the illegal nature of trafficking, the exact extent is unknown. A US Government report published in 2003, estimates that 800,000-900,000 people worldwide are trafficked across borders each year. This figure does not include those who are trafficked internally.

### Child Trafficking

According to a study by Alternatives to Combat Child Labour Through Education and Sustainable Services in the Middle East and North Africa Region (ACCESS-MENA) 30% of school children living in border villages of Yemen had been smuggled into Saudi Arabia. Smuggled children were in danger of being sexually abused or even killed. Poverty is one of the reasons behind child trafficking and some children are smuggled with their parents' consent. As many as 50% of those smuggled are children.

### Human Trafficking & Migration

Each year, hundreds of thousands of migrants are moved illegally by highly organized international smuggling and trafficking groups, often in dangerous or inhumane conditions.

This phenomenon has been growing in recent years as people of low income countries are aspiring to enter developed countries in search of job. Migrant smuggling and human trafficking are two separate offences and differ in a few central respects. While "smuggling" refers to facilitating the illegal entry of a person into a State, "trafficking" includes an element of exploitation. The trafficker retains control over the migrant – through force, fraud or coercion – typically in the sex industry, through forced labour or through other practices similar to slavery. Trafficking violates the idea of basic human rights. The overwhelming majority of those trafficked are women and children. These victims are commodities in a multi-bn dollar global industry. Criminal organizations are choosing to traffic human beings because, unlike other commodities.

People can be used repeatedly and because trafficking requires little in terms of capital investment.

Smuggling is also reaping huge financial dividends to criminal groups who charge migrants massive fees for their services. Intelligence reports have noted that drug-traffickers and other criminal organizations are switching to human cargo to obtain greater profit with less risk. It is acknowledged that the smuggling of people is a growing global phenomenon. It is not only a transnational crime, but also an enormous violation of human rights and a contemporary form of slavery.

Currently, economic instability appears to be the main reason for illegal migration movement throughout the world. Nevertheless, many of the willing migrants undertake the hazardous travel to their destination country with criminal syndicates specialised in people smuggling.

These syndicates arrange everything for the migrants, but at a high price. Very often the travelling conditions are inhumane: the migrants are overcrowded in trucks or boats and fatal accidents occur frequently. After their arrival in the destination country, their illegal status puts them at the mercy of their smugglers, which often force the migrants to work for years in the illegal labour market to pay off the debts incurred as a result of their transportation.

## Economics of Smuggling

Research on smuggling as economic phenomenon is scanty. Jagdish Bhagwati and Bent Hansen first forwarded a theory of smuggling in which they saw smuggling essentially as an import-substituting economic activity. Their main consideration, however, was the welfare implications of smuggling. Against common belief that the private sector is more efficient than the public sector, they showed that smuggling might not enhance social welfare though it may divert resources from government to private sector.

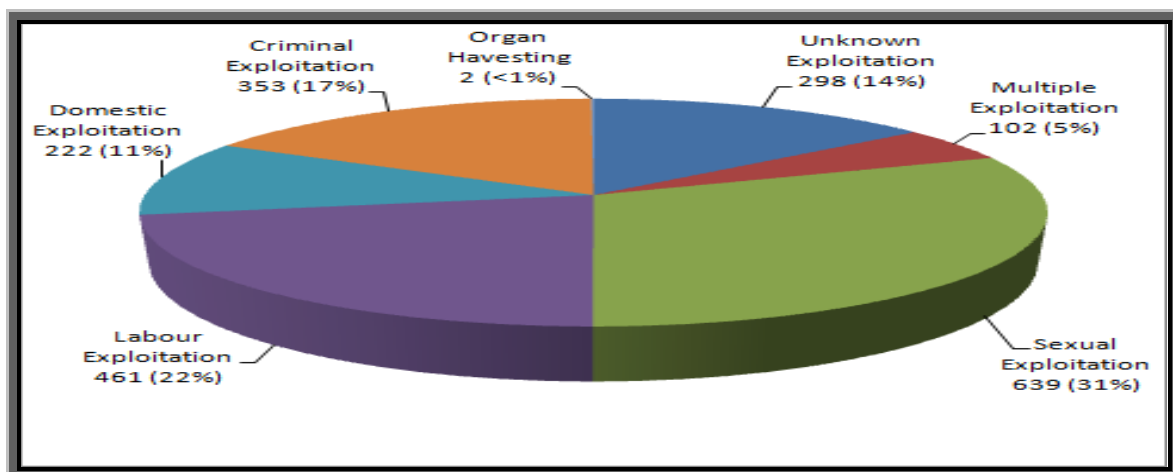
In contrast, Faizul Latif Chowdhury, in 1999, suggested a production-substituting model of smuggling in which price disparity due to cost of supply is critically important as an incentive for smuggling. This price disparity is caused by domestic consumption taxes as well as import duties.

Drawing attention to the case of cigarettes, Chowdhury suggested that, in Bangladesh, smuggling of cigarettes reduced the level of domestic production. Domestic production of cigarettes is subject to value added tax (VAT) and other consumption tax. Reduction of domestic taxes enables the local producer to supply at a lower cost and bring down the price disparity that encourages smuggling.

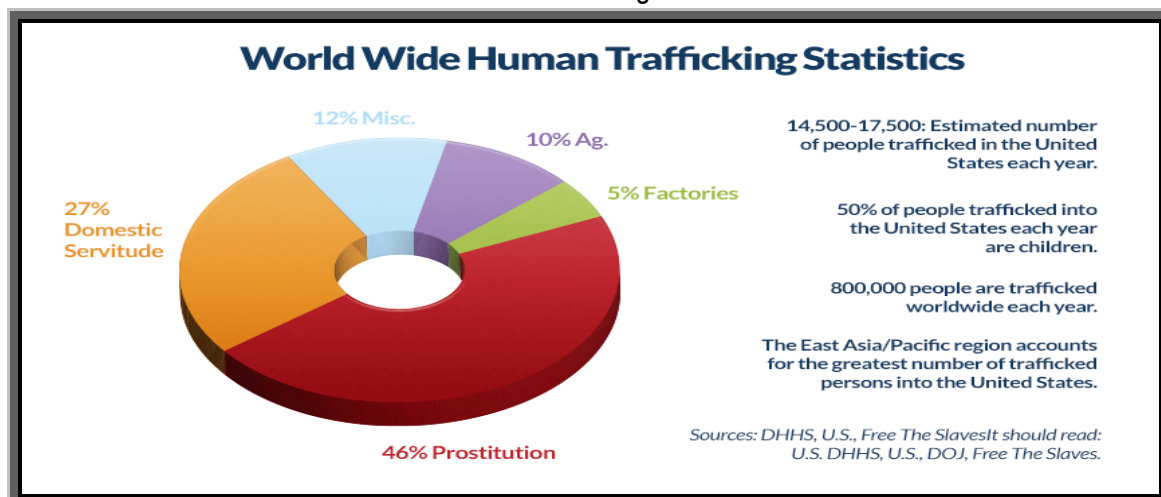
However, Chowdhury suggested that there is a limit beyond which reducing domestic taxes on production cannot confer a competitive advantage versus smuggled cigarettes. Therefore, government needs to upscale its anti-smuggling drive so that seizures can add to the cost of smuggling and thus render smuggling uncompetitive. Notably, Chowdhury modelled the relationship of the smuggler to the local producer as one of antagonistic duopoly.

**Exercise 1. Read the information and try to render the main idea of the article shortly.**

**Exercise 2. Relate the problems of human trafficking and migration.**



Human trafficking trends



## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**contraband** (smuggling) – 1) контрабанда, провоз контрабандным путем

to smuggle contraband – провозить контрабандой

to seize contraband – изъять контрабанду

contraband of war – военная контрабанда (снаряжение, поставляемое нейтральной страной одной из воюющих сторон и подлежащее конфискации) *Syn.* smuggled goods

contraband (smuggled) goods – контрабандные товары

contraband trade – торговля контрабандными товарами

2) запрещенный, запретный, незаконный, противозаконный;

несанкционированный *Syn.* forbidden, illegitimate (unauthorized)

smuggling ring – шайка контрабандистов

to **smuggle** – провозить контрабандой (in, out, through); заниматься контрабандой

Some of these jewels have been smuggled in. – Некоторые из этих драгоценностей были провезены контрабандой. For years he has been smuggling watches through customs. – Он годами провозил часы контрабандой через таможенню.

3) а) овладевать хитростью (чем-л.) б) тайно проносить, перевозить; в) тайно убежать

**smuggler** – контрабандист ; контрабандистское судно *Syn.* runner

to smuggle, to be a smuggler – заниматься контрабандой

drug smuggling – контрабанда наркотиков

arms smuggling – контрабанда оружия

smuggler, contrabandist – контрабандистка

smuggled articles – предметы контрабанды

decision on a case of smuggling – постановление по делу о контрабанде

illicit trade – контрабандная торговля

contraband property – контрабандное имущество

forfeiture (seizure, confiscation) – конфискация

penalty for smuggling – штраф за контрабанду

to invite witnesses – пригласить понятых

material evidence – вещественное доказательство

forgery of a Customs declaration – подделка таможенной декларации

manner of concealment – способ сокрытия вещей

technical means of control – техсредства контроля

to **seize** – конфисковывать

seized goods – конфискованные товары

to seize contraband – изъять контрабанду

to seize one's opportunity – использовать удобный момент

to seize smb. hostage – захватывать кого-л. в заложники

to seize an opportunity/a chance to do – ухватиться за возможность/воспользоваться случаем сделать что-л.

to seize (the reins of) power – захватывать бразды правления

**Exercise 1. Make up sentences with the words and phrases from topical vocabulary.**

**Exercise 2. Combine the words according to the meaning.**

To escape, to evade, judge, justice, offender, to bear out, justify, research, to examine, to kill, to murder, to pardon, to prepare, to clarify, to procure, to get, gift, to protect, to shelter, to announce, criminal, to inspect, to declare, to obtain, present, investigation, to explain, to confirm, to seize, to catch, invention, forgery.

**Exercise 3. Retell the score of the text on smuggling in your own words.**

The aim of the customs control is to protect the economic interests of Ukraine. So, one of the main duties of the customs officers is to set up a control over the movement of passengers' baggage and cargo. In most cases the passengers declare all their personal belongings and articles, which they have in their handbags, suitcases and in their cargo. But in some cases passengers don't declare certain articles in their declaration forms. If some things haven't been declared either in passenger's declaration or during the interrogation or during customs examination then they must be seized as smuggled articles.

Such things will be seized as not declared and hidden from the customs control.

In such case the customs officer has to make out an act of seizing smuggled things.

During making out an act the customs officer must write down in the protocol full name of the passenger, his address, occupation and his present job. If a customs officer has serious grounds to suspect that a passenger has hidden some articles from customs examination in this case he has the right to make personal examination of a suspect person. An officer can ask the person to present the things and valuables, which were not declared of the person's free will.

If the person refuses to present such things then the officer can ask the person to open his handbags, suitcases, etc., take off his suit or to make personal examination.

The officer can use special devices while making personal examination. But he must remember that personal examination can be made only in the presence of 2 witnesses and only in the case when customs officer has a permit from the Chief of the Customs Office or from his deputy.

The accused person must receive one copy of the act of personal examination and in accordance with the Customs Code; the Chief of the Customs can come to the decision to submit the matter to the Court to institute criminal proceedings against such person. This person can appeal against this decision within 10 days of the date of issue of the act.

The decision, which is not applied against within the stated time comes into force. The seized articles become state property.

**Active vocabulary**

Customs officers, main duties, passengers' baggage, cargo, handbags, suitcases declaration forms, articles, to declare, the interrogation, customs examination, to be seized, to write down, in the protocol, valuables, person's free will, special devices, the Customs Code, to permit, to appeal against, stated time, seized articles.

**Exercise 4. Render the main idea of the article in some English sentences.**



## PEOPLE-SMUGGLING SYNDICATES

Shifting sentiment ... the tragedy at Christmas Island last month when at least 390 asylum seekers drowned after their boat smashed into cliffs has caused some Afghans to speak out.

Sophisticated people-smuggling syndicates charging clients about \$12,000 for a one-way trip from Afghanistan to Australia are preying with apparent impunity on Hazara communities in Melbourne, Sydney and Adelaide. The syndicates, which use GPS tracking and mobile-phone messaging systems, boast they can reunite family and friends with relatives living in Australia within months, if not weeks. A well-placed source within the Afghan community told The Herald this week: "The syndicates are an open secret within the Hazara community; everybody knows who runs them, who to approach and who makes the money. It is astonishing they can operate so openly."

It is claimed the top smugglers move around with ease, have Australian citizenship and travel unimpeded between Australia and Afghanistan. This week Indonesian police detained an Australian citizen, Haydar Khani, allegedly responsible for smuggling almost 100 asylum seekers on board the ill-fated SIEV 221 which broke up on rocks off Christmas Island in December.

### Advertisement

The biggest smuggling operation in Australia is believed to be run from a series of nondescript shop fronts in Dandenong, in Melbourne's south, home to thousands of Afghan refugees, many of them Hazaras. It is believed to have generated tens of mln.s of dollars in profits in the past two years. Inquiries by The Herald have revealed:

- Fees paid to people smugglers include a \$1500 deposit, with more payments made as the asylum seeker progresses through the system. In the past two years, the cost of a passage from Kabul to Christmas Island has jumped from \$7500 to \$12,000.

- Financial transactions are conducted through the so-called hawala banking system that is difficult for law enforcement authorities to monitor as it involves no individual payments or records – just monthly cash settlements paid via Western Union between respective agents in Australia and Afghanistan.

- People smugglers insist that all asylum seeker identity documents, including passports, be destroyed before embarking on boats to Australia to ensure people cannot be connected to relatives and family members living in Australia. Use of false names means that Afghan authorities cannot trace them.

- It is apparently common for boats to arrive with asylum seekers claiming to be from a particular Taliban-controlled district where it is impossible for authorities to check their identities. This month Western Union conceded that its money transfer service had been used by people smugglers in Australia to fund illegal operations. The financial services giant made the admission in a submission to the national finance intelligence unit, the Australian Transaction Reports and Analysis Centre.

Yesterday a spokesman for the Australian Federal Police declined to comment on the claims, saying it was official policy not to discuss operational matters. More than 93 people have been convicted of people smuggling since 2008. Most are believed to be Indonesian fisherman taken off intercepted boats. It is believed the networks comprise several operational tiers: spruikers who target vulnerable clients such as parents who want to be reunited with children; bag men who collect payments; "commanders" who track progress through the network. The operation is entirely commission based.

The AFP is a key part of the federal government's people-smuggling strike team that conducts long-term investigations into the trade. The team has powers to intercept phone conversations, monitor banking transactions and has officers in Indonesia and Kabul. Hazaras have a long history of persecution in Afghanistan and make up a significant number of the 6000 asylum seekers who arrived last year in Australian waters by boat from Indonesia.



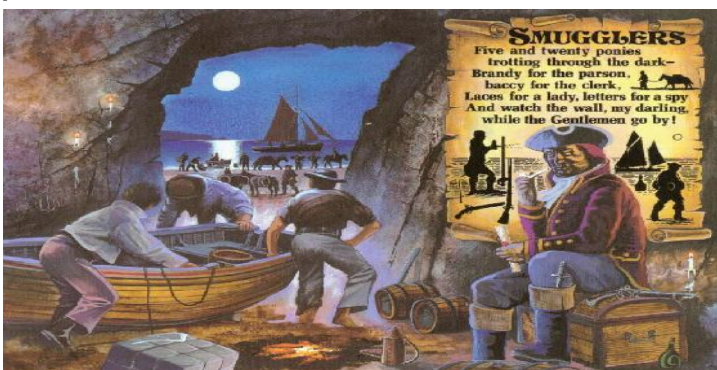
Many have fled the Taliban controlled city of Quetta, in Pakistan, near the Afghanistan border."Smugglers and their operatives see nothing morally wrong in what they are doing. They believe they are providing a service to the Afghan community by reuniting people ... ", a prominent member of the Afghan community, who declined to be identified, said. The *Herald* has been told that the once sanguine attitude among Afghans to smugglers is shifting. Sources who approached this reporter to talk about networks said they did so because of the disaster in December when more than 30 people on SIEV 221 perished in wild seas off Christmas Island. It is believed there are 17,000 asylum seekers in Indonesia waiting to come to Australia and another 25,000 in Malaysia. Australia has recently signed an agreement with Afghanistan to return asylum seekers who fail to meet the refugee criteria.

**Exercise 1. Work out recommendations for dealing with the problems given in the text.**

**Exercise 2. Practise the dialogue. A Customs officer and a smuggler.**

- Yes, madam. In that case, *I wonder if you'd mind signing this form.* If you like, I'll explain it to you.
- Why should I sign anything?
- To make things easier for yourself, madam. We've merely asking you to confirm in writing what you've already told us. You say the dresses were purchased....
- How many times must I tell you? They were bought in Chicago and New York before I left for Europe, so were the sweaters. The coat was a gift-purchased in the USA. I received it six months ago. *What happens if I sign the form?*
- Then you may go, madam.
- And take my things with me? All my things?
- Yes.
- Supposing I refuse to sign?
- Then we shall be obliged to detain you here while we continue the *investigation.*
- Very well. You fill out the form; I'll sign.
- No, madam, you fill it out. Now here, please describe the items, and alongside where, you say, they were *obtained.* Please give the name of the stores, also from whom you received the fur coat as a gift.... Madam, is there anything else you *wish to declare?*
- There's certainly isn't.
- Are you sure?
- Yes.
- In that case, madam, will you kindly open your handbag?
- But surely, purses are never inspected. I've been through Customs many times....
- Normally, they are not. But we do have the right... Madam, I have to leave for a short while, but I'll be back. In any case this is going to take some time.

**Exercise 3. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class. Render the contents of the dialogue in Indirect Speech in English. Translate the dialogue paying attention to italic phrases.**



## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**counterfeit** – а) подделка, фальсификация, жульничество *Syn. forgery falsification, forgery, imitation, fake* б) подмена, замена, фальшивка; обманщик; подставное лицо; шулер; а) поддельный, подложный; фальшивый, фиктивный б) лицемерный, притворный в) искусственный

counterfeit sympathy – неискреннее сострадание

counterfeit coin – фальшивая монета

counterfeit currency (money) – фальшивая валюта; фальшивые деньги

counterfeit document – подложный документ

counterfeit drug – фальсифицированный наркотик

counterfeiter – фальшивомонетчик *Syn. forger, coiner, falsifier*

commercial counterfeiting – коммерческая контрафакция

counterfeiting of money – фальшивомонетчество

counterfeiting – подделка; фальшивомонетчество; контрафакция

to **counterfeit** – фальсифицировать; делать копию (в преступных целях) *Syn. forge, fabricate*; вводить в заблуждение, обманывать

**fraud** – обман; мошенничество, подделка; обманщик, мошенник, плут, жулик

to commit (perpetrate) fraud – мошенничать

to expose a fraud – разоблачать мошенничество

vote fraud – мошенничество / подтасовка голосов на выборах

wire fraud – мошенничество с использованием электронных средств

fraud against creditors – обман кредиторов

fraud in fact – фактически совершенный обман

fraud in law – подразумеваемый обман

fraud in the execution – ошибка в выполнении (условий договора)

fraudable abduction – похищение другого лица с помощью обмана

**fraudster** – жулик, мошенник, обманщик, плут *Syn. cheat, deceiver*

**fraudulent** – обманный, мошеннический *Syn. deceitful, rascally*

fraudulent bankruptcy – злостное банкротство *Syn. false*

fraudulent activities (practice) – мошенничество

fraudulent alteration – подделка документа, чека

fraudulent behaviour (conduct) – обман

fraudulent contract – договор, основанный на мошенничестве

fraudulent intent – намерение обмануть; тайный умысел

fraudulent propensity – склонность ко лжи, к обману

fraudulently – обманным путем *Syn. dishonestly, wrongfully*

**deceitful** – неискренний, лживый, предательский, коварный; обманчивый, ложный *Syn. misleading, fallacious, deceptive*. It was deceitful to say such things behind her back. – Говорить такие вещи за ее спиной было предательством.

**false** – а) неверный, ошибочный *Syn. erroneous, wrong* б) несправедливый (о приговоре)

false document – поддельный документ

to show a false face – лицемерить

to put (give) a false colour on smth. – представлять что-л. в ложном свете

false advertising – обманная реклама

false address – ложный адрес

His friends played him false. – Его друзья обманули его.

false arrest – имитация ареста; противоправный арест

false beginner – человек, начинающий учить язык с нуля, хотя изучал его ранее

**falsity** – обманчивость; ложь, ошибка (ложное: утверждение, теория)

to **falsify** – а) исказить, представлять в ложном свете б) подделывать, фальсифицировать *Syn.* misrepresent в) испортить (отношения); опровергать, заявлять о ложности (несостоятельности)

He falsified the document by the substitution of a paragraph. – Он исказил документ, заменив в нем один параграф. He sat lonely in his office, coldly falsifying facts and dates. – Он в одиночестве сидел в своем офисе, хладнокровно подделывая факты и даты.

to falsify the relation – испортить отношения

No man can falsify any material fact here stated. – Ни один человек не может опровергнуть какой-либо факт, представленный здесь.

to falsify the account – подделывать счет

falsing of dooms – шотл. апелляция; отмена судебного решения

falsifier – фальсификатор, подделыватель *Syn.* duffer, adulterator

duffer – сленг торговец дешевыми низкокачественными товарами *Syn.* peddler

сленг а) торговец подделками; подделка; фальшивая монета

to falsify – подделывать, фальсифицировать

He sat lonely in his office, coldly falsifying facts and dates. – Он в одиночестве сидел в своем офисе, хладнокровно подделывая факты и даты.

**falsification** – а) фальсификация, подделка, искажение *Syn.* distortion б) подделка; подлог *Syn.* forgery, forged, faked document

falsification of memory – ложное воспоминание

falsified paper – подложный, фальшивый документ

What is said to have happened might have been invented, and the motives for the fabrication may be conceived. – Сообщение о том, что случилось, могло быть сфабриковано, а о причинах этой лжи можно догадаться.

**distortion** – искажение, извращение (высказываний, фактов)

a crude (gross) distortion – грубое искажение

a deliberate distortion – преднамеренное искажение

to **misrepresent** – исказить, представлять в ложном свете

faked – фальшивый, поддельный, сфабрикованный

faked diamonds – фальшивые бриллианты

faked report – сфабрикованный отчет

**treacherous** – вероломный, изменнический, предательский

**spurious** – поддельный; фальшивый *Syn.* treacherous, spurious, forged, sham

spurious gems – фальшивые драгоценности

spurious pride – ложная гордость

He should be able to distinguish what is Genuine in them from what is Spurious. – Он был бы способен отличить в них поддельное от настоящего.

**shoddy** – а) дешевая подделка (с претензией) б) претенциозность в) некачественный

**feigned** – поддельный, ложный, притворный, ненастоящий, фальшивый

Mortal enemies came every day to pay their feigned civilities. – Каждый день смертельные враги встречались, чтобы обменяться придворными этикетными любезностями.

**fictitious** – а) воображаемый, нереальный *Syn.* imaginary, invented, unreal

б) поддельный, фальшивый, фиктивный

Two treaties were drawn up, one was real, the other fictitious. – Были сделаны две копии соглашения: одна обладала юридической силой, другая считалась поддельной.

**simulated** – поддельный (имитирующий дорогие изделия); лицемерный, поддельный, simulated gold – поддельное золото

simulated fervour – притворное рвение

to **forg**e – подделывать (документы, печати, подписи)

Frank had forged the University seal. – Френк подделал университетскую печать.

forged – фальшивый, вероломный Syn. spurious, false, apocryphal, counterfeit, shoddy

**apocryphal** – недостоверный; сомнительный

**forgery** – подделка, подлог, фальсификация, фальшивка; подделывание

to commit forgery – подделывать

clever forgery – ловкая подделка

crude forgery – грубая подделка

skillful forgery – умелая подделка

The signature is a forgery. – Эта подпись поддельная.

to **forg**e – подделывать (подписи, чеки, печати и т. д.)

to forge a document – подделывать документ

forger – фальшивомонетчик, фальсификатор

**fiction** – фикция

*Exercise 1. Analyze the topical vocabulary notes and remember them.*

*Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.*

### Smuggling

1. I've found some icons in your suitcase, which are forbidden to be taken out of the country. 2. I've found a double bottom in your suitcase. 3. Are there any other hiding-places in the other baggage? 4. You say you've declared everything and what do you say to this? 5. Why haven't you declared these things? 6. As these things haven't been declared either in your declaration or during the interrogation, they are going to be seized as smuggled articles. 7. These things will be seized as not declared and hidden from the customs control. 8. During the personal examination and the Customs inspection of your hand baggage we've found some articles, currency and valuable things, which you tried to hide from the customs control. 9. We'll have to make out an act of seizing smuggled goods.

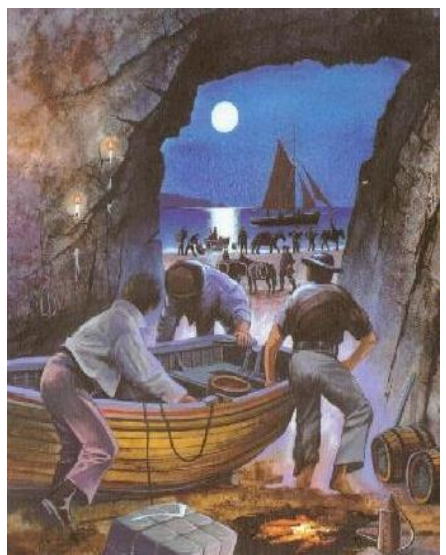
*Exercise 3. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.*

### Контрабанда

1. Так как предметы не указаны в таможенной декларации и не заявлены в устном опросе, они будут задержаны как предметы контрабанды. 2. Как незадекларированные и скрытые от таможни вещи будут конфискованы. 3. Во время личного таможенного досмотра у вас были обнаружены предметы, валюта и ценности, провозимые со скрытием от таможенного контроля. 4. Мы вынуждены составить акт о задержании предметов контрабанды. 5. В вашем чемодане обнаружены иконы, запрещенные к вывозу из страны. 6. В вашем чемодане обнаружено двойное дно. 7. Скажите, есть ли тайники в других местах клади? 8. Вы утверждаете, что ничего скрытого от контроля при вас нет, а это что? 9. Почему вы эти предметы не задекларировали?









## DIALOGUE

- What foreign currency have you got?
- I have US dollars and German marks.
- How much foreign currency have you got?
- I have 500 \$ - bills and 700 DM.
- Ok, will you show me your currency? I must count your money. How much would you like to change?
- 200 \$ and 500 DM.
- Take your money and count them. Here is your certificate. You must keep it. Please, show me the Bank entry permission for this currency.
- Sure, there is my Bank permission to entry this currency.
- The amount of the currency must be declared not only in figures but also in words.
- I didn't know about that. Thank you for the information.
- You should be more attentive. All right. I hope you'll spend time very nice.
- Thank you very much.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the words-combinations into Russian.**

Currency, currency snake, free currency, currency-account, currency exchange, currency bond, currency certificates, currency contract, currency conversion, currency declaration, currency depreciation, currency devaluation, currency dumping, currency earnings, currency exchange, currency fluctuation.

**Exercise 3. Pay attention to the keynotes.**

Counterfeiters ignore patents, which **protect intellectual property, copyright** and **trademarks**, by producing cheap copies or **fakes** of branded goods. These **infringements** are openly practised daily, affecting many businesses. **Digitisation** and the Internet have made it easier than ever to mass reproduce and distribute quality counterfeit products. The music industry in particular claims to be losing mln.s because of **file sharing** systems which allow the **downloading** of music free of charge.

**Exercise 4. Rank copyright infringements according to which ones you consider to be the most dishonest.**

- buying a fake Rolex watch;
- photocopying pages from a published book;
- lending a book you enjoyed to a friend to read;
- downloading music from an Internet file-sharing system;
- making a digital copy of a CD or DVD;
- showing a video to a group of people for money.

**Exercise 5. Read the texts again and answer the questions.**

**According to the first speaker**

1. How does counterfeiting benefit consumers?
2. Why would she buy copies of brands?

**According to the second speaker**

1. Which industries are affected by the problem in the European Union?
2. What are the most serious consequences of counterfeiting?
3. How are high prices of branded goods justified?

**Exercise 6. Read the text about currency and give a short summary of it.**

After the fall of the USSR in 1991, there appeared 15 independent states on the territory of the former Soviet Union, and among them there was Ukraine. At the present time each former Soviet Republic has its own monetary system. Ukraine is the last country to have its own national currency.

The national Ukrainian currency is hrivna. It was introduced in September 1996. The aim of the customs control is to protect the economic interests of Ukraine. So, one of the main duties of the Customs officer is to set up a control over the movement of currency.

The entry of foreign currency in the amount of \$2000 must be shown in a customs declaration.

The amount of the currency must be declared not only in figures, but also in words. Foreign currency may be freely exchanged into hrivna in many currency-exchange offices and banks.

Ukrainian hrivnas can't be taken abroad. You should exchange them into hard currency before you go through the customs. The exit of foreign currency abroad is permitted in the following cases:

- if that currency was previously brought in (from) abroad and registered at the Customs;
- if the foreign currency was received from the National Bank and other specialized banks that are authorized to issue a permit for its exit abroad. The customs officer must be very attentive to prevent the illegal carrying of currency. It is permitted for citizens of Ukraine to bring out money, registered in a customs declaration in the sum of up to... 3000 hrivnas per person.

It is permitted to bring in or out state loans, shares of enterprises and organization in hrivnas and lottery tickets and bank checks as well in the sum not more than...\$10000. It is permitted to bring out saving pass books and other documents, that certify money, currency assets and others under the condition that these documents are registered in the name of the person, who is travelling abroad. In the other cases the exit abroad of the above – mentioned documents might take place with the permission of the *National Bank of Ukraine*.

Citizens may bring in and out (import and export) coins in circulation on the territory of Ukraine with total value up...hrivnas with the exception of coins of precious metals.

The examination (inspection) of currency movement is one of the main tasks of defending economic interests of Ukraine.

**Exercise 7. Fill in the blanks with the words from the text and translate the sentences.**

1. It occurs any time a financial (1)\_\_\_\_\_ is subjected to a loss. 2. (2)\_\_\_\_\_ publishing refers to the counterfeiting of corporate checks, bonds and securities. 3. These instruments are (3)\_\_\_\_\_, then used either as collateral to underwritten loans, or for outright (4)\_\_\_\_\_. 4. The counterfeited checks will be (5)\_\_\_\_\_ into this fictitious account. 5. The reason for the increase in counterfeit credit card (6)\_\_\_\_\_ attributed to the new technology. 6. Money laundering is simply the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of the source of a person's income. 7. Banks are major (8)\_\_\_\_\_ for the laundering of money. 8. There are three steps in the laundering (9)\_\_\_\_\_: placement, layering and integration.

**Exercise 8. Read the talk about counterfeiting. What examples of copyright infringement do they mention?**

I. You have to admit counterfeiting benefits consumers, particularly in the developing countries, by giving them access to lower-price goods, such as medicines that they might not otherwise be able to afford. Anyway, some brands are just so overpriced I think it's great to get almost the same quality for much less than those ridiculously high prices they charge.

II. I think the costs of counterfeiting far outweigh the benefits. Think of the enormous cost to companies who make clothing toys, software and pharmaceuticals and the unemployment caused by it. I mean 17,120 jobs were lost in the European Union in just one year due to competition from cheaper counterfeits.. the branded industries need to invest huge amounts in research and development, marketing and advertising, which branded goods are more expensive.

**Exercise 9. Explain the contents of the text on Imitating property is theft shortly in English.**

Counterfeiting is on the increase. Companies ignore it at their peril. The most people, counterfeiting means forged currency. But counterfeiters are copying an ever-widening range of products. For some time they have been churning out imitation designer fashion, software and CDs. Now they are copying medicines, mobile phones, food and drink, car parts and even tobacco.

1) \_\_\_\_\_.

2) \_\_\_\_\_. New technology has broadened the range of goods that are vulnerable to copying. It has dramatically improved their cost of production. Where once counterfeits were cheap and shoddy imitations of the real thing, today their packaging and contents (especially for digital products such as software, music CDs and DVDs) often mean they are almost indistinguishable from the genuine article.

A counterfeit, by definition, is something that is copied or imitated without the perpetrator having the right to do it and with the purpose of deceiving or defrauding. Such rights are legally covered by patents (for inventions), copyright (for artistic works and software), trademarks (for words, pictures, symbols and industrial designs) and other forms of intellectual-property protection. Counterfeiting is as diverse as any legal business, ranging from back-street sweatshops to full-scale factories. Counterfeiters often get their goods by bribing employees in a company with a valuable brand to hand over manufacturing moulds or master disks for them to copy. 3) \_\_\_\_\_.

One of the most frustrating problems for brand owners is when their licensed suppliers and manufacturers “over-run” production lines without permission and then sell the extra goods on the sale.

Distribution networks can be as simple as a stall in the street, or a shop on the other side of the world. The Internet has been a great help to counterfeiters giving them detailed information about which goods to copy and allowing them to link consumers and suppliers with ease. 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

Counterfeiting is not a victimless crime. For a start, legitimate businesses lose sales because of competition from counterfeiters. If their brand loses value (because it is seen as less exclusive or is confused with shoddy imitations) there is a long-term threat to profitability. In addition, firms have to bear the cost of anti-counterfeiting measures.

5) \_\_\_\_\_. One strategy that companies increasingly use is to load their vulnerable products with anti-counterfeiting features. 6) \_\_\_\_\_.

Companies also use these features, primarily to help them track their products through the supply chain and to distinguish genuine articles from fakes, especially should they need to take the copycats to court. but no amount of effort will ever completely stop the copycats. For as long as there is consumer demand, companies will find that imitation is the severest form of flattery.

**Notes on the text**

1. Churn out – mass produce cheaply; 2. vulnerable – easy to attack; 3. perpetrator – criminal; 4. sweatshops – small factories with bad conditions; 5. shoddy – poor quality; 6. flattery – praise.

**Exercise 10. Complete the text with the following sentences.**

a. However, brand owners often willingly hand over production masters to counterfeiters without realising it.

b. As long as there is market for a product the copycats will imitate it.

c. Peter Lowe, head of CIB, reckons that some \$25 bn worth of counterfeit goods are traded each year over the Internet.

d. In recent years the counterfeiters have gone from strength to strength.

e. Some of these, borrowed from security devices developed for use on dollar bills, are clearly visible and are intended to help consumers distinguish fakes from genuine goods.

f. Procter & Gamble reckons it spends \$3m a year fighting the copycats.

**Exercise 11. Form the opposites of the adjectives and adverbs by adding in-, un-, or il-:**

distinguishable	_____	legally	_____
vulnerable	_____	willingly	_____
legitimate	_____	visible	_____
profitable	_____		

**Exercise 12. Translate the new words and phrases using a dictionary.**

Counterfeiters, to protect intellectual property, copyright, copyright law, copyright lawyer, copyright book, copyright reserved, copyright royalties, copyright protection, copyright edition, copyright act, copyright edition, copyright holder (owner), copyright law, copyright notes, copyright proprietor, Copyright Office, copyright protection, Copyright Royalty Tribunal, copyright work, copyrightable matter, copyright infringement action, copyrighted, copyrightability, copyrightible, copywronged, copyrighted name, copyrighted program, trade makets, fakes of branded goods, infringements, digitisation, counterfeit products, downloading, free of charge.

**Exercise 13. Read the text again and answer the questions.**

- What role has technology played in the expansion of counterfeiting?
- How do counterfeiters often obtain their production masters?
- What are the distribution networks for counterfeit products?
- What effects does counterfeiting have on legal businesses?

**Exercise 14. Choose the best word to complete each sentence.**

Expensive \_\_\_\_\_ fashion items are commonly copied products.

- a) excluded b) invented c) designer d) prototype

Copies are so well made that they are almost \_\_\_\_\_ from the original.

- a) identical b) the same c) incomparable d) indistinguishable

Many consumers prefer to pay more for a \_\_\_\_\_ brand.

- a) genuine b) right c) normal d) reality

\_\_\_\_\_ manufacturers receive permission to produce branded goods.

- a) Partner b) Associated c) Agreed d) Licensed

The overseas printer produced extra books and sold them \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) on the side b) besides c) indisde d) over the side

The music industry is very concerned about \_\_\_\_\_ infringement.

- a) patent b) copyright c) trademark d) intellectual

Increased counterfeiting affects the brand owners' future \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) balancing b) potential c) profitability d) finance

CDs and Videos are particularly \_\_\_\_\_ to piracy

- a) easy b) suspect c) vulnerable d) valuable

One legal action against counterfeiters is to take them to \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) justice b) court c) account d) copyright

**Exercise 15. Look at the words and expressions in the box below amd answer two questions.**

Dropping litter, jaywalking, drug pushing, fraud, spitting in public, suicide, arson, libel, kidnapping, manslaughter, treason.

Which are against the law in your country?

Which are the most and least serious in your opinion?

**Exercise 16. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 17. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 18. Read the text and pick up the essential details in the form of quick notes.**

## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**leg** – жулик, мошенник, шулер *Syn. blackleg*

**empiric** – притворщик, симулянт, шарлатан *Syn. pretender, impostor, charlatan*

to **connive** – потворствовать, попустительствовать; смотреть сквозь пальцы (at)

The thieves paid the servants to connive at the robbery. – Воры заплатили слугам, чтобы те "не заметили" грабежа. Then do you connive at her escape? – Так значит ты помог ей сбежать?

to **connive** with – сговариваться с кем-л.

They connived with each other to cheat her. – Они договорились, что вместе обманут ее.

to **lead on** – завлекать, увлекать; вовлекать (во что-л. плохое) обманывать

The boy claimed that he had been led on by his criminal companions. – Мальчик утверждал, что его соблазнили его товарищи-преступники. Advertisements for houses for sale often lead buyers on with misleading descriptions. – Рекламные объявления о продаже домов часто вводят покупателей в заблуждение ложными описаниями.

3) наводить разговор на какую-л. тему

I've led her on to tell her secret. – Я повел разговор так, чтобы выведать ее секрет.

**sham** – 1) а) притворство, симуляция *Syn. dissimulation, pretense, hypocrisy* б) подделка, фальсификация в) мошенничество, обман мистификация *Syn. swindle, fraud, hoax*

sham marriage – фиктивный брак

What did you sham dead for? – Зачем ты прикинулся мертвым?

sham illness – симуляция болезни

2) а) притворщик, симулянт *Syn. pretender, hypocrite* б) обманщик, жулик, мошенник

to display hypocrisy – лицемерить

**swindle** – мошенничество, обман *Syn. trickery, cheating* вводить в заблуждение (с целью денег).

He has swindled his wife out of all money she possessed. – Он выудил у своей жены все деньги.

to **nose** – выискивать, отслеживать (after, for).

I thought of her nosing in my room for signs. – Я представлял себе, как она ищет в моей комнате следы. When a copper comes to one of the "boys" for expert advice, it means he wants him to 'nose'. – Когда коп приходит к одному из ребят, чтобы дать опытный совет, это означает, что он хочет, чтобы тот "сдал" своих.

to **nose about** – любопытствовать, вынюхивать *Syn. poke about, pry about*

That policeman should not be nosing about in our garage without a court order. – Этот полицейский не имеет права копаться в нашем гараже без санкции суда.

to **nose into** – совать нос в (чьи-л. дела)

I don't want our neighbour nosing into our affairs, so keep quiet about our plans. – Я не хочу, чтобы наш сосед совал нос в наши дела, поэтому молчи о наших планах. nose on сленг доносить

to **pry about** – высматривать; с любопытством разглядывать

That policeman had no business prying about in our garage. – Этому полицейскому нечего делать у нас в гараже. Why was he prying about among our things? – Что он копается в моих вещах?

to **poke about** – высматривать, выискивать; любопытствовать

That policeman had no business poking about in our garage without a court order. – Этому полицейскому нечего копаться в нашем гараже без санкции прокурора.

to be **armed** to the teeth – быть вооруженным до зубов

to be **armed** with – обладать (храбростью, знаниями и т. п.)

to arm oneself with patience – набираться терпения

the arm of the law – сила закона right arm – "правая рука", основное доверенное лицо

the long arm of the law – всемогущество закона, "длинная рука" (об органах безопасности)



**hand** – власть; контроль, надзор; защита, охрана *Syn. control, custody, care, possession, ownership, power, jurisdiction*

to fall into smb.'s hands – попасть кому-л. в лапы

firm (iron) hand – строгий контроль

The land round his house was in his own hands. – Земля вокруг его дома находилась под его охраной. The documents fell into enemy hands. – Документы попали в руки врага. The condemned man's fate is in the governor's hands. – Судьба осужденного находится в руках правительства.

to suffer at smb.'s hands идиом. – натерпеться от кого-л.

weight of evidence – совокупность доказательств по делу

**motive** – мотив, побуждение, повод; причина; стимул (behind, for)

to establish (find) a motive – выяснить, найти мотив

to question smb.'s motives – выяснять чьи-л. мотивы

altruistic motives – альтруистические побуждения

base motives – низменные побуждения

humane motives – поступки человека

noble (honorable) motives – благородные порывы

selfish motives – эгоистичные помыслы

ulterior motives – тайные побуждения

the highest motives – высочайшие побуждения

the profit motive – соображения выгоды

underlying motive – соображения, лежащие в основе

She had no motive to commit the crime. – У нее не было мотивов совершать преступление.

The police could not find a motive for the murder. – Полиция не могла найти причины преступления.

to **mill** – сленг. отправить в тюрьму; посадить в тюрьму

to go (pass) through the mill – пройти суровую школу

to put smb. through the mill – заставить кого-л. пройти суровую школу

I shouldn't have been milled if it hadn't been for her advice. (Dickens) – Меня не посадили бы в тюрьму, если бы не ее науськивания.

to **doom** – выносить обвинительный приговор *Syn. sentence, condemn, judge*

**stir** – тюрьма, тюрьга in stir – в тюрьме, в тюремном заключении

**bicker** – перебранка *Syn. wrangle, squabble* потасовка

He went to the High School, and joined in the street fights called bickers. – Он поступил в колледж и стал принимать участие в уличных драках, называемых потасовками.

**shadow** – "тень", пятно (на чьей-л. репутации, чьем-л. добром имени)

The episode left an unfortunate shadow on him. – Этот случай бросил тень на его репутацию.

to shadow – следовать по пятам, тайно следить, шпионить

**hold** – заключение в тюрьму *Syn. confinement, custody, imprisonment*

**to hold** – (официально) утверждать, устанавливать, решать (о суде)

to hold back – сдерживать(ся); воздерживаться (from) утаивать

Police horses were used to hold back the crowd. – Чтобы сдержать толпу, вызвали конную полицию. We will not hold your past blunders against you. – Мы не будем принимать во внимание твои предыдущие ошибки.

to hold back the truth – скрыть правду

to hold against – обвинять

**accumulation** – совпадение юридических прав на одно имущество; совпадение разных обстоятельств, в подтверждение одного факта

**job** – кража, любой другой вид преднамеренного нарушения закона  
 to do (pull) a job – совершить кражу  
 inside job – амер. кража, совершенная кем-л. из сотрудников предприятия или организации  
 job lot – партия разрозненных товаров, продающихся оптом; вещи, купленные по  
 дешевке с целью перепродажи; разрозненная коллекция  
 to do a hatchet job on smb. – критиковать кого-л.  
 He really did a job on his opponent. – Он нанес серьезное поражение своему сопернику.  
 to lie down on the job – работать кое-как  
 to do smb.'s job, to do the job for smb. – разг. погубить кого-л.  
 to put up a job on smb. – амер. сыграть с кем-л. шутку  
 snow job – амер. обман put-up job – заранее заданная схема  
 job of work – нелегкая работенка  
 to job – использование служебного положения в личных целях

**executor** – судебный исполнитель, палач *Syn.* executioner, hangman, butcher  
 executor under will – судебный исполнитель по завещаниям  
 executorship – совокупность исполнительных функций

**rap** – выговор, замечание; сленг наказание; обвинение; приговор *Syn.* accusation, charge  
 I got a rap on/over the knuckles for not finishing my work in time. – Я получил выговор за то,  
 что не закончил работу вовремя.  
 to take the rap – нести наказание  
 to beat the rap – избежать наказания  
 bad (bum) rap – подстроено обвинение  
 He was sent to prison on a murder rap. – Его бросили в тюрьму за убийство.  
 to rap – ругать, критиковать, извергать ругательства  
 to rap knuckles – давать нагоняй  
 Judge rapped police. – Судья понес полицию.  
 to rap with – разг. поговорить с кем-л. неформально  
 You can learn a lot by rapping with people you think might be your enemies. – Ты можешь  
 узнать многое, поболтав с людьми, которых ты считаешь своими врагами.  
 not a rap – ни гроша  
 rap – никчемный человек  
 rap session – амер. разг. разговоры, беседа в мужской компании  
 good-for-nothing – бездельник, лентяй; никчемный человек; ни на что не годный, бесполезный

**creep** – вор (крадущий что-л., пока никто не смотрит), карманный вор  
 to creep up on – подкрадываться; постепенно увеличиваться  
 The cat crept up on the mouse. – Кошка подкралась к мышке.  
 Doubt crept up on me about his truthfulness. – Я все больше и больше сомневался, что ему  
 можно доверять. It makes my blood creep. – У меня от этого мороз по коже, волосы встают  
 дыбом, кровь стынет в жилах. It gives you the creeps all down the small of the back. – Так страшно,  
 что вся спина покрывается гусиной кожей.

**sack** – разграбление, ограбление, разбой *Syn.* plunder, plundering, sackage  
 to sack – разг. присваивать *Syn.* pocket грабить; расхищать *Syn.* strip, plunder, despoil  
 to sack money – разг. прикарманить деньги  
 to sack profit – разг. прикарманить прибыль; отдавать на разграбление (побежденный  
 город солдатам победившей армии)  
 They sack the temples. – Они грабят храмы.

to **strip** – лишать (чего-л.): отнимать, отбирать (что-л. - of), грабить

to strip smb. of all civil rights – лишить всех гражданских прав

The thieves stripped the house of its valuables. – Воры унесли из дома все ценные вещи.

**plunder** – воровство, разорение; грабеж, разграбление (земли, города) *Syn. robbery, pillage, spoliation, depredation*; а) трофеи, добыча *Syn. loot, spoil, booty, prey* б) собственность, полученная обманом, нечестным путем в) сленг. барыш, прибыль, навар; барахло, шмотки (личные вещи, багаж); домашняя рухлядь *Syn. luggage, baggage, household goods, household effects*

to plunder – а) разграблять, разорять, опустошать (на войне) б) присваивать незаконно или силой; грабить в) разорять, расхищать (казну); бездумно растрачивать (природные богатства)

invaders plundered the town – захватчики разграбили

to **despoil** – грабить, обирать; лишать (of - чего-л.)

The enemy have despoiled the whole valley of its crops. – Враг вывез из долины весь урожай. The trees were despoiled of their leaves in the high wind. – Сильный ветер сорвал с деревьев все листья.

**pillage** – грабеж, мародерство *Syn. robbery, plunder* награбленное добро

to pillage – грабить, мародерствовать

pillager – мародер *Syn. marauder, looter, prowler*

**spoliation** – а) воровство, грабеж; расхищение б) захват нейтральных судов во время войны

2) нанесение вреда, порчи 3) преднамеренное уничтожение или искажение документа (чтобы он не мог служить доказательством)

spoliation of the valuable specimens – повреждение ценных образцов

**depredation** – ограбление; воровство, грабеж; расхищение; опустошение; разрушение, порча

They perished by the depredations of the lava. – Поток лавы уничтожил их.

**plant** – сыщик полицейская засада, "ловушка"

He sold forged notes to a plant which led to his untimely end. – Он продал фальшивые банкноты подставному лицу, что привело к его неизбежному концу.

to **process** – возбуждать процесс; вызывать (кого-л.) в суд

**agreed order** – приказ суда в соответствии с соглашением сторон

agreed penalty – установленный штраф

agreed statement of facts – согласованное заявление сторон об обстоятельствах дела

agreed decision – согласованное решение (всеми заинтересованными сторонами)

agreed measures – согласованные меры

**Exercise 1. Analyze the topical vocabulary notes and remember them.**

## DIALOGUE

- Next, please. Good morning!
- Good morning! I'd like to cash this check.
- Yes, please. Here is the form, fill it in.
- I have already filled it in. Here it is.
- Excuse me, but you haven't signed it!
- Really! Oh! I'm sorry. Here you are.
- What banknotes would you like to have?
- Four twenties and two tens, please. But wonder, what's the exchange rate today?
- Just a second. I'll check today's rate. It's...hrivnas for one dollar.
- Thank you very much.
- Don't mention it. Here is your money.
- Thanks a lot. Goodbye.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart.**

**Exercise 2. Read the text and give your point of view on the problem given in it.**

## LAX CUSTOMS CHECKS - HAVEN FOR SMUGGLERS

Report says: low number of physical checks make UK a soft touch for gangs transporting narcotics, arms and fake products. The UK is one of the easiest places in the European Union to smuggle guns, drugs and counterfeit goods because of the low level of checks by customs officials at ports and airports, the National Audit Office says in a report published today. It reveals that just 0.1% of the goods entering the country, some 2,400 orders, were physically inspected by customs last year.

Another 280,000 traders' documents were checked by customs officials to see whether they were in order. But the remaining 97% of orders entered the UK without any checks at all, nearly all of them clearing customs in two hours. Altogether some £186bn of goods is imported into the UK every year. According to the NAO the checks compare with a European Union average of 9% – one in 11 orders – being checked across the EU. The figure for physical checks is thought to be the lowest among the 27 member states. It has fallen from 0.3% in two years. Revenue and customs defends the low level of physical checks on the grounds that it is targeting suspect traders, pointing out that 630 out of 2,400 orders checked were found importing illegal guns, drugs and counterfeit goods.

The responsibility for some physical checks on lorries was transferred to the UK Borders Agency from April this year, and it plans to increase the number of checks to between 7,000 and 10,000, mainly looking for heroin, cocaine and illegal immigrants.

But the NAO questions whether the overall management of revenue and customs is competent to know what is happening. The report says: "The department has an incomplete view of the number of physical examinations it undertakes and the results of those examinations." There were gaps and inconsistencies in recording whether the goods examined were an import or export and the country of origin. X-ray examinations at some seaports are also not currently recorded."

It concludes: "The fragmented nature of the customs regime within the department, a lack of accountability and incomplete management information has hindered effective oversight of its performance and risk management." Edward Leigh MP, the chairman of the committee of public accounts, said: "Today's National Audit Office" report rings alarm bells about HMRC's control of imports.

The Department's management of customs activities is described as fragmented and the report highlights a lack of clear accountability and incomplete management information on compliance levels.

"All of this can only make it easier for rogue traders to bring prohibited and restricted goods – such as counterfeit goods, drugs, guns and ammunition – into the country and for them to dodge paying the right amount of duty and taxation." David Davis, the former chairman of the committee, said: "Eight years ago, we had a similar report warning about the failure of customs.

Nothing seems to have changed." Revenue and customs said: "Other EU customs authorities have different and frequently wider remits, so direct comparisons relating to numbers of physical checks are difficult and often meaningless. "The UK's systems are also relatively sophisticated – some other member states are forced to do physical checks where we have already automated a level of control." HMRC has revised its approach to the audit of international trade businesses.

By looking at the full spectrum of their activities at once, we can reduce the number of times we need to visit. We have also improved our risk targeting, meaning we can target these visits more effectively. By doing this, HMRC has reduced the time and burden placed on the businesses."

**Exercise 1. Digest the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions.**

1. What country is one of the easiest places in the European Union to smuggle? 2. How many orders enter the UK without any checks at all? 3. What organization highlights a lack of clear accountability? 4. What organization has reduced the time and burden placed on the businesses? 5. Are the UK's systems relatively sophisticated?

**Exercise 3. Render the main idea of the article in some English sentences.**

Money is medium of exchange. All values in the economic system are measured in items of money. Money differs from cash. Cash is a form of money that consists of paper currency and coins.

Currency is money in use in a country. For example, American currency consists of dollars and cents. Cents are made of different metals.

Dollars are printed on paper. But not everyone knows there is a quarter (25) a dime (10), and a nickel (5). English currency consists of pounds sterling and shillings. But besides of it there is a penny and pence. I know that 12 pence make up a shilling and 20 shillings are a pound, and a pound is 100 new pence. So, there is different currency in different countries. And now some more words about the currency of the UIS (Union of Independent States). The currency of the UIS differs as well.

For example, there is a rouble in Russia, a zaichik in Byelorussia, a lat in Latvia, a lit in Lithuania, a lei in Moldova, a tange in Kazakhstan, a lar in Georgia, etc. And, it is hrivna in Ukraine.

Foreign currency that is brought in from abroad by citizens is going or permitted through customs without any restrictions. The entry of foreign currency in the amount of 1000\$ or more or the equivalent of that sum in other foreign currency must be shown in a customs declaration. The amount of the currency must be declared not only in figures, but also in words. But if the passenger intentionally conceals some currency and doesn't declare it, the currency will be seized as an object of smuggling. The customs officer must be very attentive to prevent the illegal transportation of currency.

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs.**

1. If I (have) \_\_\_\_ enough money, I (buy) \_\_\_\_ a real Rolex but I just didn't, so I bought a fake. 2. Local counterfeiters only (pay) \_\_\_\_ a fine of \$1,000 when they are caught they (keep on) \_\_\_\_ producing counterfeit goods. 3. There (not / be) \_\_\_\_ so many imitation drugs on the market if the prices of the genuine products (not / be) \_\_\_\_ so high. 4. If we (not / drop) \_\_\_\_ our prices in the region I think we (be) \_\_\_\_ vulnerable to counterfeiting by local companies. 5. We (not / manufacture) \_\_\_\_ locally if we (not / trust) \_\_\_\_ them to produce only the agreed quantities. It's been fine so far. 6. If I (know) \_\_\_\_ it was a fake, I (not / buy) \_\_\_\_ it. 7. We're considering introducing some sophisticated anti-counterfeiting features but it (cost) \_\_\_\_ a lot of money if we (use) \_\_\_\_ them. 8. I (not / work) \_\_\_\_ for counterfeiter if (can / get) \_\_\_\_ another job elsewhere, but I can't.





## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

- currency** – валюта Ant: metallic currency  
hard currency, US dollars (cents) – конвертируемая валюта, доллары  
free currency – свободно конвертируемая валюта  
foreign currency – иностранная валюта  
paper currency – бумажные деньги Syn. paper money, greenback  
greenback – банкнота Syn: bank note мн. бумажные деньги  
currency exchange – валюта, денежный стандарт, курс иностранной валюты  
currency snake – изменение валютного курса в рамках установленных границ  
currency account – счет валюты; счет деизов  
currency exchange regulation – валютный контроль  
Currency Act of 1900 – амер. закон о золотом стандарте  
currency adjustment – пересмотр валютных паритетов  
currency and financial sphere – валютно-финансовая сфера  
currency bill – вексель, выписанный в иностранной валюте  
currency bond – облигация, оплачиваемая любыми видами законного платежного средства;  
облигация, выпускаемая и погашаемая в валюте другой страны  
currency note – банкнота  
currency of money – денежное обращение  
currency funds – валютные фонды предприятий  
currency certificates – казначейские сертификаты  
currency contract – валютный контракт  
currency declaration – валютная декларация  
currency depreciation – обесценение валюты  
currency fluctuation – колебание валюты  
currency movement – колебания курсов валюты  
currency devaluation — девальвация денег  
currency dumping – валютный демпинг  
currency earnings – валютные поступления, валютная выручка  
currency issue – выпуск бумажных денег  
Pounds sterling (pence) – фунты стерлинги (английские)  
French francs – франки (французские)  
the going rate of the dollar for today – курс доллара на сегодня  
forged money – фальшивые деньги  
change – разменная монета  
lottery tickets – лотерейные билеты  
permit issued by the Customs office to have the currency registered – удостоверение таможи на  
регистрацию иностранных валют  
to take out of circulation – изъять из обращения  
to count money – пересчитать деньги  
to register – оформить в валютном отношении
- coin** – а) монета, мелкая монета, разменная монета б) разг. деньги  
to pay a man back in his own coin – отплачивать той же монетой  
to spin (toss up) a coin – играть в орлянку; решать пари подбрасыванием монеты  
to coin – чеканить Syn. mint выдумывать, замышлять Syn. contrive, devise, create  
to coin it in – разг. зарабатывать много денег
- mint** – а) монетный двор б) печатающий станок

mint coin – блестящая новенькая монета

mint of money – большая сумма дунуг

coin money – деньги в монетной форме

a mint copy – новый экземпляр (чего-л.)

coin box set (station telephone, coin-operated telephone) – телефон-автомат

coin changer – разменный автомат

coin counting machine – машина для счета монет

to coin it in – разг. зарабатывать много денег

Jim's working in the North Sea oil business, and he's coining it in. – Джим работает на нефтяных промыслах в Северном море и зашибает нехилые бабки.

coin packaging machine – машина для расфасовки монет

coinage – а) чеканка монет б) монетная система; выдумка *Syn. invention, fiction*

coinage offence – фальшивомонетничество

pure fiction – чистый вымысел

**Exercise 1. Make up sentences with the topical vocabulary.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Have you declared all your currency? 2. Could you have missed anything? 3. All your money both cash and cheques must be declared. 4. We have to seize the currency, which you have got. 5. The currency seized on entry becomes the property of the state. 6. I'll give you a receipt. 7. You'll get the money on showing this receipt when you leave this country. 8. In point "four" of the declaration you must indicate how much currency in cheques and cash you have. 9. Show me the entry permit of the Bank for currency. 10. There are no Bank records concerning the exchange of the currency.

**Exercise 3. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercises.**

1. У вас нет отметки банка об обмене валюты. 2. Эти деньги – на хранении у нас. 3. Вы можете провести эту сумму только при наличии документа из банка. 4. По нашим правилам вы можете провести определенную сумму. 5. Вам придется сдать эти деньги в кассу, где вам выдадут квитанцию, вы получите их при выезде. 6. На остальную валюту я выпишу вам квитанцию. 7. По этой квитанции вы получите свои деньги в течение 3 лет в любой таможене страны. 8. Поменять валюту можно в банке на первом этаже. 9. Обмен денег на первом этаже. 10. Оставьте сумму для оплаты багажа (лишнего веса), остальное сдайте в кассу на хранение.

**Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Have you a document, which entitles to take the currency abroad (entry declaration, certificate of the bank)? 2. The cash amount of the currency you may take with you abroad must not exceed... 3. You must re-exchange the... you are allowed to take out with you at the bank of your country. 4. You were trying to smuggle this money, therefore it is to be confiscated. 5. The money will be confiscated and becomes the property of the state. 6. Foreign currency declared at the Customs is declared without any restriction. 7. How much foreign currency have you got? 8. Will you show me your currency? What foreign currency have you got? 9. I must count your money. 10. Please, declare the amount of your currency in figures and words. 11. Transfer of foreign currency to third persons is allowed by special permission of the Ministry of Finance. 12. Foreign currency registered by the Customs on entry is cleared without any restrictions. 13. Please, show me the Bank entry permit for this currency. 14. This currency is not shown in your entry declaration. The Customs will seize it. 15. You haven't got a Bank exit permit for this amount. You can leave it with the Customs. Give it to people who are seeing you off.

**Exercise 5. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 6. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 7. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercises.**

1. Оставшуюся мелочь можно потратить в баре после таможенного контроля. 2. Есть ли у вас документ на право вывоза валюты из страны? (въездная декларация, справка банка) 3. Вы задекларировали все свои деньги? Или вы что-нибудь забыли? 4. Все деньги – наличные или чеки должны быть задекларированы. 5. Мы обязаны задержать ввозимую вами валюту. 6. Задержанная при ввозе валюта переходит в доход государства. 7. Выпишу вам квитанцию. 8. Вы получите эти деньги по этой квитанции при выезде из страны. 9. В разделе 4 декларации нужно расписать – сколько валюты в чеках и сколько наличными. 10. Мне нужно просчитать валюту.

**Exercise 8. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Your money will be kept with us. 2. You may take this amount with you only if you have a certificate of the bank. 3. According to our rules you may take only a certain sum of money. 4. You'll have to leave this money with the cashier, who'll give you a receipt you'll collect it on your return there. 5. I'll give you a receipt for the rest. 6. You can collect the money within 3 years at any Customs office in the country on presenting this receipt. 7. You may change your currency at the bank on the ground floor. 8. Money exchange is on the ground floor. 9. Keep some money you will need to pay for your baggage (excess), the remaining must be given to the cashier for storage. 10. The remaining change may be spent in the bar after going through the customs control.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercises.**

1. Прошу указать сумму иностранной валюты цифрами и прописью. 2. Передача валюты другим лицам допускается с разрешения Министерства Финансов. 3. В вашей въездной декларации эта валюта не указана. 4. Зарегистрированная при ввозе иностранная валюта пропускается без ограничений. 5. Предъявите разрешение из банка на вывоз этой валюты. 6. Таможня принимает ее на хранение. 7. У вас нет разрешения банка на вывоз такой суммы. Вы можете сдать ее на хранение или отдать провозающим. 8. Предъявите мне разрешение банка на ввоз валюты. 9. Наличная сумма валюты не должна превышать ... 10. Ввозимую валюту вы должны сдать в банк своей страны для обратного обмена. 11. Вы хотели незаконно провезти эти деньги, я их конфискую. 12. Деньги будут конфискованы в пользу государства. 13. Предъявленная таможене иностранная валюта пропускается в страну без ограничений. 14. Сколько у вас иностранной валюты? Прошу предъявить валюту на контроль. 15. Какая у вас иностранная валюта?

**Exercise 10. Translate the words and word-combinations into English.**

Валютный контроль; колебание валюты; свободно конвертируемая валюта; банкнота; валютные фонды предприятий; выпуск бумажных денег; изменение валютного курса в рамках установленных границ; валюта контракта; обесценение валюты; пересмотр валютных паритетов; валютно-финансовая сфера; валютная оговорка; казначейские сертификаты; колебания курсов валюты.



## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**money** – а) деньги for money – за деньги б) платежное средство (эквивалент денег для расчетов за товары и услуги, типа чеков, денежных почтовых переводов) Syn. circulating medium в) перен. богатство; собственность; (moneys) монетные системы, валюты; (monies) денежные суммы

to do smth. for money – делать что-л. за деньги

to borrow money – занимать деньги

to change money – менять деньги

to counterfeit money – подделывать деньги

to earn (make) money – делать, зарабатывать деньги

to lend money – одалживать деньги

to produce money – чеканить, выпускать деньги

to save money – копить, экономить деньги

to spend money – тратить деньги

to squander (throw away) money – выбрасывать деньги на ветер

to withdraw money – изымать деньги (из обращения)

to sink (a lot of) money into (a venture) – вложить (много) денег в (предприятие)

to launder (illegally acquired) money – отмыывать (черные) деньги

They invested their money in stocks and bonds. – Они вложили деньги в государственные ценные бумаги и бонды. We are out of money. – У нас нет денег.

to bank money – класть деньги в банк

to circulate money – вводить деньги в обращение

to deposit money – класть деньги на депозит

to invest money in – вкладывать деньги в

to put money into – вкладывать деньги в

to put up money – вкладывать деньги

to put money on – сленг. держать пари, биться об заклад

to raise money – занимать деньги, получить ссуду на что-л.

to refund (return) money – возвращать, отдавать деньги

to tie up money – вкладывать деньги

in the money – сленг. богатый

to have money to burn – денег куры не клюют

money makes money – посл. деньги к деньгам

old money – потомственное богатство; потомственная денежная аристократия

black money – сленг. грязные деньги; теневой капитал

conscience money – сумма подоходного налога, анонимно присылаемая налогоплательщиком, первоначально уклонившимся от уплаты; анонимные возмещения ущерба, выплата долга и т. п.

earnest money – честные деньги

mad money – небольшая сумма денег, припрятанная для мелких расходов

pin (pocket) money – карманные деньги

paper money – бумажные деньги

upfront money – амер. аванс

seed money – начальные инвестиции

tax money – налог

tight money – недостаточное количество денег

well-spent money – правильно израсходованные деньги

**Exercise 1. Analyze the topical vocabulary notes and remember them.**

**Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

**Articles of precious**

1. Declared things such as articles made of precious metals, precious stones / pearls can be brought to the country in any quantities and are to be registered by the Customs Office. 2. You have to declare any gold articles. 3. You have to declare all articles made of precious metals, precious stones / pearls, which you are taking with you. 4. What's the hallmark of this gold? 5. We'll have to check if the stones are real. 6. How many carats is this diamond? 7. You have either to take this gold coin back or exchange it through the State Bank. 8. Are these articles all of foreign manufacture? 9. Take off this ring, please. I want to see the hallmark. 10. Can I have your gold article for a minute? 11. I'm writing in the declaration that there is no hallmark on the ring. 12. In this case we'll determine the kind of gold by reagents. 13. I'm going to put it in the declaration that the ring is foreign made. 14. Tourists and persons who are on private trips in the country are allowed to take out of the country not more than 2 articles made of gold which have been bought for legally obtained currency. 15. Can I have your ring to check whether its hallmark corresponds to the one stated in your entry declaration?

**Exercise 3. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the exercise below.**

**Драгоценные предметы**

1. Предъявленные для контроля изделия из драгоценного металла камней и жемчуга пропускаются в страну без ограничений и подлежат регистрации в таможене. 2. Укажите все золотые изделия. 3. В декларации нужно указать все изделия из драгоценных камней и металла, которые у вас есть. 4. Какой пробы это золото? 5. Мы проверим подлинность камня. 6. Сколько карат в этом бриллианте? 7. Эту золотую монету вы должны вывезти обратно, либо реализовать только через Госбанк. 8. Все эти изделия иностранного производства? 9. Снимите это кольцо, нужно проверить пробу. 10. Разрешите на минутку ваше золотое изделие. 11. Я записываю в декларацию, что кольцо без пробы. 12. В этом случае мы определим пробу с помощью реактивов. 13. Я впишу в декларацию, что кольцо иностранного производства. 14. Туристам и частным лицам разрешается вывозить не более 2 изделий из золота, купленных легально. 15. Разрешите посмотреть ваше кольцо и сверить пробу с той, что записана в вашей въездной декларации.





## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

frame – оправа к очкам

filigree work – филигрань

pendant, watch, necklace – подвески / кулон, часы, ожерелье

bracelet, brooch, chain – браслет, брошь, цепочка

**precious** – драгоценный; большой ценности

precious stone – драгоценный камень

precious metal – благородный металл

precious metal alloy – драгоценный сплав

Happiness was the most precious gift. – Счастье было самым драгоценным даром.

real (precious) jewellery – натуральное украшение, драгоценности

artificial jewellery – бижутерия

precious stones (diamond, emerald, sapphire, ruby, amethyst) – драгоценные камни

(бриллиант, сапфир, рубин, аметист, изумруд)

**diamond** – алмаз; бриллиант

to cut, grind, polish a diamond – шлифовать, гранить бриллиант

to set a diamond – оправлять бриллиант

cut diamond – ограненный бриллиант

flawless (perfect) diamond – бриллиант чистой воды

industrial diamond – промышленный алмаз

rough (uncut) diamond – неотшлифованный алмаз

a diamond sparkles – бриллиант блестит

black diamond – черный алмаз *Syn. carbonado*

carbonado – черный алмаз, карбонадо (разновидность алмаза для технических целей)

diamond cut diamond – один другому не уступит

diamond wedding – бриллиантовая свадьба

semi-precious stones (amber, jade, turquoise) – полудрагоценные камни: янтарь нефрит, бирюза)

turquoise bead – бусы из бирюзы

above rubies – бесценный, неоценимый

ruby ring – рубиновый перстень

ruby anniversary – сорокалетие; сороколетняя годовщина

pearls, gold, silver enamelled silver – жемчуг, золото, серебро с эмалью

platinum, white gold – платина, белое золото

platinum metal – металл платиновой группы

**silver** – серебро; серебряные монеты; серебряные деньги; серебряные изделия

sterling silver – чистое серебро caustic silver – ляпис

silver bullion – серебро в слитках

fine silver – серебро высокой пробы, чистое серебро

low assay silver – серебро низкой пробы

native silver – самородное серебро

the silver content of a coin – содержание серебра в монете

German silver – нейзильбер (сплав меди с цинком и никелем)

silver cutlery (flat, table silver) – столовое серебро

family silver – фамильное серебро

4) цвет серебра; серебряный

a silver watch – серебряные часы

silver coin – серебряная монета

silver paper – тонкая папиросная бумага *Syn. tissue-paper* фольга, станиоль  
 the Silver Streak – разг. Ла-Манш the silver age – серебряный век  
 silver jubilee – серебряный юбилей, 25 летие какого-л. события  
 silver wedding – серебряная свадьба, двадцатипятилетие брака  
 to silver glass – посеребрить стекло silvered mirror – посеребренное зеркало

**gold** – золото (богатство, сокровища; деньги); "яблочко" (при стрельбе из лука)

to mine (prospect) for gold – искать золото  
 to strike gold – открыть месторождение золота

pure (solid) gold – чистое золото  
 a bar of gold – золотой слиток, слиток золота

as good as gold – очень хороший, добрый; послушный

black gold – идиом. черное золото, нефть

He made a gold. – Он попал в самое "яблочко". *Syn. bull's-eye*

gold currency – золотая валюта

gold value – золотая стоимость

gold medal – золотая медаль

gold disc (обык. амер.) — золотой диск (награда, вручаемая музыкальным исполнителям за коммерческий успех их записей)

gold / silver plated a set of knives, forks, spoons – позолоченный комплект ножей, вилок, ложек

**trinket** – безделушка, брелок

The tortoise-shell of which such a variety of beautiful trinkets are made. – Панцирь черепахи, из которого делают столько красивых безделушек.

**charm** – талисман, амулет to wear a charm – носить амулет

knick-knack – безделушка, украшение, пустячок

trifle – мелочь, пусток; а) безделушка б) бессмысленный человек; музыкальное или литературное произведение в шутовом, легком стиле; небольшое количество

It cost a trifle. – Это недорого стоило.

to trifle away – тратить зря, понапрасну

to trifle away time – понапрасну растрачивать время

to trifle with – играть, возиться; шутить; относиться несерьезно

He is not a man to trifle with. – С ним шутки плохи.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the topical vocabulary notes and remember them.**



## DIALOGUE

### Antiques & Objects of art

- Do you have antiques of any kind / *antique things* or objects of art?
- Yes, I have 3 antique paintings and 2 icons.
- Where did you buy them?
- I've bought paintings in the specialised shop and relatives presented icons for me.
- Such antiques are cleared only by permission of the Ministry of Culture.
- But they said that everything bought for *hard currency* is cleared without any *restrictions* on presenting a copy of the receipt.
  - Certainly. But what about icons?
  - I'll pay the duty.
  - Will you show these icons to the representative of the Ministry of Culture?
  - The Ministry of Culture is the only organization to permit taking *antiques* out of the country. It fixes the duty rates.
- Thank you, I'll do this.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogue by heart and carry it on with your classmate in class. Render the contents of the dialogue in Indirect Speech in English. Translate the dialogue paying attention to italic phrases.**

**Exercise 2. Read the text about precious articles and comment on its context.**

Articles made of precious metals; stones and pearls must be pointed in the customs declaration. They can be brought to Ukraine in any quantity but they are to be registered by the Customs office.

Customs officer has to determine if the stones are real or artificial, if they are precious or semiprecious, if they are home or foreign manufactured, if the hallmark of the article corresponds to that pointed on it (they define this by means of special reagents), if all the above mentioned data correspond to those stated in the entry or exit declaration. Tourists and persons who are on private trips in Ukraine are allowed to take out of gold, which have been bought for legally obtained currency. Precious articles may be bought either in a second – hand shop or in a specialized one. The latter may be taken out of the country without any restrictions (in quantity). Under the present regulations the customs officers have the right to seize the articles made of gold if the travellers don't have any documents stating that they were brought to Ukraine. Persons going on business are allowed to take out of the country in the sum not more than ...the articles make of gold. If travellers have gold coins they have either to take them back or exchange them through the State Bank.

#### **Active vocabulary**

Articles, precious, semiprecious, metals, stones, pearls, the customs declaration, to determine, real or artificial, home manufactured, foreign manufactured, exit declaration, tourists, regulations, to bring to, to go on business.

**Exercise 3. Find the words with the similar meaning among the following words.**

To collapse, to watch, to help, goal, to solve, to observe, to decide, to assist, aim, to supervise, to perish.







## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

**antique** – древняя или старинная вещь; антикварная; произведение древнего (особ. античного) искусства; (the antique) древнее (особ. античное) искусство; античный стиль

drawing from the antique – рисование с античных моделей

lover of the antique – любитель старины

We say an antique building, or a building after the antique. – Мы говорим: античное здание или здание, сделанное под старину.

antique glass – антикварные стеклянные изделия

antique jewellery – старинные драгоценности

antique shop – антикварная лавка

antiques – антиквариат

antiques and objects of art exit permit – предметы старины и искусства

antique painting – старинная картина

antiquely – в старинной манере

antiquer – антиквар; собиратель древностей; краснодеревщик

antiquity – древность; старина; классическая древность, античность

high antiquity – глубокая древность

Every man boasted the antiquity of his family. – Каждый человек стал бы хвастаться древностью своего рода. The subject belongs entirely to the antiquities of our law. – Этот случай целиком и полностью относится к истории юриспруденции.

the nations of antiquity – народы древнего мира

Whiston was certainly well read in Christian antiquity. – Безусловно, Уинстон много читал об истории Христианства.

icon – икона to paint an icon – писать / написать икону iconic – портретный

**manuscript** – манускрипт, рукопис; рукописный

to edit (proofread, revise) a manuscript – редактировать рукопись

to submit a manuscript (for publication) – представлять рукопись к публикации

to accept a manuscript – принять рукопись к публикации

to reject a manuscript – отказать в публикации рукописи

authentic manuscript – оригинал

unpublished manuscript – неопубликованная рукопись

manuscript copy – рукописный экземпляр; рукопись

memoirs correspondence – мемуары, переписка

**medal** – медаль; орден badges – значки

to award (give) a medal – наградить медалью / орденом

to earn a medal – заслужить медаль

to strike a medal – чеканить медаль

bronze medal – бронзовая медаль gold medal – золотая медаль

silver medal – серебряная медаль

to earn a medal for bravery – заслужить медаль за храбрость

medalled – получивший медаль, награду; увешанный наградами

medallist – специалист по медалям, знаток медалей; гравер или дизайнер медалей;

получивший медаль, медалист

gold medallist – награжденный золотой медалью

exit permit issued by an authorized person from the Ministry of Culture – иметь разрешение на вывоз, выданное уполномоченным Министерством Культуры.

**Exercise 1. Analyze the topical vocabulary notes and remember them.**



**Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

**Antiques**

1. Do you have antiques of any kind (antique things or objects of art)? 2. Where did you buy them? 3. Will you show us the receipts (bills) from the shops? 4. Everything bought for hard currency is cleared without any restriction on presenting a copy of the receipt. 5. Such antiques are cleared only by Permission of the Ministry of Culture. 6. The Ministry of Culture is the only organization to permit taking antiques of the country and it fixes duty rates. 7. It's necessary to obtain a permit from the Ministry of Culture to take antiques out of the country. 8. Will you show all these things to the representative of the Ministry? 9. We will have to seize these things. We'll give you a receipt. 10. You can have these things back only after you pay the duty. 11. Currency and valuable things are kept at the Customs House for 3 years after which they get the property of the state. 12. You can ask anyone you know to obtain a permit and they'll send this thing to you by power of attorney. 13. You can mail a warrant.

**Exercise 3. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.**

**Антиквариат**

1. Предъявите все эти предметы представителю министерства. 2. Нам придется задержать эти вещи по квитанции. 3. Вы сможете их получить после оплаты таможенной пошлины. 4. Валюта и ценности хранятся 3 года на таможне, а затем переходят в доход государства. 5. Попросите знакомых оформить разрешение и переслать вам эту вещь по доверенности. 6. Вы можете послать доверенность почтой. 7. У вас есть антиквариат? (предметы искусства и старины) 8. Где вы их приобрели? 9. Предъявите чеки из магазинов. 10. Все, что куплено на валюту, пропускается беспрепятственно по предъявлению копии товарного чека. 11. Такой антиквариат выпускается только при разрешении Министерства Культуры. 12. Только Министерство Культуры разрешает вывоз антиквариата и определяет размер таможенной пошлины. 13. Для вывоза антиквариата нужно разрешение Министерства Культуры страны.

**Exercise 4. Read and translate the story.**

The plane was late and detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. They were expecting a valuable parcel of diamonds from South Africa. A few hours earlier, someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds. When the plane arrived, some of the detectives were waiting inside the main building while others were waiting on the airfield. Two men took the parcel off the plane and carried it into the Customs House. While two detectives were keeping guard at the door, two others opened the parcel. To their surprise, the precious parcel was full of stones and sand!.







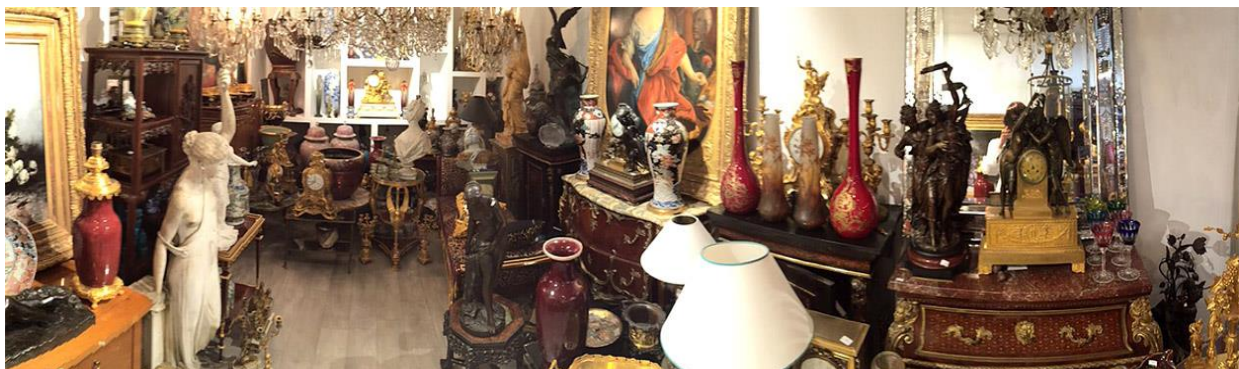
## DIALOGUES

- Next, please. Good afternoon! Do you have any *precious articles*?
- Good afternoon! Yes, I have some. A gold wedding ring, a pair of gold earrings with emerald and a pearl necklace.
- I see. You have to declare all your articles made of *precious metals* and *stones* and pearl, which you are taking with you.
- I have already filled in my declaration. Here it is.
- Thank you. You have to point how many carats the diamond in your earrings is, what the hallmark of your gold ring is, if your *pearls* are *real or artificial*.
- Sorry, but I don't know exactly.
- Where did you buy these articles?
- You see. As to the wedding ring it is of my granny's. Its *hallmark* is pointed on the ring itself. It's 583. The earrings have been bought in the specialised shop for legally obtained hard currency.
- OK. We'll have to check your articles. Do you have *gold coins*?
- I have one.
- You see. You have either to take this gold coin back (out of the country) or exchange it through the State Bank. Wait a minute. I'll have to check by reagent if the ring hallmark corresponds to the shown one it... Well. Everything is all right with your articles. They are cleared. I wish you a nice trip.
- Thank you. Good-bye.



- Can I help you, sir?
- Yes, can I buy a pistol?
- Of course, if everything is all right with your documents.
- Yes, here they are.
- Do you have the permission for carrying the weapon?
- Yes, I have.
- Could you tell me the model and calibre of weapon you'd like to buy?
- The calibre... and the model...
- Would you like to buy cartridges?
- Yes, one box, please.
- Well, now I'll put a special stamp in this document stating the number, model and calibre of your weapon and the number of the cartridges.
- Excuse me. Is it necessary to register it in the Department of Internal Affairs?
- Certainly, you have to do this during this week or you'll have problems.
- Thank you very much.
- You are welcome.

**Exercise 1. Learn the dialogues by heart and carry them on with your classmate in class.**





## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

### **arms** – оружие

By arms, we understand those instruments of offence generally made use of in war; such as firearms, swords, etc. By weapons, we more particularly mean instruments of other kinds (exclusive of fire-arms), made use of as offensive on special occasions. – Под оружием мы понимаем предметы, используемые для нанесения вреда во время войны: пистолеты, мечи и т.д. Под оружиями же мы понимаем предметы другого типа, используемые для нанесения вреда в других случаях (исключая здесь огнестрельное оружие)

This sword was an extraordinarily well-balanced arm, and highly effective. – Этот меч был удивительно хорошо уравновешенное оружие, и удивительно эффективное.

small arms – стрелковое оружие (огнестрельное оружие, переносимое руками)

fire arms – огнестрельное оружие

be at (in, under) arms – служить в армии, быть профессиональным военным

in arms – вооруженный, под ружьем

stand of arms – полная выкладка, полный боекомплект

to lay down arms – сложить оружие, сдаться; заключить мир

to take up arms – взяться за оружие, "пойти на вы"

arms race – гонка вооружений *Syn.* armaments race, rush of armaments

Arms! – К оружию!

man-in-arms – вооруженный человек

to turn one's arms against smb. – пойти войной, напасть на кого-л.

### **weapon** – оружие (для боевых действий)

to brandish weapon – размахивать оружием (угрожать кому-л.)

to fire a weapon – стрелять из оружия

to handle a weapon – обращаться с оружием

to lay (throw) down one's weapons – бросить оружие

to load a weapon – зарядить оружие

deadly weapon – смертоносное оружие

concealed weapon – секретное/тайное оружие

weaponry – обычно оружие нападения

War has become inevitable because of the weaponry which both sides are amassing. – Война стала неизбежной из-за того количества оружия, которые стороны накопили.

weaponless – обычно безоружный, невооруженный *Syn.* unarmed, defenseless

calibre (make, model) – калибр, марка

### **sword** – меч; шпага, рапира; палаш; шашка; сабля

to cross (measure) swords with smb. – скрестить мечи / шпаги (начать войну/ спор с кем-л.)

to thrust a sword into – вонзить шпагу в кого-л.

to wield a sword – владеть мечом (шпагой, саблей) (уметь обращаться с оружием)

the sword of justice – меч правосудия, судебная власть

at swords' points – на ножах; враждебный

to draw (unsheathe) a sword – обнажить меч; объявить войну

the sword – сила оружия; война

cavalrycourt sword – шпага

duelling sword – рапира

to beat swords into ploughshares библ. – перековать мечи на орала

double-edged sword – палка о двух концах (о явлениях, действиях и т.п., которые могут привести к результатам, отличным от тех, которые ожидаются) *Syn.* two-edged sword

**bullet** – пуля; ядро

to shoot a bullet – выпустить пулю

stray bullet – шальная пуля

tracer bullet – трассирующая пуля

a bullet ricochets – пуля отлетает рикошетом

a bullet lodges somewhere – пуля попадает куда-л.

the bullet lodged in her shoulder – пуля попала ей в плечо

hail (volley) of bullets – град пуль

every bullet has its billet посл. – от судьбы не уйдешь; пуля виноватого найдет

**pistol** – пистолет; револьвер *Syn.* revolver

to aim (level, point) a pistol at – целиться из пистолета в

to whip out a pistol – выхватить (неожиданно) пистолет

the pistol fired, went off – пистолет выстрелил

the pistol jams – пистолет заедает

the pistol misfires – пистолет дает осечку

to cock a pistol – наводить пистолет, целиться

to fire a pistol – стрелять из пистолета

to load a pistol – заряжать пистолет

automatic pistol – пистолет

dueling pistol – пистолет для дуэли

starting pistol – стартовый пистолет

toy pistol – игрушечный пистолет

water pistol – водяной пистолет

loaded rifle pistol – заряженное ружье

pistol club – стрелковый клуб или кружок

revolver cartridge – патрон револьвера

**rifle** – нарез (в канале винтовки); винтовка, нарезное оружие

to aim, point a rifle – целиться из винтовки

to assemble a rifle – собирать винтовку

to disassemble a rifle – разбирать винтовку

to fire a rifle – стрелять из винтовки

to handle (operate) a rifle – стрелять из винтовки

to level a rifle – целиться из винтовки

to load a rifle – заряжать винтовку

rifle fires, goes off – ружье стреляет

rifle jams – ружье дает осечку

rifle misfires – ружье дает осечку

to take off the cover – снять чехол

to assemble a rifle – собрать ружье

rifle company – стрелковая рота

rifle battalion – пехотный батальон

to rifle – стрелять из винтовки; обыскивать с целью грабежа

Someone's been rifling through my drawers, there's some money missing. – Кто-то копался в моих ящиках, пропали деньги.

**gun** – а) огнестрельное оружие, ружье; мушкет б) амер. пистолет, револьвер

gun powder – порох

to hold a gun on smb. – держать кого-л. на прицеле



a gun jams (misfires) – ружье дает осечку  
double-barrelled gun – двуствольное охотничье ружье  
smooth-bore gun – гладкоствольное ружье  
sporting gun – охотничье ружье  
to hold a gun to smb.'s head – держать пистолет у чьего-л. виска  
zip gun – самодельный пистолет  
great guns! (воскл.) – черт возьми!, ну и ну!  
to go great guns – добиться успеха  
to blow great guns – реветь (о буре)  
to stick (stand) to one's guns – не отступать; настоять на своем  
to jump the gun – начинать слишком рано  
big gun (great) gun – разг. важная персона, "шишка"  
to gun – тщательно рассматривать, исследовать

They wanted to be alert, gunning everything. – Они должны были глядеть в оба, тщательно все осматривая.

gun control law – закон, регулирующий продажу, покупку и владение оружием  
gun-law violation – нарушение законодательства об огнестрельном оружии  
gun registration – разрешение на ношение оружия  
gun-running – незаконный ввоз оружия  
gun-shot wound – огнестрельная рана  
within gun-shot – в пределах досягаемости (of - кого-л.; чего-л.)  
out of gun-shot – вне досягаемости  
gun-slinger – хороший, опытный стрелок (славящийся своим мастерством) *Syn. Shooter;*

вооруженный бандит *Syn. gunman*

**knife** – нож *Syn. dagger, dirk, flick-knife, poniard, stiletto*  
to plunge a knife into smb. – пырнуть кого-л. ножом  
to pull a knife (on smb.) – замахнуться на кого-л. ножом  
to stab smb. with a knife – пронзить кого-л. ножом  
to sharpen a knife – затачивать нож  
dull knife – тупой нож  
sharp knife – острый нож  
hunting knife – охотничий  
flick-knife – пружинный, выкидной нож *Syn. switchblade knife*  
pocket knife – карманный  
sheath knife – нож в футляре stiletto – стилет, кинжал

**dagger** – кинжал *Syn. knife, poniard*  
to draw a dagger – выхватить, вытащить кинжал  
to plunge a dagger into (smb.) – пронзить кого-л. кинжалом  
be at daggers drawn with smb. – быть на ножах с кем-л.  
to speak daggers – говорить озлобленно, с раздражением  
to look daggers at – злобно смотреть, бросать гневные взгляды  
before you can say knife – моментально; и ахнуть не успел  
to get one's knife into smb. – нанести удар кому-л., критиковать кого-л.

**poniard** – тонкий, короткий кинжал (обычно с трёхгранным клинком), стилет  
to poniard – закалывать, протыкать кинжалом / стилетом

**dirk** – длинный кинжал с прямым лезвием; шотландский кинжал

**flick-knife** – нож с выкидным лезвием, пружинный нож

**Exercise 1. Analyze the topical vocabulary notes above and below and remember them.**

A call to arms – a call to prepare for confrontation; in arms – armed; prepared to fight; lay down arms lay down (one's) arms – to cease fighting; to take up arms – to begin fighting; under arms – equipped and ready for war or battle; up in arms – protesting vigorously about something; small arms – portable firearms, especially rifles, pistols, and light machine guns; to bear arms a) to carry weapons b) to serve in the armed forces c) to have a coat of arms; present arms hold a rifle vertically in front of the body as a salute.

**Exercise 2. Read the text about weapons and arms and tell everything that you know about it.**

Traffic weapons are a big problem and it is getting during last years. Frontier guard, the service of security together with customs officers bans the transportation of weapons, which may be cold, and fire ones, cartridges, ammunition, etc. Crossing the customs border of Ukraine a traveller has to point in the declaration all kinds of weapons or ammunition, which he is going to bring in or out. It will be cleared by customs officers only if a traveller has permission from the Ministry of Internal Affairs.

All the documents for his weapons must be presented. If everything is all right a customs officer will put a special stamp in the visa stating the number, model and calibre of the traveller's weapons and the number of cartridges. Only then his weapons will be cleared. But sometimes passengers don't declare weapons or hide it in their baggage, or have false documents, or don't have any ones.

Such actions according to the Customs Regulations are regarded as smuggling and that person will be punished in criminal order.

**Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Have you got weapons of any kind and ammunition? 2. Have you got fire or cold arms? Have you declared your weapons? 3. I'll put now a special stamp in your visa stating the number, (type) model and calibre of your rifle and the number of cartridges. 4. I'll clear your weapon and you must take it out of the country on your way back. 5. Did you come here to take part in a shooting contest? 6. Show me the document, please. 7. Have you got an entry permit for weapons? 8. We'll have to seize your rifle till you obtain an entry permit from the Ministry of Internal Affairs.

**Exercise 4. Find English equivalents for Russian ones in the previous exercise.**

1. Сейчас я поставлю специальный штамп в вашей визе с указанием номера, марки и калибра оружия и количеством патронов к нему. 2. Оружие вам пропущено с условием его обратного вывоза из страны. 3. Вы приехали на соревнования по стрельбе? 4. Предъявите мне документ. 5. Если у вас разрешение на ввоз оружия? 6. Ваше оружие придется задержать до получения разрешения на его ввоз от Министерства Внутренних дел. 7. Есть ли у вас оружие и боеприпасы? 8. Какое у вас оружие: огнестрельное или холодное? 9. Вы задекларировали свое оружие?

**Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Every word he spoke was a dagger to her heart. 2. They are at daggers with their neighbours. 3. She looked daggers at me. 4. You speak daggers with me. 5. He stabbed her with dagger. 6. He got his knife into her. 7. You are a good (poor) knife and fork. 8. He played a good knife and fork. 9. You could cut it with a knife. 10. He got a very serious knife wound in stomach. 11. Arms are distinctive emblems or devices originally borne on shields in battle and now forming the heraldic insignia of families, corporations, or countries. 12. Teachers are up in arms about new school tests. 13. Iraq had up to one mln. men under arms. 14. A call to arms is to defend against a takeover. 15. Arms are the official heraldic symbols of a family, state, etc., including a shield with distinctive devices, and often supports, a crest, or other insignia.

**Exercise 6. Make up some dialogues from the information above.**

**Exercise 7. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.**

**Exercise 8. Read, translate the words and their derivatives.**

apply – applicant – application – applicable  
defence – defend – defendant – defender – defending – defenceless – defencelessness  
guilt – guilty – unguilty – guiltily – guiltiness – guiltless  
injury – injure – injured – injurant – injurer – injurious – injuriousness  
investigate – investigation – investigator – investigated – investigating  
judge – judgement – judicial – judiciary – judicature – judication  
legislate – legislator – legislation – legislative – legislature  
liberty – liberality – liberate – liberation – liberally – liberalize – liberalization  
violence – violent – violation – violator – violative – violently  
interrogation – interrogatingly – interrogate – interrogator  
custom – customs – customary – customable – customer  
protection – protectee – protecting – protected – protect  
interrogate – interrogation – interrogated – interrogating

**Exercise 9. Translate the active vocabulary and make up sentences with them.**

Search of premise, seizure, to seize, to execute, search warrant, issue (n, v), to frustrate, to be entitled to, to grant access, search under warrant, search with consent, application for compensation, to be in charge of, to endanger, to endorse, to have reasonable grounds, in consequence of, legal professional privilege, to be immune from, forensic examination.

**Exercise 10. Read and learn the following Latin phrases.**

Dura lex, sed lex.	Суровый закон, но закон.
Causa finita est.	Дело закончено.
Persona non grata.	Лицо нежелательное.
Ipso hire.	В силу закона. По самим законам.
Stricto hire.	По строгим законам.
Sine provocatione.	Без обжалования.
Heres ab intestato.	Наследник по закону.
Lex retro non agit.	Закон не имеет обратной силы.
Ubi lex, ibi poena.	Где закон, там наказание.
Manu propria.	Собственноручно

**Exercise 11. Read, find the "infinitive" and translate the sentences.**

1. The victim of a crime, if he is alive and conscious, is the first person to be interviewed. 2. A general rule to be followed by every investigator is: nothing at a crime scene is too insignificant. 3. People have a tendency to do particular things in individual ways that can serve as a means of identification. 4. The investigator is seldom the first to arrive at the scene of a crime. 5. Usually the first police officer to arrive is the uniformed officer. 6. The police cannot exercise any more restraint or use more force than is necessary to make the arrest. 7. The amount of force to be used in accomplishing an arrest varies. 8. If the subject to be arrested is suspected of committing a felony, the investigator may use all necessary means to overcome the resistance in order to affect the arrest. 9. War has become inevitable because of the weaponry which both sides are amassing.

**Exercise 12. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following ones.**

Вагома підстава; власник транспортного засобу; особа, яку обшукали; опис; пошкодження власності; час скоєння; перед здійсненням обшуку; поліцейська дільниця, в якій він служить; підстави для підозри; всупереч його волі; задовільні відповіді; в результаті опитування; заборонені речі; відмова відповідати; на запит.



**Exercise 13. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. The lawyer searched out the weaknesses in the witness's statement. 2. I eager to to search out my old friends. 3. Many people spend years searching after peace of mind. 4. I spent ten minutes searching through the drawer for the key, and it was in my bag all the time! 5. Police with dogs are searching through the woods for the missing child. 6. The search and rescue craft has gone out to save the situation.

**Exercise 14. Read the proverbs and sayings and write their Russian equivalents.**

- Confession is the first step to repentance.
- Open confession is good for the soul.
- Actions speak louder than words.
- First think then speak.
- The least said, the soonest mended.
- It goes without saying.
- No sooner said than done.
- Live and learn.
- It is never too late to learn.
- A little learning is a dangerous thing.

**Exercise 15. Read and leant famous quotations.**

**The rule of law**

- If the facts are against you, argue the law.
- If the law is against you, argue the facts.
- If the facts and the law are against you, yell like hell.

**Oak's principles of law-making**

- Law expands in proportion to the resources available for its enforcement.
- Bad law is more likely to be supplemented than repealed.
- Social legislation cannot repeal physical laws.

**Exercise 16. Play out some situations using famous quotations.**





## LIST OF REFERENCES

- Baum T. Introducing a Paradigm for Sustainable Human Development for the Hospitality and tourism history / T. Baum // Council on Hotel, Restaurant and Institutional Education Conference (CHRIE). – 1998. – pp. 123–167.
- Beerli A. Factors Influencing Destination Image / A. Beerli, J.D. Martin // Annals of Tourism Research. – 31(3). – 2004. – P. 657-681.
- Burkart A. Tourism: past, present and future / A. Burkart, S. Medlek. – London: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1989. – pp. 456–489.
- De Kadt E. Tourism: Perspectives on the social and cultural effects of tourism in developing countries. Passport to development / E. De Kadt. – Oxford: University Press, 1979. – P. 34-45.
- Chowdhury F. L. Smuggling, Tax Structure and The Need for Anti-Smuggling Drive. // Dhaka: Fiscal Frontier. – Vol. VI. – 2000.
- Customs in the UK – [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HM\\_Customs\\_and\\_Excise](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HM_Customs_and_Excise)
- Merryman J. H. The Civil Law Tradition. – 1985. – p. 23.
- Miller T. On the Border: Portraits of America's Southwestern Frontier. 2006. – pp. 48-60.
- Slattery B. Let Right Be Done: Aboriginal Title, the Calder Case, and the Future of Indigenous Rights. – UBC Press, Vancouver, 2007.
- Smith J. M. Borderland Smuggling: Patriots, Loyalists and Illicit Trade in the Northeast, 1783-1820. – Gainesville: University Press of Florida, 2006.
- State Customs service in Ukraine – [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: <http://arc.customs.gov.ua/dmsu/control/en/index>
- Theobald W. Global Tourism: The Next Decade / W. Theobald. – Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1994. – 278 p.
- Thursby M., Jensen R., J. Thursby. Smuggling, Camouflaging, and Market Structure. – Quarterly Journal of Economics, 1991. – 789 p.
- Travelling // [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: [http://www.br.com.ua/referats/Foreign\\_languages/2287.htm](http://www.br.com.ua/referats/Foreign_languages/2287.htm)
- Travelling by air // [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: <http://www.esllab.com/vocab/v-airplane-travel.htm>
- Travelling by train // [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: [http://www.msnbc.msn.com//travel-travel\\_tips/t/top-reasons-travel-train/](http://www.msnbc.msn.com//travel-travel_tips/t/top-reasons-travel-train/)
- Travelling by sea // [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: <http://opentalk.org.ua/langstory/travelling-by-sea-podorozh-morem>
- Tourism in Ukraine // [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tourism\\_in\\_Ukraine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tourism_in_Ukraine)
- U.S. Customs and Border Protection – [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: <http://www.cbp.gov/>
- Vellas F. Le Tourisme. Collection Cyclope/ F. Vellas. – Paris, 1992. – 1034 p.
- Weist M. Smuggling in Kent and Sussex 1700-1840. Countryside Books, 1985, updated 2003.
- WCO – [Электронный ресурс]. Режим доступа: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World\\_Customs\\_Organization](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World_Customs_Organization)

## APPENDIX

### List of Diasporas

History provides us with many examples of notable Diasporas. This is an incomplete list, which may never be able to satisfy certain standards for completeness. You can help by expanding it with sourced additions.

**Afghan people** – fled their country throughout the 20<sup>th</sup> century and the long civil wars, especially to nearby Pakistan, India and Iran. Since 1980, over half a mln. Afghans migrated to Europe (many to Great Britain), while a quarter a mln. went to North America (the U.S. and Canada), and less than 50,000 settled in Australia.

**The African Diaspora** – Sub-Saharan Africans and their descendants. Afro-Brazilian for blacks in Brazil, African Americans, African Canadians, Afro-Caribbeans, Afro-Europeans and Afro-Latin Americans. Africans from the Magreb are usually counted differently.

**Albanians** – 3.5 mln. live in Albania, with estimated 8,5 mln. world total (Italy, Greece, Turkey, Brazil, Argentina, the USA and Canada). The largest concentration of Albanians outside the country is in neighbouring Kosovo. Other Albanian enclaves are in coastal Croatia, Greece, the Republic of Macedonia, Montenegro, Romania, Russia, Turkey, Ukraine and Bosnia and Herzegovina. Another large area of ethnic Albanians, known as the *Arbereshe* lived in southern Italy, especially in regions of Abruzzo, Calabria, Campania and Sicily for over eight centuries. In the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, repeated large waves of Albanian emigration took place as Albanians moved to Northern and Western Europe (France, Germany, the Netherlands, Spain, Sweden and the U.K.), the former Soviet Union, North America (the U.S. and Canada), Australia and across Asia (the former Ottoman Empire in the Middle East).

**Arab Diaspora** – around 30 mln. Arabs have left the Arab world escaping hotspots, and conflicts areas, those who have migrated from the Arab World, now reside in Western Europe, the Americas (e.g. Detroit has the largest Arab-American community), Australia and elsewhere.

**Argentine Diaspora** – People from Argentina known as *Argentines* whom live overseas in communities across Western Europe (esp. Spain, Italy, Germany, France and the U.K.), North America (the U.S., Canada and Mexico) and elsewhere (i.e. Australia), mainly are political refugees from the military junta in the late 1970s and 1980s.

**Armenian Diaspora** – Armenians living in their ancient homeland, which had been controlled by the Ottoman Empire for centuries, fled persecution, massacres and genocide during several periods of forced emigration, from the 1880s to the 1920s. Many Armenians settled in the USA a majority of whom live in the state of California, France, Iran, Iraq, Lebanon, Russia and Syria.

**Assyrians** – a pre-Arab Semitic Christian population of the Middle East (originally they lived in Syria, as well in Iran, Iraq, Lebanon, Israel, Jordan, Egypt and Turkey). In the 20<sup>th</sup> century, mln.s of Assyrians left the Middle East due to ongoing ethnic, political and religious persecution. Assyrian communities flourish in the USA, Canada, throughout Europe, Brazil, Africa, India, China, Japan and Australia.

**Australian Diaspora** – about 750,000 Australian expatriates live outside of Australia, mostly business executives and retirees seeking a new place to live. There are large Australian communities in New Zealand, the UK, and North America; and smaller groups in Europe, Africa (i.e. South Africa), the Middle East (i.e. the United Arab Emirates), east and south Asia (i.e. Thailand and Papua New Guinea), and Latin America (i.e. Costa Rica and Argentina).

**Basque Diaspora** – Basques who left the Basque Country in northern Spain and southwest France, usually to the Americas (esp. the western U.S., Mexico, Argentina and Chile) for economic or political reasons. There are also Basque Catholic missionaries across the world, Basque fishermen in Canada (Newfoundland), Northern Europe, East Asia, Australia and Oceania.

**Bosnian Diaspora** – grew substantially during the Bosnian war. It mainly consists of Bosnians but also out of Bosnian Croats, Serbs, Jews, Albanians and Roma. Many Bosnians live in the USA (New York, Washington, D.C., Boston, Massachusetts, and Los Angeles, California); and many live in Australia, Canada, Denmark, Germany, Sweden, Norway, Italy, Austria, Croatia, Serbia, Switzerland and many other places.

**British Diaspora** – during the last four hundred years mln.s of English, Scots, Irish, and Welsh have migrated all over the world, for a great variety of reasons, especially to the USA, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and

South Africa. That explains the use of the English language and the large number of British names in the places mentioned.

**Bulgarian Diaspora** – an estimated one mln. ethnic Bulgarians are dispersed around the world, the majority in Europe such as in neighboring nations of Romania, Greece, Serbia, Turkey and the Republic of Macedonia. About 200,000 in the U.S., with 50,000 others in Canada and 20,000 in Mexico. Other large Bulgarian Diaspora communities are in France, Germany, Italy, Russia and the UK, and smaller numbers are found in Argentina and Australia.

**The Cape Verdean Diaspora** refers to historical emigration from Cape Verde. Today, more Cape Verdeans live abroad than in Cape Verde itself. Diaspora communities include those in the USA, Portugal, the Netherlands, France, Italy, Spain and Canada.

**Chechens** – fled Chechnya during the 1990s insurrection against Russia. The majority of displaced Chechens fled to Azerbaijan, Armenia and the Republic of Georgia, but tens of thousands of Chechen refugees migrated to Europe, North America and across the Middle East. Previous waves of migration took Chechens to Egypt, Iran, Iraq, Jordan, Turkey and Saudi Arabia in 1820 or 1890.

**Cherokees** – a Native American tribe indigenous to the Southeastern USA, whose official tribal organization is Cherokee Nation based in Oklahoma, USA, which has 800,000 members as of 2005. However, anthropological and genetic experts in Native American studies have argued that there could be over one mln. more Cherokee descendants scattered across North America (the largest number in California).

The beginnings of the Cherokee Diaspora was from their forced removal in the *Trail of Tears*. Later, thousands of «Americanized» Cherokee farmers were forced to settle across the Americas as the result of the Dawes Act. In the 20th century, many Cherokees served in the U.S. Army during World War I, World War II, the Korean War and the Vietnam War. These soldiers left some descendants by intermarriage with «war brides» in Europe and East Asia. Some Cherokees and other American Indians might emigrate to Europe and elsewhere through the British and Spanish empires.

**Chilean Diaspora** – a small but widespread community, mostly of political refugees who fled the Augusto Pinochet regime after the 1973 coup. Overseas Chilean communities are in Argentina, Australia, Brazil, France, Great Britain, Italy, Canada, Spain, Sweden and the U.S., but smaller communities are found in Mexico, Norway, New Zealand, Belgium and the Netherlands.

**Chinese Diaspora** – number over 50 mln. worldwide. The largest overseas Chinese communities are in Asia. Thailand, Malaysia, Indonesia, Singapore, Philippines, Vietnam and Myanmar (in descending order of ethnic Chinese population size) have at least 1 mln. ethnic Chinese each. Two countries outside Asia, namely the USA (esp. States of California, Hawaii, New York and Washington State) and Canada (Toronto, Montreal and Vancouver) have populations over 1 mln. in size. Other sizable communities may be found in Japan, Cambodia, Brazil, Mexico, Panama, Russia, France, the UK, the Republic of Ireland, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa, each with over 100,000 ethnic Chinese.

**Circassians** – fled Circassia – Kabardey, Cherkes, Adigey Republics and Shapsug Area in 1864. Exiled 90% of Circassians are by Russian Colonialists to Ottoman Empire or imperial Turkey. The Circassian Diaspora is over four mln. worldwide, in Bulgaria, Cyprus, Egypt, Greece, Israel, Jordan, Lebanon, Romania, Syria, Russia, over 100,000 in N. America and over 10,000 in Australia.

**Colombian Diaspora** – over five mln. Colombians, displaced by war, left for economic opportunity, and placed in exile to avoid political persecution. The Colombian Diaspora lives across the Americas (i.e. Canada, Mexico, Costa Rica, and South American nations, especially Venezuela), and across Europe (i.e. Spain, France, Italy, Germany and the UK). The largest overseas Colombian population is the U.S. where they are over 2 mln. Colombian Americans, one of the largest Latino nationalities in the country.

**Congolese Diaspora** found across the continent of Africa and smaller Congolese communities developed in Western Europe.

**Cornish people** migrated from Cornwall to other parts of England and countries such as the USA, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa, Mexico and Brazil. The Diaspora was caused by a number of factors, but due mainly to economic reasons and the lack of jobs in the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries when many Cornish people or "Cousin Jacks" migrated to various parts of the world in search of a better life.

**Crimean Tatar Diaspora** – formed after the annexation of the Crimean Khanate by Russia, in 1783.

**Croatian Diaspora** – largest number of Croatians living outside Europe are in the U.S., Canada, Australia, Peru, Brazil and Argentina.

**Cuban Diaspora** – the exodus of over one mln. Cubans (the largest community is in Miami, Florida, USA) following the Cuban Revolution of 1959.

**Dutch Diaspora** – the Dutch originally came from the Low Countries and northern France. Mln.s of Dutch descendants live in the USA (Dutch American), Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Indonesia, India (Sri Lanka), Africa (Zaire when it was the Belgian Congo until 1960), the Caribbean (Aruba and Netherlands Antilles which is officially Dutch territory), and South America (Suriname formerly was Dutch until independence in 1975), but Dutch descendants are found in Brazil and Argentina. The four mln. white (European) Afrikaners of South Africa are descendants of Dutch, French Huguenot and German settlers brought over to the colonial Dutch East India Company in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.

**Ecuadorian Diaspora** – people from Ecuador who reside in countries across the Americas and smaller numbers in Japan and Australia.

**Estonians** – over 5 mln. known ethnic Estonians live/reside outside Estonia after the Soviet annexation of 1940/1944 and the German occupation of 1941-1944, both having led to massive deportations across the former USSR (many went to Siberia) and refugees went to the US, followed by Canada, Sweden, Finland, Germany, France, Denmark, the Netherlands, the UK and smaller numbers to China, Japan, Australia and Mexico.

**Fiji Indian Diaspora** – people of Indian origin left Fiji following the racially inspired coups of 1987 and 2000 to settle primarily in Australia, New Zealand, USA and Canada. Smaller numbers have settled in England and other Pacific islands.

**Filipino Diaspora** – left the Philippines for Japan, Hong Kong (China), Southeast Asia, Australia, Guam and Northern Marianas, the USA, (Canada, Mexico, France, Germany, Italy, Spain, UK, and the Middle East (the UAE, Bahrain and Qatar). Overseas workers have their own political party in the Philippine Congress.

**French Diaspora** – over 100 mln. French-speaking and ethnic French people in the world, about 55 mln. in Metropolitan France in Europe, 3 mln. in Belgium known as the Walloons, 3 mln. in western cantons of Switzerland and 2 mln. others in adjacent areas of Luxembourg, the kingdoms of Andorra and Monaco, and parts of western Italy, southwest Germany and northern Spain. This includes the remnants of French "*colons*" in formerly French territories of North Africa the independent nations of Algeria, Morocco and Tunisia and in Southeast Asia (formerly French Indochina) now independent nations of Cambodia, Laos and Vietnam, and mln.s of those of French ancestry in North America (i.e. a major contributor of settlement in the U.S. and 8 mln. French-Canadians in Canada), South America (ethnic descendant communities like in Argentina), Africa (the Afrikaners of Dutch and French origins in South Africa) and Oceania (i.e. New Caledonia and French Polynesia).

**French Canadian Diaspora** – includes hundreds of thousands of people who left Quebec for the USA (most went to New England states of Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire and Vermont), as well as Ontario and Western Canada, between about 1840-1930. In addition, since the 1970s Florida and other portions of the Southeastern USA have had sizable French-Canadian communities, consisting chiefly of retired senior citizens.

**The Acadian Diaspora** – the Great Expulsion occurred when the British expelled about 10,000 Acadians (over three-fourths of the Acadian population of Nova Scotia) between 1755 and 1764. The British split the Acadians between different colonies to impose assimilation. Most of the French-speaking Acadians resettled in the then French colony of Louisiana, now a state of the US where the "Cajuns" influenced the ethnological background of Louisiana and its' cultural center of New Orleans, along with high admixture with Anglo-American, African, Spanish and other ethnicities introducing Jazz music and Creole cooking.

**Galicians** – left their country for mainly economic reasons to other areas of Spain, and to the Americas (esp. Argentina, Brazil, Canada, Costa Rica, Cuba, Dominican Republic, Mexico, Puerto Rico, the USA and Venezuela) and later, Western Europe (Germany, Switzerland, France, Belgium, the Netherlands and the UK) in the 1950s and 1960s. Galicians also went to Africa, Australia, New Zealand and East Asia: China, Japan and the Philippines which were a former Spanish colony from 1540 to 1898. Galician Diaspora. Photographic documentary long term project of Galician Diaspora, 1989. Thousand of Galicians emigrated around the world from the 19<sup>th</sup> century. The project is the only one documental work began from 1989 till today.

**German Diaspora** – an estimated 100 mln. ethnic Germans originally from the historic German-speaking homeland of Germany, Austria, Switzerland and Liechtenstein, and includes parts of Belgium,

Denmark, France (esp. the region of Alsace), Hungary, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Lithuania, Poland, Romania, Russia, Ukraine, Slovenia, Croatia and Serbia. In World War II, the Soviets expelled over 10 mln. ethnic Germans from the Sudetenland, Czechoslovakia (now Czech Republic) and former German provinces which were annexed by Poland, Slovakia and the former USSR (Belarus).

In the 18<sup>th</sup>, 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, mln.s of Germans left German lands especially to the Americas (i.e. the USA, Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Brazil, Chile, Panama and Venezuela). Large numbers also migrated to Australia, where they now form the fourth largest ethnic group, with nearly 750,000 people claiming German descent. Other smaller German communities in Africa or the Middle East (Egypt, Israel, Kenya, Morocco, Namibia, South Africa and Tanzania), East Asia / Oceania (China, India, Japan, Malaysia, Indonesia, Philippines, Australia and New Zealand), and across the former Soviet Union (i.e. Kazakhstan).

**Mennonites** – Christians rooted in the 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> century Anabaptist movement of the Protestant Reformation in northern Europe. Various groups of Mennonites migrated to the North America Eastern Europe and Asia. There are Mennonite settlements in Central and South America and over a mln. Mennonite adherents worldwide.

**Gerashi Diasporas** – the people of Gerashi origin (of Iran) who have migrated to the Arab States of the southern Persian Gulf in search of necessities and basic human rights. It has continued since the early 20<sup>th</sup> century bombing of the city by Reza Shah and the federal forces.

**Greek Diaspora** – refers to any ethnic Greek populations living outside the borders of Greece and Cyprus as a result of modern or ancient migrations. There is a Department of Diaspora Affairs in the Greek government. Mln.s of Greeks live in North America (the USA and Canada), Africa, Australia, the Asian continent, across Europe and the Middle East. Historically Greek enclaves in Turkey and Egypt were nearly abandoned after World War I and Greek-Egyptian migration since 1960. In addition, many Greek Cypriots migrated to Britain in the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

**Haitian Diaspora** – to escape the horrible environment in their country, most Haitians have fled to the Bahamas, Cuba, the Dominican Republic, French Guiana, and the USA. There are also smaller numbers in Belgium, Canada, France, Spain, and Venezuela.

**Hungarian Diaspora** – lives in numerous communities across Europe, former USSR, North America and Australia. Historic Hungary extended into parts of Czech Republic, Slovakia, Romania, Serbia and Ukraine. For over 300 years, either they migrated west for economic opportunities or as political refugees, such as the failed Hungarian revolution of 1956 against the Communist government, when over 200,000 Hungarians fled the country for asylum in the USA, Canada, the UK, France, Switzerland, Germany, Austria and Brazil.

**Hongkonger Diaspora** – lives in communities in cities such as London, Toronto, Vancouver and Sydney.

**Icelandic Diaspora:** at an estimated number of 150,000, half of which are in Canada. See Icelanders.

**Inuit people**, their homeland spans across 4,000 miles (6,400 km) of northern most reaches of North America along the Arctic Ocean. About 800,000 Inuits (a.k.a. "Eskimos") live in four countries: The U.S. (Alaska), Canada (Nunavut is a territorial government established in 1999), Greenland (the "Greenlandic" people, the majority are of Inuit and Danish-European ancestry), self-ruling territory of Denmark, and about 3,000 in the Chukchi Peninsula, Russia facing the Bering Strait.

**Indochinese Diaspora** – includes the refugees from the numerous wars that took place in Southeast Asia, such as World War II and the Vietnam War.

**The Vietnamese Diaspora** – fled communist rule in Vietnam following their victory in the Vietnam War (see South Vietnam) went to the USA the migration peaked in the 1980s and 1990s. The Vietnamese also went to Canada, France (and overseas territories), Germany (also the Vietnamese guest workers in the former Communist East Germany), Italy, the Middle East, Australia, and other Asian countries (most went to Hong Kong, when it was a British colony, before the handover to the People's Republic of China in 1997, and Macau, which was under Portuguese rule until the handover to the People's Republic of China in 1999). The wave of Hmong tribes from Laos, Laotians, Cambodians and Thai refugees and economic immigrants (Vietnamese who arrived since 1990) arrived in North America (i.e. the US and Canada), Europe (esp. France), across Asia (most went to Thailand), Oceania (Australia) and South America (concentrated in French Guiana).

**Indonesian Diaspora** – refers to any ethnic in Indonesia living outside of their homeland, the majority of Indonesian expatriates live in the U.S., Japan, the U.A.E., Australia, and the Netherlands, South Moluccans, a



predominantly Christian ethnic group found asylum and religious freedom by the thousands in Holland since the 1950s.

**Minangkabau Diaspora** – two of three Minangkabau people live in Diaspora. Nowadays, over a mln. Minangkabau people living outside of Indonesia, mainly in Malaysia and Singapore, recently joined the Indonesian emigration to Australia, China, Europe, Japan, South Korea, Taiwan and the Philippines.

**Javanese Diaspora** – occurred in the Dutch colonial era. Vast numbers of Javanese send to other of Dutch colony as coulees. Most of them send to Suriname, New Caledonia, and East Sumatra, but others live in Europe, North America, the Middle East, South Africa and Australia.

**Indo Diaspora** – during and after the Indonesian National Revolution, which followed the World War II, (1945-1965) around 300.000 people, pre-dominantly Indos, left Indonesia to go to the Netherlands. This migration was called repatriation. The majority of this group had never set foot in the Netherlands before.

**Iraqi Diaspora** – refugees from Iraq have increased in number since the US-led invasion into Iraq in March 2003. As of November 4, 2006, the UNHCR estimated that 1.8 mln. Iraqis had been displaced to neighboring countries, with nearly 100,000 Iraqis fleeing to Syria and Jordan each month. There are over 200,000 Iraqi refugees said to reside in Egypt and 100,000 more in the Persian Gulf states.

**Irish Diaspora** – consists of Irish emigrants and their descendants in countries such as the USA, the UK, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Argentina, South Africa, and nations of the Caribbean and continental Europe, where small but vibrant Irish communities continue to exist. The diaspora contains over 80 mln. people and it is the result of mass migration from Ireland, due to past famines and political oppression. The term first came widely into use in Ireland in the 1990s when the then-President of Ireland, M. Robinson used it to describe all of Irish descent. Notable people of the global Irish diaspora are USA presidents John F. Kennedy, Ronald Reagan, Bill Clinton and Chilean liberator Bernardo O'Higgins.

**Italian Diaspora** – occurred between 1870 and 1920 due to the economic crises on the peninsula, reaching the number of 10 mln. emigrants. Vast numbers of Italians (Sicilians, people from Veneto and other depressed areas) emigrated to Brazil, Argentina the USA (see Italian Americans), Canada, Australia, and elsewhere in the Americas (i.e. Chile, Mexico, Panama, Puerto Rico and Venezuela), Europe (i.e. the UK, Malta, France, Germany, the Netherlands and Sweden), smaller numbers of Italians went to South Africa and Israel (Italian Jews), and small Italian expatriate communities once thrived until the mid 20<sup>th</sup> century in Africa and the Middle East (Algeria, Egypt, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Libya, Morocco, Syria, Tunisia and Turkey). See also Sicily and Sicilian. The real Diaspora of the 20<sup>th</sup> century came after the end of World War II, with 350,000 Italians leaving their homeland on the eastern front after the capture of Istria and Dalmatia by the Yugoslavs. Most of them were relocated in Italy itself; a lower percentage flew overseas (the racer Mario Andretti for example).

**Jaffnese / Ceylonese Diaspora** – refers to the Diaspora of Sri Lankan Tamils, especially those post-1983 due to the civil conflict in Sri Lanka. This has created huge Tamil communities in countries such as Canada, the USA, Australia, the UK, Germany and other European countries. In many ways, the Jaffnese Diaspora is compared to the Jewish Diaspora, both historically, socially and economically. It is a subset of the greater Tamil Diaspora.

**Jamaican Diaspora** – an estimated 3 mln. Jamaicans live outside the island country of Jamaica, an English-speaking majority African descendant country in the Caribbean. The main destinations for Jamaican immigration in the 20<sup>th</sup> century are the U.S., Great Britain and Canada. But, Jamaican immigration across the Caribbean, to Latin America, Australia and New Zealand, and even Africa are well noted. Jamaicans living aboard, such as Bob Marley introduced the music form of reggae to the international music market in the 1970s.

**Japanese Diaspora** – Brazil (see Japanese Brazilian), the USA (see Japanese Americans), Canada and the Philippines (see Japanese Filipinos), as well sizable communities in Peru (see Japanese Peruvian), Argentina Chile and Ecuador, and smaller numbers of Japanese in Australia, New Zealand, Cuba and Mexico are the countries with the highest numbers of Japanese people outside Japan. The largest community of ethnic Japanese is in Hawaii where they make up a quarter of the state's population. However, there are smaller Japanese communities around the world that developed in the late 20<sup>th</sup> century such as throughout Western Europe, eastern Russia and South Africa. The Japanese population used to have nicknames to indicate generational levels: "Issei"- foreign born

parents, "Nisei"-1st generation born outside Japan or children, "Sansei"- 2<sup>nd</sup> generation born outside Japan or grandchildren.

**Okinawans** – an Asian people closely related to the Japanese in terms of culture and language, from the island of Okinawa, politically part of Japan since 1878. After WWII, the U.S. briefly ruled Okinawa from 1945 to its return to Japanese rule in 1972. Since then, tens of thousands of Okinawans settled in the U.S. and in the 1960s, massive settlement programs of Okinawan farmers into Latin America, the majority in Bolivia, Brazil, Ecuador, Paraguay and Peru.

**Jewish Diaspora** – in its historical use, refers to the period between the Roman invasion and subsequent occupation of Land of Israel beginning AD 70, to the establishment of Israel in 1948. In modern use, the 'Diaspora' refers to Jews living outside of the Jewish state of Israel today. Not all Jews, though, regard themselves as part of a Diaspora community. Jewish groups and histories greatly vary from one another in each country, notably large communities represented in the global Jewish Diaspora: Polish Jews, Jews in France, German Jews, Russian Jews, Jews in Italy, Jews in the UK, Jews in the Netherlands, Jews in Hungary, Jews in Romania, Greek Jews, Oriental Jews (from the Middle East), Moroccan Jews, Egyptian Jews, Ethiopian Jews (the Falasha), Iranian Jews, Indian Jews, a small Chinese Jewish group, Jewish Americans the world's largest in this current time, Jewish Canadians, Jews in Latin America, South African Jews and Jewish Australians.

**Sephardic Diaspora** – in 1492 Isabella and Ferdinand of Spain expelled all persons who were not members of the Roman church specifically Jews and Christians of Jewish origin. The Sephardi resettled across Southern Europe, North Africa and the Middle East, but others went to Germany and the Netherlands, and some went to Britain, North and South America, and other colonies of the British and Spanish empires by the late 16<sup>th</sup> century. Jewish return to the Land of Israel began massively since the end of the Nineteenth century. By 1947, there were around 600,000 Jews in Palestine. In 1948, the State of Israel was established.

**Korean Diaspora** – a people from the Korean peninsula located between China and Japan. The first wave of Korean Diaspora was during the Japanese colonial occupation (1910-1945), the peace treaty division of the Korean peninsula into two republics, the Korean War (1950-53) produced a wave of mln.s of war refugees who fled to the USA, Canada, China, Japan, the Philippines, South Vietnam until 1975, and the USSR, now Russia. Today, Korea remains a politically divided geographic unit. South Korea was under military rule 1953-1987, now a civilian democracy, but economic problems and a sense for adventure made over 500,000 South Koreans emigrate to the USA and Canada, and 100,000 more to Europe, Australia and South America (i.e. Brazil and Argentina). North Korea remains under an isolationist military state under Communism since 1948, while mln.s of political refugees fled to nearby China for freedom in the late 20<sup>th</sup> century.

**Kurdish Diaspora** – Kurdish Diaspora is the Kurdish populations found in regions outside their ancestral homeland Kurdistan.

**Lebanese Diaspora** – an estimated 18 mln. Lebanese live worldwide.

**Lithuanian Diaspora** – the majority of post-WWII Lithuanians live in North America (Canada and the USA) and across Europe (France, Germany, Ireland, Poland, Sweden, Netherlands and England), but are scattered across Russia and the former USSR, and smaller numbers in Mexico and Brazil. The Lithuanians and their ethnological kin, the Latvians may be the oldest Indo-European speaking peoples known and may reside in the Baltic States for 5,000 years.

**Latvian Diaspora** – the majority of Latvians whom left Latvia in WWII reside in North America (the US and Canada), across Europe mainly in Eastern countries and the former USSR with just as many in western and Scandinavian nations, and the rest in former Latvian lands in the Baltic states (Estonia, Lithuania, Poland, Russia and Belarus). The most Russified of the three Baltic states, Latvia struggles with the issue of national identity after one mln. ethnic Russians and other Russian speaking people settled there since 1940.

**Macedonian Diaspora** – formed from Macedonian refugees and economic migrants from Macedonia, to the USA, Australia, Canada, Germany, Sweden, New Zealand, South Africa, Argentina, Italy, Greece, and many other states. There are approximately 2,500,000 Macedonians worldwide, with more than a third living outside the Republic of Macedonia.

**Maghrebi Diaspora** – consists of people from the North African countries, notably Algeria, Morocco and Tunisia. The largest Maghrebi community outside of North Africa is in France, where it is estimated that North Africans make up the majority of the country's Muslim population.

**Maltese Diaspora** occurred after the World War II and well into the 1960s and 70s due to the political climate at the time. Many Maltese left the island for the UK, Australia and America where sizable communities exist to this day.

While not all left Malta with the intention of never returning, those that did not continued to think of Malta as their mother country. To this day, successive generations of Maltese-Australians and Maltese-Americans maintain a link with their ancestral home.

**Mexican Americans (Mexican Diaspora)** – over 20 mln. people of Mexican ancestry live in the USA, ranging from recent immigrants since the 1970s to long-established Americans of Spanish or Mexican descent. The majority of Mexican Americans live especially in the American Southwest, which borders with Mexico, an area that belonged to Mexico from 1821-1848. They were fundamental to development in the states of California, Texas, Arizona and New Mexico in the 20<sup>th</sup> century. Los Angeles is said to be the second largest Mexican city (home to one to two mln. alone), while the populace of San Antonio, Texas is over half of Mexican descent. Also known by other ethnic self-titles, however are officially called Hispanics and Latinos in terms of ethnic/cultural origins, but Mexican Americans had mixed European/Native American heritage.

**Moldovan Diaspora** – a Diaspora indicating most of the Moldovans who have moved out of Moldova. Most found their homes in the Soviet Union and the Baltics. There is also a Diaspora in Western European countries such as Ireland, Spain, Portugal, Italy, and the Netherlands.

**Moravian Church** – has a nickname "the Moravian Diaspora" named from a religious, not ethnic' identity, having been founded in the province of Moravia, now in the Czech Republic. During the 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries, religious persecution drove the majority of church members to other countries, and by the late 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries, the church had managed to grow, thrive and survive. There are hundreds of thousands of Moravian church members in small communities in Europe (the Netherlands), the Americas (the USA), Africa (South Africa), East Asia (South Korea), the Indian subcontinent (India), and Oceania (Australia). However, the vast majority of these would consider themselves natives of the country where they live – the nickname (presumably) being of only historic interest.

**Mormons**, a Christian religious group whose official name is The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, headquartered in Salt Lake City, Utah, as well smaller other churches based on Mormonism. Just under 50 % of all Mormons live in the USA, while about three-fourths of the population of Utah are Mormon and form large minorities in 8 other Western U.S. states, such as California is said to have the most LDS church members by population. Mormonism began as a small following of Christians who followed the teachings of Joseph Smith, founder of the early Mormon Church in the early 19<sup>th</sup> century.

The following were often forced to migrate and lived in the states of New York, Ohio, Illinois and Missouri by 1840. The Mormons were expelled by mob violence (Joseph Smith was killed) and persecution by neighbors in the 1840s and their new leader Brigham Young took the Mormons throughout the Great Plains and Rockies to settle the Salt Lake Valley in the western US in 1847.

Mormons play a fundamental role in the development of Utah and most other Western states, with Utah becoming a state in 1896. Today, an estimated 13 mln. Mormons are found around the world, after missionary activity and conversion programs extended the L.D.S. and other Mormon-based churches worldwide, the largest concentrations of Mormons other than the U.S. are Mexico, Canada, South America, the South Pacific (esp. in Fiji, Samoa and Tonga), Scandinavia, Britain and East Asia, but the fastest growth in Mormonism in the late 20<sup>th</sup> century was in Africa, India and Eastern Europe.

**New Caledonia Kanaks** – a Melanesian people native to the overseas French territory brought to Australia and New Zealand, and across Polynesia (The French territory of Tahiti) as agricultural workers in newly-founded plantations during the late 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. Most Kanak laborers in Australia were deported back to New Caledonia in the 1910s due to racial fears of Kanaks live among the country's white European-descent majority. Today, an estimated 30,000 Australian descendants of Kanaks live in the state of Queensland, where the main concentration of Australian plantation agriculture took place.

**Oromo and Ethiopian peoples of Ethiopia**, an estimated 30-50 mln. who have gone by different ethnological names like "Abyssinians", "Erythreans" and "Amharics". Ethiopia's population is highly diverse. Most of its people speak a Semitic or Cushitic language. The Oromo, Amhara, and Tigreans make up more than 3/4ths of the population, but there are more than 80 different ethnic groups within Ethiopia. Some of these have as few as 10,000 members. They live across the continent of Africa, while a mass movement of Ethiopian immigrants during the 20<sup>th</sup>

century into the Middle East (one major area of choice is Israel), Europe, South Asia, East Asia, Australia, North America (esp. the U.S. and Canada), and Latin America has created a global Oromo-Ethiopian Diaspora.

**Pakistani Diaspora** – people who are originally from Pakistan and have settled abroad are mainly economic migrants and settled in the Middle East and Britain. The total population is approximately 3 mln..

**Palestinians** – were forced out of Palestine during the 1948 Arab-Israeli War and the 1967 Arab-Israeli War (see Palestinian diaspora, Palestinian exodus, Palestinian refugees and Israeli-occupied territories).

**Persian Diaspora** – a.k.a. Iranians are a major community in Los Angeles, in the U.S., the major number of Persians in Los Angeles are located in Westwood, aka Little Persia, even the mayor of Beverly Hills is Persian (see Iranian Americans). Other large Iranian communities exist throughout the U.S., Canada, Europe, the Middle East, east Asia and Australia, make up a total of 10 mln. belonged to the Persian/Iranian diaspora, the majority are political refugees who fled the overthrow of the Mohammad Reza Pahlavi regime in 1978 and Islamic Revolution of 1979.

**Peruvian Diaspora** – people who originally came from Peru. The largest Peruvian communities are in the USA.

**Filipino Diaspora** – are mln.s of people aboard around the world that are originally from the Philippines. The largest concentration of Filipinos of multiple ethnicities from the archipelago country is in the USA, Canada, Australia, Britain and Spain, but widely scattered across East and Southeast Asia, the Middle East, North Africa, Latin America (esp. Mexico) and Europe (such as Italy and northern countries).

**"Polonia"** – the Diaspora of the Poles started with the emigrations after the partitions of Poland, January Uprising and the November Uprising, enlarged by the Nazi policies, and later by the establishment of the Curzon line. Historic Poland extended into nearby countries: Belarus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Russia and Ukraine. For over 600 years, large waves of Polish Émigrés, refugees and guest workers moved across Europe, established themselves in Austria, Belgium, Croatia, Denmark, France, Germany, Greece, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Serbia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland and the UK. 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> century Polish immigration extended into the USA, Canada, Brazil, Argentina, Israel and Australia, as well across the former USSR. After Poland joined the E.U. in 2004, about a mln. Poles went to find work in the E.U. member states, the largest destinations were the UK, Ireland, the Netherlands, France, Spain and Portugal. See also Polish Americans for the 9 mln. of Polish descent in the USA.

**The Portuguese Diaspora** – main countries where the Portuguese live are in Europe: Portugal, Spain, France, the Netherlands, Germany, Luxembourg, Switzerland, Andorra and the UK. Former Portuguese African and Asian colonies (Angola, Cape Verde, Guinea-Bissau, India, Macau, Mozambique, Sao Tome and Principe, Sri Lanka and Timor-Leste). Portuguese settled the country of Brazil in South America, but Portuguese colonies and communities in the western hemisphere: Argentina, Canada, the Caribbean islands, Chile, Guyana, Hawaii, Mexico, Panama, Suriname, Uruguay and Venezuela are well noted. See also Portuguese Americans for the Diaspora in the USA.

**Puerto Rican Diaspora** – a mass migration of Puerto Ricans to the USA mainland began during the first half of the twentieth century and has become a subject often studied in colleges, because of Puerto Ricans who achieved success in the USA. The largest Puerto Rican communities in mainland U.S. are in New York City, New Jersey and Florida, but other Puerto Ricans live in all 50 states including Hawaii, and also a smaller community each in Canada and Spain.

**The Punjabi Diaspora** – main regions are: EU (chiefly UK), Canada, USA, Malaysia and Australia, which took place in the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

**Quebeçois Diaspora** – The French name for French-speaking Canadians residing in the province of Quebec.

**Rhodesian Diaspora.** Southern Rhodesia had the distinction amongst Britain's African colonies of being a self-governing Crown Colony. As a result most Southern Rhodesians did not regard Great Britain as home but instead regarded Southern Rhodesia as home, though they did recognize cultural ties to Great Britain. During and following the Bush War (1966-1979, during which period the former Southern Rhodesia was known as Rhodesia) more than half of Rhodesia's population of European descent emigrated mainly to Australia, New Zealand and Canada. For many South Africa was the first destination, where some have settled, but most of these migrants were transient and later reached further destinations. Others recognizing their cultural ties to Great Britain emigrated there. This trend continued after Rhodesia became Zimbabwe-Rhodesia in June, 1979 and increased when Zimbabwe-Rhodesia became Zimbabwe in March, 1980 (following a brief 85 day period during which the land's name formally reverted to "Southern Rhodesia" for reasons of political expediency).

**British citizens** resident in the region joined in this migration and did not in all cases return to Great Britain, or in some cases did so only temporarily before moving on. Northern Rhodesians of European descent immigrated to these same destinations, though their migration began earlier when Northern Rhodesia became Zambia in 1964 and was not the result of war but economic pressure. People of European descent emigrated from Nyasaland after 1964 and followed the same routes as Northern Rhodesians, for the same reason.

**The Russian Diaspora** – the earliest significant wave of ethnic Russian emigration took place in the wake of the Old Believer schism in the 17<sup>th</sup> century. A sizable "wave" of ethnic Russians emigrated during a short time period in the wake of the October Revolution and Russian Civil War, known collectively as the White émigrés. A smaller group of Russians (often referred to by Russians as the second emigration or second wave) had also left during World War II, many were refugees or eastern workers. During the Soviet period, ethnic Russians migrated throughout the area of former Russian Empire and Soviet Union, and after the collapse of the Soviet Union found themselves living outside Russia.

**White Russian Diaspora** – named for the Russians and Belarusians who left Russia (the USSR 1918-91) in the wake of the 1917 October Revolution and Russian Civil War, seeking to preserve pre-Soviet Russian culture, the Orthodox Christian faith, and includes exiled former Communist party members, such as Leon Trotsky found exile in Mexico but was assassinated in 1940. The mln.s of Russian émigré and refugees found live in North America (the U.S. and Canada), Latin America, even more went to Europe (The UK, Austria, Belgium, former Czechoslovakia, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Italy, the Netherlands, Poland, Scandinavia, Switzerland and former Yugoslavia), some to east Asia (China and Japan), south Asia (India and Iran) and the Middle East (Egypt and Turkey).

**Romani Diaspora** – originating in the Punjab region of India, the Roma people began a mass migration to Europe ca. 1000 A.D.

**Romanians** – who emigrated for the first time in larger figures between 1910 and 1925, and left in mass after the fall of communist regime in Romania in 1989, and comprise the Romanian Diaspora, are found today in large numbers in Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, Germany, Greece, Israel, Russia, Turkey, the Netherlands, the U.K., China, Japan, Australia, the U.S., Canada, Mexico, Brazil and Argentina. Today there are over 12 mil. people of Romanian descent outside the country.

**Scottish Diaspora** – includes the Auld Alliance and the Scottish Wars of Independence which led countless Scots to immigrate to mainland Europe to escape persecution and hardship. The Highland clearances which depopulated large parts of the Scottish Highlands and had lasting effects on Scottish Gaelic culture; the Lowland Clearances which resulted in significant migration of Lowland Scots to Canada and the USA after 1776; the Ulster-Scots, descended primarily from Lowland Scots who settled Ulster during the Plantation of Ulster in the 17<sup>th</sup> century and subsequently fled to the Americas in mass numbers throughout the 18<sup>th</sup> century due to religious and cultural persecution as well as other socio-economic factors. Other Scots and Ulster Scots went to Australia, New Zealand, South Africa and a smaller but important community in Argentina.

**Serbian Diaspora** – from Serbia, former Yugoslavia. Over 12 mln. of Serbian descent live around the world, historically based in Serbia, nearby Montenegro, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Croatia, Hungary, Albania, Republic of Macedonia and Romania. The largest overseas Serbian communities are in the U.S.A (See Serbian American) and Germany, as well as Austria, Australia, Canada, Switzerland, Sweden, Denmark, the UK, France, Italy, Slovenia, the Netherlands, Brazil and South Africa.

**Sikh Diaspora** – from the Punjab region Sikhs have emigrated to all over the world. Now there are more than a mln. Sikhs outside of India. The biggest community is the British Sikh community which in the last census was recorded as 336,179 people. There are also major Sikh communities in Canada with 278,000, Malaysia (100,000), East Africa (100,000), America (87,000), and 150,000 living in Europe, and 32,000 in Australia and New Zealand.

**Somali Diaspora** includes ethnic Somalis who live in Djibouti, Ethiopia, Yemen, Kenya, as well other parts of Africa, about 2.5 mln. people of Somali origin who live in the Middle East, Europe, Australia, New Zealand, and North America either as expatriate nationals or as refugees from the civil war – altogether between seven and nine mln..

**South African Diaspora** – mainly consists of South African emigrants of European descent, especially those whose mother tongue (first language) is Afrikaans. South Africans of European descent whose mother tongue (first language) is English have largely immigrated to Great Britain for the same reasons. There is also a growing middle class in South Africa of African descent, many of whom are starting to emigrate for better prospects, furthering the demographic



weight of all South Africans abroad. South Africans have largely settled in Great Britain, Australia, the USA, New Zealand, Canada, France, Germany, Argentina and Brazil.

**South Asian Diaspora** – includes mln.s of people from India, Myanmar, Bangladesh, Pakistan and Sri Lanka, whose descendants live in Suriname, South Africa, Trinidad and Tobago, Guyana, Jamaica, Kenya, Mauritius, Fiji, Singapore, Malaysia, Thailand, Tanzania, Uganda, and other countries who left British India in the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, and mln.s more who have moved to Australia, Canada, France, Germany, Italy, New Zealand, the Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, the USA, the UK and the United Arab Emirates in recent decades.

**Indian Diaspora** – estimated at over 30 mln. refers to people originating from India living in other parts of the world.

**Tamil Diaspora** – denotes people of Tamil Nadu and Sri Lankan Tamil origin who have settled in many parts of rest of India, Sri Lanka, Malaysia, Singapore, Reunion, South Africa, Mauritius, Fiji, Guyana, Trinidad and Tobago, French Caribbean islands, Europe, Australia and North America (US and Canada).

**Chitpavan Diaspora** – Hindu converts of mixed Indian and East European (primarily Jewish) descent who migrated to India centuries ago.

**The Roma** (English terms: Gypsy, Gypsies) – a traditionally "dispersed" people in Europe, with origins in South Asia (or perhaps, northern India) for 800-some years, are even more "dispersed" today, following the Holocaust of Nazi Germany. Over 10 mln. Roma live across Europe, the majority in Eastern countries (Russia, Ukraine, Belarus, Latvia, Lithuania, Romania, Bulgaria, Hungary, Poland, Albania, Greece, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Croatia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Montenegro and Macedonia), and estimates of 250,000 Roma are known to live in North America (the US and Canada).

**Spanish Diaspora** – linked to the political and economic emigrants who left Spain during the Francoist dictatorship (1930's but his death in 1975 brought democratic reform back to Spain). Notable communities were established in Argentina, Cuba, France, Italy, Mexico, Russia, the UK and across Latin America.

**Swedish Diaspora.** Large numbers of Swedes migrated to the USA in the late 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. It is estimated that about eight mln. Americans have some Swedish ancestry. Swedish Americans constitute 10% of the population of Minnesota and other large numbers settled in Wisconsin, Illinois, New York and Pennsylvania. Large Swedish migration took place in Canada in the same time period along with other ethnic Scandinavians from Norway, Denmark and Iceland.

Smaller waves of Swedish expatriates live across Europe, East Asia, Australia and Latin America, usually made up of retirees and businessmen in the late 20<sup>th</sup> century.

**Swiss Diaspora,** some 9% of Swiss citizens live across the globe (mostly in the U.S., Canada, Mexico, Peru, Bolivia, Argentina, Brazil and nearby nations of France, Germany, Italy and Austria).

**Syrian Diaspora** – the largest Arab nationality Diaspora in the world.

**Tibetan Diaspora** – began in 1959 when the People's Republic of China invaded Tibet. Most Tibetan refugees live in the USA, India (home to the exiled Dalai Lama, still the official leader of a nation no longer in existence), and Europe (over 30,000 went to Switzerland).

**Tuaregs,** a group of Berbers in Western Sahara after the end of Spanish rule (1975) and Saharais, whom fled the Moroccan invasion and occupation of the disputed territory known as the Sahrawi Arab Democratic Republic.

**Turkish Diaspora** – refers to the Turkish people living outside of Turkey (most in Germany).

**Ukrainian Diaspora,** represented by Ukrainians who left their homeland in several waves of emigration, settling mainly in the Americas (USA, Canada, Mexico, Brazil and Argentina), but also Australia, East Asia (China) and across Europe. Also includes the tens and mln.s of Ukrainians who migrated from Ukraine to other parts of the former Soviet Union (mainly Russian Federation) during Soviet time.

**Ruthenians and Carpathians,** self-titles for Slavic peoples from the small region of Ruthenia, encompasses easternmost Slovakia, southeast parts of Poland, northern edges of Hungary and westernmost Ukraine, had preserved a unique ethno cultural identity, but lacked an independent country of their own for almost a millennia. In the late 19<sup>th</sup> century and again between World Wars I and II, over a mln. Ruthenians fled their homeland and settled across Western Europe (France, Germany and Austria), North America (the U.S. and Canada) and the USSR

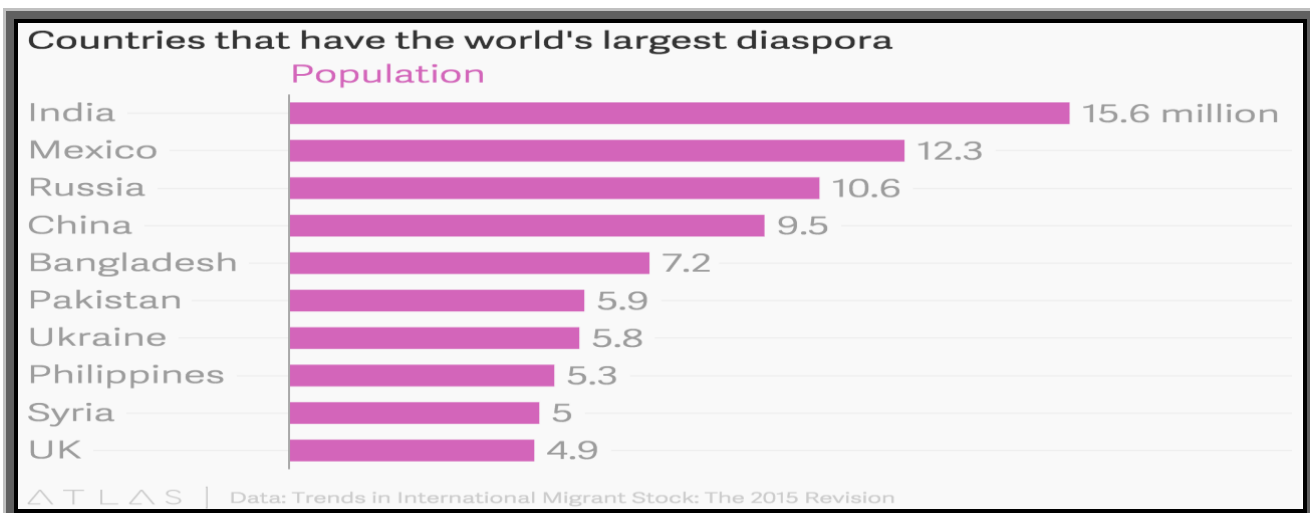
(Russia), but lesser numbers settled in East Asia (China), the Middle East (Turkey), South America (Brazil) and Australia in the late 20<sup>th</sup> c.

**The Venezuelan Diaspora** – people from Venezuela who live outside of their territory: Mainly in the USA, Mexico, Spain and Italy most of them escaping from the military dictatorship of the 1950s and the political repressions in the 1960s. Nowadays, there's a growing number of Venezuelans in Canada almost all of them working for the Oil industry after the 2002 strike.

**Welsh Diaspora** – the Welsh are a Celtic people from Wales one of the four countries of the UK or Great Britain whom manage to preserve more of their Celtic heritage after a millennia of English and then British rule. An estimated 5 mln. of Welsh ancestry live globally in areas formerly part of the British Empire (Canada, Australia, New Zealand and lesser numbers in Latin America) and about 2 mln. Americans are of Welsh descent. In the 19th century, over 500,000 Welsh miners migrated out of Wales throughout the British Empire, western Europe, the Americas (the U.S. such as Jackson County, Ohio was nicknamed *Little Wales*) and South Africa for mining jobs, but others came as shepherds, factory workers and fishermen.

The Welsh fought hard to preserve their culture, such as the revived Welsh language and their sense of identity in face of forced assimilation to the Anglo-British fabric. In the late 19th century, a small but solid Welsh settlement in Argentina (migration) took place to create a Welsh community (many there are bilingual in Spanish and Welsh) that survived to this day in the Argentinean provinces of Chubut and Santa Cruz.

**Western Sahara** the people on the exile of Mali, France, Spain, Algeria (mainly Tinduf), Mauritania, Niger, Italy and Senegal. And on the Free Zone of the Saharai Republic.



## CONTENTS

№	CHAPTERS & UNIONS	PAGES
1.	FOREWORD	3
2.	CHAPTER I. GENERAL CONCEPTIONS	7
3.	CHAPTER II. CUSTOMS ALL OVER THE WORLD	20
4.	CHAPTER III. GLOBALIZATION	
5.	UNIT I. INTERNATIONALIZATION	102
8.	UNIT II. OVERPOPULATION	127
9.	UNIT III. MODERN MIGRATION	149
10.	CHAPTER IV CUSTOMS TODAY	
11.	UNIT I. CUSTOMS PROCEDURES	172
12.	UNIT II. EU CUSTOMS UNION	210
13.	CHAPTER V. SMUGGLING	269
14.	LIST OF REFERENCES	328
15.	APPENDIX	329